RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM,

SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR,

HISTORIA MINOR.

ITEM, EJUSDEM

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

EDITED

BY

SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., F.R.S.,

KEEPER OF THE DEPARTMENT OF MANUSCRIPTS, BRITISH MUSEUM.

VOL. I.

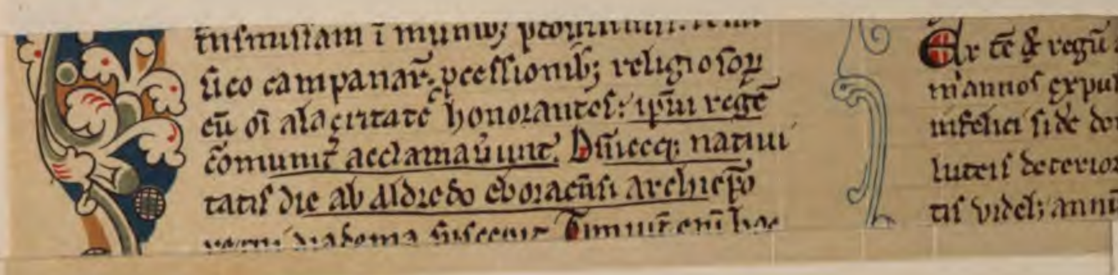
A.D. 1067–1189.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER.

1866.

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.



fuſtiuſtam i muniw; pcouiniii. . .
ſtco campanar̄ pcessionib; religiosor̄
cū oī alacritate honorantes: ipsū regē
cōmunit̄ acclamauīnt. Dēinceq; natiui
tatis die ab aldredo eboracēsi archiepō
. . . diadema suscepit. Timuit eni hoc

Ex te & regnū . . .
ni annos expul . . .
infelici fide do . . .
luteis deterior . . .
tis videl; annū . . .

M.S. BRIT. MUS. BIBL. REG. 14 C VII. fol. 10

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

AMONG the great monastic houses founded by the piety and munificence of the monarchs of the Anglo-Saxon race, there is no one which presents more claims to our interest than the Benedictine abbey of St. Alban. Its origin is due to Offa, the powerful sovereign of Mercia (contemporary and friend of Charlemagne), who in the year 793, with the sanction of pope Adrian, caused a monastery to be reared in honour of the protomartyr of Britain, and endowed it with ample lands and privileges. The locality of this building was in all respects advantageous. Placed on the summit of an eminence, and commanding an extensive prospect, it looked across the narrow valley watered by the river Verlam or Ver on the remains of the Roman city of Verulam (the Anglo-Saxon Waetlingceaster), beyond which the ancient Watling Street pursued its course northwards, and formed a junction at no great distance with the Ikenild Way and other roads leading to various parts of the kingdom.

Foundation of the abbey of St. Alban.

From the proximity of the abbey to the metropolis, and also from its position on the great highway from south to north, it is obvious that it must not only have served as a place of resort and hospitality to travellers and pilgrims (as contemplated by the founder),[1] but also to the courtiers and gentry; and this was manifested in later times by the frequency of the royal visits with

Great resort to it by travellers and others

[1] See Matth. Paris, *Vita Offæ Secundi*, p. 30, and *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 45, ed. Wats, 1640.

which it was honoured. This close connexion with the court is further evidenced in the appointment of the early abbats, for we find that previous to the Norman conquest the majority of them were either of regal affinity or of noble birth; but, however such a distinction may have increased the secular reputation of the monastery, it could scarcely have been conducive to the interests of religion or of literature. We are informed, indeed, by the Historian of the abbey in the thirteenth century, that the Anglo-Saxon abbats were famed more for their love of apparel, field sports,[1] and feasting, than of praying and fasting. One of them named Wulsig, in the reign of Alfred, is said to have worn silken dresses, and used rich trappings to his horses; nay, what was worse, to have invited ladies to his banquets, and to have died from excess in drinking, so that he merited the appellation of "pessimus."[2] Yet his successor Wulnoth seems to have surpassed him in such excesses, for he is called "pejus priore!" He was fond of hawks and hounds, and pursued the pleasures of the chase with the ardour of a modern sportsman.[3] Like Chaucer's monk,

The early abbats were of royal or noble affinity.

They loved field sports more than praying and fasting.

> "He ȝave not of the text a pulled hen,
> That saith that Hunters ben not Holy Men."[4]

[1] Although the pastime of hunting was forbidden by the Canons of the Church to ecclesiastics, yet it was practised by them both in France and England. As early as the year 774 the abbat and monks of St. Denys obtained a grant from Charlemagne, permitting them to hunt for the purpose of providing covers to their books, as well as girdles and gloves (Mabillon, *Annal. Ord. Bened.* ii. 229); and at a later period, in 789, the monastery of Sithiu had a similar privilege conceded to it. (*Ibid.* ii. 294, and *De Re. Dipl.* p. 611). On this Warton remarks (Dissert. ii. p. lxxxv. in *Hist. Eng. Poetr.*, ed. 1840) that the monks must have been fonder of hunting than reading. "It is certain," he says, "that they were obliged to *hunt* before they could *read*." But this is a false conclusion, for the deer-skins only supplied the external covering of their books, and not the material on which the text was written.

[2] Matth. Paris, *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 37.

[3] *Ibid.* p. 38.

[4] Cant. Tales, Prol. l. 177.

But in those days there appears to have been nobler game in view for these frocked Nimrods than hares or foxes, for we are told that the woods to the north of the abbey abounded with wolves, boars, and wild bulls, which were not extirpated till the reign of Edward the Confessor.[1]

Under a rule of so remiss and secular a character, —which in the ninth and tenth centuries was rendered still more lax in consequence of the inroads and ravages of the Northmen,—it would be hopeless to look for evidence of any literary efforts having been made at St. Alban's; and in the course of more than two centuries and a half, which elapsed between the foundation of the monastery and the arrival of the Normans, we only meet with one name of any note, namely, that of abbat Ælfric, who subsequently became archbishop of Canterbury in 995, and to whom has been attributed, on very doubtful grounds, the authorship of the Anglo-Saxon Homilies, and other works and translations.[2]

Absence of any literary efforts in the monastery at this period.

Abbat Ælfric.

---

[1] *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 45.

[2] Notwithstanding all that has been written on the subject, it seems impossible to identify Ælfric the writer with Ælfric the archbishop of Canterbury. It appears certain that archbishop Ælfric, who was promoted to the see in 995, was previously bishop of Ramsbury and Wilton (under which titles he occurs in Anglo-Saxon charters in 993–995, *Cod. Dipl. Ævi Saxon*. iii. 269, 275, 278, 284), and, in all probability, abbat of St. Alban's at an earlier period. The account given of the abbats by Matthew Paris in his *Vitæ Abbatum* from Ælfric the seventh to Ælfric the eleventh in succession, is not only confused and unsatisfactory, but directly at variance with facts. He tells in his text that it was *Leofric*, the tenth abbat, who was made archbishop, although he had at first refused the dignity in favour of his brother *Ælfric*. But Matthew Paris ought to have known better, for he must have had before his eyes the charter of Æthelred, dated 1007 (in MS. Cott. Nero. D. I. fol. 149, and printed in *Cod. Dipl. A. S.* vi. 157), which proves that *Ælfric* was really the *archbishop*, and his brother *Leofric* at the same time the *abbat*. It would seem that Paris had some intention of correcting the error, for in his autograph copy of the Lives of the Abbats (Nero D. I. fol. 32) he has written, "*Leofricus* electus in archiepiscopum, non consensit, asserens fratrem suum Alfricum fuisse multo digniorem. *Alfricus* igitur effectus

Change of affairs after the advent of the Normans.

With the advent of the Normans, however, a different state of things commenced, and a fresh impulse was given to literature, which at that period had sunk in England to its lowest ebb. The appointment of Paul, monk of Caen, to be abbat of St. Alban's in 1077, produced a marked and durable revolution in the government of the abbey. He not only rebuilt the church (for which purpose he made free use of the materials afforded by the ruins of Verulam), but by the help of his kinsman, archbishop Lanfranc, "the father and protector

---

est archiepiscopus Cantuariæ," but afterwards the first syllable of Alfricus has been erased. Wats prints this note as he found it, and it is amusing to find Wharton (*Anglia Sacra*, i. 127) accusing the editor of stupidity for adding it *himself* to the text! Ælfric certainly *preceded* Leofric as abbat of St. Alban's, instead of *succeeding* him, as stated by Matthew Paris. According to Eadmer (*Vita Oswaldi*, in *Anglia Sacra*, ii. 201), Ælfric was instituted abbat by Oswald, bishop of Worcester and archbishop of York. Some place this event about the year 969, and others in or soon after 978. Leofric probably succeeded his brother as abbat when the latter became bishop of Wilton, and we find the former signing in charters as abbat in the years 993, 996, 997, 1002, and 1006 (misdated 990 by Kemble). He survived the archbishop (who died in 1006), as proved by the charter of Æthelred of 1007, referred to above, and by the will of the archbishop, who, after bequeathing to St. Alban's various lands and all his books, names abbat Leofric as one of his executors to dispose of the residuary property. This will is printed by Hickes (*Diss. Epist.* p. 62), and, more correctly, in Stevenson's *Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon*, ii. 416. Diceto is cited by Wharton (from *Abbrev. Chron.* col. 446) as an undoubted authority for the succession of Leofric, eleventh abbat, immediately after his brother Ælfric, the archbishop; but this passage really forms no part of Diceto's work, but was added by a monk of St Alban's soon after the year 1200, on the margin of a copy of Diceto which belonged to that monastery, and is now preserved in the Old Royal Library, 13 E. vi. fol. 23. There are several other marginal additions in the same MS. relating to St. Alban's, all of which are inserted in Diceto's text by Twysden (edit. 1652), without comment. This is only one more proof how utterly valueless, in a critical point of view, these early editions of our historians really are. Matthew Paris must have read this MS. of Diceto, for at fol. 11 is a note in his handwriting, and Wendover also borrowed from it the correct succession of the abbats, vol. iii. p. 295, ed. Coxe, where his text has been altered by the editor to make it agree with the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, p. 253, ed. Wats.

of monks,[1] he obtained the loan of many precious volumes, which he caused to be copied by chosen scribes. To him is due the merit of having established the *Scriptorium*, which in aftertimes rendered the abbey of St. Alban so deservedly famous. The books transcribed appear to have been chiefly liturgical,[2] required for the service of the church; and we find that the succeeding abbats, alternately Norman and English, to the close of the twelfth century, contributed many other volumes of a similar character.

Scriptorium established by abbat Paul.

One of these, the English abbat Simon (1167–1188), who was "librorum amator specialis," not only caused many excellent books to be written, but had them placed in a painted *Ambry*, or book-press (*in Almario picto*), which was stationed in the church opposite to the tomb of Roger the Hermit.[3] He also made an order that in future the abbat should always have one special scribe in the *Scriptorium*, and, in addition, he employed two or three very select copyists continually in his own chamber, by whose aid he presented to the church numerous "libros pretiosissimos."[4] In the time also of abbat John

Books caused to be written by abbat Simon.

---

[1] *Chron. Sax.* i. 358, ed. Thorpe.

[2] *Vitæ Abbatum*, p. 51.

[3] *Ibid.* pp. 91–93. Newcome, in his *History of St. Alban's*, p. 75, says of this *Ambry* (which he incorrectly terms *Almonry*), that it was "somewhere within the body of the church." The precise locality of the tomb of Roger is pointed out in the curious tract on the monuments in the church, compiled in the time of abbat Whethamstede (MS. Harl. 3775, fol. 130), where we read, "Prope hostium ecclesiæ quod ducit ad claustrum, in arca seu fornice muri tumbæ Rogeri Heremitæ;" and this agrees with the account given in the legend of Roger in MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 112, where we are told that his body was buried "in arcuato locello qui fit in muro ecclesiæ versus austrum, prope chorum fratrum dicti loci."

[4] One of these volumes, written by order of abbat Simon, is preserved among the Royal MSS. in the British Museum, marked 13 D. iv. It is a large folio, containing a copy of the *Polycraticon* and other works of John of Salisbury, finely written, with large initial letters in gold and colours, very artistic in execution, and affording a favourable specimen of English illumination of the period. On the fly-leaf is a note stating the volume to have been made by direction of abbat Simon, and subsequently sold [by abbat Richard

Historia Scholastica caused to be transcribed by prior Reimund.

de Cella (1195–1214) the prior Reimund caused some noble and useful books to be transcribed, among which is particularly mentioned a "liber elegantissimus," containing the *Historia Scholastica cum Allegoriis* of Peter Comestor, which was subsequently deposited in the *Almariolum* by abbat William of Trumpington.[1]

No historical writers at St. Alban's till the thirteenth century.

But although the library of the monastery was thus gradually increased,[2] we meet with no indication up to this date of any work having been undertaken of a strictly historical character. Many other monastic houses, and some not equal in rank to that of St. Alban, had produced writers during the twelfth century, who had acquired distinction as historians, but of what has been called "The Historical School of St. Alban's," there is no trace whatever until we come to the reign of king John.[3] And here it can hardly fail to have been observed, in reviewing the works of the earlier chroniclers, how many

de Wallingford] to Richard de Bury, bishop of Durham, and purchased back in 1345 from his executors by abbat Michael de Mentmore. Some indignant remarks on this sale of books of the monastery to Richard de Bury may be seen in Walsingham's continuation of the *Vitæ Abbatum*, in MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 203 *b*.

[1] *Vitæ Abbatum*, pp. 168, 127. This specially commended volume is preserved also among the MSS. of the Royal Library, 4 D. vii., and, besides the work of Comestor, contains, in the handwriting of Matthew Paris, the *Testamenta duodecim Patriarcharum*, translated from the Greek by Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln, and some other tracts, one of which, *Qualiter probata Virginitas Beatæ Mariæ*, was received by Paris from the bishop himself.

[2] Among the manuscripts still in existence which were transcribed at St. Alban's before the year 1200 may be noticed Eusebius, *Ecclesiastica Historia*, of the eleventh century MS. Reg. 13 B. v.), and Josephus, *De Antiquitatibus Judæorum* (13 D. vi., vii.), Cassiodorus, *Historia* (13 C. xiv.), Beda, *De Temporibus et Chronicon* (12 F. ii.), Diceto, *Abbreviationes Chronicorum et Ymagines* (13 E. vi.), and Joh. Sarisberiensis *Polycraticon* and other works (13 D. iv.), all of the twelfth century.

[3] According to Pits, *De Illustribus Angliæ Scriptoribus*, 1619, p. 845, Walter, precentor of St. Alban's, wrote, about the year 1180, "quædam Anglicarum rerum Chroni ι," but no proof is given of this st tement, which is repeated by Tanner, p. 352. A work of a totally different character is assigned to him by Bale, cent. x. p. 40.

of them terminate their annals shortly before the year 1200, thus leaving the field open, as it were, for a new succession of writers, who should continue to record and perpetuate public events onwards from the commencement of the thirteenth century. There is an unfounded tradition, indeed, which represents the early English sovereigns as having been accustomed to employ a special chronographer in the monasteries of royal foundation, for the express purpose of recording the acts of their reigns, and St. Alban's is instanced as one of the places thus distinguished. But this statement rests on no credible or even ancient authority,[1] and there can be little doubt that the annalist of a monastery was usually nominated by his abbat, and in no case received either a royal appointment or stipend. At St. Alban's it appears certain that Roger of Wendover may claim the merit of having first commenced the great work which was subsequently referred to as the *Chronica Magna*,

Unfounded tradition as to a royal historiographer at St. Alban's.

Roger of Wendover.

[1] The earliest source of this tradition seems to be a passage in Walter Bower's continuation of Fordun's *Scotichronicon*, lib. xvi. c. 39 (ed. Goodall, ii. 513), written about 1440, and quoted, as worthy of credit, by archbishop Parker in the preface to his edition of Matthew Paris, in 1571. The same tradition is mentioned by Bale in his Comments on Leland's "Laboryouse Journey," 1549, where he writes, "Thomas Gascoigne reporteth in hys boke of the Floudes of Babylon, that the kynges here in Englande were wonte to holde a great nombre of good writers within the monasteryes of their foundacyons, to non other ende but only to coppie out the memorable workes of olde writers, specyally of the hystoryanes and chronyclers, that they myghte in their lybraryes perpetually remayne, appoyntynge them great stypendes." Gascoigne was born in 1403, became chancellor of Oxford in 1444, and died in 1457. No copy of his *Septem Flumina Babyloniæ* is now known to exist, but his *Dictionarium Theologicum*, a compilation of much interest, is still preserved in Lincoln College Library. Bale repeats this story in his bibliographical work, ed. 1559, under the article *Rishanger*, but there quotes Ponticus Virunius as his authority, which is duly repeated by Parker. This compiler from Geoffrey of Monmouth died in 1520, and I can find no such passage in his printed work. Pits, as usual, pp. 308, 403, copies and tampers with the information he finds in Bale.

or *Chronica Majora Sancti Albani.*[1] At what period he began to compile his Chronicle (which, under the title of *Flores Historiarum,* commenced with the Creation, and was brought down to the year 1235) it is not possible to fix with certainty. We know that he was a monk (Bale says precentor) of the monastery, and, in the reign of king John, became prior of the cell of Bealvoir, in Leicestershire, from which having been removed by abbat Trumpington, about the year 1219, he appears to have returned to St. Alban's,[2] where he ended his days not long after the completion of his work, namely, in May 1236.[3] In consequence, however, of his Chronicle having subsequently been augmented and continued by Matthew Paris, his name fell into obscurity, and, indeed, narrowly escaped oblivion. He was not known to Boston of Bury in the

[1] Had we not sufficient evidence of this from existing MSS., the precise testimony of Walsingham, the latest continuator of the St. Alban's Chronicles, would suffice to prove the fact. In a notice of the monks of that abbey who were distinguished for piety and industry, after having mentioned the holy hermits Roger and Sigar (who lived in the twelfth century), he proceeds thus: "Consequenter in nostro monasterio floruit *Rogerus de Wendovere,* noster monachus, *cui pæne debent totius regni cronographi quicquid habent.* Nam plane et perlucide ab initio mundi per annorum distinctionem digessit Cronica sua, usque ad tempora regis Henrici a conquestu Secundi [*a mistake for* Tertii.]" MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 332 *b.*

[2] He certainly was there in 1228, when he heard from the Armenian archbishop who visited St. Alban's the legend of Joseph Cartaphila, the Wandering Jew. See ed. Coxe, vol. iv. p. 176. A curious drawing of Cartaphila by Matthew Paris is in MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi. fol. 70 *b.*

[3] This date is taken from the lists of monks deceased at St. Alban's, written by the hands of Matthew Paris and John of Wallingford, the first extending from the year 1216 to 1253 (MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 166), the other from 1232 to 1259 (MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII. fol. 112 *b*). In both of these lists the entry is the same, "ii. non. Maii Rogerus de Wendovre sacerdos," and the Dominical letter of the year is E. *bissextile,* which can only apply to 1236. With the first of these lists before him, it is surprising how Wats should have falsified the date to 1237 (Pref. to Matth. Paris, ed. 1640); and this error has not only been copied by many recent bibliographers, but also by the editor of Wendover and his translator Dr. Giles. The writer of the introduction to the French translation of M. Huillard Breholles reads the date falsely 1235. In Tanner it is correctly given.

fifteenth century, nor to Leland a century later, and his name, falsely written *Wyndore*, is first found in Bale's additions to his *Scriptorum Illustrium Majoris Brytanniæ Catalogus*, in 1559, and then even, not from a knowledge of his work, but on the authority of an old monastic catalogue.[1]

Silence of Leland in regard to Wendover and Paris.

The silence of Leland, in regard both to Roger of Wendover and Matthew Paris, is marvellous. He certainly paid a visit to St. Alban's abbey, apparently about the year 1535, for the express purpose of examining the celebrated library there, which, he tells us, was readily shown to him by one of the monks;[2] yet in his *Collectanea* he gives the most meagre and unsatisfactory notice of the volumes which came under his observation.[3] He

[1] "Ex vetere Catalogo," p. 91, and "Ex Catalogo Nordovicensi" (MS. Selden, 64 B.) See also Introd. to cent. xiv., p. 169. Archbishop Parker merely mentions this writer by the corrupt name of *Roger de Windeleshor* (which he found in a manuscript copy of the pseudo Matthew of Westminster, MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII., under the year 1235), but the earliest historical references to his work appear to be those of Stow, in his *Survay of London*, 1598, and *Annales*, 1615. Pits makes two persons out of one, first as *Roger de Windover*, p. 292, and next as *Roger de Windeshora*, p. 308. Selden, however, having borrowed Sir Robert Cotton's MS. of Wendover (Otho B. V.), defined more correctly the extent of the Chronicle in his Notes on Eadmer, 1623, p. 169.

[2] It is remarkable that there is no mention of St. Alban's in Leland's Itinerary, as it has come down to us, but in his *Comment. de Scriptoribus Britannicis*, vol. ii. p. 316, he writes, "Annis abhinc plus minus decem Verolamium me contuli, municipii veteris Romani ruinas curiose inspecturus, quod cum fecissem, diverti ad Fanum Albani, muris collapsæ urbis vicinum. Hic me quidem monachus eleganter eruditus, cui a Regia Curia [Kingsbury] nomen, vir antiquitatis omnis studiosissimus, *thesauros pergamenicos monasterii ingentis officiosissimus mihi ostendit;*" and again, vol. i. p. 166, "Agebam dies aliquot apud Fanum Albani, *ut aliquid antiquitatis Britannicæ e thesauris bibliothecæ, quæ ibidem celebris est, eruerem.*"

[3] Vol. iv. p. 163. He only notices nine authors, all on medical or theological subjects, and then gives some brief extracts "Ex libro de Gestis Offæ regis," and "Ex libro de Gestis Abbatum S. Albani, quem scripsit Matth. Parisiensis." The copy he used contained the continuation of the Lives of the Abbats by a later writer, and was probably the volume now preserved among the Cottonian MSS., Claud. E. IV. He also notices the life of St. Alban by Ralph of Dunstable.

informs us, it is true, that a fine copy of the History of Matthew Paris had been stolen from the library,[1] but not a word is added to lead us to suppose he knew its extent, or whether it comprised his greater or lesser work. This absence of accurate information would lead us to infer that no copy of either was at that time in the library, for otherwise Leland could hardly have failed to notice them; yet such a conclusion may be unsafe, seeing that he maintains the same silence respecting the writings both of Rishanger and Walsingham,[2] which were probably in the abbey library when he visited it. Leland undoubtedly discovered elsewhere (but he does not state where) a copy of the larger work of Matthew Paris, comprising the text of Wendover, and continued to the year 1253, for in another part of his *Collectanea* he has extracts from it,[3] and there is good reason to believe that it was the identical manuscript now preserved in

---

[1] "Matthæi Parisiensis, monachi S. Albani, pulcherrima *Historia* furto sublata." *Ibid.* p. 163. This could scarcely have been the MS. now in the Old Royal Collection, 14 C. vii., from which our text is printed, for this volume had left the abbey library long before. (See *postea*, p. xxxix.) Among the MSS. of Bale, of which he gives a list in 1559, p. 167, appear, "Registra bibliothecarum *Divi Albani*, Ramesiæ, Glastoniæ, Nordovici et Dominicorum Londini," but I cannot trace what became of those volumes.

[2] Of Rishanger Leland was wholly ignorant, and all he knew of Walsingham (as he ingenuously confesses in his *Commentarii*, vol. ii. p. 360) was derived from an incidental mention of his "Chronica Majora," in a chronicle written by a monk of St. Aban's, from 1259 to 1399, which he found in the priory of Tynemouth (itself a cell of St. Alban's), and from which, in his *Collectanea*, vol. iii. p. 403, he gives extracts. This Tynemouth manuscript now forms a portion of the Cottonian MS. Faustina B. IX.

[3] Vol. iii. pp. 335–341. "Ex Annalibus Matthæi Parisiensis, monachi S. Albani," from 1189 to 1253 inclusive; after which he notes, "Explicit Chronicon Matthæi Parisiensis in anno D. 1253, qui fuit xxxvii. annus regni regis Henrici 3ⁱ." Under the year 1191 (but which really belongs to 1195) is a notice of the "Apologus" of Vitalis the Venetian noble, which is one of the autograph additions of Matthew Paris to the text of Wendover in the Sidney MS. in C. C. C. C., No. xvi He refers also particularly to this MS. of Paris in his *Commentarii*, ii. 266, in the account there given of John of Basingstoke.

Corpus College Library, Cambridge. Had Leland, indeed, met with so important a work at St. Alban's, we may reasonably suppose he would at once have transferred it to the Royal Library. He seems to have possessed the authority to do so under the commission granted to him in 1533 by Henry VIII.;[1] and, if not on this occasion, he certainly exercised this power at other times, as he did notably at Rochester, St. Augustine's Canterbury, St. Edmund's Bury, and many other places.[2]

Dispersion of the monastic libraries.

The general dispersion of the monastic libraries which took place not long afterwards, and the destruction of considerable portions of them, have been often and loudly lamented, but by no one more than by John Bale, who himself witnessed the spoliation, and whose exertions to stay its progress intitle him to the especial thanks of all who are interested in our historical litera-

Exertions of John Bale.

[1] This commission is not now to be found, but we learn from Leland himself (in "The Laboryouse Journey," addressed to king Henry VIII. in 1546) that its object was to enable him "to peruse and dylygentlye to searche all the libraryes of monasteryes and collegies of thys your noble realme." He adds that he had "conserved many good authors, of the whiche *parte remayne in the most magnificent libraryes of your royall palaces*, part also remayne in my custodye."

[2] In the Old Royal Collection of manuscripts in the British Museum presented by George II. in 1757, there are above 270 volumes, bearing internal evidence of the locality from which they were taken, and, no doubt, most, if not all, of these were acquired by Leland. Fifty-seven monasteries and five colleges at Oxford furnished these "spolia opima," and among them are 78 volumes from Rochester, 27 from St. Alban's, 15 from St. Augustine's Canterbury, and the same number from St. Edmund's Bury, 13 from St. Mary's Reading, 10 from St. Mary's Worcester, and nine from St. Mary's Merton. Ramsey only supplied four, St. Peter's Westminster, two, and Battle Abbey only one. The colleges at Oxford produced five. Archbishop Parker does not seem to have been aware of Leland's services in this respect, or else undervalued them, since, in lamenting the destruction of historical monuments (Preface to *De Antiq. Brit. Ecclesiæ*, 1572), he complains that those persons who were sent by Henry VIII. to select ancient manuscripts from the monastic houses had only examined them "leviter et perfunctorie." He adds that many had afterwards been rescued from the shops of the apothecaries and cooks!

ture. His industry and energy seem never to have flagged, and although much indebted to Leland for the groundwork of his bibliographical collections, yet these were enlarged and improved by his own extensive researches.[1] He was the first, also, to point out the value of the early English historians, and to urge, in the most strenuous language, their publication. His words are so remarkable, and breathe so strongly the spirit which, in more recent times, has awakened a taste for historical inquiry, and contributed to produce, as the result, the successive editions of our early historians, and the present series of writers issued under the authority of the Master of the Rolls, that I am tempted to quote the passage at length. He says, "Let one noble man bring fourth one noble author, and an other emprinte an other, to the conservacion of Englandes antiquities. In lyke case lete one ryche merchaunte brynge one worthye worke of an aun-

He urges the publication of the early English historians.

[1] The result of a portion of Bale's labours is preserved in a valuable volume in his handwriting among Selden's MSS. in the Bodleian Library, No. 64 B. This volume contains his collections for the enlargement of the first edition of his bibliographical work, made between the years 1549 (when he returned from Germany) and 1552. From this MS. Wats printed the notes on Matthew Paris, among the "Protestantium Testimonia." Bale speaks of these collections in his Comments on Leland, 1549, where, after mentioning the first edition of his work in five books, he says, "Sence I returned agayne thereunto [that is to say, to England], by the serche of dyverse most ruynouslye spoyled, broaken up, and dyspersed lybraryes, I have collected by no small labour and dylygence so much as wyll make so many bokes more." And again, in reference to the destruction of manuscripts, he writes, "Among the stacyoners and bokebynders I found many notable antiquities, of whom I wrote out the tytles, tymes, and begynnynges," and adds, "Yf the byshop of Romes Lawes, Decretals, Extravagantes, Elementines, and other suche dregges of the Devyll, yea, yf Heytesburyes Sophismes, Porphyryes Universals, Aristotles olde Logyckes, and Dunses Dyvynyte, wyth such other lowsy legerdemaynes" had been used as coverings for books brought from abroad, it would not matter, "But to put our auncient Chronicles, our noble Hystoryes, our learned Commentaries and Homelyes upon the Scriptures, to so homely an office of subjeccyon and utter contempte, we have both greatly dishonoured our nacyon, and also shewed our selves very wycked to our posteryte."

cyent writer to lyght, and an other put fourth an other. Besides the Bryttyshe authors, whome I oft named afore, lete one bryng fourth *Bedas de Gestis Anglorum*, an other *Willyam of Malmesbery de Gestis Pontificum et Regum*. Lete an other brynge fourth *Simeon of Durham*, wyth *Rycharde* and *Johan of Hangustalde*, an other *Aldrede* and *Wyllyam of Rieuall*, wyth *Marianus the Scott*. An other *Giraldus Cambrensis*, an other *Henry of Huntyngdon*, an other *Alphred of Beverley*, an other *Florence of Worcestre*, and an other *Walter of Excestre*. An other *Roger Hoveden*, an other MATHEW PARYS, an other *John Bever*, an other *Radulphus Niger*, an other *Radulphus de Diceto*, an other *William Newburg* of Bridlington, an other *John of Oxforde*. An other *Scalæ Temporum*, an other *Flores Historiarum*, *Asserius*, *Osbernus*, *Gervasius*, *Stephanides*, and *Ricardus Divisiensis* of Wynchestre, wyth a wonderfull nombre besydes."[1]

Historical writers published by archbishop Parker.

It seems far from improbable that we owe to these noble sentiments of Bale the subsequent publication of the historians put forth by the care of archbishop Parker. This learned prelate was a friend of the ex-bishop of Ossory, and himself a "great collector of ancient writings," many of which he obtained from the scattered remains of the monastic libraries by the aid of active agents.[2] He had, indeed, after the death of Bale in 1563, contemplated the acquisition of the manuscripts of that indefatigable scholar, and wrote to secretary Cecil, that "he was promised to have them for money," but he does not appear to have succeeded in this design.[3]

***Flores Historiarum* ascribed to**

Assisted by the labour of his secretary Joscelin, and influenced, doubtless, by the praise bestowed by Bale

[1] "The Laboryouse Journey," &c. in the "Conclusyon."

[2] Strype's *Life of Parker*, Pref. p. xi. vol. ii. pp. 522, 528; Wharton, Pref. in *Angl. Sacr.* i. xviii.

[3] The letter is dated 20 Nov. 1563 (MS. Lansd. 6, art. 81.)

"Matthew of Westminster."

on "Matthew of Westminster,"[1] the archbishop first selected for the press the *Flores Historiarum* ascribed to that hitherto mysterious writer; but although he brought abundance of zeal to the task, he was sadly deficient in critical ability, and in the knowledge acquired only by the careful collation of manuscripts. This, his first choice of an historical work, was published in 1567, and was rather unfortunate, for the manuscript made use of was afterwards found to be incomplete as compared with others, which occasioned a new edition to be issued in 1570, much enlarged, but with many interpolations from various copies.[2] In Parker's time, and indeed down to the present day, this work has been taken to be a compilation made by a writer of the fourteenth century, named "Matthew of West-

Taken to be a compilation of the 14th century.

[1] *Scriptores*, p. 472, ed. 1557.

[2] The archbishop gives us no information whence he procured the copies used by him in these editions, and it is only after a long course of persevering research that I am enabled with some confidence to state as follows :—1. The edition of 1567 was printed wholly (with the exception of the last year, 1307) from a MS. now preserved in Eton College, which was written at Merton abbey; 2. The edition of 1570 is founded on the former, but enlarged from a manuscript now in the Bodleian library, Laud. 572 (no doubt, the "vetustissimum exemplar" mentioned by Parker in his Preface), and from the Cottonian MS. Claudius E. VIII., written for Henry Spencer, bishop of Norwich, before the year 1406. In all three of these MSS., particularly the first, are marginal notes in Parker's handwriting, and from one of these notes we learn that he had the Eton MS. in his hands in 1562. Besides the above MSS. represented in the edition of 1570, Parker has occasionally borrowed from the Rochester copy of the work (MS. Cott. Nero D. II.), and taken many other passages from various sources. His edition, in truth, is a mere piece of patchwork, and exhibits an utter disregard of the ordinary rules to be observed in publishing an historical work. Joscelin, in his List of Historians printed by Hearne (*Avesbury*, p. 292), mentions the Eton MS., as also two other copies in the hands of the archbishop; probably the Tenison MS. (now belonging to Sir Tho. Phillipps), and the Laud MS. 572. A copy seems also to have been borrowed by him from Stow, as stated in the *Annales*, ed. 1615, p. 679; and in the list of Stow's books taken by order of the bishop of London in Feb. 156⅘ (MS. Lansd. 11. fol. 7), we find "*Flores Historiarum*, in parchement, wrytten hand." I have been unable to satisfy myself that Stow's copy was the same with MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII., although it is by no means improbable.

minster,"[1] (surnamed by Bale and his followers *Florilegus* from the title of the work) who, commencing at the Creation, had constructed a series of annals to the year 1307, but of whom nothing more was known.[2] It was pointed out by Parker, and afterwards by several bibliographers, that the part previous to the conquest had been borrowed almost verbally from the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris (itself based on Wendover), and that onwards to the year 1259, the same authority had been closely followed, but much abridged and transposed, with some occasional additions.[3] Further than this no historical criticism has been exercised on the work,[4] yet the evidence supplied by several passages of mere local interest after the above date would clearly

---

[1] The only copy of the *Flores Historiarum* hitherto known to contain the name of *Matthew of Westminster* as the author is the Norwich MS. already mentioned (MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII.), as first pointed out by Joscelin in his Historical Collections, MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV. *anno* 1252. But I have discovered among the Fairfax MSS. in the Bodleian Library, No. 20, an earlier copy of the work (ending imperfect in A.D. 635), written at Norwich before the year 1344, in the time of prior Claxton. The title of the work stands thus: "Incipit Prologus in librum qui Flores Historiarum intitulatur, *secundum Matheum monachum Westmonasterii.*" The words in italics have been added by a later hand, and I cannot doubt that from this MS. was taken the similar heading in the Cotton copy. That the two MSS. had a close connexion is proved by the list of Norwich priors, which in both is brought down only to 1344. It was, apparently, from this source that Bale derived the information respecting Matthew of *Westminster*, entered in his Collections in MS. Selden 64 B. fol. 130, where he quotes his authority, "Ex Bibliotheca et Catalogo Nordovicensi."

[2] Hardy, Introd. to *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, p. 7.

[3] Preface to edit. 1570, Wharton, *Angl. Sacr.* Præf. i. xxxi.; Fabricius, *Bibl. Med. Lat.* iii. 55; Oudin, *Comm. de Scriptt. Eccles.* iii. 700, 707; Nicolson, *Engl. Hist. Libr.* p. 54, ed. 1776; Tanner, *Bibl. Brit.* p. 578.

[4] In an able article in the Quarterly Review, No. xxxiv., published in 1826, Mr. (afterwards Sir Francis) Palgrave pointed out the problematical existence of "Matthew of Westminster." He calls him "a phantom, who never existed," but errs greatly in supposing the compiler of the work attributed to him to have lived anterior to Florence of Worcester and Malmesbury. Yet, in spite of this warning, my late talented friend Mr. Henry Buckle was so deceived by the general tone of confidence manifested in quoting this writer,

point out the author or compiler as an inmate of St. Alban's abbey, and a closer examination of the text soon led me to the conclusion that the entire work to the year 1265 must have been written in that monastery. This conclusion has been unexpectedly confirmed by the important discovery (made by myself) of the *original copy of the work*, which is at present preserved in the Chetham library at Manchester, No. 6,712, and which, by the liberality of the Feoffees of that institution, I have had an opportunity of carefully examining. This manuscript establishes beyond all doubt that the largest portion of the *Flores Historiarum*, attributed to the pseudo "Matthew of Westminster," was written at St. Alban's, under the eye and by direction of Matthew Paris, as an abridgment of his Greater Chronicle, and the text from the close of the year 1241 to about two-thirds of 1249 is *in his own handwriting*. He had evidently intended to conclude the work here, as appears by the two lines of verse at the close,[1] and

Discovery of the original copy of the work in the Chetham Library.

It proves to be an abridgment by Matthew Paris of his Greater Chronicle.

that, in his "History of Civilization in England," vol. i. p. 290, ed. 1861, he characterizes him as "after Froissart, the most celebrated historian of the fourteenth century!" Of the three legendary stories quoted by Mr. Buckle from the *Flores Historiarum* as specimens of *monkish history*, it may be remarked, that two of them (under A.D. 31 and 60) are interpolations of the text, and the third does not occur in any copy of the work, but is foisted in by Parker from one of the additions of Matthew Paris to Wendover, under A.D. 798.

[1] "Cernis completas hic nostro tempore metas,
Si plus forte petas, tibi postea nunciet ætas."

ed. 1570, lib. ii. p. 238. This will account for the strange appearance of these lines in the printed text, occurring as they do in the course of the year. The portion of this manuscript written at St. Alban's is very carefully executed, and ornamented with some interesting miniatures of the coronations of several of the sovereigns. It commences with the usual title and prologue, and affords with certainty the means of detecting the interpolations in later copies. Several handwritings appear in it. The first proceeds only as far as "De Juda Machabeo" (ed. 1570, lib. i. p. 63); but the second goes on to 1241, where Matthew Paris himself commences. The latter part of 1249 and part of 1250 is by a fourth hand, and a fifth carries the work on to 1265.

the manuscript seems to have been left in this state until after his death in 1259. It was then continued on the same plan by another hand, abridging the larger work[1] of Matthew Paris up to the date last mentioned, and carrying it on by a contemporary and valuable narrative of events to the issue of the battle of Evesham in 1265.[2] Here it would seem that the manuscript ceased to be written at St. Alban's, and

Continued at St. Alban's by another hand.

[1] It is remarkable that at the end of 1250, a passage is taken verbatim not from the Greater Chronicle, but from the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* of Matthew Paris, the *autograph* copy of which is presented in the Cottonian Collection of MSS. Claud. D. VI.

[2] This Continuation from 1259 is written in close imitation of the style of composition of Matthew Paris, so much so, that we find illustrative documents referred to as being in the *Liber Additamentorum*. Thus, in reference to some papal and episcopal letters (ed. 1570, lib. ii. p. 287), the writer says, "qui videre juraverit, in *Libro Additamentorum ad hoc signum* invenire prævalebit." This passage is marked *vacat* in the manuscript, and it is omitted in every other copy but one (MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII., from which Parker took the passage), but the documents themselves are added on to the original *Liber Additamentorum* of Matthew Paris (MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 136 *b*), with the *signum* annexed. Again, in the same year, (p. 289), concerning the Provisions made by the barons in parliament, the writer adds, "Quos *Gallice* conscriptos per eosdem barones *duximus alibi scripturis commendare*." These Provisions in *French* are also entered in the *Liber Additamentorum*, fol. 204 *b*. In both these instances the documents are written by the hand of the fellow-monk and friend of Matthew Paris, who assisted him in writing and correcting the latter pages of his works. This associate of Paris tells us expressly in a colophon to the year 1259, (MS. Reg. 14 C. vii. fol. 218 *b*) "Sciendum est, quod hucusque perscripsit venerabilis vir frater Matheus Parisiensis . . . . . *Quod tamen amodo appositum est et prosecutum, cuidam alteri fratri sit ascribendum*, qui tanti prædecessoris opera præsumens aggredi . . . . . . cum non sit dignus ejusdem corrigiam solvere calciamenti, *paginæ non meruit nomine tenus annotari*." This colophon cannot possibly refer, as Mr. Riley supposes (*Will. Rishanger Chronica*, Introd. p. xxi.) to the Continuation annexed in the same volume, (written in a late hand of the fourteenth century, and which, on the mere conjecture of Bale, has been assigned to Rishanger), but to the *contemporary* Continuation of Paris, which we have here preserved in the so-called "Matthew of Westminster." In addition to the above references under 1259, we have in the following year a commission mentioned (p. 291) as "alibi inter Brevia," and we accordingly find it in the *Liber Addit.*, fol. 139 *b*. In regard to this Continuation, it is important also to

Afterwards transferred to St. Peter's, Westminster.

it passed subsequently into the library of the monastery of St. Peter at Westminster.[1] At what precise date this transfer took place is not recorded, but there is abundant proof of the fact in the volume itself,[2] and also that the work was carried on by some monks of Westminster from 1265 to 1325.[3] From the evidence collected in an examination of nearly all the extant manuscripts of the work,[4] it would appear certain that the author of the first Continuation after the manuscript left St.

---

remark, that in 1261 the narrative, from p. 304 to p. 309 of edit. 1570, is (with some omissions) copied verbally in the *Liber Chronicorum* (composed in or after 1302) at St. Alban's, and inserted among the writings of Rishanger in MS. Cott. Claud. D. VI. fols. 115-118; and that in the years 1263 and 1264 there are entire pages of the text, pp. 314–329, transcribed word for word into the Chronicles of Rishanger, edited by Mr. Halliwell for the Camden Society, pp. 10–17, 21, 25–34.

[1] It is not unlikely that the manuscript may have been specially prepared by Matthew Paris for the use of the monks of Westminster, which would account for the insertion of some passages relating to that monastery, not found in his larger work, under the years 1049, 1118, 1246, 1249; but this design seems to have been laid aside after his death, since in the years 1250–1258 local matters about Westminster are omitted by the continuator, although inserted in the Greater Chronicle of Paris. In the Cottonian MS. Vitell. A. XX. we have another abridgment of the larger work, from 1066 to 1245 inclusive, made by direction of Matthew Paris (who writes the commencement of it himself) for the use of the cell of Tynemouth (dependent on St. Alban's), and intitled "Cronica excerpta e *Magnis Cronicis Sancti Albani.*" (See *postea*, p. li. *n.*)

[2] On many of the margins are written "Liber ecclesiæ beati Petri Westmonasterii," or "Liber Westmonasterii," in a hand of the 14th century, and there are numerous marginal and textual notes referring to the monastery. Nothing is known of the subsequent history of the manuscript, except that it was given in 1657 to the Chetham library by Nicholas Higginbotome of Stockport, gentleman.

[3] There are many handwritings in this portion of the manuscript, the most regular of which occurs from 1267 to 1274, carried on by others from 1275 to 1278, from 1278 to 1284, from 1285 to 1293, and from 1293 to 1298. A later hand of the 14th century supplies the years 1298-1302. Then follows a good firm hand from 1303 to 1325 inclusive, after which the later hand of the 14th century adds the remainder of the year and part of 1326, with which the volume concludes.

[4] I gladly take an opportunity here of expressing my obligations to the Rev. the Provost of Eton College, the Very Rev. the Dean of

Alban's was John Bevere, otherwise named John of London,[1] whose separate Chronicle is noticed by Le- John Bevere, *alias* John of

Westminster, the Feoffees and librarian of the Chetham Library, Manchester, the Rev. H. O. Coxe, Bodley's librarian, W. Aldis Wright, Esq., librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge, and the Rev. J. O. Ryder, librarian of All Souls College, Oxford, for the great facilities afforded me of consulting various manuscript copies of "Matthew of Westminster" under their charge.

[1] This identity is expressly asserted by Widmore (*History of St. Peter's*, Westminster, 1751, p. 85), who had access to the muniments of the church, and is confirmed by various considerations:—1. In the letters patent by which Edward I., in Oct. 1303, appointed justices to examine the charge against the abbat and monks of Westminster (imprisoned in the Tower) for having plundered the royal treasury (*Monasticon*, i. 312), all their names are given, and among them appears *John of London*, but no *John Bevere*, although the latter was then living, as proved by his Chronicle. In the Infirmary Rolls of the abbey *John of London* occurs in 1294 and 1298, and also in 1310–11, at which time he was dangerously ill for many weeks, and eventually died. 2. Tanner is mistaken in supposing him to be a monk of St. Augustine's Canterbury, as is Black, in locating him in Christ Church (*Cat. of Arundel MSS. in Coll. of Arms*, No. xx.). The name written in the Bodleian MS., Mus. 48, referred to by the former, does not apply to the Chronicler, but to another John of London, the friend of Roger Bacon; and with regard to the MS. in the College of Arms, only the first portion seems to have been written at Christ Church Canterbury, but at all events the chronicle from the conquest is an abridged compilation, the text of which agrees with Bevere from 1281 to 1306. 3. Tanner is again in error in saying that John of London wrote his Chronicle at the request of Queen Margaret. It is not the Chronicle, but the tract intitled "*Commendatio lamentabilis*," on the death of Edward I., that is addressed by him to the queen, and which is annexed to the Chronicle after the year 1306 in the MS. of the College of Arms, as also in the copies of "Matthew of Westminster," MS. Cott. Nero D. II., Laud MS. 572, and Hatton MS. 53. This tract evidently proves the connexion of John of London with the chronicle of John Bevere, and this appears further in a reference made in the year 1303 to a narrative in defence of the imprisoned Westminster monks, "secundum *Johannem*," which corresponds with the title of the "Commendatio lamentabilis" in the Cotton MS., which is also said to be "secundum *Johannem*," and *de Londonia* is supplied by a coeval hand. The above reference is found in the Chetham manuscript, and in ten other copies, and its absence in the Bevere Chronicle (MS. Harl. 641) is easily accounted for, as being a *local* matter of no interest to the Canterbury scribe of that MS.

London, author of the first Continuation.

land,[1] Bale, and Tanner. This separate Chronicle commences with Brut, and from the year 1066 incorporates the text of the St. Alban's (now Chetham) manuscript, but with some additions and omissions, the most striking of which appear in the great abridgment of the years from 1244 to 1264 inclusive, and the enlargement of 1265 by the insertion of a *resumé* of the events from 1258, which led to the conflicts of Lewes and Evesham. The work is then continued by Bevere to 1306 inclusive. In the Eton manuscript of "Matthew of Westminster" this Chronicle of Bevere has been implicitly followed,[2] and the text so constituted has been met with in a few other copies, which form a class apart from the majority.[3] But in the *original copy* of the *Flores Historiarum*, after it came to Westminster, a different plan was necessarily pursued. The annals from 1244 to 1265 were left untouched, and the continuation (taken up after the battle of Evesham), although substantially the same with Bevere's Chronicle, has additions to it in 1274 and 1292,

The Eton MS. of "Matthew of Westminster" copies Bevere's text.

Abridgment of Bevere's text in the Chetham MS.

---

[1] Excerpts are given from it in the *Collectanea*, i. 279–283, from 1092 to 1244, which exactly agree with the text of MS. Harl. 641. This is the only complete copy of the Chronicle I have met with, and has the following title written by a coeval hand inside the cover, "Cronica de edicione domini Johannis dicti Bevere, monachi Westmonasterii." It was written at St. Augustine's Canterbury, in the time of abbot Thomas de Fyndone, who died in 1309. Some liberties have evidently been taken by the Canterbury scribe (as usual in such cases) of omitting a few local entries relating to Westminster, and inserting others (as at the end of 1284). See also Joscelin's notice of Bevere, (*ap.* Hearne) p. 288.

[2] The Harleian MS. 641, would seem to have been the one actually copied, as otherwise it is difficult to account for the error in 1262, in making *Henry de Sandwich* succeed to Henry de Wengham as bishop of London, instead of *Richard Talbot*. This error occurs both in Bevere and in the Eton MS., but not in the copies which follow the Chetham MS.

[3] The only MSS. I have met with which have the abridged text in 1244–1264 are a copy at All Souls College, Oxford, No. 37 (transcribed from the Eton MS. by Sir John Rochefort, about the year 1406), the Tenison MS., and a MS. in the Rawlinson Collection, B. No. 377, Bodl. Libr. In reprinting the *Flores*

but on the other hand is much abbreviated in 1291, and also from 1293 to the close in 1306.[1]

Popularity of the work.

The work thus compiled at various times became exceedingly popular, partly from the acceptable form in which so wide a period of time was comprised, (and thereby superseding the more diffuse works of Wendover and Matthew Paris), but also from its authority as

---

Historiarum in 1570, Parker discards the text of the Eton MS. in 1244–1264, but retains it in 1265, and also after 1293, where it is fuller, to 1306, but he inserts much also from MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII. The year 1307 is *made up* by him, partly of passages which belong to the previous year, and partly of an addition found in the Cotton MS., eked out with another from the Tenison MS., and also in Adam Murimouth. This chapter presents a lamentable example of editorship in the sixteenth century.

[1] In the blank space after this year has been written (but now obliterated and scarcely legible), "Hic frater alter," and near the close of the supplemental annals, after the words "recepit pro labore mercedem," in 1325, we read a memorandum by a later hand, as follows:—"Sicque frater Robertus de Reding, quondam monachus ecclesiæ beati Petri apostoli Westm. Cronicarum vitæ quoque suæ finem conclusit," and in the margin, "Finis Cronicarum R. Reding, monachi de Westm. et inchoacio Adæ Merimouthe, S. Pauli." This note has given rise to the erroneous supposition that the *entire work* of "Matthew of Westminster" should be assigned to Robert of Reding, and Tanner (*Bibl. Brit.* p. 619) partially quotes a very confused passage from a Stillingfleet MS. (now MS. Harl. 292, and copied from Joscelin's Collections, MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV.), beginning "Frater *Ricardus* (sic) Reding, monachus Westm. collegit librum qui dicitur *Flores Historiarum*, sicut vidi in libro primo hujus Historia, quantum adhuc habent in monasterio prædicto, de manu prædicti Ricardi scriptum," &c., but which seems of very questionable authority. As to the real share of Robert of Reding in the work, it may be fairly assumed that he began where Bevere *alias* John of London left off, that is to say, in 1307, and went on to 1325. His name occurs on the Westminster Infirmary Rolls in 1294 and 1298, and also in the letters patent of Edward I., of 1303, already noticed. He was therefore the contemporary, and probably the associate of John of London in his labours, and may, perhaps, have had something to do with the *abridgment* of the Chronicle of the latter after 1293. In the Cottonian MS. Cleop. A. XVI., we find a series of Annals from 1299 to 1367 inclusive, in a hand of the 15th century, the first portion of which to 1325 has been ascribed to Robert of Reding by Sir Robert Cotton, but as this portion is a verbal transcript from the Chetham manuscript, there is no apparent reason why the years before 1307 should be given to him.

emanating from two such famous monasteries as St. Alban's and Westminster. Many copies were made of it, more or less complete,[1] under the original title of *Flores Historiarum*, with omissions on the one hand, or insertions of a local character on the other, according to the views of the respective scribes, by whom also it was often continued to later dates. Thus, we find copies written at Westminster,[2] St. Paul's London,[3] St. Mary's Southwark,[4] Merton,[5] Norwich,[6] Rochester,[7] St. Bennet Hulm,[8] and other places, each of which is distinguished by special insertions and alterations. It was, no doubt, from the fact that the latter portion of the *Flores Historiarum* was composed by a Westminster monk, that the entire work was afterwards attributed to a *Matthew of Westminster*, for the name of *Matthew* really belonged to Matthew *Paris*,[9] whilst the affix of *Westminster* was supplied by conjecture; and this pseudonym having been recognized by Bale and Joscelin, and adopted by archbishop Parker, the error has been perpetuated to our own times.[10]

---

[1] Thus, the Arundel MS. 96 was transcribed in 1284; the Laud MS. 572 (spoken of by Tanner as "autoris prototypon," but copied immediately from the Chetham MS.) in 1293, and afterwards continued to 1296; and the Bodleian MS. Mus. 149 to 1303, and carried on to 1306. Mr. Luard is of opinion that Bartholomew Cotton made use of a copy of "Matthew of Westminster" not later than 1272, and hence reasonably infers that the latter work was composed at different periods. He is mistaken, however, in supposing the earlier portion of the work to have been compiled in a monastery in the diocese of Norwich, since the passages he refers to only occur in the Norwich copy of Matthew of Westminster (MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII.), and are not found in other copies. See Preface to *Barth. Cotton*, pp. xxxviii., xxxix.

[2] MS. Tenison, *olim* Clarendon 93.

[3] MS. Lambeth 1106, *olim* Clarendon 1.

[4] MS. Rawlinson B. 177.

[5] MS. Coll. Eton 58.

[6] MSS. Fairfax 20, and Cott. Claud. E. VIII.

[7] MS. Cott. Nero D. II.

[8] MS. Reg. 14 C. vi.

[9] Widmore asserts, apparently with authority, that the name of *Matthew* is not to be found in any of the lists of monks of Westminster abbey extant. (*Hist. St. Peter's Westm.*, p. 86.)

[10] Of course, this work must gain much in point of authority if reregarded as the production of con-

Some years, however, previous to the publication of "Matthew of Westminster," archbishop Parker had turned his attention to a far more important work, the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, but had not at first succeeded in meeting with a copy of it. This we may infer from a letter addressed to the archbishop by Mathias Flacius (Francowitz), surnamed Illyricus, in May 1561, who writes from the University of Jena, where he was Professor, in the following terms: "Et quoniam etiam proxime tua Amplitudo indicavit Matthæi Paris Chronica *apud vos non reperiri*, mitto Excerpta ejus, quæ dudum per quendam amicum fueram consecutus."[1] These Excerpts had, no doubt, been communicated to Flacius by Bale, and were published by the former at Basle in the *Catalogus Testium Veritatis* in 1556, pp. 593–631, and reprinted in 1562 and 1608. They were not, however, taken (as Flacius supposed) from the larger work of Matthew Paris, but are chiefly derived from his shorter History, intitled by the author *Historia Anglorum*, printed for the first time in the present publication.[2]

Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris.

temporary writers, and for the future it would be very wrong to quote it under the name of *Matthew of Westminster*. It is somewhat difficult, however, to suggest a substitute. In the table prefixed to the Norwich copy it is intitled *Chronica Westmonasterii*, but this excludes the share Matthew Paris had in the authorship. It might, perhaps, be best to retain the title of *Flores Historiarum*, which it bears in common with the histories of Wendover and Paris. In that case the original Chronicle of Wendover should be called by his name, and the enlarged work of Paris be known as the *Chronica Majora* of St. Alban's.

[1] Strype, iii. 52, and App. No. xviii. The original letter is in C. C. C. C., No. cxix., art. 47.

[2] The Excerpts from Matthew Paris extend from 1094 to 1259, and afterwards from the Continuation of 1260–1273, ascribed to Rishanger. They are by no means made *verbatim*, and are much abbreviated. From 1094 to 1253 inclusive, they are from the shorter History, and from 1254 to 1259 from the larger one; and this is easily accounted for from the fact that they were all copied by Bale from the Old Royal MS. 14 C. vii., which is the *only one* that preserves the text of the years 1254–1259. (See pp. xliii. *n*., li.) Parker in his Preface refers expressly to these Excerpts from the "Historia Minor," as reprinted in the Strasburg edition of 1562, and conjectures (but on what authority I know not) that they were copied

Subsequently to the receipt of this letter from Flacius, the archbishop appears to have been more successful in his inquiries for copies of the works of Matthew Paris, aided, no doubt, by the printed order of Privy Council, July 1568, which empowered him or his deputies to borrow all the "ancient records and monuments belonging to the late dissolved monasteries," that were in the hands of private persons.[1] He had thus obtained from Edward Aglionby, of Balsall Temple, co. Warwick, Esquire, the first volume of the larger work (founded on Wendover's, and intitled also *Flores Historiarum*), from the Creation to the end of 1188;[2] while the second volume of the same, from 1189 to 1253 inclusive (the greater part of which was in the autograph of the author), had been fortunately acquired from Sir Henry Sidney, K.G., Lord Deputy of Ireland.[3] In addition to this great treasure (the value of which Parker was quite unable to appreciate properly), he had borrowed a MS.[4] from Sir William Cecil, Secretary of State, commencing in 1066 and ending in 1208,[5] compiled in the fifteenth century, and containing a *mixed text*, that is to say, partly taken from the Greater Chronicle, and partly from the shorter History. The earl of Arundel had also lent the archbishop a valuable volume containing the *Historia An-*

MSS. of the work obtained by archbishop Parker.

from a MS. borrowed from the library of St. Paul's, London. In the Geneva edition of 1608, edited by Simon Goulart, there are some interpolations under the years 1170 and 1239, which are taken from the printed text of the greater work of Matthew Paris.

[1] In No. cxiv. art. 12. *ap.* Nasmith, *Catal. libb. MSS. in Bibl. C. C.C.C.*, p. 139. Cf. Strype, *Life*, i. 523.

[2] Now in Corp. Chr. Coll. Cambr., No. xxvi.

[3] Now C. C. C. C., No. xvi.

[4] His letter to Cecil is in MS. Lansd. 11, art. 62, dated 9 Aug. 1569, in which he desires "to borowe but for a weke or two your boke of Mathue Paris story," and adds, "I wole torne it to the commodytee of our own contrye." He must, however, have borrowed this MS. previously, for Lambarde in 1565 seems to allude to it as then being in his hands, and in the transcript of 14 C. vii. made for Parker in 1567 (MS. C. C. C. C. No. lvi), a marginal reference is made to the Cecil MS.

[5] Now in the Bibl. Impériale at Paris, No. 6048 B.

glorum, and the concluding portion of the larger work from 1254 to 1259; the whole in the author's autograph.[1] But, besides these, Parker undoubtedly had the use of a manuscript belonging to John Stow,[2] containing the larger work from the commencement to the year 1250, by the aid of which copy some deficiencies in the Sidney MS. were supplied. These were all the copies at that time known to exist of the historical writings of Matthew Paris, so that the archbishop might well feel justified in remarking, "quod *rara sint et paucissima hujus Historiæ exemplaria*, quæ hodie extant"[3] (in comparison with those of Geoffrey of Monmouth, Henry of Huntingdon, or other historians), and after the lapse of three centuries this statement remains uncontradicted.

Edition of 1571.

Provided with such materials (ample enough in themselves) Parker prepared his edition of 1571 for the press. "Great was the pains," says Strype, "our prelate took in the finishing this work, and the exactness he used about it;"[4] an assertion which, on a careful examination of the text, we shall find not merely doubtful, but absolutely untrue. And this examination becomes the more necessary, since the *Historia Anglorum*, now first published, is based throughout on that portion of the larger work, so improperly intitled by Parker "Historia Major."[5]

---

1 Now in the British Museum, MS. Reg. 14 C. vii.

2 Now MS. Cotton. Nero. D. V. Stow says that the archbishop "made diligent search for the antiquities [*i.e.* manuscripts] of the Brytons and English Saxons . . . . . and such whereof he knew *very few examples* to be extant (among the which was Matthew Paris, Matthew Florilegus, Thomas Walsingham, and other, *all which he received of my hands*) he caused to be printed." *Annales*, 1615, p. 679. This copy is certainly the one mentioned by Parker in the Preface to his edition, 1571, as "aliud honesti cujusdam hominis exemplar."

3 The scarcity of copies of Matthew Paris had been long previously remarked by Leland, *Comment.* ii. 260, and Parker grounds thereon an argument by no means well founded, as to the practices of the Romanists to prevent their circulation.

4 *Life*, i. 553.

5 This title has been the cause of great confusion and error, for the biographers of Matthew Paris, to the time of Tanner inclusive, have in-

He must have been well aware, first, that no such title was to be found in the MSS., and secondly, that the text, whether taken up at the year 1066 or 1067, was really the *continuous narrative* of Wendover adopted by Matthew Paris, enlarged and continued. Although as late as 1570 Parker's knowledge of the works of the later writer was extremely erroneous,[1] yet in the following year he distinctly points out that Matthew Paris was to be accepted as the author of the entire great work from Adam to the year 1259, notwithstanding that the portion anterior to the Conquest had been incorrectly ascribed to "Matthew of Westminster."[2] As this portion had already been printed, Parker intended his new publication to continue and complete the work; but to effect

---

ferred that the *Historia Major* was a different work from the Chronicle of the preceding period, instead of being (as it is) the continuation of it. Elsewhere, as in the treatise *De Antiq. Eccles. Brit.*, 1572, the archbishop refers to it indifferently as *Hist. Major* or *Chron. Major.* All the extant copies of the entire work preserve the original heading of *Flores Historiarum*, given to it by Wendover, but on the fly leaf at the end of the Aglionby MS. I find in the hand of Matthew Paris himself, "Chronica ab origine mundi usque ad annum Domini millesimum . . . simum, videlicet, usque ad mortem Henrici II. regis Angliæ." It is referred to by Paris and other writers (Wallingford, John of Oxnede, Pike, &c.,) under other titles, namely, *Majora Chronica S. Albani, Magna Chronica S. Albani, Liber Chronicorum, Chronica S. Albani, Historiæ S. Albani, Liber Historiarum, Liber Historiarum Annalium,* etc., and the work is also noticed as *Historia prolixior* and *Historiarum plenitudo.* The editors of the *Recueil des Historiens de la France,* tom xvii. speak of the text from 1066 to 1259, as "Majoris Historiæ pars tertia;" but Matthew Paris himself divided the entire work into three volumes: 1, from the Creation to 1188; 2, from 1189 to 1253; and 3 (not completed), from 1254 to 1259.

[1] In the Preface to the second edition of "Matthew of Westminster," he says that Matthew Paris wrote about the year 1286 (corrected 1268 in the *Errata*) a double History, *Major* and *Minor*, of which the *Major* extended from the Creation to 1287 (corrected 44 Hen. III.) It must be remembered that Paris died in 1259.

[2] "Putandum est illum authorem fuisse hujus ingentis ac amplæ Historiæ, continuatæ ab Adamo usque ad regnum Guilielmi ducis Normanniæ Conquæstoris, quæ tamen non recte (ni fallor) cum titulo et nomine Matthæi Westmonasteriensis inscribitur." Pref. to ed. 1571.

this he adopted a course hardly to be justified. Misled, perhaps, in some measure, by the mixed text[1] of the Cecil MS. (compiled by a monk of St. Alban's about the year 1420–1430), or rather availing himself of the garbled text furnished by that compiler, he borrowed from it the Prologue beginning "De Chronographia," really belonging to the *Historia Anglorum*,[2] to which he joined on (but with many omissions and alterations) the prefatory chapters in the same MS. relating to events in 1066, from the death of Edward the Confessor to the battle of Hastings.[3] After this he proceeded to construct his text in the following manner :—From the Aglionby MS. he took the years 1067 to 1188 inclusive; from the Cecil[4] and Cotton MSS., 1089 to the middle of 1092; from the Sidney MS. the remainder of 1092 and to 1253 inclusive; and from the Arundel MS. the years 1254–1259. Not that, strictly speaking, any single manuscript was followed at all, but interpolated throughout from others, or altered by conjectural and arbitrary readings.[5] That this is not an exaggerated statement can be proved, not only by the collations of the text given by Wats in the reprint of the work in 1640, but by his express testimony in reference to Parker's

What portion was borrowed from the Cecil MS. and from others.

[1] As Parker held in his hands the autograph or contemporary copies of both sources from which the Cecil MS. was derived, he ought not to have mistaken its character.

[2] It will be seen by reference to the present edition, what liberties Parker took with the text of this Prologue.

[3] Taken by the compiler (but abridged) from the larger work (MS. Cott. Nero D. V. ff. 98 *b*—99 *b*), and may be found in Wendover, vol. i. pp. 501, 510-11, 513, 515–521, ed. Coxe.

[4] Parker, no doubt, had intended at first to make much greater use of the Cecil MS., and had caused it to be transcribed for the press from 1188 to 1199 (as we learn from Wats, *Var. Lect.*), but he afterwards substituted the text of the Sidney MS. from 1192. His obligations to the Aglionby MS. are very inadequately represented by his phrase, "*nonnulla* petita sunt e vetusto quodam codice Ed. Aglionby."

[5] In una eademque sententia heic excerpens ex uno, ibi commiscens ex alio, et non semel interpolans ex proprio." Wats, in Præf. ad *Adversaria*.

transcript originally prepared for the press, which subsequently fell into Selden's hands, and was lent by him to the editor of the new edition.[1] He tells us that the text had been everywhere altered and disfigured by the editor and printer, so that the sense often became "*aut fœde mutilus, aliorsum transvorsus, aut denique horsum vorsum divaricatus!*"[2] To afford some idea of the extent of these unwarrantable liberties, I subjoin two or three instances taken almost at hazard from Parker's text, compared with that of the manuscripts. The alterations are marked by *italics*.

Unfaithful and worthless character of Parker's printed text.

PARKER'S TEXT, 1571, p. 19. (A.D. 1088.)	TEXT OF THE MSS.
Pecunias *autem* vel possessiones pro suo arbitrio *accipere*, et prorsus quæcunque voluerint, in regno pro *voluntate statuere* (*dummodo notam proditionis non incurrant*) *illis se concedere. Idem autem illis eventurum quod sibi, si secus quam ratio postulaverit secum agant*, præcipue cum idem se regem, qui illos comites *constituerit*.	Si velint pecunias vel possessiones, pro suo arbitrio accipiant, et prorsus quæcunque voluerint in regno pro beneplacito suo disponant; tantummodo videant, ne periclitetur judicium proditoris. Quod si de se judicaverit contempnendum, exemplum caveant de seipsis, præcipue cum idem seregem qui comites constituit illos.
Cum autem rumor facti *hujus* ad *regias aures pervenisset, rex ira inflammatus* stipendiarios *milites* suos Anglos congregat, *et absque mora* ut ad obsidionem veniant jubet: nisi velint nomine Nithing, quod Latine Nequam sonat, *recenseri*. Angli (qui nihil *contumeliosius et vilius* æstimant quam hujusmodi *igno-*	Sed rumor facti ad regem cito perlabitur, qui iram intra conscientiam revolvens, stipendiarios suos Anglos congregat. Jubet ut compatriotæ ad obsidionem veniant, nisi velint sub nomine Nithing, quod Latine Nequam sonat, remanere. Angli siquidem, qui nihil miserius æstimant quam hujusmodi dedecore vo-

[1] This transcript does not appear to be now among Selden's MSS. in the Bodleian library. It is mentioned by Selden as written by "a country vicar," in his "England's Epinomis," *Works*, iii. p. 27, ed. 1726.

[2] Pref. in *Adversaria sive Var. Lect.*

minioso vocabulo notari) catervatim ad regem *confluentes, ingentes copias conficiunt. Obsessi autem longiorem* obsidionem ferre *non valentes* castellum regi reddiderunt.	cabuli notari, catervatim ad regem confluunt, invincibilem exercitum congerentes. Nec inclusi diutinam obsidionem ferre prævalentes, castellum regi reddiderunt.
Ibid, p. 24 (A.D. 1094.)	
Eodem anno, rex Willielmus in Walliam exercitum *ducere festinavit*, quod anno præterito, Wallenses, *multis* Normannorum *occisis*, procerum *confractis firmitatibus*, castello *montis* Gomerii *direpto*, et *habitantibus* in eo *interfectis*, igne et ferro finitimos *depopulati fuerant.*	Eodem anno impiger rex Willelmus in Walliam exercitum duxit, eo quod anno præterito i[i]dem Walenses multos Normannorum occiderant, et procerum confregerant firmitates. Castellum de Monte Gomerii prostraverant, et habitantes in eo necaverant, igne et ferro finitimos conterentes.

It is obvious that a text made up with this unbounded license (even if it gained somewhat in point of Latinity)[1] can be of no authority or value, and it is to be regretted that some recent editors of historical works have taken the trouble to give various readings from the printed edition of Matthew Paris, which in many instances represent only the arbitrary corrections of Parker, his editor, or his printer. So far, indeed, did this license extend, that occasionally several lines, or even an entire paragraph, are inserted, which will be sought for in vain in the manuscripts !"[2] Yet, notwithstanding these facts,

---

1 "Scilicet!" exclaims Wats, "Ac si hoc esset antiquos authores edere, et non seipsum potius authorem constituere !"

2 See instances under 1192, ed. 1571, p. 229, l. 35 (one line), and under 1237, p. 590, l. 45 (six lines). A more striking example occurs under 1258, p. 1296, l. 19, where the Arundel MS. (the *unique* copy of the text) wants a leaf. Lambarde in his transcript (MS. Cott. Vitell. D. II.) leaves a space of nearly two pages, but not so Parker, who, following his mischievous habit of supplying deficiencies, connects the narrative together by *eleven lines*, from "Certe tanta fames" to "importunas satis," (ed. Wats, p. 970), taken chiefly out of "Matthew of Westminster," but these even altered and interpolated! In the present volume, at pp. 168–175, will be found a similar instance of two leaves (in

the archbishop took occasion a few years afterwards, in his preface to the edition of Asser's *Alfredi Regis Res Gestæ*, 1574, to make the most positive assertion (I use Strype's translation of his words) that "in all the books he put forth, he never added anything of his own, nor diminished from the copy, but expressed, to a word, everything as he found them in the originals; for he feared, as he said, if he should have put in anything of his own, out of pretence to smooth the wrinkles and wipe off the stains of antiquity, that what Cornelius Nepos writ to Sallust might be verified of him, that they might not seem so much their histories that writ them as his own."[1] How are we to interpret this language?

---

reality only one of the original MS.) supplied, which are made up partly from the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris, and partly from Eadmer and Higden; and the text thus arbitrarily constructed is inserted without scruple as the work of the original author! It is surprising that Wats should have republished Parker's text, but he was not so much to blame, if we consider that the work was printed off as far as the reign of Henry II. before he was applied to by the booksellers to edit it, and he endeavoured by his collations (although far from complete or accurate) to remedy the faults of the first edition.

[1] *Life*, by Strype, vol. ii. p. 501. It is worth while to give the very words of the archbishop: "Quod autem ad historiæ fidem attinet, hoc te scire volo, eam me semper rationem secutum *in omnibus iis libris quos divulgavi, nihil ut de meo adjecerim aut diminuerem, sed cuncta, prout in primis exemplaribus reperiuntur, ad verbum expresserim.* Alioquin, si quid forsan de meo attulissem, aut vetustatis veluti rugas ac nævos delere omnes voluissem, metuendum mihi sane foret (ne quod Salustio suo scribit Cornelius Nepos), non tam illorum qui illas conscripserunt historiæ, quam meæ videri possunt. Judicio erunt ipsa prima exemplaria, quæ idcirco Cantabrigiæ in Bibliotheca Coll. Corp. Christi, ad sempiternum hujus rei testimonium extare voluimus. Ubi si quis cum codicibus manuscriptis impressos comparare voluerit, enimvero *nihil nos aut detraxisse aut addidisse inveniet, sed summam ubique fidem et religionem præstitisse.*" The boldness of this challenge may well astonish us! It has, however, been accepted, and the result is as I have stated above, and affords a complete contradiction to Parker's statement. I speak here in regard to the texts of Matthew Paris and "Matthew of Westminster." As to Walsingham (published together with Asser, 1574), let Mr. Riley's opinion be taken, who declares the text to be utterly worthless, and one portion "a mass of perversion and absolute nonsense." Introd. to vol. ii. p. xvii.

Are we really to believe that Parker was ignorant of the alterations and disfigurement of the authors published under his sanction, or must we be reduced to the necessity of supposing him to have written what he knew to be false? It is a dilemma hard to determine, but I would willingly, if possible, throw the blame on the editor or printer, rather than on the archbishop himself.

Intention of Parker to print the *Hist. Anglorum*, falsely intitled *Hist. Minor*.

It must, however, I think, be considered a subject of congratulation that Parker did not carry out his intention of publishing the *Historia Anglorum*,—called by him *Historia Minor*,—for which purpose he had caused a transcript to be made in 1567 from the Arundel manuscript.[1] This title of *Historia Minor* is not derived from the manuscript itself, but was first employed by Lambarde, as a relative term, to distinguish it from the larger work;[2] and this term being found convenient, and repeated by Parker, Pits, Cotton, Speed, Wats, Twysden, and other writers, it has descended unquestioned to the present time. Other titles have also been given to it. Bale always names it *Liber Chronicorum*,[3] while else-

---

[1] Now in Corp. Ch. Coll. Cambridge, No. lvi. Parker mentions in his preface to Matthew Paris his design to publish the work, unless the earl of Arundel should undertake it himself; but he speaks of it erroneously as ending in 1250, instead of 1253, and then commits a more serious and unaccountable blunder, in stating that the Prologue of the work began with the words, "Considerans prolixitatem Cronicorum Angliæ," whereas this Prologue has no connexion whatever with the *Historia Anglorum*, but belongs to a brief Genealogical History, from Alfred to Henry III., by Matthew Paris, prefixed, with other matter, to the Greater Chronicle in the Aglionby copy. This error is copied by Pits, Selden, and others.

[2] For the same reason the two works of Walsingham were distinguished as *Historia Major* and *Minor*.

[3] This title is taken from the conclusion of the year 1259 in the Arundel MS., but, as before remarked, the years 1254–1259 constitute a portion of the larger work, added on to the *Historia Anglorum* after the death of the author. This union of two different works has been the source of much error to bibliographers. Even Wats, who had the MS. before him, makes great confusion between the *Liber Chronicorum* or *Chronicon* and the

where it is simply cited as *Chronicon*. In the heading to the Prologue it is expressly intitled by Matthew Paris himself *Historia Anglorum*, and although afterwards incidentally spoken of as "Anglorum Chronica," yet the former title has been adopted in the present edition as the most precise.

Only one complete copy of it known to exist.

Of this work only one complete copy is known to exist,[1] but as this is in the handwriting of the author, there is little more to be desired. It is preserved among the manuscripts of the Old Royal Collection in the British Museum, and its history, so far as can be ascertained, is somewhat remarkable.

Its history.

We are told by Matthew Paris that he began to write it in the year 1250,[2] that is to say, immediately after the completion of the Greater Chronicle, as originally intended; and he continued it to the year 1253 inclusive. When finished, he presented it to the church of St. Alban's, as appears by the autograph inscription in the volume,[3] and it was long preserved there, together with his other writings.

Walsingham.

It was there when Walsingham (a monk of the same abbey) compiled his *Ypodigma Neustriæ*, who borrows often from it, particularly under the year 1216, where it is copied verbally.[4] This was probably about 1419, in which year his work was completed. At a later

---

Historia Minor, at one time asserting them to be the same, and at another speaking of them as different. He errs also, with others, in supposing the briefer History to come down to 1259.

[1] The Cecil MS. at Paris, No. 6048 B., copies the text to a considerable extent, but is also made up from the larger work. Lambarde perhaps alludes to this MS. when he writes (in MS. Cott. Vitell. D. II.), "Hujus libri *duo* tantum vidi vetusta exemplaria," one of which was the Arundel MS., (now Reg. 14 C. vii.) and the other "penes Mattheum Cant. archiepiscopum." Parker, however, only acknowledges *one* copy, namely, the Arundel MS. Pref. to Matth. Westm.

[2] See the present volume, p. 9.

[3] Now partly effaced, but which can be supplied by the similar inscription in MS. Cott. Nero, D. I., containing the *Vitæ Offarum*, *Vitæ Abbatum*, and *Liber Additamentorum*.

[4] P. 56, ed. 1574. Compare the words there cited of "quidem miles," [the Vicomte de Bethune,] with the present edition, vol. ii. p. 187.

period, about 1430–1440, we find it made use of in the "*Breviarium Chronicorum*" of Thomas Rudborne, a monk of Winchester, preserved in MS. Cott. Nero A. XVII.[1] Not long after this there is reason to believe that the manuscript came into the possession of Humphrey Duke of Gloucester, to whom it may have been given by abbat Whethamstede,[2] for on the last leaf of the volume (at the close of the Continuation of Matthew Paris,[3] ascribed to Rishanger) an inscription has been written in the duke's hand as follows, "*Ceste livre est a moy, Homffrey Duc de Glowcestre;*" and, although carefully erased at a later period, it can still be read by the aid of a chemical agent.[4] What became of this volume after the duke's death in 1447 is uncertain. It was not included among the numerous manuscripts presented by him in his lifetime (in 1439–1443) to the University of Oxford,[5] and which were so lamentably dispersed in the reign of Edward VI.; and when we next meet with

Thomas Rudborne.

Humphrey duke of Gloucester.

[1] See particularly fol. 137 and fol. 151 *b*, and compare pp. 163, 295 of the present volume.

[2] Leland tells us, *Collectanea*, iii. 58, that the duke of Gloucester received many illuminated manuscripts as presents from the heads of monasteries. Several volumes were certainly given to him by abbot Whethamstede about the year 1431, as specified in a register of his time, MS. Arund. 34, fol. 65 *b*, but Matthew Paris is not mentioned among them. Duke Humphrey was received into the fraternity of St. Alban's as early as 1433, and was their firm friend and patron. See MSS. Cott. Nero D. VII. f. 147, and Harl. 3775, f. 100.

[3] This "Continuation" appears to have been added on to the work of Matthew Paris early in the 15th century, and there is a note in the margin of fol. 230 (A.D. 1272), in a hand of the period, which has also written another note at fol. 97 *b* (A.D. 1216), proving that the volume was then in the same state as at present. It must, however, be observed, that the original pagination does not include the "Continuation," but stops short of it.

[4] A similar inscription is in MS. Cott. Nero E. V. Other volumes which belonged to the duke of Gloucester are, MSS. Reg. 5, F. ii., and 16 G. vi., Harl. 1705, Sloan. 248, and Eg. 617, 618.

[5] So I am informed by the Rev. John Griffith, the registrar, who kindly examined the University Register F. for me. Wood's account of the number of volumes given appears not to be accurate. See *Hist. et Antiq. Oxon.* ii. 49, ed. 1674, and Ellis, *Letters of Em. Lit. Men*, p. 356.

John Russell, bishop of Lincoln.

the manuscript it was in the possession of John Russell, bishop of Lincoln (translated from Rochester in 1480), who wrote the following memorandum on the fly-leaf:—

"Si is liber probari possit pertinuisse et pertinere debere ad proprietatem monasterii Sancti Albani, Lincoln. diocesis, jurisdictionis tamen exempte, declaro hanc fore mentem meam, ut in eo casu ego hoc libro tanquam ex precario sub eis utor, qui monachi ipsius loci pro tempore fuerint. Alioquin, juxta condicionem sub qua is liber in meam possessionem venerat, volo ut pertineat Collegio Beate Marie Winton. in Oxonia, de fundacione Willielmi Wykham, quondam Wintoniensis episcopi.

Scriptum per manum meam propriam apud Bukedene, x^{mo}. die Junii, a^{o}. 1488.

Jo. Lincoln.

Qui deleverit seu corruperit hoc scriptum anathema sit."

From this note it would appear that the monks of St. Alban's had laid claim to the volume, but unsuccessfully,[1] which may, perhaps, have some connexion with the erasure before noticed.[2] It is to be regretted that the bishop of Lincoln has not stated from whom he acquired the manuscript, under the condition of leaving it to St. Mary's College (now New College), Oxford, after his death; but he certainly intended this condition to be carried out. He died 30th December 1494, but in his will[3] there is no mention of this or of any other manuscripts in his library. How it happened that the volume

[1] Warton notices this memorandum, *Diss.* 1, p. lxxxviii. H. E. P., ed. 1840, but in very exaggerated terms. He says, "The disputed property of a book often occasioned the most violent altercations. *Many claims* appear to have been made to a manuscript of Matthew Paris, in which John Russell, bishop of Lincoln, thus conditionally defends or explains his right of possession, 'If this book,' &c." The signature of the bishop is engraved by Casley, pl. xvi.

[2] See pp. xxxviii., xlviii.

[3] The will, dated the day of his death, and proved 12th Jan. 1495, is in the Prerogative Court, Register *Vox.* The only passage in it which refers to the bishop's library is a clause, that each of his chaplains who had taken a degree should select one work relating "ad facultates suas," but with this restriction, "proviso tamen, ut electio librorum hujusmodi sit tota de *litera impressa*, et non *scripta calamo*."

did not go to the college, as directed above,[1] it is now impossible to ascertain. The bishop had ordered the residue of his property to be sold, in order to establish an anniversary for ten years in the church of Lincoln, and pay his debts and expenses, and it is possible that the manuscript of Matthew Paris may have been thus disposed of. However this may be, we next trace it in the hands of Polydore Vergil, an Italian of considerable attainments, who had been sent to England in 1502 by pope Alexander VI. as a tax collector, and who undertook, at the request of king Henry VII., to write a History of England. In a letter to his brother, dated from London in 1517, prefixed to the treatise *De Inventoribus* (published at Basle in 1521), he says that he had been employed on the work for twelve years, but it was not completed till long afterwards.[2] The manuscript bears evidence of his having read it attentively, and has marginal notes in his handwriting throughout the greater part of it. He has borrowed much from this volume (but without acknowledgment) in his *Anglica Historia*, particularly in the twelfth book, in the account of the peace concluded between Stephen and the empress; and in the fifteenth book, where the speech of archbishop Hubert in favour of king John is verbally copied.[3]

Polydore Vergil.

---

[1] Bishop Russell had given in his lifetime (in 1482) several MSS. to the college. See Coxe's Catalogue, under the Nos. 263, 271, 274. His motto in them is, "Ve Rus. celluy je suis," which is elucidated by the following lines in No. 267:—

"Stirpe parum clarus, magis aptus quam doctus,
Fraudis inexpertus, facto sermoneque *Ve Rus.*
Celluy je suis."

In Nichols's "Autographs of remarkable Personages," 1829, this is engraved from MS. Cott. Vesp. E. XII., and falsely read as "*Jo. Russcellus* je suis."

[2] The first edition (in 26 books) was printed at Basle in 1534, dedicated to Henry VIII., and later editions, enlarged, appeared in 1540 and 1555. For a full account of this writer see Sir H. Ellis's Prefaces to the eight first and three last books of his History, in an English version, edited for the Camden Society in 1844 and 1846.

[3] Pp. 208 and 263, ed. 1555, Cf. the present edition, i. 295, ii. 80.

Polydore Vergil has been accused of partiality and falsehood, and a more serious charge was made against him by Dr. Caius, of Cambridge,[1] that he had burnt a waggon-load of ancient historical writers, after making use of them; but the charge is evidently false, as proved by this manuscript of Matthew Paris, and others still existing, with notes in them by the hand of Polydore.[2]

John Skewys.

About the same period an abstract of this same manuscript, from 1067 to 1259, inclusive, was made by a Cornish man, named John Skewys,[3] or Skuish, intitled, "A Brevyat of a Cronacle made by Mathewe Paris, monke of Seynt Alban, of the conqueste of Duke William of Normandy uppone this realme," which is still preserved in the Harleian MS. 2258. The volume was afterwards given by the compiler to Raynold Mohun (as we learn from a note prefixed),[4] and was seen by Bale in his house, who quotes from it, as "*Ex Chronico Reginaldi Mohun,*"[5] a reference sufficiently perplexing, but which I was enabled to explain by accidentally consulting the volume in question. This John Skewys

[1] *De Antiq. Cantabrigiæ*, 1574, p. 52.

[2] See MS. Reg. 13 D. v., Cott. Nero D. II., and Harl. 3775.

[3] Misread *Rewys* or *Reeves* by Wanley, in Harleian Catalogue, ii. 594. The MS. belonged previously to the Rev. Rob. Bourscough of Totness, No. 90 (*Cat. MSS. Angl.* ii. 235), and was purchased by Lord Oxford in 1715.

[4] "Raynold Mohuñ owner hereof by the gyfte of John Skewys, lawyar, and borne in the contye of Cornewalle, whoo drewe and wrote thys worke wythe hys owne honde, and brevyatyd owte of dyvers antyke auctors."

[5] MS. Selden, 64 B. fol. 129 *b*, and hence printed by Wats among the "Testimonia," but by the fault of the printer the references appear to relate to the citations which *follow* instead of *precede*. This has been a source of much error to modern writers. In the same MS., fol. 110 *b*, is a brief account of John Skuysh, "multarum rerum cognitione præditus," and a notice of the historical compilation made by him from Gildas, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Richard of Cirencester, Matthew Paris, and others, which he refers to "Ex domo Reginaldi Mohun." This information is repeated in the *Scriptores*, ed. 1557, p. 710, and with additions, by Pits, p. 709; Wood, *Athenæ Oxon.* i. 58, ed. 1813; and Fuller, *Worthies*, 1662, p. 204.

was a person of note, a member of Lincoln's Inn in 1518, and, as learned in the law, "a consiliis" in the household of cardinal Wolsey. In 1514 he had the privilege granted to him of keeping on his hat in the king's presence, and in a subsidy roll of the cardinal's household is assessed at 100*s*. for the first payment (May 1523).[1] Skewys does not state where the manuscript was deposited from which he made his abstract, but, according to all probability, it had previously found its way into the Old Royal Library, to which Polydore Vergil certainly had access, and to which also Skewys, from his position about Wolsey, could hardly have failed to gain admission. We know that it was in the king's library at a somewhat later date, when Bale made use of it, that is to say, about the years 1550–1552.[2] He not only derived from this volume the information he possessed of the writings of Matthew Paris, as given in the second edition of his *Scriptores*,[3] but made large excerpts from it (portions of which, as we have seen, he communicated to Flacius), and incorporated them in the text of his work, under the headings of *Appendices* and *De Papis*.[4] It would appear that Bale, having borrowed this MS. from the

John Bale, bishop of Ossory.

[1] For notices of Skewys, see the Calendar of State Papers, i. 134, 803, 838, ii. 1,404; and Lay Subsidy Rolls, 27, No ℣, in the State Papers at the Record Office. Cavendish, in his Life of Wolsey, mentions among his household "four counsaillours learned in the lawe," p. 32, ed. 1852. A pedigree of the family is in MS. Harl. 4031, f. 71 *b*.

[2] Several notices of Matthew Paris are taken "Ex Bibliotheca domini Regis," in MS. Selden, 64 B. fol. 129 *b*; and in the list of MSS. in the same library consulted by Bale, is "Chron. Mathei Parys," fol. 193. He notes also, under his own name, fol. 114 *b*, "Joannes Balæus citra reditum ex Germania [in 1549] scripsit Excerptiones Matthæi Paris, li. 1. Anno Domini, 1070." It is worthy of note that Bale never saw a copy of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris.

[3] P. 315, ed. 1557. In his previous edition of 1548–9, he knew so little of the author, that he supposed him to have lived in the reign of Edward the Third!

[4] These extracts extend from 1103, p. 162, to 1259, p. 310, and chiefly refer to papal or ecclesiastical affairs. They are not given *textually*, and are much abbreviated. The portion *De Papis* was afterwards printed separately at Basle in 1558, under the title of "*Acta Romanorum Pontificum.*"

Royal library, took it into Ireland with him, for in the list of his manuscripts[1] left there after his flight in 1553, we find the entry of "Matthæi Parisii ingens Chronicorum opus. Guilhelmi Rishangri Continuationes eorundem," which no doubt refers to the volume in question. After Bale's death, in 1563, the MS. was acquired by Henry Fitzalan, earl of Arundel, from whom archbishop Parker borrowed it. The earl died 24th February 1580,[2] and his valuable library descended to his son-in-law, John Lord Lumley, at whose decease in 1609, without issue, the whole was purchased by king James I. for the use of prince Henry,[3] and so became united to the Royal Collection,[4] which was eventually presented by George II. to the British Museum in 1757.

Henry Fitzalan, earl of Arundel.

Historical value of the work.

It will be evident from all that has preceded, that the great historical value of the lesser work of Matthew Paris, intitled by him "*Historia Anglorum*," was recognized at once from the time it first came under the notice of the scholars of the sixteenth century. Besides Polydore Vergil, Bale, and Flacius Illyricus, already noticed, it was made much use of by archbishop Parker in his work, *De Antiquitate Britannicæ Ecclesiæ*, 1572; by Joscelin, in his historical Collections, preserved in MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV.; and by Lambarde in his *Dictionarium Angliæ Topographicum*, compiled between 1565 and 1577, but first published in 1730.[5] More than

---

[1] This list (which is very remarkable) is printed at the end of cent. xiii. of the *Scriptores*, p. 160, ed. 1559. Many of the MSS. appear to have come afterwards into Sir Robert Cotton's hands, a few to the earl of Arundel, others to Selden, and some to the Ware and Clarendon collection.

[2] Tierney's *History of Arundel*, p. 344, on authority of MS. Reg. 17 A. ix. f. 69.

[3] See Dr. Birch's *Life of Henry Prince of Wales*, 1760, pp. 161, 163.

[4] In 1614 Casaubon had the ues of it from the Royal Library, and at a later period, Selden, Wats, and Twysden.

[5] Excerpts from the MS. from 1067 to 1259, in a hand of the 16th century, very carelessly made, exist in MS. Lansdowne, 205, ff. 159–218 *b*. At the end they are said to be derived "Ex Minore Historia fratris Matthæi Parisiensis, in Bibliotheca comitis Arundeliæ."

half a century later, a very partial and inaccurate collation of the text was given by Wats[1] in his reprint of Parker's edition of the "*Historia Major,*" 1640; and a transcript of the entire work was made by Twysden in 1648, with a view probably to publication.[2]

Subsequently, however, to this period it appears to have been overlooked and forgotten, or, if noticed at all, only in the inaccurate references by later bibliographers. The first in recent times who called attention to the importance of this work, was the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, in the notes and illustrations to his valuable edition of Sir Robert Gray's *Scalacronica*, 1836, p. 211, and he remarks that it varied so much from the Greater Chronicle printed by Wats, "as to assume the appearance of a distinct version, and a version, too, which in many points is fuller, stronger, and better than that already given to the public." The same opinion is expressed also by the Rev. H. O. Coxe in the supplemental volume to his edition of Wendover, 1844, who adds, "It does seem extraordinary that the work itself should never have been printed, being, as it is, so entirely throughout the original work of Matthew Paris;" and to afford some idea of the mode adopted in the composition of this "highly interesting Chronicle," he prints the text of the years 1067–1072 inclusive.

Description of the Royal MS. 14 C. vii.

The manuscript so often alluded to as being in the Old Royal Library, under the press-mark 14 C. vii., is a good-sized folio, and consists of 231 leaves, as recently num-

[1] This collation is chiefly limited to the years 1190–1199, and has the mischievous effect of mingling together the texts of two works meant to be quite distinct; and this is repeated in the "Appendix" to the edition of Wendover by the Rev. H. O. Coxe, 1844. Wats does not seem to have been aware that the Royal MS. 14 C. vii. was written by the hand of the author, or that the abridged transcript by Lambarde and others in MS. Cott. Vitell. D. II. was taken from it. He designates the former as *Chronicon*, but the latter as *Minor*.

[2] This transcript was in Sir John Sebright's library, and at his sale in 1807 (lot 1206) was purchased by Heber, and resold in 1836, to Sir Thomas Phillipps, bart., the present possessor.

bered. Three early series of numbers, however, exist, by different hands, the first of which is a pagination, probably of the early part of the 15th century, which commences on the *verso* of the ninth leaf, and extends from page 1 to page 413 (now fol. 218). The second numbering, nearly of the same period, begins at the tenth leaf, and marks the folios from 1 to 209[1] (now fol. 218 *b*), and is continued by a hand of the 16th century to fol. 220 (now fol. 231). There is a third foliation in pencil, of later date (after 1567), beginning at the ninth leaf, and extending from 1 to 222. On the second fly-leaf is written the name of "Johannes Minsheus" (probably of 17th cent.), and on the third (now numbered fol. 1) the autograph memorandum of the bishop of Lincoln previously noticed (p. xl). Below this is the signature of John Lord "Lumley," and on the top of the page an ancient press-mark $\frac{A}{19}$, and, in the right-hand corner, No. 1,041, by which number the volume was formerly known in the Old Royal Library. The contents of this volume consist of three works originally distinct, but subsequently joined together; as here described:—

a. A circular figure to illustrate the theory of the winds, rudely sketched by a hand of the 14th century, and probably copied from a more finished figure in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xvi. . . . fol. 1.

b. Itinerary from London to Jerusalem, drawn in colours and gold, in double columns, with representations of the several stations or towns; accompanied by an explanatory text in French, which is very full towards the close. . . . . ff. 2 *a*–5 *a*.

This Itinerary, intended, no doubt, for the direction of pilgrims to the Holy Land, is of considerable interest. The route is by Dover to Witsand, and thence through France over Mount Cenis to Rome and Sicily, and then

[1] Owing to an error in numbering, another hand has partly erased and altered the foliation, so that fol. 209 is now fol. 207, and fol. 208 is added by the corrector.

by sea to Acre, with the coasts of Syria and Egypt as far as Damietta, and the routes to Jerusalem by Damascus and Jaffa.[1] A small portion of it (from London to Dover) was engraved in Gough's *British Topography*, 1780, vol. i., pl. vii., fig. 1, and described at p. 85; and the whole has recently been included in *Les Monumens de la Géographie* of M. Jomard, but so incorrectly as to give no adequate idea of the original. Another copy of this Itinerary is in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xxvi., and two others, not complete, are in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xvi., and MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 182 *b*. All these are drawn by Matthew Paris. A portion of a copy made at St. Alban's at the close of the 13th century is in MS. Cott. Tib. E. VI. fol. 1, and there is a modernized transcript of the whole by Camden in the Lansdowne MS. 253, ff. 228–231.

c. Coloured Map of Britain, comprising England, Wales, and Scotland, on which is marked the Roman road from Dover through St. Alban's to Durham. . . . fol. 5 *b*.

It is engraved by Gough, pl. ii., with a very faulty description, pp. 61–64; but the names of places are much disfigured. He is at a loss to account for the introduction of Binham, Wymondham, and others, not knowing that they were Cells to St. Alban's, and therefore of interest to the maker of the map.[2]

d. A large coloured figure of the Virgin seated, holding the infant Jesus, whom she kisses. Beneath is the artist himself, in his monastic habit, represented in a prostrate attitude, and undoubtedly to be accepted as a real

[1] This is the "Descriptio Mundi" noticed by Bale among the writings of Matthew Paris, in his *Scriptores*, p. 315, ed. 1557. Gough, *Brit. Top.* i. 86, is mistaken in supposing that Bale referred here to the map of the world in MS. C.C.C.C., No. xxvi.

[2] Two much fuller maps of Britain, drawn also by Matthew Paris, should be compared with the above. One of these is prefixed to the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, in MS. Cott. Claud. D. VI. f. 8 *b*. (engraved very incorrectly by Gough, pl. iv.), and the other is inserted in the Chronicle of John of Wallingford, MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII. f. 50 *b*., and has not yet been engraved.

portrait. Above him is written in capital letters, alternately blue and red, FRAT' MATHIAS PARISIENSIS. The V in *Mathius* was at first A, but the latter is expuncted and V substituted above, yet the I is left without alteration. . . . . fol. 6.

e. Table to show the Dominical letter, bissextile, concurrent, and Easter day, from 1116 to 1620, the key to which is inserted in the Calendar which follows, from 22 March to 25 April. . . . fol. 6 *b.*

Below this table is written in red letters by the author, "*Hunc libru dedit fr Math's Parisiensis.* . . . . *Anima Math'i & anime omniu fidelium defunctoꝝ, requiescant in pace. Amen.*" The words erased can be supplied from a similar note in MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 1, and undoubtedly were, "*Deo et eccle' sci Albani.*"

f. Calendar in double columns, ruled in colours, comprising four months in a page. The only special entry is the dedication of the church of St. Alban, on 28th December. On the 29th the name of St. Thomas is erased. . . . . ff. 7 *a*–8 *b.*

g. Coloured figures of eight sovereigns of England, from William I. to Henry III. inclusive, four in a page, represented seated under arches, within an ornamented frame. Opposite each, in the margin, is written the name, in blue letters, and above or below a brief character of the monarch, in red. The features cannot be depended on as portraits. Between Henry II. and Richard I. is introduced a bust of *Henricus Junior*, on a smaller scale. . . . ff. 8 *b*–9 *a.*

The whole of the above articles, from *b* to *g*, are by the hand of Matthew Paris, and may be considered as prefatory matter pertaining to the History which follows :—

1. The *Historia Anglorum* of Matthew Paris, from 1067 to 1253 inclusive, preceded by a Prologue, as printed in the present edition. . . . ff. 9 *b*–156 *b.*

The text throughout (with the exceptions subsequently

noted) is in the handwriting of the author, in a fair, well-marked character, which becomes looser and not so firm at the close. It is in double columns, with initial letters of red and blue, which are larger and more ornamented at the commencement of a reign. There are also headings in red over each page. A good specimen of the manuscript is afforded by the facsimile prefixed to the present volume. The text has been revised and corrected by the author more than once, and there are numerous erasures, substitutions, and additions, all of which have been carefully noted in the present edition.[1] Some of these alterations are written in blue ink, which serves to mark a revision at a particular period,[2] and at other times corrections are made in the lower margin with a plummet, and afterwards introduced into the text. In many instances passages of the text have been partially or wholly erased, and re-written on slips of vellum fastened down over the original readings. This is especially the case in the years 1244–1251. These slips have been carefully raised, and the text beneath deciphered and noted, whenever it was possible to be done. Coloured shields of arms of the English and foreign sovereigns are drawn in the margins, as also of many of the barons and distinguished personages, all of which have been engraved and inserted in their places in the present edition. Illustrative drawings are occasionally added by the author (who was of equal repute both as an artist and historian), and these have been described in my notes.

A few unimportant marginal memoranda occur written in the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries, but at a later date

[1] Mere clerical errors, *corrected by the author himself*, are not noticed, such as *avarie*, *efficater*, *inchotum*, for *avaricie*, *efficaciter*, *inchoatum*. It was useless to load the pages with such instances.

[2] This blue ink occurs at ff. 24 *b*, 27 *b*, 31, 123, 125, 126, 126 *b*, 127–131. The chief of these alterations are in the years 1235–1240. The leaf 28 has been wholly written with this blue ink, and corrected with black.

(perhaps about 1520 or earlier) the hand of Polydore Vergil appears throughout the greater part of the work.[1] The quires have signatures (marked in red on the *verso* of the last leaf of each) from I. to XIIII., but the number of leaves in each varies, generally twelve, but sometimes more or less. The first quire comprises the prefatory matter, and ends on fol. 9 *b*. With regard to the insertion of *two* leaves[2] after fol. 33 (by the direction of archbishop Parker), it is certain that only *one* leaf of the original text is lost, and apparently from the time of the author. Matthew Paris has himself pointed out with a plummet the deficiency, and the numbering of the leaves of the quire proves the fact. The third quire begins at fol. 24, and is noted on the lower margin to consist of *twelve* leaves. These are numbered from i. to x. (fol. 33), and the next leaf (fol. 36) is numbered xii. The early pagination (previous to the insertion of these leaves) goes on from 49 to 50 without break, and so does the first foliation. It is evident, therefore, that the bishop of Lincoln was mistaken in supposing *two* leaves to be missing, but he has been followed in this error by the transcribers of the 16th century, Skewys,[3] Lambarde, and Parker's amanuensis.

Towards the close of the year 1252 (fol. 154 *a*, col. 2), the second and coeval hand—closer and darker than that of Matthew Paris—presents itself in three lines written over an erasure, and the same hand wholly takes up the text soon after the beginning of the year 1253 (fol. 154 *b*, col. 2), and continues it to the end of the year. It also supplies the headings and rubrics for the same extent, and has drawn the shield of arms of de Vescy in a very

[1] See the facsimile. Notes by Polydore are also on the margins of the portion of the Greater Chronicle, 1258–9, ff. 197 *b*–216 *b*.

[2] *Two* leaves of the writing of the sixteenth century are equal only to *one* leaf of the original; and thus we find in MS. C.C.C.C. No. XVI., *eight* leaves inserted to supply *four* of the missing text.

[3] MS. Harl. 2258, fol. 134 *b*.

inferior style of art. We shall meet with this hand again in other manuscripts of Matthew Paris;[1] and as it is certainly that of the fellow-monk and associate of the author in his historical labours, as well as his continuator, it is deserving of especial notice.

2. A portion of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, from 1254 to 1259, intended to form the *third* volume of his work, in continuation of MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi. This portion, of which no other copy exists, remains incomplete in consequence of the death of the author, and is comprised in five quires, numbered in red, the first and fourth of which consist of thirteen leaves each, and the second and third of twelve. At the end of the first quire (fol. 169 *b*) is written, "Primus quaternus de *tercio volumine*," and so with the remainder. In the year 1258 a leaf is wanting after fol. 209, but is not noticed in the early pagination, and must therefore have been lost previously. The text is in the writing of Matthew Paris, but larger and more irregular than before, and bears marks of having been penned at various times, particularly after 1257, as we approach the close of his life. Each reign commences with a large coloured initial letter, more or less ornamented, and a few shields of arms are added in the margins, as also the papal insignia on the death of Innocent IV. in December 1254 (fol. 167). The contemporary hand of his fellow-monk and associate (no doubt called in aid in consequence of the failing energies of the historian), first appears in fol. 158, col. 2, and re-writes several passages over erasures

---

[1] Not only in the Cambridge MSS. C. C. C., Nos. xxvi. and xvi., as hereafter specified, but in MSS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 157–160 *b*, Claud. D. VI., ff. 87–94 *b*; and also as an occasional corrector of an abridgment of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, from 1066 to 1245 inclusive, in MS. Cott. Vitell. A. XX. This abridgment was given to the church of Tynemouth (a cell of St. Alban's) by the prior Ralph de Dunham, who was living at the period when it terminates. (See *Monasticon*, iii. 307.)

in other pages; but in 1258 (fol. 210, col. 2) it takes up the text entirely (ed. Wats, p. 970, l. 39), and continues it to the end. It concludes with a notice of the death of Walter de Scotinni (ed. Wats, p. 988, l. 14), after which is added the remarkable note already noticed (p. xxiii. *n.*), and the drawing of Matthew Paris on his death-bed. It represents him raised upon his couch, with his eyes closed, and his head supported by his left arm, which rests on an open volume placed on a reading-desk, on which is written "*Liber Cronicorum Mathei Parisiensis.*" Over his head we read, "*Hic obit Matheus Parisiensis,*" and these words, with the title of his great work, serve at once for his epitaph and eulogium. It is very much to be regretted that the humility of the monk who wrote the above has consigned his own name to oblivion, since, as I have previously attempted to prove, the real Continuation of the Greater Chronicle after 1259 is to be ascribed to him. There can be little doubt that this portion of the larger work was added on to the *Historia Anglorum* not long after the death of the author.

3. The Continuation of Matthew Paris next follows, ascribed (but without sufficient authority) to William Rishanger, monk of St. Alban's, extending from 1259 to the death of Edward I. in 1272 (here dated 1273), . . . ff. 219–231. It is written on thirteen leaves of vellum, in double columns, in an ordinary hand of the latter part of the fourteenth century. The lower margins of the leaves have suffered from damp, and the injury has extended to several of the preceding leaves. At the conclusion is the autograph note of the duke of Gloucester (now erased), previously mentioned. The scribe has performed his task in a careless manner, as is evident on comparing the text with other copies in MSS. Cott. Faust. B. IX., and Claud. E. III. It was printed from this MS. by archbishop Parker, and re-

printed by Wats; but a more correct and critical edition has lately been published under the editorship of Mr. H. T. Riley.

On the whole, it would appear certain that, with the exception of the two leaves inserted by Parker, the volume remains at present exactly in the same state in which it was left at the beginning of the fifteenth century.

Text of the present edition.

In preparing the *Historia Anglorum* for press, the manuscript has been scrupulously followed, except in cases of obvious error or omission; but no correction whatever has been made unaccompanied by a note to point it out. Notwithstanding the repeated revision of the text by the author himself, many imperfect, obscure, or erroneous passages were found, in which aid from other sources was required; and as the present work is based throughout on the Greater Chronicle, and the latter (down to the year 1235) on Wendover, it became almost a labour of necessity to recur in all doubtful cases to the existing manuscripts of these works; and this was the more necessary from the fact, that in re-writing his Chronicle in an abridged form, Matthew Paris certainly had before him the copy of the greater work now fortunately preserved in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.[1]

MSS. consulted by the editor.

Not only this copy, but others, have been consulted with advantage, and their readings referred to in the notes by letters, which indicate the several manuscripts, of which a description is here annexed.[2]

[1] Proofs of this occur throughout; and in the year 1249 (fol. 144) there is a passage, as originally written, referring to a letter from cardinal Reinier to the pope "in Magnis Chronicis," with a peculiar sign affixed, and a similar mark occurs in the MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi., fol. 225.

[2] It is hoped that the descriptions here given of the MSS. of Matthew Paris may be of use to some future editor, who may undertake the arduous task of a new edition of the Greater Chronicle.

In Corp. Ch. Coll., Cambridge.

A. In C. C. C., Cambr., No. xxvi.—A folio volume written on vellum in double columns, in the middle of the thirteenth century, and consisting of 143 leaves. The first six leaves at the beginning and two at the end are not numbered, but the rest are paged by a hand of the fifteenth century from 1 to 281. The quires are also numbered in Roman numerals from I. to XII., as far as page 248. It contains the first part or volume of the Greater Chronicle of Matthew Paris, the *Chronica Majora Sancti Albani,* from the Creation to the end of the year 1188. The text of Wendover has been transcribed under the eye of Paris, and corrected by himself, with autograph additions, either on leaves inserted, or written in the margins. These inserted leaves occur at pp. 15–20, 31–2, 37–8, 253–256. The remainder of the volume is written by two hands, the first of which is that of the associate of Paris, whose aid has been given to him in his other manuscripts (see p. li.), and is easily to be recognized by its regular, black, upright character. This hand begins the work, and extends through pp. 1–14, 21–30, 33–36, 39–117, 193–252, 257–282, but the rubrics and coloured initial letters are supplied by Paris throughout a portion of the text, and the headings from p. 174 to the end. The second hand is somewhat similar to the first, but is rounder, and appears to extend from p. 117 to 192, but occasionally varies. The Chronicle begins with the rubric, *Incipit Prologus in librum qui Flores Historiarum intitulatur,* over which archbishop Parker has written, "Author Matthæus." The text previous to the Conquest is known only by the printed *rifaccimento* of it, ascribed to "Matthew of Westminster." The marginal additions of Matthew Paris (both in his round and secretary hands) are at first few in number, but gradually become more numerous after the year 1100. The text is illustrated also by shields of arms of the sovereigns from William I., and by drawings from the

pen of the author, some of which exhibit much artistic talent. At the close of the year 1188, on the lower margin, is the following note by a hand of the fourteenth century:[1] "Anno dominice incarnacionis MCLXXXIX. est vera continuacio historie Mathei Parisiensis in alio volumine, ejusdem manus," which undoubtedly refers to the second volume of the work in MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi.

The leaves at the beginning and end of this volume are filled with miscellaneous subjects, written or drawn by Matthew Paris, which may be regarded as prefatory or supplementary to the Chronicle, *viz.*:—

a. The Itinerary from London to Jerusalem, in colours, with a description in French, similar to the one in MS. Reg. 14 C. vii., but containing some interesting variations. It occupies seven pages. The portion from London to Dover is engraved by Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, pl. vii., fig. 2. . . . . . . [ff. 1–4 *a.*]

b. A brief Genealogical Chronicle, intitled, "*Cronica sub conpendio ab[b]reviata a fratre M. Parisiensi,*" the introduction to which commences, "Considerans prolixitatem Cronicorum Angliæ." . . . . . . [fol. 4 *b.*]

This is the preface mentioned by archbishop Parker so erroneously[2] as the Prologue to the "Historia Minor." The Genealogy begins with Alfred (whose bust is drawn in the centre of two circles, the outer of which is divided into the kingdoms of the Heptarchy), but terminates abruptly at the bottom of the page, with the children of Edward the Elder. It is resumed, however, at the end

[1] The same hand has continued the list of abbats in MS. C. C. C. C., No. xvi., fol. 37 *b*, to Michael Mentmore [1334–1349].

[2] See p. xxxvii. *n.* It is worth notice that the Preface of the Chronicle of John of Wallingford (a friend and contemporary of Matthew Paris), in MS. Cott. Julius D. VII. fol. 46 *b*, commences in the same manner, and he has borrowed this Genealogy (as he has his Chronicle to the year 1258) from the St. Alban's manuscripts. A much later writer, Roger of St. Alban's, who compiled an abridgment of history from Adam to the reign of Henry VI., begins his Preface also with the same words. See MS. Coll. Regin. Oxon. No. 168.

bered. Three early series of numbers, however, exist, by different hands, the first of which is a pagination, probably of the early part of the 15th century, which commences on the *verso* of the ninth leaf, and extends from page 1 to page 413 (now fol. 218). The second numbering, nearly of the same period, begins at the tenth leaf, and marks the folios from 1 to 209[1] (now fol. 218 *b*), and is continued by a hand of the 16th century to fol. 220 (now fol. 231). There is a third foliation in pencil, of later date (after 1567), beginning at the ninth leaf, and extending from 1 to 222. On the second fly-leaf is written the name of "Johannes Minsheus" (probably of 17th cent.), and on the third (now numbered fol. 1) the autograph memorandum of the bishop of Lincoln previously noticed (p. xl). Below this is the signature of John Lord "Lumley," and on the top of the page an ancient press-mark $\frac{A}{19}$, and, in the right-hand corner, No. 1,041, by which number the volume was formerly known in the Old Royal Library. The contents of this volume consist of three works originally distinct, but subsequently joined together; as here described:—

a. A circular figure to illustrate the theory of the winds, rudely sketched by a hand of the 14th century, and probably copied from a more finished figure in MS. C.C.C.C. No. xvi. . . . fol. 1.

b. Itinerary from London to Jerusalem, drawn in colours and gold, in double columns, with representations of the several stations or towns; accompanied by an explanatory text in French, which is very full towards the close. . . . . ff. 2 *a*–5 *a*.

This Itinerary, intended, no doubt, for the direction of pilgrims to the Holy Land, is of considerable interest. The route is by Dover to Witsand, and thence through France over Mount Cenis to Rome and Sicily, and then

[1] Owing to an error in numbering, another hand has partly erased and altered the foliation, so that fol. 209 is now fol. 207, and fol. 208 is added by the corrector.

library of St. Alban's previously to the reformation, and its fate is unknown until about 1560–1570, when we find it in the possession of Edward Aglionby, of Balsall Temple, (whose name is written on the flyleaf at the end,) and who lent it to archbishop Parker for his edition. There are some notes in it in Parker's handwriting, one of which, at p. 214, refers to the account given of the marriage of Matilda to Henry I. in 1101 (ed. Wats, p. 58), and a similar note by him is found in MS. Cott. Nero D. V., fol. 124 *b*, at the same passage.

B. In C. C. C. Cambr., No. xvi.—Folio, vellum, consisting of 286 leaves. This is the second part or volume of the Greater Chronicle, continuing the work from 1189 to 1253 inclusive.[1] Before the middle of the sixteenth century it seems to have come into the hands of Robert Talbot,[2] prebendary of Norwich [1547–1558], and afterwards belonged to Sir Henry Sidney, K.G., from whom Parker borrowed it. The greater portion of the volume is in the handwriting of Matthew Paris, but there are two other hands employed. The first is a fine black angular character, and appears in ff. 1–3 *b*, 8–10 *b*, 13–32, col. 2, 46 *b*, col. 1,–50, col. 2; and the second (which is that of the author's associate especially noticed before) continues the text from fol. 32, col. 2, to fol. 33 *b*, col. 2, and from fol. 55 to fol. 61 *b*, col. 2; the same hand also re-writes several passages over erasures of the original text at ff. 157, 197, &c.[3] Throughout these pages the

---

[1] Wats says, erroneously, 1255. He only collated the text in this volume from 1251 to 1253 inclusive, of which portion no other copy is known.

[2] This appears probable from a note written by Talbot on fol. 245, in reference to the *Liber Additamentorum* mentioned in the text, on which he remarks, "Hunc librum Additamentorum puto me habere." [It is now in the Cottonian collection marked Nero D. I.] It was from Talbot that Bale derived his knowledge of the works specified in his collections, MS. Selden 64 B, and in his *Scriptores*, p. 315, ed. 1557.

[3] This is the hand so ignorantly blamed by Parker, when he speaks of the volume as "per *fraterculum aliquem* turpiter admodum in aliquot foliis mutatus et in plurimis locis erasus." What was done by this scribe was unquestionably di-

headings and rubrics are by Matthew Paris, as also marginal additions and alterations. He commences himself to write the text at ff. 11–12 *b* (1195); then from fol. 33 *b*, col. 2 (1213) to fol. 46, col. 2 (1216); from fol. 49 *b* (1216) to fol. 54 *b* (1219); from fol. 61 *b*, col. 2 (1225) to fol. 111 *b* (1238); and from fol. 112 *b* (1238) to fol. 281 *b* (1253). These pages exhibit the variations in the hand of the author at different periods, neater and closer at first, and looser and more irregular towards the close. Some of the large initial letters are elaborately ornamented. There is also a fourth hand, but only through a page and a half, at fol. 112. By a mistake in the original numbering, there is no folio 77, and the volume is imperfect in several places, having lost four leaves in 1190–1192, after fol. 3; one in 1237, after fol. 103; one in 1238, after fol. 116; and one in 1250, after fol. 232. The missing portions (except fol. 116) have been supplied by Parker, and chiefly from the text of MS. Cott. Nero D. V. The first five leaves of the volume are not numbered, but the remainder are folio'd in Arabic numerals by a contemporary hand,[1] from fol. 1 to fol. 281. The quires also have signatures from I. to XX. (fol. 256), exclusive of twenty-five leaves at the end, which have no signatures. On the six leaves at the commence-

rected by Matthew Paris himself. But after the blame thus bestowed, what shall we say of Parker himself, or his amanuensis, who has written over an erased text at ff. 37 *b*, 60 *b*, col. 1, 167, col. 1 (nearly two columns), and often elsewhere! In excuse, it can only be suggested that some of these passages may have been copied from slips of vellum originally fastened over the text, but which had become detached. If this is not so, then a heavy charge would lie against the archbishop for defacing the text.

[1] Although Arabic numerals are said (and no doubt truly) to have been employed by Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln, about the year 1240, yet the earliest instance hitherto referred to of their use is Robert Bacon's Calendar, about 1292, in MS. Cott. Vesp. A. II. The example in the text (corroborated also by the Cottonian copy, Nero D. V.) proves that Matthew Paris made use of these figures soon after 1250. See Astle, *Origin of Writing*, 4to., 1803, pp. 186–188.

ment various historical and miscellaneous matters have been written and drawn by Matthew Paris (as in the previous volume), as follows :—

a. Nomina Regum antiquorum et modernorum, from Ina to Henry III., with the duration of their reigns; continued by later hands to the time of Elizabeth . . . . [fol. *1 *a.*]

b. Large circular figure to show the theory of the winds, with the names in Latin and French, and with the lines, "Sunt sub solano," &c., as in No. xxvi. . . . . . [fol. *1 *b.*]

In MS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 184, 184 *b*, a similar figure is said to be "secundum magistrum Elyam de Derham," but another in MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII., fol. 51 *b* (compiled also under the eye of Paris) is stated to be "secundum Robertum Grosseteste, episcopum Lincolniensem."

c. Itinerary from London to Jerusalem, on two leaves, but both mutilated . . . . . . [ff. 2, 5 *a*.]

d. Genealogia Orbiculata, from Alfred[1] to the children of Henry III. (part of which is torn off); much briefer than those in No. xxvi. and MS. Cott. Claud. D. VI. . . . . . . [fol. *3.]

e. Drawing of the Elephant sent to England by Louis IX., in 1255, as a present to Henry III., accompanied by the keeper; with a text descriptive of the animal's nature in general . . . . . . [fol. *4.]

Another drawing of this elephant by Paris is in MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 161 *b*, and a third of smaller size, also by him, is inserted in the Chronicle of John of Wallingford, MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII., fol. 114.

f. Map of Britain, comprising England, Wales, and Scotland; mutilated in the lower part. . . . . [fol. *5 *b.*]

---

[1] Nasmith says, erroneously, from *William I.* See *Cat. libb.* p. 16. This Genealogy seems referred to in No. xxvi., fol. 129, where there is a drawing of Alfred's bust, and below, "Alfredus primus monarcha Angliæ, a quo incipit Genealogia Orbiculata."

It is wretchedly engraved by Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, vol. i., pl. iii., fig. 3, and described at p. 64, with many errors. The names are strangely disfigured; thus *Bamburc* (Bamborough) is turned into *Bdbd*, and *Stratherne* into *Scocia marina!*

On the seventh leaf commences the Chronicle, and on the top of the page is an inscription in red letters, now partly erased, by which Matthew Paris recorded his gift of this volume to the church of St. Alban's. The year 1189 begins "Anno Dominicæ Nativitatis . . . .[1] octogesimo nono, rex Henricus." The text of Wendover is retained to the year 1235, but with large additions, and is then continued to 1253, with numerous corrections, erasures, and marginal additions, exhibiting the work in its state of progress, so that it is not surprising that the entire volume should have been attributed to Matthew Paris by a later writer of St. Alban's.[2] Wendover's portion ends at fol. 95 (ed. Coxe, vol. iv., p. 339), and is continued without any break; but in the margin is a note in a contemporary hand, "Dn̄s Rog. de Wendoure, prior aliquando de Beluero, hucusque Cronica sua digessit. Incipit frater Math' Parisiensis." The Chronicle ends abruptly at the close of 1253 (the last leaf having been lost), and it is worthy of remark how archbishop Parker has dealt with the imperfect text. He has crossed out with his pen the whole of it after the words "princeps apostolorum constituitur" (ed. Wats, p. 880, l. 45), and on the lower margin transcribes the short annual summary from the Arundel MS., which he prints in the place of the portion struck out. Yet Wats reprints this text without one word of comment or note of any variation, which does not say much for his collation! The matter thus crossed out on the

[1] Erased in the manuscript, but a hand of the 16th century has inserted *M°.Cent°*. The date is given rightly in MS. Nero D. V., so that it is surprising it should be omitted in Parker's edition (ed. Wats, p. 148).

[2] MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV. fol. 332 *b*. See *ante*, p. xiv. *n*.

recto and *verso* of fol. 281, contains a chapter on the miracles of St. Richard in the church of Chichester,[1] after which follow letters of pope Innocent IV. addressed to the abbot of St. Alban's relative to the concession of the right of presentation to benefices. These letters end with the words "et beneficiorum," but a copy of the whole is preserved in MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 118, and thence printed by Wats among the *Additamenta*, p. 184, with a reference to the year 1252 (p. 846), but the letters are dated "3 non. Nov. pontif. anno xi.," which falls in November 1253.

Archbishop Parker made much use of this volume, as already remarked, and has inserted in its margins references to his edition, particularly from 1229 to 1253. He has also written notes on several passages, one of which, at fol. 184 *b*, contains a distinct reference to the Arundel MS.

In the Cottonian Collection.

C. In the Cottonian Collection, Nero D. V.—A thick folio volume, of 395 leaves according to the recent numbering, written on vellum, and consisting of two parts or volumes, which were originally, no doubt, separate and distinct. It contains the *Flores Historiarum*, or Greater Chronicle of Wendover and Paris, from the Creation to the year 1250 inclusive, at which date the work was at first intended to terminate. The first part extends to the end of 1188 (fol. 161 *b*), written in a thick, square black letter, in double columns, in the latter part of the 13th century. The text has been very carelessly transcribed, and abounds with errors. On a fly-leaf at the beginning are some notes in Dr. Thomas Gale's handwriting, and on the top of fol. 2 is the signature of Sir Robert Cotton, who has added the following title: "Historia ab initio mundi ad ann. 1251, per Matthæum Paris, monachum Sancti Albani." Prefixed to the Chronicle, on fol. 1 *b*, is a coloured Map of the World,

[1] These miracles are noticed very briefly in ed. Wats, p. 868. A fuller relation is referred to in the MS. as existing in the library at St. Alban's.

copied from the one in MS. C. C. C. C. No. xxvi. It has been engraved in the Atlas of the Viconte de Santarem, pt. i. 1849, and described in tom. ii. pp. 257–272 of his *Essai sur l'Histoire de la Cosmographie*. The heading at the commencement of the Chronicle is the same as in C. C. C. C. xxvi., from which, doubtless, it was transcribed, and the marginal additions of Matthew Paris in the original are here inserted in the text.

The second part extends from 1189 to 1250, and has been folio'd by a contemporary hand, from fol. 1 to fol. 232 (now 392). The text is in double columns, written in a thin, close character, with large red and blue initials of the narrow form peculiar to the period at which it was copied. It was certainly transcribed from MS. C. C. C. C. No. xvi., and probably soon after the work had been completed and corrected to the year 1250, and therefore under the eye of Matthew Paris himself. If any further proof of this were required, it is furnished by the notes in his handwriting on the margins of ff. 214 *b*, 216 *b*, 226, and elsewhere, as also by his drawings in the years 1216 and 1217, at ff. 208, 213, and 214, similar to those in the Cambridge MS. Here, as in the first part, the corrections and marginal additions of the original are incorporated into the text. Occasionally, but very rarely, there are insertions in this copy not in the Cambridge MS., as may be seen in Wats's collations under the years 1216 (ed. p. 290), and 1242 (ed. p. 584). The text concludes on fol. 293 with the words "Quod postea proferat ætas," after which a much later hand has added, "*Quædam Gesta de rege Arthuro,*" taken out of Geoffrey of Monmouth. The portion of the Chronicle assigned to Wendover (near the close of 1235) ends on fol. 257 with the words "dignissima judicatur," and in the margin is noted, "Hucusque in a°. li°. [alio libro]."[1] It is, however, remarkable that we should find, not here,

[1] Misread by Wats (followed by Coxe), "*e vetusto* libro." The note is not earlier than the fourteenth cent.

but in the preceding year, 1234, at fol. 252 (ed. p. 403), the following note by the original rubricator, "*Dominus Rogerus de Wendoure,*[1] *prior aliquando de Bealuuair, hucusque Cronica sua hec digessit. Incipit frater Matheus Parisiensis.*" This is very precise, and must have been written with the knowledge, apparently, of Paris himself; moreover, it is confirmed by the heading of the Cottonian MS. of Wendover (Otho B. V.); yet, on the other hand, the evidence of the Cambridge MS., No. xvi., and of the two separate copies of Wendover's text would seem to afford sufficient proof that he continued his work to the later date. On the margins of the second part of Nero D. V. are notes by a hand of the end of the 13th century or beginning of the next, marking the omissions found in another manuscript, with the headings of chapters, and, in a few instances, a transcript of some short chapters from it (as in 1206, 1220, 1245, and 1248). The earliest appearance of these notes is in 1200 (fol. 181 *b*), and they are continued to the end of 1239 (fol. 291 *b*). Gale supposed that the manuscript referred to was a copy of Wendover; but he is mistaken, as it was undoubtedly the volume containing the *Historia Anglorum*, now in the Old Royal Collection, 14 C. vii., as verified by myself.

Before the two parts of this volume came into the possession of Sir Robert Cotton (who, doubtless, bound them up together), they belonged to John Stow, the antiquary, who has written his name on the upper corner of fol. 161, and notes on certain passages in ff. 9, 20, 192*b*. As before mentioned (p. xxxi.), he lent the MS. to archbishop Parker, who made use of it to supply the

[1] Written at first *Wendouren*, but expuncted. Wats (in his Preface to edit. 1640), not observing this, or ignorant of the ancient practice of *expunction*, has raised a weak argument as to Wendover's having been "generosa familia procreatum," from the circumstance of his name (as he thinks) being written *Rogerus Wendovre de Wendovre.* See also Coxe, Pref. Wend., p. vii., *note.*

deficiencies in the Cambridge MS., No. xvi., and has also written notes in ff. 124 *b*, 214. In the Cambridge MS., under the year 1250 (fol. 233), the text reads, "Et cum hujus libri scriptor, frater scilicet Matheus Parisiensis, dominum . . . . . . redargueret" (ed. Wats, p. 783), and Parker has noted in the margin:—"In alio codice scripto aliena manu sic legitur, *Et cum hujus libri confector, frater scilicet Mattheus, dominum . . . redargueret;*" immediately after which he adds, "Memor. quod aliud exemplar hujus partis Historiæ progreditur non ultra hunc annum, et incipit ab a°. 1189, sed prior pars hujus Historiæ, ab Adam scilicet, eodem modo habetur in libro per se, et hæc duo exemplaria sunt in custodia Mři Ramsey Oxoniensis, qui jam servatur in carcere Oxoniis, ob quam causam nescio." The reading quoted by Parker is found in the Cottonian MS. fol. 384 *b*, and the two parts of it correspond accurately with the notice of those in the hands of Ramsey.[1] The difficulty is to account for the transmission of them to Stow, and at what time this took place. Without more precise information, it is hazardous, perhaps, to give an opinion as to the identity of the copies, but my own belief is, that the two parts of the Cottonian MS. Nero D. V. are the same as those belonging to Ramsey.

In the Harleian Collection.

D. In the Harleian Collection, No. 1620.—A folio volume of 189 leaves, written on vellum, double columns, in a hand somewhat similar to the first part of MS. Cott.

[1] I can find nothing in Wood's *Fasti* or *Athenæ* to throw any light on this *Magister Ramsey.* In Strype's *Memorials*, vol. ii. pt. i. p. 370, ed. 1822, mention is made of a *Laurence Ramsey*, one of the chief sectaries in Kent, who was brought into the Ecclesiastical Court in 1550, and who is mentioned at a later date as the author of a poem called "The Practise of the Divil." (See *Restituta*, vol. iii. p. 439.) Ritson thinks he is the same who wrote "Ramsie's farewell to his late lord and master therle of Leicester," who died 4 Sept. 1588. Stow, in his manuscript collections, notices also a *Lenard Ramsay* as having written certain articles "preched secretly by one Geyton," MSS. Harl. 367, f. 17, and 530, p. 142.

Nero D. V., and of the same period. It appears from Wanley's description in the Harleian Catalogue, vol. ii. p. 162,[1] to have belonged formerly to Sir William Cecil, whose arms were on the old binding, now, unfortunately, replaced by another. Previously it seems to have been in the hands of Nicholas Brigham (a friend of Bale),[2] who has written "Matheus Florigerus" on the first page, and hence, in later times, when it was in the library of Henry Worseley, of Lincoln's Inn, No. 14, it was erroneously described as "Matthæi Westmonasteriensis Flores Historiarum" (*Catal. MSS. Angliæ*, 1697, p. 212). The Worseley manuscripts came subsequently by gift into the collection of Lord Oxford.

This volume contains the first part of the *Flores Historiarum* of Wendover and Paris, from the Creation to the death of Henry II. in 1189 (ed. Wats, p. 152). Above the usual heading a hand of the fourteenth century has added, "Flores Ystoriarum est nomen hujus libri [misread by Wanley *omnium primus liber*], quia fructus omnium Ystoriarum hic inveniuntur." The text ends on fol. 188 *b*, and is followed by short annals of the reign of Richard I., in a hand of the fifteenth century. It agrees in its readings closely with the Cottonian MS., and was, doubtless, derived from the same source.[3] A few variations, either as omissions or additions, may be noticed, the chief of which occur in the years 1101, 1109, 1126, 1140, 1169, 1189.

In the Cottonian Collection.

E. In the Cottonian Collection, Claudius D. VI.—A small folio volume, written on vellum, in various hands

[1] Wanley is entirely mistaken in his conjecture that before this MS. belonged to Cecil, it was in the Royal Library, and the same mentioned by Bale *apud* Wats.

[2] See the *Scriptores*, p. 718, ed. 1557.

[3] Under 1134, fol. 150, there is a very brief notice of the death of Robert Curtehose, and in the margin is written, "Hæc evidencius in margine libri, *In eodem anno*," etc., which undoubtedly refers to MS. C. C. C. C., No. xxvi. p. 225, where we find the marginal addition so quoted (ed. Wats, p. 73).

of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, at St. Alban's It contains the *Abbreviatio compendiosa Chronicorum Angliæ*, from A.D. 1000 to A.D. 1255, compiled chiefly by Matthew Paris from the *Historia Anglorum*, together with various historical works by Rishanger and others. As the entire work will be printed in the third volume of the present edition, a future opportunity will occur of describing this manuscript more at length.

In the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris.

F. In the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris, No. 6048 B, formerly No. 3121 of the Colbert Collection.—This is the manuscript which was lent by Sir William Cecil to archbishop Parker for his edition of 1571, and is particularly mentioned by him in the Preface.[1] Parker caused a portion of it to be transcribed from 1189 to 1199, and it is from this transcript that Wats made his collation in 1640. What became of the manuscript after Cecil's death is not known, nor in what manner it passed into the hands of Colbert, but it was purchased with the rest of his manuscripts in 1732 for the Bibliothèque du Roi.[2] This manuscript is in folio, and is written on paper in a small neat hand, probably about 1420–1430, and consists of 156 leaves. Archbishop Parker has written at the bottom of the first page of the History, "Manus ejusdem qui scripsit Chronicon Thomæ Walsingham." The copy of Walsingham alluded to is in Corp. Chr. College, Cambridge, No. cxcv., and is the one used by Parker for his edition of that writer,[3] as is evident from the notes on the margins. The writing is certainly the same in both manuscripts (as I have ascertained by means of a carefully executed fac-simile from the Cecil copy), and the paper mark, a pair of scales, is

[1] Mr. Hardy (Gen. Introd. to *Monumenta Hist. Brit.* p. 8) supposed this MS. of Cecil to be now MS. Arundel 98; but this is an error. The latter MS. contains a copy of the so-called Matthew of Westminster to the year 1296.

[2] See Le Prince, *Essai sur la Bibliothèque du Roi*, p. 174, ed. 1856.

[3] This fact seems to have escaped the notice of Mr. Riley. See his Introduction to *Thomæ Walsingham Historia Anglicana*, p. xi.

common to both. The contents of the Cecil volume were described, but not very correctly, in the *Catalogus Codd. MSS. Bibl. Regiæ*, 1744, tom. iv. p. 196. The first twenty-three leaves are filled with various historical, legendary, and other tracts, all of which appear to have been copied from an earlier volume written at St. Alban's, now preserved in the Old Royal Collection, 13 E. ix. The rest of the volume, from fol. 24 to the end, is occupied by the work of Matthew Paris. At the beginning the remains of an early title are visible, "*Matthei Parisiensis . . . . . p . . t . . . . .*," under which, in the hand of Etienne Baluze, is "M. Paris Historia Anglica." It extends from the year 1067 to 1208,[1] in which year it ends abruptly with the words, "sine fructu resideri." (ed. Wats, p. 226, l. 10.)

The text, which was certainly compiled at St. Alban's, is made up from both historical works of Matthew Paris, namely, the *Historia Anglorum* (MS. Reg. 14 C. vii.), and the Greater Chronicle (Cott. Nero D. V.)[2] These two manuscripts must have been in the hands of the compiler, and he used them arbitrarily to form a work intended for general circulation. He has taken the prologue, "De chronographia," from the lesser History, and added on to it an abridgment from the larger work of the events which took place between the death of Edward the Confessor and the coronation of William I. The text of the History is of a mixed character throughout, but the greater portion of it follows the *Historia Anglorum*, and where it differs is pointed out in my notes. The compiler manifests a great desire to retain the legen-

---

[1] At the beginning of John's reign a somewhat later hand than the text has written, "Historia Radulphi Nigri," and it is so attributed in *Cat. Codd. Bibl. Reg.*, but the statement is not correct. See Nasmith, *Cat. libb.*, p. 309.

[2] Mr. Coxe, misled by the collation of Wats, thought that the Cecil MS. was a copy of the Royal MS. 14 C. vii. (Introd. to *Append.* Wend. p. vi.) The real nature of the text was first ascertained by myself, by the aid of a transcript obtained from Paris.

dary narratives omitted in the lesser work, and has borrowed from the larger one the legends of St. Patrick's Purgatory (in 1153), of Wulfric the Hermit (1164), Godric the Hermit (1170), of the Monk of Evesham (1196), and various others. For other reasons he takes from the same source the speech of pope Urban (1095), the papal letters relative to Becket (1164), and those addressed to the sultan of Iconium (1169), and to king John (1207). On the other hand, he omits the local notices in the *Historia Anglorum* relative to the abbats of St. Alban's, under the years 1093, 1146, 1152, and elsewhere.

The proof that the compiler of this copy transcribed from the manuscript now 14 C. vii. appears constantly. He not only copies verbally, but retains the very errors of the original, even when mere slips of the pen.[1] It seems also almost equally certain that the manuscript consulted for the fuller text was the one now MS. Cott. Nero D. V.[2] That this compilation is really the Cecil manuscript is evident, not only from Parker's notes in it, but also by the story relative to Richard I. in 1199, intitled "De patientia regis Ricardi in tribulationibus," mentioned in Wats's *Variantes Lectiones* (ed. p. 196). The portions of this manuscript borrowed from the *Historia Anglorum* have been collated throughout for the present edition, but without much advantage. In one or two instances it corrects an error, as *sextam* for *quintam*, vol. i. p. 362, or supplies a word erased in the original, as *non*, vol. i. p. 430 ; *tirannide*, vol. ii. p. 106 ; and under the year 1192 (vol. ii. p. 37) is a curious

[1] Thus, in the present edition, i. 218, where *manifeste* is written for *Mamistre*; i. 390, *memoratorum* for *Normannorum*; ii. 77, *regis* for *tegis*, etc. Not unfrequently the compiler or scribe has faults of his own, arising from carelessness or ignorance, but it would be useless to specify them.

[2] This appears from the fact that in passages where the Cotton MS. varies from the *original* text in MSS. C. C. C. C., Nos. xxvi. and xvi., the Cecil MS. always agrees with the Cotton MS.

addition relative to Ralph Besace, physician of Richard I. The editors of the "Recueil des Historiens de la France," tom. xvii., print a few pages from this manuscript under the years 1201–1208, where it differs from the printed text of Wats, and suggest the strange hypothesis (p. 680) that this copy represents the original work of Wendover, and that the variations or interpolations in the Greater Chronicle of Paris were intended to soften down the *scommata* of the previous writer!

In Corp. Chr. Coll., Cambridge

G. In C. C. C., Cambr., No. lvi.—A thick folio volume, written by various hands of the sixteenth century for archbishop Parker, in or about 1567. It is described falsely by Nasmith as "Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Minor a coronatione Willelmi I. ad mortem Henrici III. anno 1273." It contains a transcript of the Arundel manuscript, including the *Historia Anglorum*, from 1067 to 1253; the latter portion of the Greater Chronicle, from 1254 to 1259; and the Continuation, from 1259 to 1273. The Prologue, "De chronographia," has been collated in the present edition, in order to show the extreme licence taken by the copyist in altering the original text. In the initial letter D are introduced the arms of Parker, and to carry out a silly conceit of making the first eight lines commence with the vowel *e*, several words have been altered, and so printed! At the beginning of the reign of Henry III., Parker's arms are again inserted, with the date 1567, and at the end of 1253 is the following note: "Hucusque progreditur Historia Minor; quæ sequuntur sunt ex Historia Majore Matthæi Parisiensis." At the beginning also of 1254 is written, "Ex libro Arund. Com." The portion from this year to 1273 has been used for the press, as appears by Parker's references to his edition in the margins. Throughout the transcript there have been marginal notes, now covered over with paper, and one of them, in 1167, reads, "Omnes hæ literæ inseruntur in exemplari dñi Cecilii," which proves that at that date Sir Will. Cecil's manuscript was in the arch-

bishop's hands. Between the prologue and the transcript of the *Historia Anglorum* is a copy of the brief genealogical work in MS. C. C. C. C. No. xxvi., with the prologue, "Considerans prolixitatem." It comes down to the reign of Henry III., with a few notes by the copyist refering to a later period. Another copy of this Genealogy, also made for Parker, may be found in MS. C. C. C. C., No. c., where it is continued to the reign of Henry V. It may be added, that a second transcript of part of the *Historia Anglorum*, from 1136 to 1179, made for Parker, and followed by the Continuation from 1259 to 1273, is in MS. C. C. C. C., No. cclviii., art. 1, 2.

In the Cottonian Collection.

H. MS. Cotton. Vitellius D. II.—An abridged transcript of the Arundel manuscript, made in 1565 by William Lambarde, assisted by Laurence Nowell and some other person, whose hand has not been identified. In some notes originally prefixed (preserved by Wats, *Præf. ad Var. Lect.*), but now missing, Lambarde intitles it "Matthæi Paris Historia Minor," and again, "Historia rerum ab octo primis post Conquisitionem Angliæ regibus gestarum, Matthæo Parisiensi authore," signed W. Lambarde, 1565; and adds, "Advertendum est, quod hoc exemplar non est ad verbum transcriptum, sed ea quæ ad historiam Angliæ pertinent summa fide et fere verbatim traducuntur. Cætera (forinseca cum sint) ut plurimum levi præteriit pede scriptor, nonnunquam etiam plane omisit." The transcript, however, is by no means literal or faithful, but great liberties have been taken with it. A short specimen from the year 1118 is given by Wats, and he collates it from 1255 to 1273, under the title of *Minor*, not knowing that it was copied from the Arundel MS. There is ample evidence of this, therefore the assertion first made by Sir Robert Cotton in his MS. Catalogue (*MS. Harl.* 6018, f. 51), and repeated by his librarian James in the notice prefixed of the contents of the volume, as also by Dr. Smith in his printed catalogue,

1696, that it was transcribed from a manuscript in Bennet College, Cambridge, is incorrect.[1]

This volume originally consisted of 286 leaves, but suffered considerable injury in the fire of 1731, and in the report published the year afterwards it is stated that "about 120 loose leaves remain," and so repeated in Planta's Catalogue, 1802. Instead, however, of 120, there were 170 leaves kept in a case, and I discovered 97 more bound up improperly in Appendix xlii. as "Fragmenta historici cujusdam operis." These, with 16 leaves in addition recovered from the refuse, I caused to be repaired and inlaid in the year 1847; and having arranged them by the aid of the original MS., they now form a volume of 283 leaves; three at the end, containing drawings of coats of arms, are still wanting.

In the Douce Collection, Bodleian Library.

W. In the Douce Collection, Bodleian Library, No. ccvii.—A folio volume, which, besides the *Flores Historiarum* of Wendover, contains part of Hoveden, an abridgment of the work called "Matthew of Westminster" (written probably at Ramsey abbey, and continued to 1326), and Geoffrey of Monmouth. The work of Wendover occupies the first portion of the manuscript, and is written on vellum, in double columns, at the close of the thirteenth century. It is deficient from A.D. 879 to 894, and also in A.D. 1191, 1192. At the end of the year 1188 is a note in plummet, "Huc usque in libro Cronicarum Johannis abbatis," which is repeated in ink by a later hand thus, "Usque huc Cronica Joh. abbatis, et hic finis." This note perhaps refers to the first volume of the Greater Chronicle of Wendover and Paris (now in C. C. C. C., No. xxvi.), which may have been written for or by the direc-

[1] The readings of Lambarde's copy prove it could not have been derived from MS. C. C. C. C., No. lvi. Thus, in vol. ii. p. 194 of the present edition, the Arundel MS. and Lambarde read, "nec *mutire* permittebat," but in Parker's transcript this is altered to "nec *mentiri* permittebat."

tion of the abbat John de Hertford, elected in 1235. The work terminates at the close of this year on fol. 220 *b* with the words "in omnibus dignissima judicatur," after which is written, "Huc usque scripsit Cronica dñs Rogerus de Wendoure." The text from the year 447 has been ably edited by the Rev. H. O. Coxe, for the English Historical Society, in 1841. As to the previous history of the manuscript nothing certain is known. Mr. Halliwell supposed it[1] to be the same as a MS. in the possession of Dr. Matthew Carewe in 1585, but there is no proof of the fact. It is said also to have been purchased by Mr. Douce at the sale of Sir John Sebright's library[2] in 1807, but I can find no notice of it in the catalogue. The readings from this manuscript, indicated by the letter W, are meant also to include those of the Cottonian copy and of the printed edition, unless otherwise noted.

In the Cottonian Collection.

I. Cottonian MS. Otho B. V.—Folio, vellum, of the fourteenth century, reduced by the fire of 1731 to a crust, and stated to have been lost by Casley and Planta, but subsequently flattened, inlaid, and arranged under my direction, in 1850.[3] It originally consisted of 464 leaves, but now only of 459, very much damaged as far as A.D. 1150, and also after A.D. 1330. It contains the second book of Wendover, beginning at the birth of Christ, and ending in 1235, like the Douce MS. The heading at the commencement is, "*Incipit liber secundus de Floribus Historiarum, a Nativitate dñi nr̃i Jhesu Christi usque ad annum millesimum ducentesimum tricesimum quar-*

[1] Introd. to the *Chronicle of William de Rishanger*, p. xvii. Extracts from this MS. of Carew by Robert Glover are in MS. Cott. Otho D. IV. ff. 123 *b*–126 *b*, and thence copied by James Strangeman in a volume of his collections, MS. Sloane 1301, ff. 177–181 *b*.

[2] Coxe's Pref. to *Rogeri de Wendover Chronica*, p. xxxiv.

[3] A drawing representing the state of this manuscript as left by the fire, and after it was flattened and inlaid, may be seen in MS. Add. 18,457.

tum."[1] The text (except in the preface) agrees throughout very closely with the Douce copy, so that it is rare to find even the slightest variation. At the conclusion is the same notice of the author, "Hucusque," etc. There can be no doubt that this is the manuscript which formerly belonged to Sir Christopher Heydon, of Baconsthorp, in Norfolk (a scholar of considerable eminence, who died in 1623),[2] as proved by a note of that MS. prefixed to a copy of "Matthew of Westminster" in the Bodleian Library, MS. Laud 572, and referred to by Tanner in his *Bibliotheca Britannica*, p. 757. Mr. Halliwell is mistaken in stating that Sir Robert Cotton purchased the manuscript of Mr. Vincent [Augustine Vincent, Windsor Herald], since the entry in the original catalogue of the library (made about 1621)[3] merely intimates that the latter had borrowed the volume.

References, &c., in the text of the present edition.

As the work of Wendover forms the basis of the one now published as far as the year 1235, references have been given in the margin to Mr. Coxe's edition, and, in order to point out more readily the new matter introduced by Matthew Paris, *dots* have been added opposite such passages as are not found in Wendover, or are re-written and altered. Portions, however, of these passages sometimes occur in the Greater Chronicle of Paris. In general, the marginal additions and corrections are peculiar to the present work, and are not met with elsewhere. Subsequent to the year 1235, it was at first proposed to add references to Wats's edition of the larger work, but on further consideration it was thought unnecessary and, in some respects, inexpedient.

Punctuation, &c.

In regard to the punctuation of the text, division of sentences, and use of capital or small letters, some liberty has been taken, since the manuscript is by

[1] This heading is very illegible, and a few words obliterated, but they are supplied by the note in MS. Laud 572.

[2] See Blomfield's *Hist. of Norfolk*, vol. vi. p. 508.

[3] MS. Harl. 6018, fol. 79.

Orthography.

no means uniform, and very often inaccurate in these particulars. Several orthographical changes have also been made, in compliance with the rules laid down for the guidance of editors. Thus, the diphthongs *æ* and *œ* have been substituted for the single *e*,[1] and the letter *t* for *c* in words ending in *cio* or *cia*, or similar forms. In every other alteration the reading of the manuscript is given in the notes.[2] In printing from the author's *autograph*, it might seem, indeed, doubtful whether such alterations were absolutely necessary or advisable, for the middle-age Latinity has a special character of its own, which cannot be converted by orthographical correction into a classical garb. Public documents have been, on this account, literally published in Rymer, and the German method, as represented in Pertz, seems preferable to the practice of the French school. To those who have felt sufficient interest in the subject to look into the dry treatises of Dausquius or Cellarius,[3] the whole question of classical orthography will appear to rest on very uncertain and conflicting authorities; and forms which are now repudiated as the corruptions of a monastic age are really found on the earliest monuments extant of the Latin tongue. Moreover, they are admitted into the languages immediately derived from the Latin, namely, the Italian, Spanish, and French. Nor has the practice of editors been uniform in this matter, and many of them have perceived the advantage of retaining forms which bear the impress of the age and

[1] The ancient use of *e* and *æ* is well known, and *optime femine*, in the dative, occurs in an inscription in the Roman Catacombs. See also Cellarius, vol. i. p. 42. Modern editors differ much in writing such words as *heres*, *seculum*, *cetero*, *pretium*, *fenus*, *frenum*, &c.

[2] It would seem a great anomaly for an editor to point out the most trivial errors of the pen, such as *a* for *ad*, *du* for *di*, and such like, and at the same time to alter without notice the orthography of words so sweepingly, that the original writer would fail to recognize them.

[3] Dausquius, *De Orthographia Latini Sermonis*, fol., Par. 1677; —Cellarius, *Orthographia Latina*, 2 vols. 8vo., Altenb. 1768.

writer. The same licence has therefore been taken to some extent in the present volumes, in regard to such words as *benivolentia, cotidie, elemosina, genitrix, quatinus,* and others; as also in the usage so constant in middle-age writers of employing *i* for *y* in *martir, presbiter, tirannus, lacrima,*[1] &c., and so retained in Italian and Spanish. Thus, also, in words compounded with a preposition, the final consonant of the first syllable becomes assimilated to the letter which follows, as *sullime, suffossus, assunt, suppriorem.*[2] This arises from pronunciation; and by the same law *b* becomes *p* before the letter *t*, as *optuli, optinere,* &c., as long ago remarked by Quintilian.[3] The chief orthographical peculiarities observable in the text of Matthew Paris are, the substitution of *m* for *n* in *imfra, imfirmatus, imferior, imfelix,* &c., and the converse in *nanque,* for which, however, there is some show of authority;[4] he also writes *excercitus* and *excercere, cisma, cintillis, aucgmentum, mangna, congnitus,* &c. These have been replaced by the more usual spelling. In other respects the forms are the same as found in most middle-age writers, such as *set* for *sed, michi, nichil,*[5] *eicere, obicit, dampna, sompno,* and many more. Double letters are often employed for single, and *vice versa;* the *h* is used redundantly in such words as *habundare, harena, hanelus;* but, on the other hand, is sometimes omitted, as *ebetasset, ortis, talamum;*

---

[1] Giphanius, in his edition of Lucretius, boldly advocates the use of *i* in such words, and adds, "Eadem ergo ratione, *lacrima, clipeus, inclitus,* etc., scribenda existimo, consentientibus etiam libris vetustis omnibus." Epist. ad Lect. ed. Lugd. Bat. 1595.

[2] Cellarius, vol. i. p. 99.

[3] *De Instit. Orat.* lib. i. cap. 7. There is abundance of ancient authority for this in Cellarius, vol. ii. p. 289. In truth, Quintilian seems to authorize all such forms arising from pronunciation, when he says, "Ego, nisi quod consuetudo obtinuerit, *sic scribendum quidque judico, quo modo sonat,*" lib. i. cap. 7.

[4] See Cellarius, vol. i. pp. 59, 66. It is so printed by Parker.

[5] Mr. Wright, in his *Early Mysteries,* 1830, expressly retains such forms, as "marking the established orthography of the age." Pref., p. xxvii.

whilst the letters *ph* and *f* are convertible, as *nephas*, *philosofum*. A few grammatical forms may also deserve notice, such as the use of *idus* and *nonas* undeclined, in the same manner as *kalendas*, and the constant employ of *mille* in the singular, but *milia* in the plural, for which Cellarius[1] cites the authority of the old grammarian Cledonius, as well as that of inscriptions in Gruter. After *milia* we find a genitive or other case used indifferently, as *milia marcas*, or *milia marcarum*.

Want of space in the present volume, and the advantage of having the whole of the text first printed off, have induced me to defer to a future occasion the consideration of such biographical and other notices as we possess of Matthew Paris, as also an estimate of the historical value of the work now first published. This will appear in the Preface to the third volume.

British Museum,
February 16th, 1866.

[1] Vol. i. p. 288. [See *Grammaticæ Latinæ Auctores Antiqui*, opera Hel. Putschii, 4to. Han. 1605, col. 1901, 2339.]

CORRIGENDA.

Page 4, line 9, *for* evenet *perhaps we should read* invenietur. Cf. page 276, line 23.

„ 7, note [1], *supply* Conquestor *after* qui, *and for* E. *read* F.

„ 15, line 14, *before* omnes *insert* [ut], to complete the sense.

„ 18, line 15, *for* rege Willelmo (as in MS.) *substitute* rex Willelmus.

„ 35, line 25, *add in side margin* 27 Sept.

„ 45, line 7, *for* cœpit (as in MS.) *substitute* fecit, *as in* W. A. C. D.

„ 45, line 12, *for* Normanniam (as in MS.) *substitute* Normannia.

„ 59, line 17, the correction may be unnecessary. Cf. p. 100, l. 26, and p. 113, l. 5.

„ 62, line 11, *for* antem *read* autem.

„ 73, line 1, *supply* A.D. 1096 *in side margin.*

„ 82, line 21, *for* innuens *perhaps we might read* irruens.

„ 95, line 17, *for* superbiam (as in MS.) *substitute* substantiam.

„ 111, line 13, *for* equitus *read* equites.

„ 113, line 22, *for* solidos *read* solidis.

„ 118, line 8, *for* nunclaret *read* nunciaret.

„ 183, line 1, *for* mandacis *read* mandatis.

„ 190, note [2], *for* and F. *read* and E. F.

„ 202, line 1, no correction is necessary, but cf. p. 181, l. 21, and p. 369, l. 18.

„ 230, note [4], *for* in C. *read* in A. C.

„ 235, line 9, *for* achiepiscopi *read* archiepiscopi.

„ 365, line 21, *for* marturiori *read* maturiori.

„ 397, note [1], *for* so C. D. *read* so A. C. D.

„ 424, note [3], *after* MS. *add* and E.

„ 445, line 23, *for* 1118 *in the margin, read* 1188.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

PROLOGUS.

fol. 9 *b*. *Incipit Prologus in Historiam Anglorum, post conquisitionem Angliæ a Normannorum duce Willelmo.*

Reply to those who object to the value of history.

De chronographia,[1] id est, temporum descriptione locuturi, primo[2] detractoribus[3] invidis et nostrum laborem inanem reputantibus[4] respondebimus;[5] dein[6] benivolis et id[7] expectantibus, immo expostulantibus,[8] rerum causam præsenti Prologo breviter[9] aperiemus. Dicunt enim obloquentes,[10] "Quid necesse est vitas vel mortes, diversos[11] mundi hominumque[12] casus literis commendare; prodigia rerum diversarum scriptis impressa perpetuare?" Noverint quid dicat Philoso-

[1] *De chronographia . . . veraciter ediderunt*] The whole of this is borrowed, with some omissions and alterations, from the Prologue of Robert de Monte to his Additions to Sigebert of Gemblours. See Pertz, "Monumenta Hist. Germ.," tom. vi. p. 480. Portions are also found in the Preface of Roger of Wendover and his copyist Matthew of Westminster.

[2] *primo*] primo quidem, G. and Edd.

[3] *detractoribus*] detrectatoribus, G.; detractatoribus, Edd.

[4] *inanem reputantibus*] deputantibus inanem, G. and Edd.

[5] *respondebimus*] Originally written *respondemus*, but altered by a recent hand, and the correction is confirmed by the text of Robert de Monte and F.

[6] *dein*] deinde, G. and Edd.

[7] *id*] Om. F.

[8] *expostulantibus*] postulantibus, F.; depostulantibus. G. and Edd.

[9] *breviter*] describemus ac breviter, G. and Edd.

[10] *Dicunt enim obloquentes*] Delatores enim dicunt, G. and Edd.

[11] *diversos*] hominum, diversosque, G. and Edd.

[12] *hominumque*] Om. G. and Edd.

phus,[1] "Omnis[2] homo naturaliter scire desiderat;" et, "Homo sine literis, et præteritorum reminiscentia, in bestialem dilabitur stoliditatem, et ejus vita vivi hominis reputanda est sepultura." Et si tu mortuorum antiquorum et præteritorum contempnendo oblivisceris, quis tui reminiscetur? Hæc[3] est imprecatio Psalmistæ dicentis, "Dispereat de terra memoria illius;"[4] et ejusdem adoptiva benedictio, "In memoria æterna erit justus,"[5] et cum benedictione evehet[6] nomen ejus in æternum; injusti[7] autem cum maledictione ignominia[8] recitabitur. Ut igitur perversorum devitentur gressus, bonorum, quorum gesta describimus, vestigia sequamur pedetentim. Ecce fructus Scripturarum, ecce speculum humanæ conditionis! Hac de causa, licet aliæ non desint, Moyses legislator in Veteri Testamento innocentiam Abel, invidiam Caim, simplicitatem[9] Jacob,[10] dolositatem Esau,[11] malitiam undecim filiorum Israel, bonitatem duodecimi, scilicet Joseph, pœnam quinque civitatum, pœnitentiam Ninivitarum manifestat, et scripturis commendando nititur perpetuare; ut sic, scilicet, bonos imitemur, malorum autem esse pedissequos abhorreamus. Ad hoc anhelantes[12] sancti Evangelistæ,[13] theologi, Josephus, historiographus Ebræus, Cyprianus, Cartaginensis episcopus et martir, Eusebius Cæsariensis, Jeronimus sacerdos, Sulpicius Severus, Fortunatus et[14] Beda, presbiteri venerabiles,[15] Prosper

Authority of the Old Testament narrative.

Ancient theological writers and historians.

---

[1] *Philosophus*] Aristotle, in Metaphys., lib. i. c. 1; but the latter portion of the quotation (if quotation it be) seems founded on the words of Seneca, "Otium sine literis mors est et hominis vivi sepultura." Ep. lxxxii. p. 542, ed. Lipsii, 1652.

[2] *Omnis*] Omnis siquidem, G. and Edd.

[3] *Hæc*] Hoc, F. G.

[4] Ps. cviii. 15.

[5] Ps. cxi. 7.

[6] *evehet*] evenct. MS.

[7] *injusti*] injustus, Edd.

[8] *ignominia*] et ignominia, Edd.

[9] *simplicitatem*] dolositatem, Edd.

[10] *Jacob*] Roger of Wendover and the best MSS. of Matthew of Westminster read *Job*.

[11] *dolositatem Esau*] negligentiam Esau, simplicitatem Job, Edd.

[12] *anhelantes*] hanelantes, MS.

[13] *Evangelistæ*] Euuangeliste, MS.

[14] *et*] Om. Edd.

[15] *presbiteri venerabiles*] præsbyter venerabilis, et, Edd.

Aquitannicus, gesta Dei scripserunt[1] et antiquorum. Et, ut ad modernos veniam, Marianus Scotus, Fuldensis monachus, et Sigisbertus, Gemblacensis monachus, et quidam alii pectoris profundi Cronica veraciter ediderunt.

Modern historical writers.

Incipimus igitur[2] Anglorum Cronica a duce Normannorum Willelmo, qui ab Haraldo,[3] Anglorum rege perfido et perjuro, lacessitus, ipsum a regni solio depulit diffiduciatum; cujus facti causam lectoribus breviter intimabo. Navigans autem idem Haraldus,[4] dum adhuc juvenis esset, aspirans ad regnum Angliæ, sponte spaciatum[5] navigando raptus est invitus vi ventorum; dum[6] Flandriam credidit attigisse,[7] compulsus venit in Pontivam[8] provinciam. Quem captum consul Ponticus[9] Willelmo, Normannorum duci, præsentavit. At Haraldus[10] asserebat se hæc omnia sponte fecisse, ut clam veniens in Normanniam confœderaretur duci, filiam ejus in sponsam accepturus. Quod[11] juravit super sanctorum multorum reliquias, se fideliter ad quendam terminum completurum. Tanto igitur majori honore susceptus est, quanto secretius adventasset; fuerant enim antea[12] inimici ad invicem. Juravit insuper se post mortem regis Eduuardi, qui jam senuit sine liberis, regnum Angliæ duci, qui in regnum jus habuit, fideliter conservaturum. Consummatis igitur aliquot diebus cum summa lætitia, amplis muneribus ditatus,

Introduction to the present work.

Narrative of Harald's visit to Normandy.

---

[1] *Dei scripserunt*] At first written *descripserunt*, but corrected by the author.

[2] *Incipimus igitur*] Et hic nos incipimus, Edd.

[3] *Haraldo*] Horaldo, MS.

[4] *Haraldus*] Haroldus, F.

[5] *sponte spaciatum*] et sponte spaciatus, Edd.

[6] *dum*] et dum, Edd.

[7] *attigisse*] se attigisse, Edd.

[8] *Pontivam*] Pontinam, G. and Edd.

[9] *Ponticus*] Guy, count of Ponthieu. Wats proposes to read *Pontivus* (with Eadmer, Will. Malmesb., and Rog. Wend.), but the text is here taken from Hen. Hunt. See "Mon. Hist. Brit.," p. 760.

[10] *Haraldus*] Haroldus, F.

[11] *Quod*] Quod et, Edd.

[12] *antea*] ante, Edd.

in Angliam reversus est Haroldus;[1] sed cum in tuto constitueretur, jactitabat se laqueos evasisse hostiles, perjurii crimen eligendo. Adveniente igitur termino, quo cuncta compleri deberent promissa, et jam elapso, nihil fecit. Misit igitur dux ad eum nuncios sollempnes, causam quærens; sed Haraldus mendax et superbus omnia prælocuta procaciter denegando, nuncios turpiter lacessitos, jumentis mutilatis, remisit. Dux igitur merito provocatus, regem Francorum, et omnes vicinos parentes et amicos suos ad ultionem tantæ injuriæ excitavit. Interea, mortuo rege Eduuardo, Haroldus sibi regnum, ut injurias cumularet ampliores, usurpavit, diadema sibi sine ecclesiastica auctoritate imponendo; unde papam Alexandrum et omnes Angliæ prælatos sibi creavit inimicos. Haroldum quoque, regem Norwagiæ, cum mille navibus ipsi adversanti occurrentem[2] rex Anglorum Haroldus devicit; unde superbior effectus suos oppressit.[3] Sed dux Willelmus, Deo[4] Domino ultionum[5] juvante, Angliam, ipso contrito, sicut præcedens[6] narrat historia, sibi conquisivit.[7]

Harold usurps the throne.

---

[1] *Haroldus*] Haraldus, G. and Edd.

[2] *occurrentem*] Added in the margin, but inserted in the text of F. Om. G.

[3] *Interea . . . oppressit*] om. Edd.

[4] *Deo*] Om. G. and Edd.

[5] *ultionum*] ultionem, F. G. and Edd., but the same expression is found elsewhere, at ff. 32 *a*, 60 *a*.

[6] *præcedens*] subsequens, G. *sec. m.* and Edd.

[7] In MS. F. here follows a long addition, comprising the events of the year 1066 previous and subsequent to the battle of Hastings, which, with omissions and alterations, is copied into the Edd.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

fol. 10 a. *De coronatione regis Willelmi Primi, qui Conquestor Angliæ dicitur, interempto rege Haraldo, qui, Deo judice et vindice, propter superbiam suam periit.*[1]

A.D. 1067. Victory of William over Harold, and coronation at London.

Rog. Wen. vol. ii. p. 1. ANNO Dominicæ [2]incarnationis M°.LXVII°., interempto rege superbo et falsidico Haraldo, dux Normannorum Willelmus, triumphator magnificus, obtenta contra sibi adversantes inopinata victoria, urbem lætus adiit Londoniarum.[2] Ubi propter suam piam justitiam et justam pietatem, necnon et militiæ suæ strenuitatem, a clero



Clipeus Haraldi.



Clipeus Willelmi, ducis Normannorum, et jam novi Anglorum regis.

[1] *qui Conquestor . . . . . periit*] Om. F.

[2] *Anno Dominicæ . . . Londoniarum*] These lines at the commencement of the Chronicle are written by Matthew Paris on a piece of vellum pasted down over the text as it originally stood; but the alteration was made previous to the addition of the present rubric or heading. On raising this piece of vellum carefully, the text, although partially erased, can be deciphered thus: "Anno Dominicæ incarnationis M.°LX°VII°. christianissimus dux Normannorum Willelmus ac triumphator magnificus, optenta contra Haroldum regem tam inopinata victoria, urbem adiit Londoniarum." In the initial A., as at first drawn, was inserted the shield of arms of William, viz., gules, three lions or leopards passant gardant or, but a larger and more ornamental letter was afterwards substituted, and the shield, surmounted by a crown, drawn in the margin. The shield also of Harold, azure, a lion rampant double quevé or, is introduced between the columns of text, but *reversed*, to betoken his death.

A.D. 1067. et populo cum summa exultatione susceptus, in verbo veritatis omnibus pacem et veritatem Anglis denunciavit. Cives autem, qui ab Haraldo, tiranno et improbo exactore, injustis exactionibus et angariis veluti ab altero Beornredo[1] premebantur, ipsum ducem, quasi hostiam de cœlo transmissam, in muneribus pretiosissimis, in classico campanarum, processionibus religiosorum, cum omni alacritate honorantes, ipsum regem

25 Dec. communiter acclamaverunt. Dominicæque Nativitatis die ab Aldredo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, regni diadema suscepit; timuit enim hoc munus consecrationis a Stigando, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, suscipere, eo quod illegitime occupaverat illius excellentiam dignitatis. Deinde, homagiis a magnatibus cum fidelitatis juramento obsidibusque susceptis, in regno confirmatus, omnibus qui ad regnum aspiraverant factus est terrori. Rog. Wen. ii. 1.

He returns to Normandy. Civitatibus igitur et castris dispositis, propriisque ministris impositis, ad Normanniam cum obsidibus Angliæ et thesauris innumeris navigavit; quibus incarceratis et sub arcta custodia deputatis, ad Angliam denuo remeavit. Rog. Wend ii. 2.

His tyranny over the English. Et jam, Deo irato, tirannizans, commilitonibus suis Normannis terras Anglorum, qui se ipsi sponte dederant, ingrati more distribuit; et modicum illud, quod eis[2] remanserat, sub jugo posuit perpetuæ servitutis. Unde nobiliores regni servitutis ignari, indignati inconsolabiliter doluerunt. Quidam igitur ad regem Scotorum Malcolmum, quidam in Daciam, quidam in Norwegiam, quidam ad alias regiones confugerunt; malentes propriam strenuitatem et virtutem experiri, quam ingratissimo tiranno Willelmo et superbiæ subjacere Normannorum. Alii quoque loca deserta petentes, insidias Normannis parantes, multos ex eis

[1] *Beornredo*] Boemredo, MS. The allusion is to Beornred, the tyrannical king of Mercia. See Rog. Wend. *ad ann.* 758, 769.

[2] *eis*] illud, MS. Corrected from Wendover and the larger Chronicle in A. C. D.

peremerunt. Recesserunt igitur tunc temporis ab Anglia nobilissimi viri comites Eaduuinus et Morcardus fratres, Mercherus[1] et Weltherus,[2] milites invictissimi et locupletes, cum episcopis, clericis, et aliis multis viris nominatissimis, quos longum est exprimere nominatim. Quorum major pars ad dictum regem Scotorum confugientes, ab ipso honorifice, ne rebellantes ipsum forte expellerent, sunt recepti. Tunc etiam Eadgarus Etheling, sanguine et probitate præclarus, et de regno Angliæ heres legitimus, cernens res natalis patriæ undique patere discrimini, ascensa nave, cum Agatha,[3] matre sua, et sororibus Margareta et Cristina, in Hungariam, ubi natus fuerat, conabatur reverti; sed, tempestate suborta, coactus est in Scociam applicare. Hac igitur occasione actum est, ut Margareta regi Malcolmo nuptui traderetur; soror autem ejus Cristina sanctimonialis facta, cœlesti Regi copulatur. Nati sunt igitur reginæ Margaretæ sex filii et duæ filiæ, quorum tres, Edgarus scilicet, Alexander et David, juxta generis sui nobilitatem reges postea fuerunt. Ex tunc ergo regum Angliæ nobilitas, a propriis per Normannos expulsa finibus, ad reges Scotorum est infelici sidere devoluta, et aureis seculis successerunt luteis deteriora. Nec usque ad tempora hæc scribentis, videlicet annum gratiæ M.CC.L., est[4] inventus rex Angliæ titulo sanctitatis insignitus.

A.D. 1067. Flight of the English nobles.

Eadgar Etheling takes refuge in Scotland.

Kings of Scotland descended from queen Margaret.

Rog. Wend. ii. 3.

A.D. 1250. The date when the present work was compiled.

Cœnobium, quod Bellum dicitur, fundatur.

Rex itaque Willelmus, cum abbatiam de Bello in honorem sancti Martini, pro animabus occisorum in bello fundasset, et castrum de Hastingo festinanter,

Foundation of Battle Abbey.

---

[1] *Mercherus*] Metherus, MS.

[2] *Weltherus*] Weltheofus, W.; Weltherfus, A. C. F.; Welterfus, D.

[3] *Agatha*] Agathe, MS.

[4] *est*] At first written *non est*, but *non* afterwards erased.

A.D. 1067. Siege of Exeter. quod et sic ideo appellavit, firmasset, versus Oxoniam[1] sibi rebellem iter et vexilla direxit, et ipsam obsidione vallavit, et eam sibi subjugavit. Deinde Eboracum properavit, et urbem et cives ferro flammaque miserabili exterminio devastavit. Deinde partes Angliæ aquilonares hostiliter adiens, terras Scociæ conterminas suis incolis in ore gladii viduavit; iraque succensus vehementi, eo videlicet quod nobiles Angliæ profugos receptasset, adversus regem Malcolmum ipsum hostiliter impetere proposuit. Sed Malcolmus impetus ejus vehementer formidans, ei dextram dedit, et ejus ferocitatem muneribus mitigavit. R. Wend. ii. 4.

Northern expedition of William.

De contentione duorum de papatu.

Struggle for the papacy. Hoc etiam tempore, Romæ Alexandro et Cadelo de papatu contendentibus, Mantuæ synodus congregatur; et, mediante Annone,[2] Coloniensi archiepiscopo, Alexandro de symonia se purgante, in sede apostolica statuitur,[3] et Cadelo[4] expellitur symoniacus. Eodem tempore ad vii. milia hominum, orandi gratia Jerosolimam petentes, ab Arabibus in Parasceve obsessi in quodam castro, cæsi sunt, et totidem letaliter vulnerati.[5] Rog. Wend. ii. 5.

Slaughter of pilgrims by the Arabs.

---

[1] *Oxoniam*] So also A. D. F. and Edd. In C. we have *Exoniam* in the rubric and *Oxoniam* in the text. The variation would seem to be due entirely to MS. A., and the genuine reading is certainly *Exoniam*, as appears from the Sax. Chron. Ord. Vitalis, Flor. Worc., Malmesbury, and other authorities, as well as Wendover.

[2] *Annone*] Amone, MS.

[3] Alexander II. was elected pope, 1 Oct. 1061, and confirmed at the Council of Mantua, 31 May 1064. See Jaffé, "Regesta Pont.," pp. 390, 392.

[4] *Cadelo*] So also W. and A. C. D. F. I. and Sigebert, *ad ann.* 1067, but corrected *Cadelus* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

[5] *cæsi . . . vulnerati*] The text is here faulty, as is evident from W. and A. C. D. F., which read, "et tot ex eis vulnerati vel occisi, ut de omnibus vix duo milia sunt [sint, W. I.] elapsi." Cf. Sigebert, *loc. cit.*

fol. 10 *b*. *Natus est regi Willelmo Primo Henricus Primus.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 5. Anno Domini M°.LX°VIII°. natus est regi Willelmo filius in Anglia, et vocatus est Henricus. Nam primogenitus[1] Willelmus Rufus et Robertus[2] in Normannia nati fuerunt, antequam pater eorum Angliam sibi subjugaret. (Rog. Wend. ii. 6.) Eodemque anno rex Willelmus Roberto[3] comiti dedit Northhumbriæ[4] comitatum; in quem homines illius regionis hostiliter insurgentes, ipsum cum nongentis viris in ore gladii peremerunt. Rex autem Willelmus, qui hæc audivit, superveniens, omnes hujus rei auctores usque ad unum delevit. Diebus quoque sub eisdem Angli, qui more Trojanorum et aliorum orientalium barbas nutrierunt, exemplo Normannorum eas raserunt. Nam antea[5] qui cæsariem in cincinnos crescere permittebant, jam ipsam ad humeros totondebant; et sic antiqua hominum consuetudo diatim expiravit, et sanctitas et honestas[6] approbata.

(A.D. 1068. Birth of prince Henry. — The county of Northumberland given to earl Robert. — The English adopt the Norman custom of shaving their hair.)

Willelmus I. rex de multis hostibus suis triumphavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 6. Anno Domini M°.LX°IX°. venerunt quidam ad regem Willelmum, Dunelmensem episcopum Agelricum de ejus proditione[7] accusantes.[8] Qui in villa, quæ Burgum dicitur, a regis W[illelmi] ministris captus, ad

(A.D. 1069. Complaints against Ægelric, bishop of Durham.)

---

[1] *primogenitus*] Om. E.

[2] *Willelmus . . . Robertus*] The names, apparently, should be transposed. The error is Wendover's, who is followed by A. C. D. E. F.; but see the note of Matthew Paris at fol. 13 *a*, in which he attempts to vindicate the claim of William to the right of primogeniture.

[3] *Roberto*] The following note is here added in the margin: "Iste R. ampliavit ecclesiam Sanctæ Mariæ de Thinemue, sicut dicetur post, et monachis Sancti Albani instauravit."

[4] *Northhumbriæ*] Northanhumbriæ, W. and A. C. D. E. F.

[5] *antea*] añtea, MS.

[6] *et honestas*] Added in the margin.

[7] *proditione*] promocione, MS. Corr. from W. and A. C. D. E. F.

[8] *accusantes*] acusantes, MS.

A.D. 1069. Westmonasterium ductus est, sub carcerali custodia detrudendus. Et postea, mense Augusto,[1] frater ejus Egeluuinus, ejusdem loci factus episcopus, fuit in exterminium relegatus. Eodem vero anno, inter duo festa beatæ Mariæ in autumpno, venerunt duo filii Suani et frater ejus Osbernus de regno Danorum cum cogonibus trecentis in Angliam, ut regem Willelmum ab Anglia exturbarent. Quorum adventus cum divulgatus fuisset, exierunt eis obviam in pace Edgarus Etheling, filius Edwardi, et Waltheofus comes, cum multis milibus armatorum, cupientes eorum auxilio regem Willelmum capere, vel carceri perpetuo mancipare. Tunc, fœdere confirmato, junctis viribus ad Eboracum venientes, urbem cum castello quantocius occuparunt, et multa ibidem hominum milia peremerunt; majoresque urbis et provinciæ vinculis constringentes torquebant, et ab eis omnem eorum substantiam abstulerunt. Tandem ibi inter duo flumina Vasam[2] et Trente hiemantes, omnes regionis incolas immisericorditer trucidarunt, vel ad deditionem coegerunt. Sed Willelmus, hieme transcursa, cum maxima armatorum copia superveniens, fortiores hostium fugavit aut cepit, minores autem trucidavit. Tunc Edgarus, licet ipse cum comite Walteofo innumerabiles Normannos peremissent, ad regem Willelmum veniens, et ei humiliatus pacem impetravit et eidem fecit fidelitatem. Erat enim rex Willelmus deprecabilis post victoriam.

Exile of Egelwine, bishop of Durham.

Arrival of the Danes, to aid in expelling William.

Rog. Wend. ii. 7.

Defeat of the Danes and English by William.

De nova servitute ecclesiæ Anglicanæ.

A.D. 1070. Anno Domini M°.LXX°. rex W[illelmus], diabolico excitatus spiritu, vel malorum hominum consilio fascin-

Spoliation of the mo-

Rog. Wend. ii. 7.

[1] *mense Augusto*] At first written *Augusto mense*, as in W. A. C. D., but marked to be transposed.

[2] *Vasam*] Vasan, MS.; Usam, W.

natus, omnia Anglorum monasteria, quæ sub temporibus regum Angliæ piissimorum pace et libertate gratulabantur, auro spolians et argento insatiabiliter apporriavit,[1] sanctorum patrum non deferens sanctionibus, cartis aut statutis; immo etiam nec feretris pepercit aut calicibus. Episcopatus autem et abbatias omnes, quæ baronias tenebant, et eatenus ab omni servitio seculari libertatem habuerant, sub servitute statuit militari; inrotulans episcopatus et abbatias pro voluntate sua, quot milites sibi et successoribus suis, hostilitatis tempore, voluit a singulis exhiberi. Et rotulos hujusmodi servitutis ponens in thesauris, multos viros ecclesiasticos huic constitutioni pessimæ rebelles et contradicentes a regno fugavit. Qui exules et pauperes morituri, ipsi tiranno præcordialiter maledicebant. Unde timemus, ne tanti fuerit talis imprecatio, ut in ipsum et in multos suæ posteritatis descenderit propagata. Sub hac vero tempestate Stigandus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Alexander Lincolniensis,[2] facto ad Scotos refugio, moram ibidem fecerunt, ad tempus latitantes. Solus vero inter omnes Angliæ prælatos Egelwinus, Dunelmensis episcopus, exul zelum Dei retinens, excommunicavit universos ecclesiæ invasores. Eodem anno, deposito apostata archiepiscopo Stigando, qui prius simoniace fuerat episcopus Helmhamensis, ac deinceps Wintoniensis, et novissime Cantuariensis, necnon et regis W[illelmi] fautor subdolus, turpiter cessit et turpius decessit.[3] Cui subrogatur Lamfrancus literatissimus, qui ex monacho

A.D. 1070.

nasteries, and taxation of religious persons.

Rog. Wend. ii. 8.

Deposition of archbishop Stigand.

Lanfranc made arch-

[1] *apporriavit*] appropriavit, D. *sec. man.* F. and Edd.

[2] *Alexander Lincolniensis*] This, again, is an error committed by Wendover, and copied carelessly by Matthew Paris. There was no see of Lincoln at this period, and no bishop of the name of Alexander. Perhaps we should substitute the name of Ægelmar, bishop of the East Angles (Elmham), brother of Stigand, deposed in 1070. See Flor. Wigorn. ii. 5, ed. Thorpe.

[3] *cessit et turpius decessit*] Partly on an erasure, and partly added beyond the line of text.

A.D. 1070. Beccensi abbas factus Cadomensis, ad dictum archipræsulatum rite promovetur. Isto vero procurante, promotus est in abbatem Sancti Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, Paulus, monachus ordinatissimus, rite ac feliciter. Qui ibidem et ordinem monasticum[1] reparavit, et ecclesiam miro tabulatu ex ruina antiquæ civitatis latericio reparavit. Hic Lamfrancus memoratus in archiepiscopatu annis xviii. laudabiliter conversatus, successoribus suis exemplum præbuit piæ conversationis.

bishop of Canterbury.

Paul, abbot of St. Alban's.

Flight and submission of Eadgar Etheling.

Eodem tempore Edgarus Etheling, regis Willelmi dedicius,[2] facto ad Scotos transfugio, suum jusjurandum maculavit. Sed tandem pœnitens, ejusdem regis misericordiam voluit experiri, et ad ipsum in Normanniam navigavit.[3] A rege autem satis honorifice susceptus et donativis honoratus, libram argenti pro stipendio suscepit cotidiano. fol. 11 *a*.

Multi nobiles Angliæ loca deserta petierunt.

A.D. 1071. Anno Domini M°.LXX°I°. Mercherus et Sywardus comites, cum Egelwino, Dunelmensi episcopo, et multis milibus clericorum et laicorum, deserta regionis loca et nemorosa petierunt, regis indignationem et superbiam ferre non valentes nec volentes; unde usus inolevit, ut in domibus comprovincialium gesa, clavæ, secures parietibus et postibus appenderentur, ut sic a profugis, quasi a prædonibus, excubantes defenderentur. Quinimmo Lamfrancus, regis compatriota et specialis consiliarius, jam cœpit prælatos Angliæ, licet sanctos et Deo acceptos, pro simplicitate contempnere et ydiotas vocare, et aliquos de literaturæ ignorantia accusare. Confirmabatur namque[4] nuper in excellentiam Cantua- Rog. Wend. ii. 8.

Retreat of the English nobles to Ely.

Archbishop Lanfranc despises the English prelates.

---

[1] *monasticum*] monastichum, MS.

[2] *dedicius*] So read W. and A. C. D.; but in Edd. and ed. Wend. *deditícius*, and so F. Above this word is written in the MS. *vel adoptivus*.

[3] *navigavit*] In the text *negavit*, but corr. in marg.

[4] *namque*] nanque, MS., and so throughout.

riensis archipræsulatus, et licet sanctum, sua tamen inflavit scientia et erexit dignitas secularis. Cumque memorati exules, adjunctis sibi quamplurimis injuriam passis, in compatriotas dessævissent et dampna irrestaurabilia Normannis irrogassent, ad Elyensem insulam tandem venientes, locum mansionis et refugii illic sibi elegerunt. Qui sæpius illinc hostiliter exeuntes, duce Herewardo, viro nobilissimo et in armis strenuissimo, totum regis regnum non mediocriter affligebant. Castrum quoque ligneum, quod usque hodie Castellum Herewardi nuncupatur, in sui defensionem construxerunt. Jam jamque cum cruentis suspiriis pœnituerunt, prius Normannorum superbiæ, antequam urbes et castra occupassent, taliter non restitisse, omnes profecto de sub cœlo delevissent. Sed eorum promissiones subdolæ, et verba super oleum mollita et super lac mellita, Anglorum credulorum constantiam enervaverunt.[1] Divulgato autem hujusmodi rumore, rex Willelmus, bellator cautissimus, antequam hujus conspirationis numerus robur et radices in altum germinando mitteret, nullas moras annectens, convocata totius fortitudinis suæ nobilitate, ad insulam pervenit memoratam, et ipsam navali, pedestri et equestri exercitu[2] circumcinxit; magnisque trabibus et ramis concraticulatis, in marisco et harundineto vias prius invias pervias reddidit et transmeabiles. Omnesque sibi adversantes multis prœliis et assultibus, quorum varios casus longum esset describere, tandem edomuit. Herewardus tamen comperiens hostes suos diatim sibi nocivum incrementum suscipere, assumptis secum sociorum suorum præelectis, cuneos inimicorum suorum pertranseundo potenter penetravit, et ceciderunt ab eo dissipati vel cæsi a dextris et sinistris, et ad Scociam quantocius avolavit; unde adhuc Scocia,

A.D. 1071.

Proceedings of Hereward.

R. Wend. ii. 9.

William attacks the English at Ely, and subdues them.

Hereward escapes to Scotland.

---

[1] *enervaverunt*] enervavit, MS.

[2] *exercitu*] excercitu, MS., and the same orthography occurs throughout in all the other cases of this word.

A.D. 1071. cum terris sibi conterminis, primitivo nobilium Anglorum sanguine purpuratur. Residui vero, qui in insula morabantur, tandem capti vel sponte sese regi præsentaverunt, quodlibet supplicium ad arbitrium ejus subituri. Herewardus vero cum suis complicibus regi, quamdiu vixit, dampnose nimis et efficaciter adversabatur.

Rex Willelmus regis Scotorum homagium cepit.

A.D. 1072. William invades Scotland, and receives homage from the king.

Anno Domini M°.LXX°II°. rex Willelmus Scociam, eo quod nobiles Angliæ indomitos receptaverat, hostiliter impetens, speravit ibidem aliquos de hostibus suis invenire; sed ipsis in locorum desertis latitantibus et quandoque impetum in Normannos raptim facientibus, cum non posset ipsos patenter convenire, licet omnia perlustrasset, in regem irruere proposuit hostiliter. Sed idem Scotorum rex regis Willelmi ferocitatem timens,[1] quia jam innumeris tam Anglorum quam Normannorum agminibus stipabatur, quæ pacis erant rogitabat; cui providus rex Willelmus, malens pacem quam Martis ambigua fata[2] in locis ignotis et palustribus experiri, lætus adquievit ad horam.[3] Accepto igitur regis Scotorum[4] cum obsidibus homagio,[5] prudens triumphator

Rog. Wend. ii. 9.

Nota homagium regis Scotorum.

[1] *timens*] Added in marg.

[2] *fata*] Before this word there are marks of caret and reference to the margin, but no other word has been supplied.

[3] *adquievit ad horam*] Written on an erasure.

[4] A small bearded head wearing a tall pointed hood of mail, intended for king Malcolm, is here drawn in the margin, with a crown or coronet at the side, falling over.

[5] In the margin, opposite to these words, is added by Matthew Paris: "Anno gratiæ M.XC. Revolve iiii. folia sequentia, ad hoc signum —>, et invenies quod itidem fecit rex Scociæ M[alcolmus] regi W[illelmo] II. Item, anno M.C.LXIII. fecit rex Scociæ homagium reg: H[enrico] II. et filio suo Henriculo. Item, anno M.C.XXXV. postulavit rex Stephanus, ut idem rex faceret ei homagium, et respondit quod hoc pri[us] fecerat homagium Matildi, filiæ regis H[enrici], nepti suæ."

ad Angliam remeavit. Hoc etiam anno Eilricus, Dunelmensis episcopus, apud Westmonasterium sub custodia regis, qui, arridente sibi fortuna, in arrogantiam, Deo sic permittente,[1] erigebatur, detentus obiit, et ibidem in porticu sancti Nicholai sepultus est. A.D. 1072. Death of Ægelric, bishop of Durham.

De ventilatione causæ inter Cantuariensem ecclesiam et Eboracensem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 12. Eodem quoque anno apud Windeleshores, ex præcepto Alexandri papæ, rege etiam Willelmo annuente, in præsentia Huberti, Romanæ ecclesiæ legati, ventilata est causa de primatu ecclesiæ Cantuariensis super ecclesiam Eboracensem.[2] Ubi tandem antiquarum auctoritatibus scripturarum probatum est et ostensum, quod Eboracensis [ecclesia][3] debeat subjacere ecclesiæ Cantuariensi, et ipsius archiepiscopi, ut primatis totius Britanniæ, dispositionibus, in omnibus quæ ad Christianam pertinent religionem fideliter obedire; ita quod, si archiepiscopus Cantuariensis concilium celebret ubicumque sibi viderit expedire, Eboracensis, cum omnibus suis suffraganeis et sibi subjectis clericis, intersit personaliter, ejusque obediat sanctionibus. Benedictionem etiam episcopalem ab ipso recipiat, et eidem canonicam professionem addito faciat juramento. Huic autem provisioni consenserunt unanimiter rex W[illelmus], Lamfrancus Cantuariensis, Thomas Eboracensis archiepiscopus, legatus memoratus cardinalis, cum omnibus regni episcopis et abbatibus. Inde autem confecta est carta sollempnis, quam qui videre desiderat, librum fol. 11 b. de Historia Britonum confectum inter illius anni acta intueatur.[4] Dispute between the sees of Canterbury and York for the primacy.

[1] *permittente*] In the text *permitte*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *Eboracensem*] Ebo̷r. MS., and so elsewhere.

[3] *ecclesia*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. E. F.

[4] *Inde autem . . . intueatur*] This passage is also in A. *marg.*, C. D.

Rex Willelmus Cenomanniam sibi subjugavit.

A.D. 1073. Conquest of Maine. Anno Domini M°.LXX°III°. rex Willelmus in Normanniam transiens in manu potenti, jam sibi[1] factam rebellem potenter sibi subjugavit. Angli vero invictissimi in hac expeditione urbes, vicos, lucos, vineas et pomœria cum frugibus depopulantes, Normannis vicissitudinem, nacto tempore, non immerito reddiderunt. Rex igitur, omnibus subactis, in Angliam prospere remeavit. Rog.Wend. ii. 13.

The monks of St. Ouen attack the archbishop of Rouen. Monachi autem Sancti Audoeni invaserunt eodem anno Johannem, archiepiscopum Rothomagensem, missam celebrantem in festo ejusdem sancti, cum armata satis crudeli manu; unde judicatum est in concilio in eadem civitate congregato, præsente rege Anglorum W[illelmo], ipsos monachos per abbatias diversas perpetuis carceribus mancipari.

William deprives the abbey of St. Alban's of its possessions in favour of Westminster. Eodemque tempore, rege Willelmo non ratione sed voluntario fascinatus impetu, abbatiæ Sancti Albani infestus, multis eam privavit possessionibus et thesauris, ut sic Westmonasterium ditaret ex alieno. Amavit enim domum Westmonasterii, quia ibidem Londoniensium favorem et regni suscepit diadema.

De scandalo in ecclesia exorto.

A.D. 1074. Gregory VII. pope. General Synod held. Anno Domini M°.LXX°IIII°. Gregorius sedit in cathedra Romana[2] annis xii., mense uno, et tribus diebus. Iste papa in sinodo generali symoniacos excommunicavit, uxoratos sacerdotes a divino amovit officio, et laicis missas eorum audire interdixit. Rog.Wend. ii. 13.

F., although omitted in W. and Edd. The work referred to is probably Malmesbury's "Gesta Regum Anglorum," vol. i. p. 474, ed. Hardy.

[1] *sibi*] After this word Wendover has *Cenomanniam* (in accordance with the Sax. Chron. and other early authorities, and the rubric); but the scribe of A. having carelessly repeated the word *Normanniam*, the error was copied into C. D. F. and Edd., and is here also followed.

[2] Gregory VII. was elected 22 April 1073. Jaffé, p. 405.

Conspiratio facta est contra Willelmum regem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 14. Eodem anno comes Radulphus, cui rex Willelmus dederat Estangliæ consulatum, consilio Weltheofi[1] et Rogeri comitum, regem Willelmum a regno expellere moliebatur.[2] Duxit enim Radulphus sororem præfati Rogeri comitis, et in nuptiis hanc proditionem facere Rog. Wend. ii. 15. conspirabant. Erat autem Radulphus ex matre Walensi et patre Anglico generatus; et, sicut diximus, instante die nuptiarum, utriusque partis amici in villa Norwicensi cum congregati fuissent, et post refectionem lautissimam vino inebriarentur, cœperunt unanimiter in regis necem clamosa voce conspirare, asserentes hominem in adulterio natum, ut tanto [regno][3] talibusque viris præesset, minime rationi convenire. Erant autem hujusmodi[4] factionis complices Rogerus, Weltheofus, et Radulphus comites, plures quoque episcopi et abbates, cum baronibus necnon et viris quampluribus inclitis bellatoribus. Qui communiter ad regem Danorum nuncios dirigentes, auxilium ejus instantius flagitabant. Deinde, Walensibus sibi confœderatis, unusquisque in sua potestate, igne accumulato in villis regiis, rapinis et incendiis intendebant; sed regis castellani eorum conatus potenter irritabant. Tunc rex Willelmus, ad instar fulminis, de Normannia subito rediens, Rogerum comitem, cognatum suum, et Weltheofum cepit, et captos incarceravit. Quod comes Radulphus cum cognovisset, ab Anglia meticulosus recessit ilico. Deinde rex Willelmus ad Norwicum exercitum mittens, uxorem comitis Radulphi obsedit, donec humiliaretur,[5] deficientibus alimentis, præstita tunc[6] cautione juratoria, quod

A.D. 1074. Conspiracy of earl Ralph and others against William.

The conspirators send to the Danes for aid.

William defeats them, and earl Roger and Weltheof are taken prisoners. Norwich is besieged.

[1] *Weltheofi*] Weltheoni, MS.

[2] *moliebatur*] At first written *moliebantur*, but *n* afterwards erased. In W. A. C. D. F. *moliuntur*.

[3] *regno*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[4] *hujusmodi*] hujus, W. A. C. F.

[5] *humiliaretur*] Added on to the text in marg.

[6] *tunc*] Added between the lines.

A.D. 1074. ab Anglia obsessi recederent[1] irredituri. Walenses vero, qui præfatis interfuerunt nuptiis, rex Willelmus diversis interire fecit suppliciis. Et, hiis gestis, venerunt ex Dacia Cnuto, filius Suani, et Haco comes, cum navibus ducentis armata manu repletis. Et in portu expectantes per aliquod tempus, cum audissent de fautoribus suis quod factum fuerat, obliquatis velis ad Flandriam navigarunt, cum Willelmo rege congredi non audentes; et ab ipsa prædam non modicam extorserunt. Eodemque anno Editha regina, xv°. kalendas Januarii, apud Wintoniam, diu tamen in agone mortis semivivens, migravit ad Dominum, apud Westmonasterium juxta virum suum sortita sepulturam.

Arrival of the Danes, who afterwards land in Flanders.

Rog.Wend. ii. 16.

Death of queen Edith. 18 Dec.

Weltheofus comes decapitatur.

A.D. 1075. Anno Domini M°.LXX°V°. rex W[illelmus] præcepit Weltheofum comitem in Wintonia decollari, et extra civitatem in bivio sepeliri; sed processu temporis corpus ejus de terra levatur, et sepeliendum honorifice Croilandiam deportatur. Rex deinde ad Armoricanam[2] Britanniam transiens, Dolense castrum obsedit. Sed rex Francorum hostiliter superveniens, obsidentibus alimenta subtraxit; unde rex Willelmus, amissis hominibus et equis multis, turpiter soluta obsidione recessit. Verumtamen postea ipsi reges amici facti sunt. Anno quoque sub eodem, idem rex W[illelmus], die Paschæ, in ecclesia Fiscami filiam suam Ceciliam optulit consecrandam. Per idem tempus Robertus, Willelmi regis primogenitus, cui idem rex, antequam sibi Angliam subjugaret, Normanniam dederat, coram Philippo Francorum rege graviter sed falso conquestus est, quod pater gravis filio ipsam libere possidere non permisit;

Rog.Wend. ii. 16.

Earl Weltheof beheaded.

William goes to Britanny.

His daughter Cecily becomes a nun at Fécamp.

Robert, son of William, solicits aid

[1] *obsessi recederent*] On an erasure.

[2] *Armoricanam*] Armonicam, MS.

unde ejusdem regis auxilio terras patris hostiliter invadendo pro magna parte vastavit. Rex igitur W[illelmus] contra filium suum R[obertum] bellum conseruit cruentissimum apud Archenbrai,[1] ubi rex equo pulsus vulneratus est, et Willelmus filius ejus graviter læsus, et multi de regis familia interfecti. Quapropter rex in mentis amaritudine maledixit Roberto filio suo; unde ipse R[obertus] multipliciter maledictionem paternam ante mortem, quam turpem subiit, in multis agendis evidenter est expertus. Et tunc pater abstulit ei Normanniam, sed moriturus, ad instantiam circumastantium, quia cruce signabatur vel in proximo pro patre signandus erat, eam ei restituit.[2] Sed[3] hæc in sequentibus evenisse intelligantur.

A.D. 1075. From the king of France. Battle at Auchy en Bray (?). Rog. Wend. ii. 17. Curse of William on his son Robert. fol. 12 *a*.

Qualiter Dunelmensis episcopus interfectus est.

Rog. Wend. ii. 17. Murder of Walcher, bishop of Durham.

Eodem tempore[4] Walcherus, Dunelmensis episcopus, contra religionem pontificalem curis se admiscens secularibus, a Willelmo emit comitatum Northanbriæ;[5] et vicecomitis agens vices, pauperum substantiam immisericorditer emunxit.[6] Unde comprovinciales, inito secretissimo consilio, convenientes decreverunt unanimiter, ut ad placita comitatus occulte armati accedentes, sibi

[1] *Archenbrai*] Gerberai, W. and A. C. D. F., and all the early historians, who place the occurrence under the year 1079. It is difficult to account for the variation, unless on the supposition that Matthew Paris had obtained more precise information on the subject. The spot here indicated appears to be *Auchy en Bray*, situated about six miles south-west of Gerberai.

[2] *in multis . . . restituit*] This passage has been added by Matthew Paris to the text at the bottom of fol. 11 *b*, and the words which follow, *Sed . . . intelligantur*, are written over an erasure.

[3] *Sed*] Set, MS. throughout.

[4] He was killed 14 May 1080. Sax. Chron., p. 351, and Flor. Worc. ii. 13.

[5] *Northanbriæ*] Northanhumbriæ, W. B. C. D. F. In the upper margin of the MS. is written, "Nota obprobrium Northanhimbrorum."

[6] *emunxit*] emuncsit, MS.

A.D. 1075. constanter de multis illatis injuriis justitiam exhiberi postularent. Quod si nollet episcopus, ad ultionem convolarent, non episcopum sed vicecomitem ac tirannum invasuri. Cumque queruli coram episcopo cito post convenissent,[1] mitigationem humiliter deprecantes, episcopus torvo vultu respondit, quod nullam eis justitiam exhiberet, antequam quadringentas[2] libras probatæ monetæ sibi numerassent. Optenta igitur licentia ut possent super hoc habere tractatum, unus eorum, cujus arbitrium omnes expectabant, patria lingua insibilans dixit, "*Sort red, god red; slea we þe bissop!*" Non enim concessum fuit diffusum eis tractare consilium. Irruerunt omnes ideo unanimiter in episcopum et ipsum interemerunt, et cum ipso homines circiter centum, edoctos pecuniam argumentose a simplicibus extorquere. Hoc actum est juxta flumen Thyne, ubi dicta placita cruenta præsente episcopo tenebantur. Rog. Wend ii. 18.

Terræ-motus evenit.[3]

A.D. 1076. Oppression of the English by William. Anno Domini M°.LXX°VI°. rex Willelmus cœpit multiformiter nobiles Anglorum opprimere, pecuniam extorquendo, terris et possessionibus antiquis spoliando, Normannos et Francos et alios alienigenas ex spoliis eorum saginando; unde quadam die laqueos occultos, in quos episcopus decidit Dunelmensis, sibi paratos vix[4] evasit. Eodem quoque anno, ut elementorum commotio hominum perturbationi concordaret, vi°. kalendas Aprilis terra tremuit, gelu quoque durissimum 27 April.

[1] *convenissent*] convenisent, MS.

[2] *quadringentas*] quadringintas, MS.

[3] The MS. F. here first begins to agree with the text, but only for this year.

[4] *sibi paratos vix*] On an erasure.

eam a kalendis Novembris usque ad medium Quadragesimæ[1] perdurans constrinxit, adeo ut glacies molarem[2] excederet spissitudinem. A.D. 1076. Earthquake. 27 March.

Paulus creatur in abbatem Sancti Albani.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 18. Anno Domini M°.LXX°VII°. Paulus, monachus Cadomensis, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis Lamfranci nepos, immo aliquorum relationibus consanguinitate propinquior, ex quo a conventu Sancti Albani comperta fuisset ejus religio et peritia, creatus est[3] in ejusdem domus abbatem. Cujus promotio multum placuit archiepiscopo, quam et ipse, ut prætactum[4] est, creditur procurasse. Iste igitur Paulus Neuster natione, prudens, facundus, et dapsilis, regi et archiepiscopo L[anfranco] et omnibus Angliæ magnatibus, ratione sanguinis et patriæ, extitit amicissimus et conformis. Iste, renovata ecclesia et officinis quamplurimis eleganter constructis, librisque nobilibus conscriptis, ordinem monasticum[5] feliciter reformavit, et consuetudines approbatas cœnobiorum ultramarinorum in claustro Sancti Albani inviolabiliter observari constituit, necnon et multis possessionibus nobilibus ampliavit; unde usque hodie tam in spiritualibus quam temporalibus honoribus ampliatur et prosperatur ecclesia memorata. Hujus autem gesta si quis desiderat perscrutari, librum de Gestis Abbatum Sancti Albani intueatur. A.D. 1077. Paul, monk of Caen, chosen abbat of St. Alban's.

R. Wend. ii. 19. Eodemque anno Herlewinus, abbas Becci primus, felicem animam suo reddidit Creatori. Death of Herlewin, abbat of Bec. Quo etiam anno, die Palmarum, circa horam sextam, cœlo existente sereno, stella ingens apparuit prope solem. 9 April. A large star appears near the sun.

[1] *Quadragesimæ*] xl°., MS., here and elsewhere.

[2] *molarem*] In the margin is added *vel* [*mola*]*rum*, but E. agrees with the text. The phrase is repeated *sub anno* 1093, p. 44.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

[4] *prætactum*] protactum, MS.

[5] *monasticum*] monastichum, MS.

De scismate[1] *gravi inter papam et imperatorem.*

A.D. 1077. Schism between the pope and emperor.

Eodemque anno Henricus imperator, collecto Warmaciæ xxiiii^{or}. episcoporum et multorum concilio principum, decerni jubet, omnia decreta et facta Gregorii papæ, qui prius Hildebrandus dicebatur, debere irritari. Ibique omne concilium, præter paucos, Hildebrandum abjuravit. Hildebrandus e contra excommunicavit imperatorem, sub hoc optentu, ut primates regni imperatori excommunicato contradicant. A sententia igitur excommunicationis relaxatis principibus, ipsum imperatorem sub falsa pace absolvit. Quo facto, omnes qui prius Hildebrandum abjuraverant, imperatorem abjurarunt, et Radulphum, Burgundiæ ducem, super se regem statuerunt; missa ei corona a papa, cui erat inscriptum, "Petra dedit Petro, Petrus diadema Radulpho." Hunc igitur Sigefridus, Maguntiæ archiepiscopus, in regem benedixit; et, facta a Maguntinis contra eos seditione, Radulphus cum archiepiscopo noctu aufugit. Hildebrandus omnes imperatori adversantes absolvit. Imperator tamen, Alpium aditibus contra se munitis, ubique omnibus eorum frustratis insidiis, per Aquileiam Radulphum hostiliter aggressus, in fugam compulit, et, iterata expeditione, Suaviam devastavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 19.

Radulph, duke of Burgundy, elected king of Germany.

Rog. Wend. ii. 20.

Ecclesia Becci dedicatur.

A.D. 1078. Dedication of the church of Bec.

Anno Domini M°.LXX°VIII°. ecclesia Becci cum maxima sollempnitate dedicata est in honorem beatæ Mariæ Virginis ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi Lamfranco; cujus operis ipse post abbatem Herlewinum primum in fundamento lapidem projecit, et per Gunzonem monachum resuscitatum fundamentum est ampliatum.[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 20.

---

[1] *scismate*] cismate, MS.

[2] *et per . . . ampliatum*] Added in marg.

Hujus quoque autenticæ ecclesiæ consuetudines claustrales prosequitur claustrum ecclesiæ Beati Albani, martiris Angliæ primitivi.[1] A.D. 1078.

Walenses subjugantur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 20. Anno Domini M°.LXX°IX. rex Willelmus in Walliam duxit exercitum, et eam sibi potenter subjugavit; et a regulis illarum partium homagia[2] et fidelitates accepit. Odonem quoque, fratrem suum, de proditione accusatum[3] cepit, et incarcerari præcepit. Eodem anno[4] Turstinus, abbas Glastoniensis, tres suos monachos sub altari occidi fecit, et xviii. viros ita vulnerari, ut sanguis eorum ab altari super gradus, et a gradibus profluxit in ecclesiæ pavimentum; propter quod perpetuo carceri mancipatus, obiit in eodem.[5] Eodemque anno imperator Henricus in Pentecosten,[6] in concilio Maguntiæ habito, Wibertum, Ravennæ urbis episcopum, papam fore designavit. Eodemque anno Antiochia, caput Syriæ, capitur a paganis, cum tota provincia adjacenti, et aliis regionibus quamplurimis.

A.D. 1079. Subjection of Wales. fol. 12 b. Imprisonment of bishop Odo. Cruelty of the abbat of Glastonbury. Wibert of Ravenna designated pope. Antioch captured.

Imperator Henricus multos hostium prostravit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 21. Anno Domini M°.LXXX°. Hildebrandus papa, qui et Gregorius, quasi sibi divinitus esset revelatum, prædixit falsum regem hoc anno moriturum. Et verum quidem dixit,[7] sed fefellit eum de falso rege conjectura, secundum velle suum interpretata super imperatore Henrico.

A.D. 1080. False prophecy of pope Gregory VII.

[1] *primitivi*] Added on to the text in the margin, but is inserted in the text of F.

[2] *homagia*] homogia, MS.

[3] *accusatum*] acusatum, MS.

[4] *Eodem anno*] Placed by the Sax. Chron. and Flor. Worc. in 1083.

[5] *propter quod . . . in eodem*] Added

[6] *Pentecosten*] So all the MSS.; *die Pentecostes*, Edd., without authority.

[7] *dixit*] So also E.; but *prædixit*, W. and A. C. D. F.

A.D. 1080. Imperator enim Henricus contra Saxones gravi prælio congreditur, ubi regem falsum, scilicet Radulphum, cum multis Saxoniæ principibus interfecit.

Factus est terræ-motus.

A.D. 1081. Council held at Lillebonne. Earthquake.

Anno Domini Mº.LXXXºIº. Willelmus, Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, tenuit concilium apud Lissebonam,[1] præsente rege Willelmo, cum principibus et episcopis multis. Eodemque anno factus est terræ-motus magnus, cum horribili terræ mugitu, prima noctis hora, viº. kalendas Aprilis. Rog. Wend. ii. 21.

Marianus Scotus hucusque Cronica sua digessit.

A.D. 1082. Marianus Scotus ends his Chronicle.

Anno Domini Mº.LXXXºIIº. Marianus Scotus a Nativitate Christi Cronica sua [hucusque][2] digessit, multarum scripturarum diligentissima facta inspectione, multum laborans, ut errorem de annis Domini corrigeret, qui in ciclo Dionisii invenitur, sicut visu clarum est; hinc positis annis Domini ab eo secundum ciclum Dionisii altrinsecus, juxta veritatem evangelii.[3] Rog. Wend. ii. 21.

Matildis regina obiit.

A.D. 1083. Death of queen Matilda.

Anno Domini Mº.LXXXºIIIº. Matildis regina, Baldewini comitis Flandrensis filia, et uxor Willelmi regis Anglorum, diem clausit supremum. Et apud Cadomum in monasterio sanctimonialium, quod et ipsa construxit, honorifice traditur sepulturæ; matrona admodum nobilis ac religiosa, de cujus largiflua liberalitate sancta lætatur Rog. Wend. ii. 21. Rog. Wend. ii. 22.

---

[1] *Lissebonam*] So also in W. A. C. D. E. F.; but we should read *Lillebonam* or *Illebonam*. See Ord. Vital., vol. ii. p. 315, ed. 8vo, 1840.

[2] Supplied from E. In W. A. C. D. F., "usque ad hunc annum."

[3] *evangelii*] ewangelii, MS.

ecclesia.[1] Eodemque tempore rex Willelmus misit justiciarios per omnes Angliæ comitatus, et inquirere fecit quot acræ vel jugera terræ uni aratro sufficerent[2] per annum in singulis villis, et quot animalia possent sufficere ad unius hydæ culturam. Fecit etiam inquiri de urbibus, castellis, villis, vicis, fluminibus, paludibus, et silvis, quem censum redderent per annum, et quot milites essent in unoquoque regni comitatu. Quæ omnia in scriptum redacta et Westmonasterium delata, in thesauris regum usque hodie reservantur. Deinde de unoquoque aratro, id est, hyda terræ, totius regni vi. solidos cepit argenti;[3] unde diatim postea cœpit, maledictionibus super caput suum congestis, corpore manifeste deteriorari.

A.D. 1083. Survey of England made, and recorded.

De scismate[4] *inter Romanam ecclesiam et imperatorem.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 22.

Anno Domini M°.LXXX°IIII°. Romani imperatorem Henricum receperunt,[5] et a papatu abjudicatur eorum judicio Hildebrandus. Cujus loco Wibertus, Ravennensis urbis archiepiscopus,[6] in sedem apostolicam inthronizatur, qui Clemens nominatur.[7] Ac deinde juste omnes Hildebrandum fuisse depositum conclamant, tanquam

A.D. 1084 Wibert inthroned as pope Clement III.

---

[1] In the margin is the following addition: "*Nota quod tunc factus est magnus liber* qui habitus in thesauro Westmonasterii dicitur Domesdai; et dicitur sic, quia nulli parcit, sicut nec magnus dies judicii." In MS. F. this addition is inserted in the text, with the alteration of *vocatus* for *dicitur*.

[2] *sufficerent*] sufficienter, MS.; and so A. C. D. *pr. m.* E. F. Corrected from W. and D. *sec. m.*

[3] A note is here added in the margin, "Hic incœpit manifesta oppressio Angliæ." In E. similar words are inserted in the text.

[4] *scismate*] cismate, MS.

[5] *receperunt*] Repeated, and afterwards expuncted.

[6] *archiepiscopus*] episcopus, MS. and F. Corrected from W. and A C. D.

[7] Wibert, antipope, was elected 25 June 1080, and inthroned at Rome, 3 June 1083. Jaffé, pp. 443, 444.

A.D. 1084. læsæ majestatis reum, qui contra imperatorem alium ordinavit. Illis autem, qui contra sentiebant, reclamantibus, asserunt paucorum et laicorum judicio papam amoveri non posse, et, quod gravius est, in loco viventis episcopi non debere alium ordinari. Henricus tamen in imperio constitutus est, et a papa Clemente benedicitur Patricius Romanorum. Eodem quoque anno Cassinensium abbas Desiderius contra Clementem papa efficitur,[1] sed cito post moritur dissinteria resolutus. Eodem insuper anno rex Willelmus, in Pentecoste,[2] apud Westmonasterium, Henricum, filium suum juniorem, cingulo donavit militari. Deinde cepit homagia hominum totius Angliæ, et juramentum fidelitatis, cujuscunque essent feudi vel tenementi. Instillatum[3] enim erat auribus ejus, quod propter injustas et frequentes exactiones et oppressiones ejus, universitas[4] regni contra ipsum conspiraverat. Extorta igitur maximæ pecuniæ summa de quibus aliquam sophistice causam poterat invenire, in Normanniam innumeris maledictionibus laqueatus transfretavit.

Desiderius made pope. [Victor III.]

Rog. Wend. ii. 23.

Prince Henry receives knighthood.

William goes to Normandy.

De misera afflictione gentis Anglicanæ.[5]

A.D. 1085. Anno Domini Mº.LXXXº.Vº., cum jam voluntatem Domini super Anglorum gentem Normanni complevissent, nec jam vix aliquis princeps de genere Anglorum superesset in regno, omnesque in mœrorem et servitutem redacti fuissent, reboantibus et detestabiliter jurantibus ipsis elatis Normannis, et jam Anglicum

State of England under the Normans.

Rog. Wend. ii. 23.

[1] Elected in May 1086, and died 16 Sept. 1087. Jaffé, p. 447.

[2] *Pentecoste*] Written at first *Pentecosten*, as in W. A.C. D., but the mark of contraction for *n* afterwards erased. In Edd. *Pentecostes festo*.

[3] In the margin opposite is added, "Ecce læsionem sequitur suspicio!"

[4] *universitas*] At first written *universas*, but corrected by the author; and there are similar corrections throughout.

[5] F. agrees with the text throughout this chapter.

vocatum fuisset in obprobrio, cœperunt pullulare[1] in Anglia, Dei indignatione adhuc non quiescente, thelonea iniqua et consuetudines pessimæ, contra regis sollempne sacramentum,[2] et quanto magis principes obloquebantur de oppressionibus, tanto magis, more Egiptiacæ servitutis, opprimebantur. Qui justiciarii vocabantur, justitiam persequebantur. Qui cervum caperet vel capreolum, exoculabatur; nec erat qui patrocinaretur.[3] Amabat enim rex ferus feras, ac si esset pater ferarum, humanam postponens caritatem. Unde asseritur, quod per triginta et amplius miliaria, ubi erat hominum mansio, terra culta et frugifera, exstirpatis domibus cum pomœriis et hortis,[4] et etiam ecclesiis cum cimiteriis, in forestam, vel potius in deserta et ferarum lustra, rege jubente, sit redacta. Ad castra vero construenda, omnes suos superabat antecessores. Armorum et militiæ amator fuit incomparabilis. Verumtamen pacis amator extitit singularis, sitiens sanguinem homicidarum[5] et latronum. et ultor scelerum inexorabilis. Acierum dispositor et rector prudentissimus, et bellator, quasi esset Marti confœderatus, fortunatissimus et invictissimus. Unde qui diu prudenter Normanniam tanquam jure hereditario suam rexerat, Cenomanniam armis sibi adquisivit, Britanniam Armoricanam[6] subjugavit; in Anglia quoque solus regnavit, Scociam et Walliam subegit. Omnes sibi rebelles etiam conterminos potenter ac prudenter edomuit. Tantaque pax suis regnavit temporibus, quod puella virguncula auro onusta, indempnis et intacta Angliam potuit peragrare.

A.D. 1085.

fol. 13 *a*.

Character of William.

---

[1] *pullulare*] Written at first *pullare*, but corr.

[2] *contra . . . sacramentum*] Added in marg. Om. F.

[3] *patrocinaretur*] At first written *patrocinatur*.

[4] *hortis*] ortis, MS.

[5] *homicidarum*] Written at first *homidarum*.

[6] *Armoricanam*] Armonicam, MS., and so E.

Rex Willelmus morti appropinquans debilitatur.

A.D. 1086. Anno Domini M°.LXXX°VI°. rex Willelmus, quem arma confregerant et curæ arduæ sollicitaverant, jam, utpote qui jam senuit, cœpit nimis debilitari et mortis arram cum infirmitatibus præsentire. Et quia[1] mundanas ejus ferocitates descripsimus, ejusdem pia opera non prætereamus. Dapsilis erat, et elemosinarum largus distributor. Duo cœnobia nobilia fundavit, dotavit, et ditavit; unum in Anglia, in honorem beati Martini, quod Bellum vocavit, pro animabus occisorum in bello conquestus Angliæ, ut prætactum est; aliud in Normannia, apud Cadomum, in honorem sancti Stephani; postea, in Anglia, Selebi.[2] Regina Matildis, ejus uxor, plures ei liberos procreavit, Robertum, Ricardum, Willelmum, et Henricum. Quorum primogenitus[3] Robertus, homo ferus et indomitus, Normanniæ ducatum diu sibi negari moleste ferens, in Ytaliam iratus abiit, ut filia Bonefacii marchionis matrimonialiter sibi copulata, patri fortius adversaretur. Sed hac petitione[4] frustratus, ut prælibatum est, Philippum, Francorum regem, contra patrem suum excitavit. Quare ipsius benedictione et hereditate cassatus, regno Angliæ, Deo justo judice, caruit; immo morte turpi puniri meruit, tam, ut creditur, cœlesti quam corporali lumine spoliatus.[5] Ricardus, magnificus et bonæ indolis adolescens, primævæ florem juventutis acerba morte[6] prævenit.

¶ Nota mores regis Willelmi Primi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 25.

¶ Nota ejusdem generationem.

Nota qualiter mortuus est Robertus Curtheuse, dux scilicet Normanniæ.

---

[1] *quia*] qui, MS.

[2] *postea . . . Selebi*] Added in the margin.

[3] The following note occurs on the lower margin: "Pater concesserat primogenita Willelmo Rufo, tum quia cum dux esset genuit ipsum, tum quia justus et fidelis patri. Maledixit autem Roberto, et abstulit primogenita; unde in pluribus locis pro minore nato accipitur, quia torvus erat et patrem crebro ad iram provocaveret, ita ut alter Esau videretur."

[4] *petitione*] petione, MS.

[5] In the margin is added, "¶ Iste R[obertus] sepultus jacet Gloverniæ, in ecclesia conventuali, in parte australi."

[6] *morte*] So also A. C. D. F., but in W. I. *mors*.

Tradunt autem in Nova Foresta venantem, letali morbo percussum, ubi redacta fuit patria cum suis ecclesiis et incolis in locum venationis, ipsum subito, Deo irato et ultore, expirasse. Willelmus, qui cæsarie et cognomento[1] Rufus, armorum amore et militiæ strenuitate, et animi ferocitate inexorabili patrissavit. Henricus, providus, sed astutus et avarus, patre sic jubente, quia imbellis, officio clericali est addictus, et in eo bene ac expedienter profecit; et jam legisperitus effectus est, diadema Angliæ, ut subsequenter dicetur, suscepturus, Jacob resuscitatus, supplantator redivivus, occupator ambitiosus. Filiæ autem ipsius regis Willelmi quinque erant. Quarum Cecilia Cadomi abbatissa fuit sanctissima. Constantia vero comiti Britanniæ dabatur in conjugium. Adala Stephano, Blesentium comiti, nupta, mulier erat piissima; quæ, viro defuncto, habitum et mores suscepit sanctimonialis, sororis suæ exemplo feliciter et admonitione informata. Quartæ vero filiæ, Haraldo post[2] Anglorum regi promissæ et frustratæ; et quintæ, quæ Andefulso, Galiciæ[3] regi, jurata extitit, nominum prolis[4] non memini.[5] Non enim fructum propagationis fecerunt vel religionis, ut earum nomina præsenti paginæ ad memoriam scriberentur. Rex itaque Willelmus subjectis socialis fuit et humilis; indomitis et rebellibus inexorabilis et crudelissimus. Diebus singulis missam et horas canonicas cum pertinentiis, et de noctibus matutinas sedulus et devotus, verbaque prædicatorum libenter audivit.

A.D. 1086.

Nota de alio, scilicet Ricardo.

Daughters of William.

Rog. Wend. ii. 26.

Disposition and piety of William.

---

[1] *cognomento*] Written on an erasure.

[2] *post*] postea, W. E.

[3] *Galiciæ*] Galacie, MS. and E.

[4] *prolis*] Added in marg. In W. A. C. D. F. *penitus*. They all read *nomina*.

[5] *non memini*] Cf. Ord. Vit. ii. 189.

De statu Romanæ ecclesiæ.

A.D. 1086. Death of pope Gregory VII. Eodemque anno[1] Gregorius papa, qui et Hildebrandus, apud Salernum moritur; et moriturus convocatis[2] confessus est se nimis peccasse in occupatione primo, et postea in negligentia[3] curæ pastoralis. Successit ei Clemens,[4] paucis secedens diebus. Et, eo defuncto, Casinensium abbas Desiderius successit, et Victor nominatur. Rog. Wend. ii. 26. Rog. Wend. ii. 27. Victor III. elected pope.

Rex Willelmus, morte imminente,[5] tres dedit episcopatus.

A.D. 1087. William confers bishoprics on his chaplains. Anno Domini M°.LXXX°VII°. rex Willelmus mortis infirmitate[6] prægravatus, multorum precibus se,[7] quos religiosos noverat, commendans,[8] suis cœpit pie providere. Tribus autem capellanis suis, apud Gloverniam existens, tres contulit episcopatus; Mauricio Londoniensem, Willelmo Norwicensem, Roberto vero Cestrensem. Eodemque anno obiit dux Apuliæ,[9] et successerunt ei duo filii ejus, Rogerus et Boemundus. fol. 13 *b*. R. Wend. ii. 27. Death of the duke of Apulia.

De Berengario hæretico.

Heresy of Berengarius. Eodemque tempore Berengarius,[10] Turonensis archiepiscopus,[11] prolabitur in hæreticam pravitatem, quæ Rog. Wend. ii. 27.

---

[1] Gregory VII. died 25 May 1085. Jaffé, p. 443.

[2] *convocatis*] cardinalibus advocatis, W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *negligentia*] necgligentia, MS.

[4] *Clemens*] This is a mistake, copied from Wendover; but the antipope Clement III. is probably alluded to.

[5] *imminente*] iminente, MS.

[6] *infirmitate*] imfirmitate, MS.

[7] *precibus se*] Added in marg.

[8] *commendans*] comendans, MS.

[9] Robert Guiscard. He died 17 July 1085.

[10] *Berengarius*] Berengerus, MS.

[11] *Turonensis archiepiscopus*] Another error, taken from Wendover, and copied into A. C. D. E. F. He was never archbishop of Tours, but archdeacon of Angers. In all probability we should read, with Malmesbury, *Turonensis heresiarcha*, ii. 462.

Rog. Wend. ii. 28. magnam Galliæ partem maculavit. Papa vero Leo,[1] qui Victori successit, soliditati ecclesiæ providens, Vercellis concilium statuit contra ipsum B[erengarium], ubi erroris ejus tenebras extersit. A.D. 1087.

Inventum est corpus Walwani.

Rog. Wend. ii. 28. Hoc etiam tempore corpus Walwani, militis præclarissimi, cujus gesta inclita tractatus exigunt diffusos[2] et speciales, in provincia Walliarum in sepulchro inventum est. Hic nepos fuit Arthuri, magni Britonum regis, bellator invictissimus, facetus et irreprehensibilis, ex ipsius regis sorore. Erat autem sepulchrum ejus longitudinem habens xiiii. pedum. Regnavit autem in illa parte Britanniæ, largiente eidem principatum rege A[rthuro], avunculo suo, quæ hucusque Galweia nuncupatur; et dicitur ab ipso Galeweia, quasi Walweia, corrupto nomine per antiquitatem.

Discovery of the body of Walwain.

De morte Willelmi, Anglorum regis Primi.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 28. Eodem anno rex Anglorum in Normannia moram faciens, per aliquod tempus, ut respiraret, moram pacifice continuavit. De cujus quiete rex Francorum derisorie dixit et satirice, "Rex Anglorum jacet Rothomagi more mulierum in puerperio. O quot candelæ, credo centum milia, oblaturus sum pro eo, quando ad ecclesiam perget purificandus!" Quod cum regi Willelmo nunciatum fuisset, iratus respondit, "Juvabo eum de candelis aliquot inveniendis." Et, repentino impetu facto et occulto, multas civitates et vicos Fran-

William is derided by the king of France.

---

[1] *Leo*] This is also from Wendover, but a grave error, arising from a careless interpretation of the text of Malmesbury. Urban II. succeeded to Victor 12 March 1088. The Council held at Vercelli against the errors of Berengarius, under pope Leo IX., took place in 1050. See Jaffé, p. 372.

[2] *diffusos*] disfusos, MS., after which *tractatus* is repeated again in the margin.

A.D. 1087. He ravages the French territory.

corum, spreto corporis periculo, succendit, et multas eorum terras ferali exterminio devastavit. Ira igitur corpus suum totum admixta labori et mortis tempus anticipavit.[1] Auxit etiam ægritudinis molestiam, et ejus casum acceleravit, quod ejus equus[2] amplam fossam transiliens, interiora ejus dirupit.[3] Resumpto tamen spiritu et assumpto salutis viatico, Normanniam Roberto[4] filio suo, non tamen benivolo corde vel sereno vultu,[5] delegavit, indignum eum reputans regali dignitate. Sed nec ipse Robertus ipsum ducatum gratanter suscepit; verumtamen ut patrem pacaret moriturum, et solvens maledictionem eidem daret benedictionem,[6] promisit ei Jerosolimitanam peregrinationem pro ejus anima magnifice consummare; quod et in posterum complevit. Willelmo autem Rufo filio suo Angliam, scilicet conquestum suum, assignavit; supplicans ut Anglos, quos crudeliter et veluti ingratus male tractaverat, mitius confoveret. Possessiones vero maternas

R. Wend. ii. 29.

He disposes of his states and treasure to his sons.

[1] In the margin opposite is added the following note: "Iste Willelmus, conquestor Angliæ, rex Christianissimus, fundavit ii. cœnobia nobilia, videlicet de Bello, in partibus Angliæ orientalibus, et Selebi, oc[c]identalibus;" beneath which is written, "*Nota peritiam confessoris.* Primum fundavit pro victoria optenta, secundum pro eo, quod quendam sibi consanguinitate propinquum veneno occiderit, timens ne ipsum de regno Angliæ supplantaret, vel ducatu, vel utroque, quia strenuissimus fuit. De quo peccato cum se confessus fuisset nullo modo pœnitere vel posse pœnitere, sciscitabatur sanctus episcopus confessor ejus, si doluisset quod hoc non potuit, et si placeret ei pœnitere posse? Respondit, quod multum doluit quod non potuit dolere et dolendo pœnitere, quod ipsum peremit. Episcopus igitur super hoc exhilaratus,* confortavit eum, et erexit eum in spem bonam qui desperatus fuerat, et desperans multa mala perpetraverat; et sic in extremis communionem in Christi bonitate confidens accepit." Lower down is added as follows: "Super hunc locum, 'Curremus in odore unguentorum tuorum' [Cant. i. 3], dicit sanctus, 'Qui se petit trahi, jamjam trahitur.' Hic recitavit episcopus."

[2] *equus*] equs, MS.

[3] *dirupit*] dirrupit, MS.

[4] *Roberto*] From this word F. again agrees with the text, but only as far as *obligavit*, p. 36.

[5] *vultu*] After this word, *Normanniam* is repeated in the margin.

[6] *benedictionem*] Before this word *et* has been interlined, and afterwards erased.

* *exhileratus*, MS.

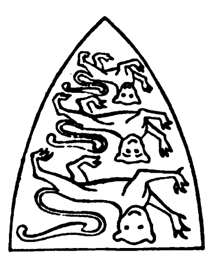
A.D. 1087.

cum thesauris suis impretiabilibus Henrico, quem plus dilexit, relinquens, obnoxius deprecabatur,[1] ut de parte ejusdem thesauri sufficiente nobile construeret cœnobium pro animæ suæ redemptione. Multum enim se confitebatur peccasse in Anglorum nobilitatem,[2] quos falsis decepit pollicitis. Et hoc satis competenter complevit Henricus apud Radingum. Rite igitur ordinatis rebus universis, viii°. idus Septembris viam universæ carnis est ingressus, anno regni sui xxii°., ducatus vero quinquagesimo secundo, vitæ suæ lix°.[3] Corpus autem Cadomum deportabatur tumulandum. Robertus statim recessit, insidias fratri primogenito paraturus. Willelmus vero Rufus, antequam pater sepeliretur, in Angliam transfretavit, utilius[4] reputans regnum sibi firmare vivorum, quam mortui cujuscunque exequiis interesse. Solus Henricus ex omnibus liberis regis sepulturæ interfuit,[5] centum offerens libras argenti.

Rog. Wend. ii. 30.

His death and burial.

6 Sept.



Willelmus Rufus de facili sibi Angliam inclinavit.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 30, 31.

William Rufus comes to England, and is crowned.

Willelmus vero, cognomento Rufus,[6] filius regis Willelmi Primi, veniens in Angliam, consilio et auxilio Lamfranci, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, qui ipsum a primis annis nutriverat et militem fecerat, sine moroso dispendio Angliam sibi conciliatam inclinavit; nec tamen totam. Sed ut negotium regis optatum cito sortiretur effectum, ipsum die sanctorum Cosmæ et Damiani, etsi cum sollempnitate mutilata, coronavit; veraciter promittentem ut Angliam cum modestia gubernaret, leges sancti regis Edwardi servaturus,[7] et

[1] *deprecabatur*] At first written *deprecatur*.

[2] *nobilitatem*] nobilitate, MS., and so F.

[3] In the margin is drawn the shield of William, reversed, with a sceptre and crown also reversed.

[4] *utilius*] By error *si repu* is written after this word, and then underscored for omission.

[5] *interfuit*] Added in marg.

[6] In the lower margin the same royal shield is depicted, with a crown below.

[7] *leges . . . servaturus*] Added in marg., but is in the text of F.

A.D. 1087. 27 Sept. Many nobles are opposed to him, in favour of Robert.

Anglos præcipue tractaret reverenter. Verumtamen quamplures Anglorum nobiles formidantes, et augurantes ipsum velle patrissare, noluerunt ei obsecundare, sed elegerunt potius Roberto, militi strenuissimo, militare, et tanquam primogenito ipsi in regem creato famulari, quam fallacibus promissis Rufi fidem adhibere. Sed Lamfrancus hæc sedavit, bona promittens.[1] fol. 14 *a*.

Rex Willelmus Secundus in suos desertores desævit.

[A.D. 1088.] Efforts of William II. to conciliate the nobles.

Videns igitur novus rex Willelmus Rufus infinitos regni proceres contra se conspirantes, usus Lamfranci archiepiscopi consilio, Anglorum nobiliores ac fortiores invitando secretius convocavit; quibus bonas leges et pristinæ libertatis consuetudines in districto veritatis examine jurans, super evangelia[2] pollicens, omnes ipsos nimis credulos ad fidele ejus servitium obligavit. Nec minori astutia Rogerum de Monte-Gomerico, ut sibi equitaret adulando circumvenit; dicens libenter[3] regno cessurum, si sibi et aliis, quos tutores sui pater [reliquerat],[4] utile complaceret.[5] Quid plura? Lamfranci archiepiscopi edoctus prudentia, omnes Anglos, quos insuperabiles, si fuissent inseparabiles, cognoverat,[6] talibus sermocinationibus et promissis dissipatos et enervatos sibi conciliavit. Unde in constanter obstantes, qui pauci remanserunt, lora dirigens hostiliter et vexilla, eorum conamina, universitatis adjutus viribus, quantocius annullavit; quos omnibus bonis spoliavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 33.

---

[1] *Sed Lamfrancus . . . promittens*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

[2] *evangelia*] euuangelia, MS.

[3] *libenter*] se libenter, W. A. C. D. F.

[4] *reliquerat*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[5] *complaceret*] The text reads *judicarent*, after which is a mark of caret, and *complaceret* added in the margin; but both verbs cannot remain. The MSS. A. C. D. F. read with W., *utile videretur*. Cf. Malmesb. ii. 488.

[6] *cognoverat*] congnoverat, MS.

Urbanus in papam creatur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 35. Anno Domini M°.LXXX°IX°. Odo ex monacho Cluniacensi episcopus Hostiensis effectus, contra Clementem papam et Henricum imperatorem fit papa, et Urbanus vocatur.[1] Cujus temporibus quidam Alemanniæ comes facinorosus, et indefessus Henrici imperatoris persecutor, mira Dei ultione a muribus,[2] a quibus nullo modo potuit defendi, corrosus interiit. Verumtamen tradunt naturales, quod qui a[3] bestia, quæ uncea dicitur, mordetur,[4] quæ est lea notha, ab omnibus muribus, quæ ratones vulgariter dicuntur, qui in vicinia sunt, impetitur, mordetur, et perimitur. Qui casus forte accidit comiti memorato. A.D. 1089. Election of pope Urban II. Legend of a German count eaten by rats.

De morte Lanfranci archiepiscopi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 36. Eodem anno obiit Lamfrancus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui, inter cetera pietatis opera magnifica, ecclesiam Christi Cantuariensem renovavit, officinasque monachorum fabricavit; dignitates quoque ecclesiæ suæ, antecessorum suorum negligentia deciduas, reformavit; terras quamplures alienatas et redditus strenue revocavit, unde xxv. maneria monasterio suo restituit. Xenodochia duo extra civitatem, quæ vulgariter hospitalia vocamus, construxit, et de suo conquestu eisdem redditus sufficienter assignavit. Abbatiam Sancti Albani, mediante Paulo abbate, et in ordine monastico reformavit et ædificiis renovavit. Unde usque nunc in ejusdem ecclesiæ claustro et conventu tam Lamfranci quam Anselmi vigent indelebiliter statuta et consuetudines approbatæ, adjectæ regulæ beati Benedicti. Angliam quoque, quotienscunque rex Death of archbishop Lanfranc. ¶ *Nota Lamfranci mores et actus.*

---

[1] Urban II. was elected 12 March 1088. Jaffé, p. 449.

[2] *muribus*] In the margin is added, "quos ratos dicimus."

[3] *a*] ab, MS.

[4] *dicitur, mordetur*] At first written *mordetur dicitur*, but marked to be transposed.

A.D. 1089. absens fuerat, adeo strenue, adeo pacifice custodivit et rexit, ut inter milites pax floreret[1] et justitia, et inter prælatos et clericos honestas et religio felix susciperent incrementum. Lectioni vigilanter et orationi intendebat, unde libros nonnullos tam Veteris quam Novi Testamenti, scriptorum ignorantia corruptos, correxit; cujus emendationis luce Anglorum et Francorum ecclesia se gaudet illustrari. Mores, habitum, aut gestum monasticum, propter pontificalem dignitatem, nec in minimo permutavit. Nunquam humilitatis metas propter literaturæ eminentiam manifeste transgressus est, nisi in depositione beati Wlstani,[2] episcopi Wigorniensis. Quod tamen Dei providentia sic fieri permisit, ut sic scilicet sancti viri simplicis sanctitas patesceret serenata, sicut in Historia de ipso sancto scripta declarat[3] manifeste.

History of S. Wulstan.

Willelmus Secundus jam de rege factus est tirannus.[4]

Tyranny of William II.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 37.

Defuncto igitur piæ memoriæ archiepiscopo Lamfranco, rex Willelmus II. jam sibi visus est[5] solus in Anglia regnare, ex quo Lanfrancus[6] impetus sui lora non retraxit. Monasteria igitur fere totius Angliæ in manu sua pastoribus suis viduata cepit, et perverse hoc nomine *manu*, id est, protectione et defensione abutens, omnia gravi depopulatione vastabat, et ad firmam duris conditionibus commendabat. Ut quod rex omisit abradere, alii excoriarent; et quos rex omisit excoriare, alii immisericorditer eviscerarent; non recolens scriptum, "Omnia sunt principis tuitione, non depopulatione."[7]

[1] *floreret*] At first written *floret*, but corr.

[2] *Wlstani*] Wlstanu, MS.

[3] *declarat*] We should read *declaratur*, or omit *in* before *Historia*. In the margin is here added: "Inde tamen gravem postea peregit Lamfrancus pœnitentiam." Om. F.

[4] *tirannus*] tiranis, MS.

[5] *est*] Interlined.

[6] *quo Lanfrancus*] On an erasure.

[7] *non . . . depopulatione*] Added in marg. Om. F.

Rex Uuillelmus II. et dux concordati sunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 37. Anno Domini M°.XC°. rex Willelmus II. contra Robertum fratrem suum arma movens et vexilla, castella Sancti Walerici et Albemarliæ cepit violenter; milites quoque suos intromittens, terram fraternam cœpit devastare. Tandem amicorum intermeantium solertia[1] diligentissima, qui ipsis dixerunt, "Absit, ne Franci fraternas acies, alternaque regna profanis[2] decertata odiis, derideant subsannantes," elaboratum est,[3] ut in talem concordiam convenirent, anno tamen illo fere elapso: resignatis castris et quiete clamatis, quæ rex ceperat et dux obsederat, iterato redderentur[4] ipsi regi, idemque[5] rex efficaciter juvaret fraterno affectu ipsum ducem ad omnia quæ pater ejus habuerat, præter Angliam, conquirenda. Franci enim eo tempore multa fol. 14 b. super ducem occupaverant. Statuerunt etiam, ut si quis eorum prius obiret absque herede, superstes fieret heres illius. Quod pactum juraverunt xii. principes vice regis, et xii. barones vice ducis.

A.D. 1090. War in Normandy, and reconciliation of William and Robert.

Rex Scotorum Malcolmus homagium fecit regi Willelmo II.[6]

Rex autem Scotorum Malcolmus, audito quod pax inter fratres reformaretur, cœpit vehementer improbos impetus Willelmi regis, immo jam tiranni, formidare. Festinavit igitur eidem Willelmo antequam extermi-

Submission of Malcolm, king of Scots, and homage to William.

[1] *solertia*] sollertia, MS.

[2] *profanis*] prophanis, MS.

[3] *est*] After this word is interlined *igitur*, and the paragraph marked to begin with *Elaboratum*; but this is evidently an error.

[4] *redderentur*] Added on to the text.

[5] *idemque*] At first written *idem*.

[6] In the margin opposite is added: "Item super hoc respice acta anni M[l].C[l]LXXV[l]. in sequentibus." This chapter is copied into F., but inserted under 1092.

A.D. 1090. nium in Scocia inchoaret, quæ pacis erant suppliciter postulare. Erat enim idem rex M[alcolmus], licet armis strenuissimus, vir circumspectus et modestus, et omni præditus sanctitate. Veniens igitur ad regem Angliæ Willelmum, humilitate sua regis flexit ferocitatem; asserens se nullum hostium suorum receptasse [1] vel recepturum fore, nisi tali intentione, ut ipsos dominum suum recognoscentes, regi, persuasionibus suis mediantibus, redderet pacificatos et fideliores. Mitigato igitur regi Willelmo rex Scotorum M[alcolmus] fecit homagium et fidelitatem; et sic magnis honoratus donativis, ad propria cum prosperitate remeavit.

Nota regis Scotorum Malcolmi magnificentiam.

Magnanimity of Malcolm.

Quoniam de rege Scotorum Malcolmo tractatum est, non arbitror alienum a materia ejus quandam enucleare magnificentiam. Contigit ut quidam nobiles contra ipsum in regno suo conspirassent, ita ut in necem suam occulte conjurassent, quodam proditore, qui omnibus videretur major ac fortior, machinante; qui se etiam jactabat regem perempturum. Hæc autem omnia, cum per fideles suos regi innotuissent, convocatis cum ipso proditore sociis et venatoribus, it venatum. Et cum ad quendam saltum venissent, omnibus semotis ex industria sociis et venatoribus, excepto solo proditore, rex ait, "Ecce, ego et tu mecum, solus cum solo,[2] similibus equis et armis vecti et communiti. Nullius nostrum melior conditio. Si igitur velis, audes et vales, ensibus eductis fortunam duelli experiamur; et redde hostibus meis, complicibus tuis,[3] me quem promisisti detruncatum. Si enim me occidendum speras, quando melius? quando secretius? quando virilius?

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 37.

[1] *receptasse*] At first written *se receptasse*, but *se* erased.

[2] *solo*] Added in marg.

[3] *tuis*] Interlined.

Si venenum paras, hoc muliercularum; si dormientem invadere proponis, hoc sicariorum et jugulatorum est. Age, igitur,[1] quod viri est et militis, et solus cum solo dimica, dum soli sumus, confidenter." Miles igitur confusus hiis verbis, quasi fulmine repercussus, ex equo in terram corruit, projectoque gladio ad pedes regis cadens, cum mœrore veniam de concepta temeritate et proditione postulans, quod petiit, impetravit. A.D. 1090.

De monachis Sancti Albani apud Thinemue primo introductis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 39.

Grant of Tynemouth priory to the abbey of St. Alban's.

Circa dies illos Robertus de Molbraio, Northambrensis comes, vir quidem Deo devotus, volens, divina inspiratione tactus, ecclesiam Beati Oswini, regis et martiris, de Thynemue, jamdudum [desolatam][2] in temporalibus et spiritualibus restaurare, atque ibidem Deo et sancto martiri Oswino monachos servituros ponere, consilio amicorum suorum Paulum, abbatem[3] Sancti Albani, super hoc convenit, petens obnoxius ut illuc de domo sua, quam de omnibus Angliæ quasi ordinatissimam præelegit, aliquos de monachis destinaret; promisitque omnia victui et vestitui eorum necessaria se ipsis abundanter[4] et honorifice ministraturum. Cujus petitioni memoratus abbas adquiescens, quosdam illuc de fratribus destinavit. Quibus comes in maneriis, ecclesiis, redditibus, piscariis, molendinis et rebus aliis cum sufficienter providisset, et cartis prædicta omnia ab omni seculari servitio soluta et penitus libera confirmasset, dedit prædicto abbati Paulo ejusque successoribus, et ecclesiæ Beati Albani, Angliæ prothomartiris, ecclesiam de Thinemue, cum omnibus pertinentiis suis, pro salute sua et antecesso-

[1] *igitur*] Repeated, but expuncted.
[2] *desolatam*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.
[3] *abbatem*] Added in marg.
[4] *abundanter*] habundanter, MS.

A.D. 1090. rum suorum æternaliter possidendam; ita quidem, ut abbates Sancti Albani, qui pro tempore fuerint, cum consilio ejusdem loci conventus, liberam habeant dispositionem priorum et monachorum, tam in illis ponendis quam removendis, sicut viderint expedire.

De morte Remigii, Lincolniensis episcopi.

A.D. 1091. Death of Remigius, bishop of Lincoln, and consecration of his church.

Anno Domini M°.XC°I°. Remigius, Lincolniensis antistes, cum ecclesiam suam jam perfectam dedicare disponeret, rege præsente et episcopis multis, Thomas, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, resistendo contradixit, affirmans eam in parrochia sua esse constructam. Unde pro appellatione ab archiepiscopo interposita, necnon pro morte Remigii continuo subsecuta,[1] est solempnitas illa dilata. Postea vero rex Willelmus, cujus consilio et auxilio ecclesia illa fuit a primo loco suo remota, et quam pro anima patris sui multis ditaverat possessionibus, procuravit ut ea magnifice consummaretur.[2] Rog. Wend. ii. 40.

Rex Willelmus II. infirmatus[3] emendationem promittit.

A.D. 1092. Illness of William II. and promise of reform.

Anno Domini M°.XC°II°. rex W[illelmus] apud Gloverniam jacebat in Quadragesima graviter infirmatus. Unde secundum illud Psalmigraphi,[4] "Imple facies ignominia, et quærent nomen tuum, Domine,"[5] corde[6] ad horam contritus præ mortis timore, se pravas regni leges amoturum et bonas, prout ante promiserat, subrogaturum, vovit et firmiter promisit. Qua de causa dedit archipræsulatum Cantuariensem Anselmo Bec- Rog. Wend. ii. 41.

[1] He died 7 May 1092. See Flor. Worc. ii. p. 30.

[2] Here is added in the margin, "Nota quod hoc bonum fecit rex Willelmus II."

[3] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[4] Ps. lxxxii. 17.

[5] *et . . . Domine*] Added in marg.

[6] *corde*] Repeated superfluously after *contritus*.

censi,[1] viro sancto ac venerabili, et eleganter literato; atque Roberto, cognomento[2] Bloet, cancellario suo, episcopatum contulit Lincolniensem. Rex tamen Deo ingratus, postquam convaluit, solito se exhibuit tam nobilibus regni quam prælatis deteriorem. Et sic iram Dei diatim super caput ejus, prout in ejus morte patenter claruit, coacervavit.

A.D. 1092. Anselm, abbat of Bec, made archbishop of Canterbury, and Rob. Bloet, bishop of Lincoln.

fol. 15 a.

Moritur rex Scotorum Malcolmus.[3]

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 42.

Deaths of Malcolm, king of Scots, and queen Margaret.

Eodem anno pius rex Scotorum Malcolmus, cujus actus in benedictione vivunt immortales, cum non immerito contra tirannum Willelmum II.[4] regem sibi injuriantem guerram movisset, interceptus est subito, et, positis insidiis, interemptus. Quod ut audivit regina ejus Margareta, quæ tunc forte infirmabatur, duplici contritione sauciata, ait orans ad Dominum, "Domine mi, satis est quod vixi, tolle animam meam." Et faciens sacerdoti de omnibus plene confessionem, accepto salutis viatico, animam felicem Deo statim destinavit. Interfectus est autem cum memorato rege Malcolmo ejusdem regis M[alcolmi] filius, et[5] heres si supervixisset, et hominum numerosa multitudo, quæ omnia sanctæ reginæ letalem dolorem adauxerunt. Tunc Scotorum nobiles elegerunt Duncanum,[6] Malcolmi regis fratrem, in regem. Sed Duncanus, filius Malcolmi, qui obses erat in curia regis Willelmi II., auxilio ejus fretus superveniens, patruum suum aufugavit, et post pa-

Election of Donald as king, who is driven out by Duncan.

---

[1] *Beccensi*] abbati Beccensi, W. A. C. D. F.

[2] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[3] *Scotorum Malcolmus*] At first, *Malcolmus Scotorum*, but marked to be transposed. From this chapter MS. F. begins to agree closely with the text here printed.

[4] *II.*] Rufus, F., here and elsewhere.

[5] *et*] Written at first *ejus*.

[6] *Duncanum*] This is an error, but repeated in E. and F. We should read *Duvenal*, with W. A. C. D., as confirmed by the Sax. Chron., Flor. Worc., and Simeon of Durham.

A.D. 1092. trem suum regnavit.[1] Eodemque anno Johannes, præsul Wellensis, natione Turonicus, assensu Willelmi regis, muneribus intervenientibus, transtulit in Bathoniam sui cathedram præsulatus.

The see of Wells transferred to Bath.

De restauratione civitatis Karleolensis.

A.D. 1093 Anno Domini Mº.XCºIIIº. rex Anglorum Willelmus II. reædificavit civitatem Karleoli, jam per annos trecentos desolatione Danica desolatam; et ex australibus Angliæ finibus illuc habitatores transmisit. Eodem anno tanta erat pluviarum inundatio, quantam nemo se meminit prævidisse; deinde terra cum fluminibus maximis adeo induruit congelata, ut bigis et plaustris flumina transeuntibus pontes præbuerunt glaciales, qui spissitudinem molarem sunt transgressi.[2] Resoluto tandem gelu, aquarum crustæ superficiales conglomeratæ molendina, cum pontibus et vivariis et domibus conterminis, dampnose[3] nimis confregerunt. Eodemque anno baculus igneus a meridie usque ad aquilonem extensus in cœlo visus est, kalendis Augusti; et subsecuta est fames validissima, et hominum tam generalis tabes et mortalitas, ut vivi tædio afficerentur ut mortuos sepelirent. Per idem tempus rex Willelmus II. a fratre suo Roberto provocatus, quod jusjurandum non observasset quod ipsi fecerat, in Normanniam iratus transfretavit. Et cum fratres ad colloquium convenirent, juratores utrorumque, a quorum arbitrio totum negotium ex omnium consensu dependebat, totam culpam et discordiæ causam in regem refuderunt,[4] dicentes inter cetera, quod absurdum fuit et injustum, quod aliquam haberet potestatem junior super primogenitum. Rex vero eos negligens, et iratus

Carlisle is rebuilt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 42.

Inundations and great frost.

Rog. Wend. ii. 43.

Meteor in the sky, 1 Aug., and subsequent famine.

William II. goes to Normandy.

[1] In the extreme margin Matthew Paris has noted: "Reges Scociæ post conquestum Angliæ, Malcolmus, qui peremptus est, deinde Duncanus, filius ejus."

[2] *transgressi*] trangressi, MS.

[3] *dampnose*] dapnose, MS.

[4] *refuderunt*] rufuderunt, MS.

discedens, castellum Burense obsedit et cepit. E contra dux castrum Argentomii, et in eo consulem regis Rogerum Pictavensem, et cum eo milites septingentos, et Hulmense castrum cepit consequenter. Indignantes enim multi, eo quod rex arbitrium juratorum perjurus spreverat, ad juvamen ducis convolarunt. Rex interea summoneri [1] cœpit xx^{ti}. milia peditum, ut in Normannia coram eo convenirent. Et cum dux simulata humilitate ea quæ pacis erant rogitasset,[2] rex jam securus ipsos Anglos accersitos, cum ad mare venissent, a singulis x. solidos extorquens, ad propria remeare præcepit. Sed dux adhuc recalcitrans, in Normanniam Philippum, Francorum regem, cum exercitu copioso, ut obsideret et obsessum caperet regem Willelmum apud castrum de Auco, sollicitavit.[3] Sed rex Francorum, pecuniæ tenebris obcæcatus, rediit in Franciam cum suo exercitu universo. Quo viso, dux tandem volens nolens se fratri suo humiliavit, cui pepercit regis magnificentia; et in Angliam remeavit. Et ilico Deo ingratus de conservata incolumitate et prosperitate, rex Anglorum W[illelmus] monasteria totius regni gravi depopulatione, ut munera [4] regi Francorum largita restauraret, afflixit deprædando.

A.D. 1093. War between William and Robert.

Rog. Wend. ii. 44.

William returns to England, and oppresses the monasteries.

Moritur Paulus, abbas Sancti Albani.[5]

Rog. Wend. ii. 44.

Eodemque anno Paulus, primus post conquestum Angliæ Sancti Albani abbas, facta apud Thinemuam visitatione pastorali, dum rediret ad ecclesiam suam, in villa quæ Colewich dicitur gravi correptus ægritudine, viam universæ carnis est ingressus, iii°. idus Novem-

Death of Paul, abbat of St. Alban's.

11 Nov.

---

[1] *summoneri*] submoneri, MS., and so F.

[2] In the margin a much later hand has written, "Nota fallaciam Willelmi Rufi."

[3] *sollicitavit*] Added in marg.

[4] *munera*] After this word is an erasure, apparently, of *quæ*.

[5] This chapter is omitted in F.

A.D. 1093. bris. Corpus autem ipsius ad Sanctum Albanum delatum est, et honorifice tumulatum. Remansit autem ecclesia Beati Albani in manu Willelmi regis rapacissimi iiii^or^. annis, pastore destituta. In quibus nemora explanavit, compatriotas depauperavit, et nonnullos ecclesiæ thesauros fecit asportari.

Consecratur Anselmus in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem.

Consecration of Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury. 4 Dec.

Anno quoque sub eodem, convenientibus totius Angliæ episcopis, Thomas, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, Anselmum, Cantuariensem electum, pridie nonas Decembris consecravit antistitem. Verum cum ante ordinandi pontificis examinationem Walkelinus,[1] Wintoniensis episcopus, ut moris est, electionem scriptam legeret, mox Thomas, archiepiscopus Eboracensis, conquestus est scriptum rite non esse factum. Nam cum diceretur, "Fratres et coepiscopi mei, vestræ fraternitati cognitum[2] est, quantum temporis est ex quo sancta Dorobornensis ecclesia, totius Britanniæ metropolitana, sit pastore viduata," respondit Thomas et dixit, "Si totius Britanniæ ecclesia Dorobornensis metropolitana est, ecclesia Eboracensis, quæ metropolitana[3] esse[4] scitur, metropolitana non est. Et quidem ecclesiam Cantuariensem primatem esse scimus, non metropolitanam." Quod verbum cum fuisset auditum, ratione esse subnixum est intellectum. Tunc, mutato scripto, pro "totius Britanniæ ecclesia metropolitana," "totius Britanniæ primas" scriptum est. Et sic controversia tota quievit. Itaque consecravit illum, ut primatem totius Britanniæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 44. — fol. 15 b. — Rog. Wend. ii. 45.

The church of Canterbury declared to be primatial, and that of York metropolitan.

---

[1] *Walkelinus*] At first written *Walkenus*.

[2] *cognitum*] Originally *cōgnitum*, but the mark of contraction erased.

[3] *metropolitana*] metropolinata, MS.

[4] *esse*] On an erasure.

Transfertur sedes episcopalis de Teodford ad Norwicum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 45. Anno Domini M°.XC°IIII°. Herbertus Losinga ex abbate Ramesiensi, empto præsulatu, factus est episcopus ecclesiæ Theodfortdensis. Sed postmodum pœnitentia ductus, Romam profectus est, symoniacum baculum papæ resignans et anulum; verumtamen Romanæ sedis indulgentia iterum eidem restituit resignata. Qui domum reversus, sedem episcopalem transtulit ad Northwicum, atque ibidem congregationem monachorum, utpote religionis[1] et religiosorum amator, instituit; domumque illam beneficiis quamplurimis, tam in spiritualibus quam temporalibus, feliciter ampliavit.

A.D. 1094. The see of Thetford transferred to Norwich.

Robertus, comes Northanhumbriæ, capitur, et sui omnes confunduntur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 45. Eodemque anno rex Willelmus jussit Henricum, fratrem suum, Northambriam[2] hostiliter cum pecunia multa loco sui impetere. Robertus enim, comes Northambriæ,[3] in superbiam elatus, eo quod regem Scotorum Malcolmum cum suis, licet proditiose, vicerat, curiam regis factus rebellis adire repudiavit. Promovit igitur exercitum Henricus, quem ilico subsequebatur rex, in Northambriam[4] contra Robertum memoratum; ubi in Novo Castello omnes potentiores de familia comitis cepit, et vinculis ac carceri man-

Rog. Wend. ii. 46.

Robert, earl of Northumberland, is taken prisoner, with others of his party.

---

[1] *religionis*] relegionis, MS.

[2] *Northambriam*] So F. Northanhumbrum ire, A., *sup. ras.*, D.; Northanhumbrorum ire, C., but *ire* afterwards struck out; Northamhumbriam, E. In Wendover we read, "*misit* Henricum, fratrem suum, in *Normanniam*," which is contradicted by what follows. He had evidently confounded the expedition against earl Robert in Normandy with that against Robert, earl of Northumberland.

[3] *Northambriæ*] Northamhumbrorum, W. A. C.; Northanhumbriæ, D. E. F.

[4] *Northambriam*] Northanhumbriam, W. A. C. D. F.

A.D. 1094. cipavit. Et inde ad castellum de Thinemue profectus, fratrem consulis Roberti cepit in eodem. Et inde ad castrum de Bamburc rex, secum ipsum comitis fratrem captivum ducens, illico properavit, et ipsum comitem in eodem obsedit. Sed cum castrum inexpugnabile[1] advertit, ante castellum illud aliud sed ligneum construxit, ad præcludendum illis exitum, quod patria lingua *Maleveisine* appellavit. In quo partem exercitus sui qui numerosus extitit relinquens, rex inde recessit. Cumque una nocte comes famé arctatus, clam recedere proposuisset, secutus est eum regis exercitus, excubitoribus excitatus, usque ad Thinemue, equo raptum velocissimo. Ubi cum se defendere conaretur, sine vulnere captus est et integer; regique præsentatus, jussus est apud Windeleshore custodiæ carcerali mancipari. Reddito igitur continuo castro de Bamburgo, omnes comitis fautores male tractati sunt. Nam Willelmus de Auco exoculatus, et Odo, consul Campanensis, et ceteri omnes vel squalore carceris diuturni, vel morte, vel exheredatione sunt puniti.

Walenses invaduntur.

Invasion of Wales. Anno quoque sub eodem, impiger rex[2] Willelmus in Walliam exercitum duxit, et ipsam hostiliter impugnavit; eo quod anno præterito ipsi Walenses multos Normannorum occiderant, castellum quoque Montis Gomerici[3] prostraverant, et, necatis inclusis, finitimos[4] igne ferroque dederant exterminio. Rex igitur Willelmus omnes fines Walliæ hostiliter et potenter perlustrans, ipsos maleficos in ore gladii persequebatur; sed cum fugitivos in loca palustria et nemorosa insequi non valeret, firmatis in Walliæ confinio castris, Rog. Wend. ii. 46.

---

[1] *inexpugnabile*] inexpungnabile. MS.

[2] *rex*] Repeated, but expuncted.

[3] *Gomerici*] Gomerii, W. A. C. D.

[4] *finitimos*] fugitivos, F.

quæ[1] Wallensibus erant spina in oculo, ad propria remeavit. A.D. 1094.

Stellæ cadere de cœlo videbantur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 46. Eodem anno stellæ visæ sunt cadere de cœlo. Inter quas cum in Gallia[2] una maxima cadere, quasi facula,[3] videbatur, cumque locus notaretur, in aqua stridorem horribilem cum fumo teterrimum generavit. Falling stars.

Rex Willelmus ab Anselmo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, extorsit pecuniam.

Rog. Wend. ii. 47. Hoc quoque tempore, rex Willelmus Anselmum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, circumvenire affectans, mille libras argenti sibi dari ab eo instantius postulabat, eo quod in promotione sua promptius[4] sibi præbuisset assensum. Archiepiscopus vero pro indifferenti habens, utrum ante vel post promotionem suam tiranno taliter satisfaceret, pari pœna anticipantem et subsequentem censuit puniendum, et pari labe symoniæ inquinatum. Elegit igitur potius ipse sanctus regis quam Dei incurrere indignationem. Propositum igitur habens prudenter recedendi, postulavit licentiam a rege, ut Urbanum papam adiret, percepturus ab eodem pallium, quod nondum optinuerat, ad exsequendum[5] plenius officium suum. Tunc enim temporis non licebat alicui magno[6] viro de regno Angliæ exire, nisi de regis licentia. Et erat castrum Doveriæ, quasi una sed tamen maxima valvarum Angliæ, arctissime custodita. Rex

William extorts money from Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury.

The king forbids the archbishop to leave the kingdom.

---

[1] *quæ*] qui, MS. and F.

[2] *in Gallia*] Repeated erroneously after *maxima*, but underscored for omission.

[3] *quasi facula*] Added in marg. and in text of F.

[4] *promptius*] At first written *promtum*, and then corr. *promtus*; but afterwards underscored, and replaced in marg. by *prompcius*, and so F. In W. A. C. D. *promptum*.

[5] *exsequendum*] The first three letters of this word are added outside the column of text.

[6] *magno*] mangno, MS.

A.D. 1094. autem, Urbano papa nominato, ira excanduit vehementi. Inceperant[1] enim jam solito impudentius munera, non sine avaritiæ immo et symoniæ scrupulo, postulare.

Schism in the Roman church.

Tunc etiam temporis ecclesia Romana[2] in scismate[3] laborabat, Wiberto, Ravennensi archiepiscopo,[4] per violentiam imperatoris Henrici in papatum intruso. Dixit fol. 16 a. enim imperator, suum esse quem vellet papam eligere.

William claims the same privileges as the emperor, in regard to the papal authority.

Rex igitur Angliæ Willelmus concipiens indignationem erga papam contradicentem, allegavit a simili, quod nullus archiepiscopus vel episcopus de regno suo ad curiam Romanam vel ad papam haberet[5] respectum; præsertim cum jam a vestigiis beati Petri videantur Romani pontifices præmiis inhiantes exorbitare, nec ejus potestatem ligando et solvendo retinere, cujus sanctitatem probantur non imitari. Asseruit etiam rex W[illelmus] constanter, quod post conversionem ad fidem Christianam, tot et tantas in regno suo Angliæ[6] optinuit libertates, quot imperator in imperio.

He asserts that the pope should confine himself to spiritual affairs.

"Quid papæ de vel imperii vel regni laicis libertatibus, cui pertinet tantum[7] de animarum salute sollicitari? De pullulantibus in Christianitate hæresibus, ubi non sufficiunt prælati incolæ resistere, studeat papa per se vel legatos adhibere remedia." Cum igitur rex hæc verba nimis irreverenter prosequendo, ad scismaticorum[8] fere proterviam pertransiret,

Anselm resists.

restitit ei in facie contradicendo modestus præsul Anselmus. Nec erat de episcopis suis suffraganeis qui solatii juvamen præstarent patri suo pæne circumvento, immo potius tiranno favebant desipienti. Sed hæc omnia jam papam, fama nunciante, non latebant, qui prudenter moderamen

---

[1] *Inceperant*] So also F.; but the sense would seem to require *inceperat*.

[2] *Romana*] Romane, MS.

[3] *scismate*] cismate, MS.

[4] *Ravennensi archiepiscopo*] Revennensi episcopo, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[5] *haberet*] haberent, MS.; A. *pr. m.*; C. *pr. m.*; and F.

[6] *suo Angliæ*] On an erasure.

[7] *tantum*] Repeated before *pertinet*, but expuncted.

[8] *scismaticorum*] cismaticorum, MS.

adhibendo, subtraxit austeritatem, secretius fratribus dicens, A.D. 1094.

"Dum furor in cursu est, currenti cede furori."[1]

Inimicitiis vero a rege pro pecuniæ quantitate, usque ad inanitionem ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, exacta et non concessa et tandem extorta, palam contractis
R. Wend. ii. 48. et denunciatis, Anselmus quasi læsæ majestatis reus adjudicatur.[2] Sed, paucis postmodum elapsis diebus, Walterus, Albanensis episcopus, archiepiscopo pallium afferens, papam Urbanum regi commoto prudenter reconciliavit. Anselmus autem fascinanti oculo adhuc a rege respectus et despectus, pallians tamen dolorem vulto sereno, velut oblitus injuriæ, a rege licentiam postulavit papam visitandi, et cum episcopo Albanensi Romam redeunte[3] transalpinandi. Qui tale responsum reportavit, quod si cœptis[4] desisteret, et si propositis evangeliis[5] jurando promitteret, se nec apostolorum limina visitaturum, nec pro quovis negotio Romanæ sedis audientiam appellaturum,[6] sibi et suis cum omni indempnitate et tranquillitate poterat præcavere, et regni majoribus cum omni præesse dominatione;[7] sin autem, poterat transfretare sed inconsulte, et recedere sine spe revertendi.

He receives his pall.

He asks leave to go to Rome, which the king refuses.

Anselmus archiepiscopus injuriam passus exulat.

Rog. Wend. ii. 48. Recedens igitur Anselmus a conspectu regis et concilii, venit Cantuariam, quid a curia reportaret publice manifestans. Arripiens igitur[8] fugam clandestinam,[9]

Flight of the archbishop.

---

[1] Ovid. Remed. Amor., l. 119.

[2] *adjudicatur*] In the margin is written *vel ab*, that is, we may also read *abjudicatur*, and so it appears in F.

[3] *redeunte*] rediunte, MS.

[4] *cœptis*] ceptis, MS.; captis, F.

[5] *evangeliis*] euuangeliis, MS.

[6] *appellaturum*] apellaturum, MS.

[7] *dominatione*] donatione, C. D. and Edd.

[8] *igitur*] Added above the line.

[9] *clandestinam*] clamdestinam, MS.

A.D. 1094. nocturnam et subitam, portum repetit, ut ibi navem ascenderet Doveralem. Quod cum per exploratores sciretur, et accusaretur, Willelmus de Warewast, regis familiaris, proterve occurrit transfretaturo; et ex præcepto ejusdem regis pecuniam non solum in ore saccorum, immo etiam in manicis et sinu archiepiscopi irreverenter improbus perscrutator quæsivit, sed quæsitam non invenit, et verbis incompositis[1] lacessivit. Sed nec sic archipræsul patientissimus verbum retulit amaritudinis, factus sicut homo non audiens, et non habens in ore[2] suo redargutiones; unde vacuus permissus est transfretare, secundum formam decreti regii, exul et irrediturus. Sed ilico cum transfretasset, publicæ potestatis apparitores omnia ecclesiæ ejus bona fiscalibus commodis[3] addixerunt, in irritum revocantes quicquid utilitatis et honestatis in ecclesia statuerat præsul circumspectus; multa quoque irrestaurabiliter dissiparunt.

R.Wend. ii. 49.

Nota quam honorifice susceptus a papa beatus Anselmus fuerit.

Honourable reception of Anselm by the pope.

Council at Bari.

¶ *Nota magnificentiam archiepiscopi A[nselmi].*

Rog.Wend. ii. 49.

Anselmus autem has passus injurias, limina adiit apostolorum oraturus. Qui a papa Urbano reverenter et gaudenter est susceptus Laterani. Cum quo postmodum in Barensi concilio,[4] Græcorum a fide catholica tunc dissidentium confutavit errorem, ejusdem Anselmi prudentia roboratus. Habito deinde[5] concilio Romæ, cui idem papa præsedit Urbanus, Anselmus interfuit consiliorum moderator; in quo, Anselmi consilio, laicos investituras ecclesiarum more pristino

---

[1] *incompositis*] imcompositis, MS.
[2] *ore*] corde, F.
[3] *commodis*] comodis, MS.
[4] This Council was held in Oct. 1098. See Jaffé, Reg. Pont., p. 472.
[5] *deinde*] denique, F.
[6] *laicos*] The MS. reads *papa laicos*, and so does F.; but in that case we ought to read afterwards *synodali auctoritate*. I have, therefore, omitted *papa*, on the authority of W. A. C. D.

conferentes, et eas a laicis accipientes, et taliter post adeptum honorem munus consecrationis impendere præsumentes, a communione fidelium synodalis auctoritas decrevit exsortes.[1] Multis quoque salubribus rudimentis papam Urbanum et aliquos fratrum beatus Anselmus, utpote vir profundi pectoris et eximiæ sanctitatis, informavit. Recedens igitur illinc a papa confortatus et honoratus, apud Lugdunum moram continuans, et pro statu regni Anglicani continue orans, æquanimiter subiit exilium usque ad finem vitæ Willelmi II. regis. Ubi Deus certificavit eum per visionem nocturnam de vili morte regis W[illelmi], qui jam Nero poterat appellari.[2]

A.D. 1094. Council at Rome.

Anselm retires to Lyons.

De morte Sancti Wlstani episcopi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 49.

Rog. Wend. ii. 50.

A.D. 1095. Death of Wulstan, bishop of Worcester, and particulars of his life.

Anno Domini M°.XC°V°. vir vitæ venerabilis Wlstanus, Wigorniensis episcopus, quem rex persequebatur,[3] migravit ad Dominum; qui patre Estano et matre Wlgeva editus, sanctitate floruerat singulari. Cujus parentes Christianissimi, religionis amore ab invicem licite separati, sanctæ conversationis habitum et vitam elegerunt; quorum exemplo et ipse adolescens incitatus, seculum et secularia reliquit, et in Wigorniensi monasterio, in quo pater servierat, habitum monasticum ab ejusdem ecclesiæ episcopo Brithego suscepit. Inde omni sanctitate præditus, ad præsulatus dignitatem Wigorniensis, invitus valde sed compellente Christianissimo rege Edwardo, est promotus. Unde postea cum archiepiscopus Lamfrancus ipsum deponere pro simplicitate sua proposuisset, idem episcopus Wlstanus infixit baculum pastoralem in sarcofago marmoreo beati Edwardi. Qui adhæsit lapidi tanquam arbor plantata, vel columpna

fol. 16 *b*.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 53.

---

[1] *exsortes*] exortes, MS.

[2] *Ubi . . . appellari*] Added in marg., but in text of F.

[3] *quem rex persequebatur*] Added in marg., and in text of F.

A.D. 1095. potius cementata, quem nullus potuit avellere præter ipsum episcopum Wlstanum, cui præceptum fuit in virtute obedientiæ, ut ipsum reacciperet; quod et factum est.[1] Hanc et alias[2] virtutes præclaras operatus est ad laudem nominis sui Dominus noster Jesus Christus, ad declarandam beati Wlstani sanctitatem; quas qui audire desiderat, librum inquirat de vita et morte ejus pretiosa et miraculis ejus confectum,[3] ut plenius certificetur.

Book of the life of St. Wulstan.

Concilium Urbani papæ.

Council held at Clermont, and Statutes.

Eodem anno papa Urbanus, Anselmi admonitus providentia, apud Clarum-montem, civitatem Alverniæ,[4] concilium tenens, hæc quæ sequuntur[5] capitula constituit, et universali ecclesiæ constituit[6] observanda. Quod ecclesia catholica sit in fide casta, et ab omni seculari servitute libera. Ut episcopi, vel abbates, vel aliquis de clero, aliquam ecclesiasticam dignitatem de manu principum non recipiant, vel a quolibet laicorum. Quod clerici in duabus ecclesiis vel civitatibus præbendas non habeant. Quod aliquis simul episcopus et abbas esse non possit. Quod ecclesiasticæ dignitates a nullo emantur vel vendantur. Quod nullus cujuslibet sacri ordinis carnali commercio utatur. Quod eis, qui ignorantes canonum prohibitionem beneficia emerunt, ignoscatur. Quod eis, qui scienter emptas a se, vel a parentibus suis, præbendas possiderunt,[7] auferantur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 56.
Rog. Wend. ii. 57.

---

[1] *ut ipsum . . . factum est*] Added in marg., and inserted in text of F.

[2] *alias*] Interlined.

[3] The legend of Wulstan is given at length in Wendover, ii. pp. 49–56, and in A. C. D.

[4] *Alverniæ*] In the text, *Arverniæ* (as in W. C.); but corr. *Alverniæ* in marg., which is followed by F. So also in Ord. Vitalis, iii. 463, ed. 1845.

[5] *sequuntur*] sequntur, MS.

[6] *constituit*] So in MS. and F.; but in W. and A. C. D. *tradidit*. In the marg. a later hand has written, "Statuta concilii Alverniæ edita per Urbanum papam;" and has added numbers opposite to the several statutes.

[7] *possiderunt*] possederunt, MS.

Quod nemo laicorum a capite jejunii, nemo clericorum a Quinquagesima usque ad Pascha, carnes comedat. Quod omni tempore, primum jejunium iiii^{or}. temporum prima ebdomada Quadragesimæ fiat. Quod omni tempore, ordines vel vespere Sabbati, perseveranteve jejunio, in Dominica celebrentur. Ut in Sabbato Paschæ, nisi[1] post horam nonam, officium celebretur. Ut jejunium [secundum][2] in ebdomada Pentecostes celebretur. [Quod][3] ab Adventu Domini usque ad octabas Epiphaniæ, et a Quadragesima[4] usque ad octabas Paschæ, et a prima die Rogationum usque ad octabas Pentecostes, et a iiii^{a}. feria, occidente sole, omni tempore, usque ad ii. feriam, oriente sole, treugæ custodiantur.[5] Quod qui ceperit episcopum, omnino exlex fiat. Quod qui sacri ordinis viros, vel eorum famulos ceperit, anathema sit. Quod qui episcoporum vel clericorum morientium bona rapuerit, anathema sit. Quod qui usque ad septimam generationem consanguinitati se copulaverit, anathema sit. Quod nemo in episcopum eligatur, nisi presbiter, vel diaconus, vel subdiaconus, et cui natalium dignitas suffragatur; nisi in maxima necessitate et de licentia papæ. Quod filii presbiterorum vel concubinarum ad presbiteratum non promoveantur, nisi prius ad vitam transierint religiosam. Quod qui ad ecclesiam vel ad crucem confugerint, data membrorum impunitate, justitiæ tradantur, vel innocentes

A.D. 1095.

Rog. Wend. ii. 58.

[1] *nisi*] nonnisi, Will. Malmes. ii. 525, and Ord. Vit. iii. 464.

[2] *secundum*] Inserted from W. A. C. D., and confirmed by Malm. and Ord. Vit.

[3] *Quod*] Inserted from Malm. and W., but omitted in Ord. Vit. and A. C. D. F.

[4] *Quadragesima*] Septuagesima, Malm. and Ord. Vit.

[5] *treugæ custodiantur*] Malm. and Ord. Vit. read *trevia Dei custodiatur*. In the text, after *treugæ*, are inserted the words *et f^{a}*, which may, perhaps, be read *et festa*, but in the margin is written *d*, that is to say, *dubium*; and as these words are not found in F., and receive no authority from Wendover or the other MSS., I have omitted them. The reading of *induciæ* for *treugæ* in Edd. is one of the many unwarrantable changes made by Parker or his printer.

A.D. 1095. liberentur. Quod unaquæque ecclesia decimas suas habeat, nec ad aliam transferantur. Quod laicus decimas non emat vel vendat. Quod pro sepultura mortuorum pretium non recipiatur. Item, in hoc concilio Urbanus Hildebrandi decreta renovavit; Philippum quoque, regem Francorum, qui, vivente regina sua, superduxerat alterius viventis, Fulconis scilicet, Andegavensium comitis, uxorem, excommunicavit.

Philip, king of France, is excommunicated.

Papa Urbanus sermonem fecit populo, super negotio Terræ Sanctæ.

Discourse of pope Urban II. advocating a crusade.

In fine autem concilii, quod mense Novembrio actum est, papa memoratus de negotio crucis sermonem ad populum faciens,[1] multos nobiles cruce signavit, et ad bellum contra infideles Terram Sanctam vastantes animavit. Quorum primus fuit Athelmærus, episcopus Podiensis, qui, crucis signaculo de manibus papæ accepto, Willelmum, Aurasiensem præsulem, habuit ilico sectatorem, cum aliis fidelibus innumeris diversæ conditionis et ætatis. Finito igitur sermone et concilio, a singulis episcopis in sua diocesi negotium Terræ Sanctæ efficaciter est expeditum. Cujus facti fama totum perlustrans orbem, non solum mediterraneas provincias ad hanc peregrinationem commovit, sed et omnes, qui in penultimis insulis et terras Christianorum remotissimas inhabitabant. Susceperunt namque crucis signaculum Hugo Magnus, Philippi Francorum regis frater, dux Lotharingiæ Godefridus, comes Tholosanus Reimundus, dux Normannorum Robertus, Boamundus, loco Apulus et gente Normannus, comes Flandrensis Robertus, Carnotensis comes Stephanus, fratres ducis Godefridi Baldewinus et Eus-

Rog. Wend. ii. 58.

Rog. Wend. ii. 62.

Names of the chief leaders of the expedition.

Comites.

[1] This discourse is inserted in Wendover at length, ii. 58–61, and in A. C. D. and F., the latter of which only partially agrees with the text till p. 63.

tachius, item de Burgo alius Baldewinus, item de Gres comes Garnerius, comes Hamaucorum Baldewinus, comes Diensis Hysoardus, comes de Foreis Willelmus, comes de Albemarlia Stephanus, comes Perticensis Rotoldus,[1] comes Hugo de Sancto Paulo, Henricus de Asca, Radulphus de Baugenciaco, Hebraudus de Pusaco, Willelmus Amanen, Gentonius de Bar, Gastus de Beders, Willelmus de Monte-Pessulano, Girardus de Russelun, Geraldus de Ceresiaco, Rogerus de Barnevilla, Guido de Possessa, Guido de Garlanda, Thomas de Sprea, Gualo de Calvo-Monte. De regno quoque Angliæ quamplures nobiles et in armis strenui; maxime illi, qui de Bello-Campo non immerito cognomen habent[2] ab effectu. Omnes hii potentes armis et consilio pollentes, et præclari ad ultionem injuriarum Salvatoris Domini nostri Jhesu in sua secundum carnem patria natali irrogatarum, cum aliis infinitis Deo amabilibus, accinguntur.

A.D. 1095.

Barones.

Rog. Wend. ii. 63.

fol. 17 *a*.

Inceptum est negotium crucis per Petrum Heremitam.

Rog. Wend. ii. 63.

Preaching of Peter the Hermit.

Animabat nempe ipsos Petri Heremitæ prædicatio, qui sacerdos religiosus extiterat, cognomento[3] et professione Heremita, genere præclarus, moribus eximius, sponte fluens habens eloquium, literis eleganter eruditus. Hic de regno Francorum paululum ante hos dies, peregrinationis voto tractus, Jerosolimam pervenit. Hic, juxta legem peregrinis Christianis ab infidelibus datam, loca sancta, dato gravi tributo, in urbem oraturus adiit devotissimus; et in hospitio cujusdam Christiani vespere est susceptus, qui sub misera conditione in ipsa morabatur. A quo de misera afflictione credentium plenius edoctus, Simeonem civitatis affatur patri-

His previous pilgrimage to Jerusalem.

[1] *Rotoldus*] Rotrodus, W. A. C. D. F.

[2] *habent*] Added on to the text.

[3] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

A.D. 1095. archam,[1] qui[2] colloquiis mutuis sese recreabant. At patriarcha, vir quidem sanctus et Deo acceptus, ex verbis Petri colligens, quod vir esset circumspectus et eloquens, familiarius cœpit exponere ei universa, quæ populum Dei acrius affligebant in civitate ipsa sub Rog.Wend. ii. 64. tributo commorantem. Petrus autem fraternis compatiens miseriis, patriarchæ respondit, "Noveris, pater sancte, quod ecclesia Romana, hiis auditis, compatietur, cum principibus occidentis. Et ego pro remedio animæ meæ, auctore Deo, remotas partes peragrando paratus ero ærumpnarum vestrarum coram eis immensitatem protestari, et ad succursum procurandum universos et singulos efficaciter invitare." Placuit sermo in oculis tam patriarchæ quam populorum circumastantium; et, impensis gratiarum actionibus, viro Dei scriptum super hiis confectum porrigunt postulatum.

Conversation with the patriarch.

De visione Petro facta.

Vision seen by Peter the Hermit.

Accidit autem die quadam, cum prædictus Dei famulus de reditu ad propria, pro implenda legatione humeris suis assumpta, amplius solito sollicitaretur, ecclesiam Dominicæ resurrectionis ingressus, ad fontem misericordiæ tota cordis intentione oraturus recurrit. Ubi cum pernoctans vigiliis et orationibus in pavimento decubuisset, ut sompno satisfaceret irruenti, vidit sibi astare Dominum nostrum Jhesum Christum. Et injungens ei legationem præmissam, dixit, "Surge, Petre, et propera, et intrepidus perage quæ tibi sunt injuncta. Ego enim Jhesus Christus, qui tibi loquor, tecum ero. Tempus est enim ut purgentur sancta, et meis servis potenter subveniatur." Expergefactus Petrus et de visione manifesta confortatus, atque admonitionem divinam gratanter amplectens, salutato Rog.Wend. ii. 64.

[1] *patriarcham*] In the text written *civitatis*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *qui*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1095.

patriarcha et super dictis certificato, impiger et intrepidus moras rumpit, et ad mare festinus viator descendens, prospera navigatione ad Barum usque pervenit. Et inde Romam profectus, papæ Urbano patriarchales literas et fidelium in Terra Sancta afflictorum mandata porrigens, ad plenum eorum calamitates toti Romanæ curiæ fideliter exposuit. Quem papa benigne suscipiens, se fidelem cooperatorem futurum repromisit. At Petrus, papali fretus solatio, omnem perlustrans Ytaliam, Apuliam, Calabriam et Siciliam, innumeros ad prædictam peregrinationem animabat et accendit, Domino cooperante; pro quo etiam negotio expediendo cœlitus signa sequebantur. Tandem cisalpinans, principes occidentales maxima sollicitabat instantia, ne loca sancta, quæ Dominus propria dignabatur illustrare corporali præsentia, infidelium permitterent spurcitiis amplius profanari.[1] Sed et plebes[2] innumerabiles ad idem opus efficaciter accendens, omnes literis suis et testimonio de afflictione fidelium et revelatione sibi cœlitus facta plenius certificavit. Sicque Petrus Heremita, cum ingenti armatorum multitudine, quam tam in[3] imperio quam Francorum regno conflaverat, et factus prædicator et dux exercitus, Christi tanquam legatus nominatissimus, memoratæ militiæ se conjungens, opus Crucis instantissime studuit promovere.

He takes leave of the patriarch.

His visit to the pope at Rome.

Rog. Wend. ii. 65.

He preaches the Crusade.

De Gualtero, qui primus iter peregrinationis arripuit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 65.

A.D. 1096.

Anno Domini M°.XC°VI°., mense Martio, Gualterus, cognomento[4] Sansavoir, vir nobilis et strenuus, cum ingenti multitudine pedestrium armatorum, ut qui paucos habebat equites, primus omnium crucesignatorum

Proceedings of Walter Sansavoir, and his forces.

[1] *profanari*] prophanari, MS.

[2] *plebes*] plebeos, MS. and F., but corr. from W. A. C. D. Cf. Will. Tyr., p. 639.

[3] *in*] Interlined.

[4] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

A.D. 1096. iter peregrinationis arripiens, regna pertransiens Theutonicorum et Hungarorum, ad fluvium usque Maroch pervenit; quo transito, et Bulgarorum fines ingrediens, ad locum pervenit qui Bellegravia nuncupatur. Ubi quidam de comitatu ejus apud Malam-villam, ipso ignorante, ut cibos emerent remanentes, a Bulgaris comprehensi, nudati, verberati, lacessiti, ablatisque omnibus, ad socios sunt remissi. Walterus igitur a duce[1] Bulgarorum emendi victualia[2] licentiam postulans Rog.Wend. ii. 66. humiliter, et[3] impetrare non valens, grave populi sui sustinuit detrimentum. Nam cum nihil a gente nefanda[4] venale optinere potuisset gens ejus, in greges Bulgarorum et armenta irruens, ipsa in castra sua abigebat mactanda. Quod Bulgari audientes, arreptis armis, prædam excutere decreverunt; et bellum raptoribus conserentes, et victores existentes, centum et quadraginta ex eis, a præcedentium comitatu separatos, in oratorio quodam, quo se gratia consequendæ pacis intulerant, igne apposito combusserunt, ceteris in fugam coactis. At vero Gualterus cum reliquis agminibus fol. 17 b. suis Straliciam,[5] Daciæ mediterraneæ[6] metropolim, perveniens, præsidi civitatis de injuria plebi Dei a Bulgaris illata conquestus, plenam est justitiam consecutus. Inde igitur ad urbem Constantinopolitanam profectus, Alexii imperatoris ad præsentiam introductus postulavit, ut usque ad adventum Petri Heremitæ, de cujus mandato iter arripuerat, exercitum suum in locis urbi vicinis indultam sibi emendi vendendique licentiam permitterentur habere. Quod ei imperator benigne concessit.

---

[1] *a duce*] Repeated again after *licentiam*, but underscored for omission.

[2] *victualia*] Added in marg.

[3] *humiliter, et*] Added to the text on an erasure; F. agrees.

[4] *nefanda*] nephanda, MS.

[5] *Straliciam*] Stralicie, MS. and F.

[6] *mediterraneæ*] meditaranee, MS.

De peregrinatione Petri Heremitæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 66. Post Gualterum Petrus Heremita primus viam peregrinationis arripuit. Transcursa igitur Lothoringia, Franconia, Bavaria et Austria, cum xl[a]. milibus bellatorum fines attigit Hungarorum. Qui tandem ad Malam-villam pervenientes, audierunt Christianos, qui Gualterum secuti præcesserant,[1] stragem ibi non modicam pertulisse. Et videntes spolia et arma eorum in muro civitatis, quasi pro trophæo pendentia, justa succensi ira ad arma prosiliunt, et urbem violenter confringentes, incolas pæne omnes aut gladio interemerunt, aut in flumine vicino demerserunt. Sicque, urbe subacta, v. diebus manserunt in ea. Petrus vero audiens quod rex Hungariæ ad vindictam suorum militares copias convocaret, legiones suas sub omni celeritate ultra flumen, quod vicinum erat, transferri præcepit, cum armentis et manubiis civitatis. Exinde viii[o]. dierum itinere transcurso, ante urbem Niz turribus et muro fortissimam pervenit; et, ponte fluminis transito violenter ac viriliter, castra fixit ibidem. Indeque iter expediens, cum pars major exercitus præterisset, quidam turbati capitis de regionibus Theutonicorum, aliquantulum ab agminibus præcedentium remoti, vii. molendina juxta pontem memoratum igne[2] combusserunt. Erant autem viri quasi c., qui, ut suo furori satisfacerent, adjecerunt ad propriam miseriam; et quorumdam domicilia in suburbio posita concremantes, commisso scelere, exercitui præcedenti sese jungere properabant. At vero regionis illius dominus,[3] quod factum fuerat indigne, nec mirum, ferens, cives evocat, arma arripere sub edicto persuadet; et ipse prævius cum ingenti tumultu hostes insecutus, antequam ad præcedentem exercitum attigissent, atrociter illos in-

A.D. 1096. Expedition of Peter the Hermit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 67.

[1] *secuti præcesserant*] præcesserant secuti, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[2] *igne*] igni, MS. and F.

[3] *dominus*] incole dominus, MS. and F.

A.D. 1096. vadens, omnes morte peremit dignissima. At Petrus hæc omnia penitus ignorans, ut qui præeuntem ducebat exercitum, dum per quendam raptum equo velocissimo casum cognovisset,[1] de consilio suorum ilico reversus, fratrum interemptorum funera non sine lacrimis conspexit, scire cupiens quæ esset causa tantæ infelicitatis. Missis igitur legatis ad majores civitatis, cognoverunt[2] qui fuerant missi, justa indignatione factam fuisse seditionem; sed quorumdam peregrinorum ausu temerario legio tota concitata est, ut injuriam quam pertulerant vindicarent. Erant autem viri quasi mille, qui ad hanc proruperant temeritatem, propter quos quidam ex urbanis egressi, bellum ingens cum nostratibus commiserunt. Deinde cives patefactis valvis erumpentes, quingentos ex nostris super pontem trucidarunt, reliquis pæne omnibus, vada ignorantibus, miserabiliter submersis. Exercitus autem Petri, tantam suorum non ferens injuriam, ad arma generaliter convolant; et, confligentibus inter se agminibus, ceciderunt ex peregrinis quasi decem milia virorum. Et Petri Heremitæ pecunia tota a Bulgaris capta est, retento ejus curru, cum omnibus quæ habebat. Die autem quarta, recollectis viris[3] per fugam elapsis, quasi ad xxx. milia, rursus ad iter sese accingentes, viam, licet cum magna difficultate, continuant; et, maturato itinere, Constantinopolim pervenerunt. Ubi Petrus imperatoris colloquio fretus, cum per dies aliquot exercitum ibidem recreasset, ex ejusdem imperatoris mandato, transito Hellesponto, in Bithiniam, quæ prima est Asiæ provincia, descenderunt. Deinde ad locum supra idem mare situm, cui nomen Cinitoth, venientes, castra metati sunt ibidem.

¶ *Nota stragem peregrinorum, propter eorum inobedientiam.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 68.

They reach Constantinople, and cross the Hellespont.

---

[1] *cognovisset*] connovisset, MS.
[2] *cognoverunt*] congnoverunt, MS.
[3] *viris*] After this word *ac viribus* is added, in the margin; but this addition only disturbs the sense.

De interitu lamentabili xxx^ta. milium crucesignatorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 68. Erat autem locus memoratus in confinio Turcorum positus, rerum omnium et præcipue victualium opulentus. Cumque ibidem quasi duobus mensibus consedisset exercitus, cœperunt Latini ad x. milia virorum regionem perlustrare, greges et armenta contrahere, atque versus Nicæam, urbem nobilissimam, ordinatis agminibus profecti, cum præda maxima sine suorum dispendio sunt reversi. Porro Theutonici, videntes quod in illo negotio Latinis prospere accidisset, adjecerunt et ipsi simile aliquid attemptare. Unde ad x. milia peditum cum equitibus ducentis versus Nicæam tendentes, ad oppidum[1] quoddam iiii^or. miliariis a Nicæa distans pervenerunt. Et, facto impetu vehementissimo, repugnantibus[2] acriter oppidanis[3] sed nihil proficientibus, ipsi Theutonici oppidum occupant violenter. Tandem, habitatoribus[4] omnibus interemptis, et manubiis cunctis occupatis, castrum muniunt, et loci opulentia simul et amœnitate delectati, usque ad principum adventum ibidem commanere proponunt. Solimannus autem, regionis illius dominus, vir quidem præpotens, astutus et bellicosus, sed incredulus, audiens quod Theutonicorum gens oppidum suum expugnasset, et expugnatum præsumerent detinere, cum omni festinatione illuc accelerat, secum trahens innumerabilem Turcorum multitudinem. Et castrum obsidens, violenter expugnat, omnibus quos intus reperit gladio trucidatis. Venit interea rumor in castris Theutonicorum, cohortes suos in manibus Solimanni incidisse; unde veritate comperta, reluctantibus majoribus de exercitu, ad arma prosiliunt universi, et pedites[5] xxx^ta. et v. milia, cum

A.D. 1096.

March towards Nice.

The German troops capture a town in the neighbourhood.

Rog. Wend. ii. 69.

They are attacked by Soliman.

fol. 18 a.

[1] *oppidum*] opidum, MS., and so elsewhere.

[2] *repugnantibus*] repungnantibus, MS.

[3] *oppidanis*] opidanis, MS.

[4] *habitatoribus*] habitoribus, MS.

[5] *pedites*] So also in W. A. C. D. F. In Edd. and ed. Wend. *peditum*.

A.D. 1096. equitibus quingentis, ordinatis agminibus, ad partes Nicæas contendunt; et in quendam campum Solimannum cum Turcorum suorum numerosa multitudine invenientes, irruunt potenter in hostes. Sed Turci scientes, quod res pro capitibus ageretur, gravissimum peregrinis reddidere conflictum; et, ipsis tandem oppressis, dum pondus prœlii ferre diutius præ multitudine hostium maxime adventantium non valerent, fugam ineunt, agminibus dissipatis. Quos Turci in ore gladii insequentes, stragem non modicam nostratibus intulerunt. Ceciderunt ibi de exercitu Petri nobiles multi, scilicet Gualterus Sanzsavur, de quo prælocutum est, miles eximius, Reginaldus quoque de Breis, cum Fulchero Aurelianensi; et de xxx^ta^. milibus peditum, qui de castris egressi fuerant, simul et equitibus quingentis, vix vel unus superfuit, qui carcerem vel mortem evasisset. Ecce prœlium inobedientiæ, quem finem habuit, dum contra præceptum imperatoris populus cervicosus arma moverat temeraria; qui consuluit indoctum vulgus, ut pacifice apud Constantinopolim expectarent principum adventum adventantium, qui prudentiores ipsis erant, et ad prœlia potentiores.

Great slaughter of the Christians.

Rog. Wend. ii. 70.

Augmentum[1] *tyrannidis.*

Cruelty of Soliman.

Rog. Wend. ii. 70.

Solimanno[2] vero non sufficiente quod factum fuerat, in castra irruit violentus, et senes, valitudinarios, monachos et ordinatos, matronas, puellas et pueros, in ore gladii interemit truculenter. Quosdam tamen, quorum ætas pro eis intercedebat, ad hoc reservabat illæsos, ut perpetuæ servituti subjicerentur.[3] Erat autem prope castrum fidelium, secus litus maris, vetus

Peter seeks aid from

[1] *Augmentum*] Aucmentum, MS.

[2] *Solimanno*] So in W. and A. C. D. F., but corr. *Solimannus* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

[3] *subjicerentur*] subicerentur, MS.

quoddam præsidium habitatoribus vacuum, in quo necessitate compulsi ad tria milia peregrinorum se contulerunt, salutem se sibi ibi posse consequi arbitrantes. Cumque in eo a Solimanno fuissent obsessi, sese viriliter defendentes, Petrus ad imperatorem veniens, fusis humiliter precibus, optinuit, ut, missa illuc militia, reliquias populi liberaret. Quod cum factum fuisset, remansit Petrus apud Constantinopolim cum reliquiis exercitus, principum adventum præstolando. A.D. 1096. the emperor of Constantinople.

De quibusdam peregrinis dolo interfectis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 70. Secutus est autem eos crucesignatos in peregrinationis voto sacerdos quidam, nomine Godescallus, natione Theutonicus. Qui gratiam habens exhortationis, utpote vir literatus et generosus atque magnanimus, ad x. milia[1] de regno Theutonicorum in opus Crucis in Hungariæ fines impune conduxit. Ubi cum exercitu suo venalia, de mandato regis, bonis conditionibus ab Hungaris accepissent, alimentorum opulentia abutentes, et ebrietati atque commessationibus vacantes, ad enormes proruperunt injurias; prædas agentes et stragem in populo committentes, uxores filiasque incolarum violantes. Unde rex ira succensus dignissima, populum ad arma excitat in ultionem tantæ transgressionis. Tandem apud Bellegraviam Hungari prædictorum multitudinem reperientes, cum se præpararent ad resistendum, erant quippe viri fortes et usum armorum habentes, temptant dolo vincere, quos viribus nequiverunt. Missa igitur legatione ad Godescallum et primates exercitus, convenerunt eos, et circumvenerunt verbis pacificis in dolo, dicentes, "Pervenit ad dominum nostrum regem gravis querimonia, quod populo suo enormes nimis injurias irrogaveris, pro bonis nequiter mala rependendo. Novit autem dominus rex, quod sunt inter

March of Godescal into Hungary.

Rog. Wend. ii. 71.

Excesses committed by the troops.

The Hungarians practise a stratagem on the crusaders,

[1] *x. milia*] A mistake for xv. milia, as in Will. Tyr. p. 648, and W.A.C.D.

A.D. 1096. vos viri prudentes et timentes Deum, ut decet peregrinantes, quibus invitis et renitentibus talia perpetrantur; unde ipsorum crimen infrunitorum in omnes refundere verens, decrevit insontibus parcere in præsenti. Unde vobis denunciat, ut ejus omnino quiescat indignatio, ut et personas vestras et substantiam cum armis omnibus in manibus ejus sine conditione confidenter tradatis; alioquin nec unus ex vobis mortem evadet, cum potestatem non habeat populus fugiendi." Godescallus [igitur][1] et primates legionum, de regia benignitate nimis præsumentes, populum totis viribus renitentem induxerunt, ut cum armis et substantia eorum tota in regis potentia se traderent, et sic satisfacerent conquerenti. Quod cum factum fuisset, dum misericordiam expectant, mortem incurrunt. Irruunt enim in populum proditores illi armorum solatio destitutum, non distinguentes justum ab impio, stragemque immanissimam inferentes, locum polluerunt spatiosum ex cruore interemptorum et corporibus occisorum. Evaserunt tamen aliqui hoc commune periculum, et ad propria reversi, suorum stragem peregrinaturis referentes, de præteritis reddiderunt[2] prudentiores.

and kill numbers of them.

Rog. Wend. ii. 72.

De quibusdam peregrinis Judæos persequentibus.

Massacre of the Jews by another body of crusaders.

Rog. Wend. ii. 72.

Per idem tempus convenerunt ex finibus occidentis ad ducenta peditum milia expeditorum, et equitum quasi tria milia. Inter quos erant viri nobiles et famosi, Thomas de Feria, Clarenbaldus de Vendolio, comes Hermannus, et Willelmus dictus Carpentarius. Hii obiter se ad insanias convertentes, et populum Judæorum in civitatibus et oppidis,[3] per quæ eis transitus erat, impetentes, milia multa ex eis detrun-

fol. 18 *b*.

[1] *igitur*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[2] *reddiderunt*] rediderunt, MS.
[3] *oppidis*] opidis, MS.

cabant. Dicebant enim, "Nos fluvia transmeamus et maria, ut aquam quæramus. Ecce ad manum quod quærimus. Et qui infideliores[1] vili vulgo Judæorum?" Et hoc præcipue factum est in Maguntia et Colonia civitatibus; ubi etiam Emico nomine, comes in ipsis partibus præpotens, eorum cœtibus conjunctus, maleficiorum erat ipsorum particeps et incentor flagitiorum. Qui omnes, transcursa Franconia et Bavaria, cum fines Hungariæ attigerunt, arbitrati sunt quod liceret eis regnum illud libere introire; sed apud Meezeburg clausum reperientes aditum, circa pontem substiterunt. Porro rex terræ ingressum transire volentibus mandaverat prohiberi, verens ne injuriarum, quas Godescallus perpessus fuerat, memores, in ultionem arma moverent introducti. Unde, petita a rege licentia pacifice transeundi, cum sibi penitus denegata esset,[2] proponunt terras, quas circa fluvios et paludes rex possederat, depopulari, suburbana succendere, et in rebus ejus hostiliter desævire. Accidit igitur die quadam, quod septingenti ex regis militia navigio transeuntes occulto,[3] ut a peregrinorum injuriis regionem tuerentur, casu tamen hostibus subito obviabant; a quibus pæne omnes interfecti sunt, exceptis paucis, qui in carecto et paludibus salvabantur. Et hac freti victoria peregrini adjiciunt[4] etiam, ut, pontibus fabricatis, præsidium expugnent,[5] et iter gladiis præparantes, regnum intrent violenter. Deinde pontes, quos construxerant, mœnibus applicant, et per eorum instantiam ad id perventum est, ut jam pateret introitus peregrinis. Sed ecce subito cœlitus incusso victoribus timore, versi sunt in fugam, causam penitus igno-

A.D. 1096.

They march onwards to Meezeburg,

Rog. Wend. ii. 73.

which they attack, but are defeated.

---

[1] *infideliores*] At first, *infedeliores*.

[2] *esset*] Added in marg., and inserted in the text of F., but as this is nearly always the case, such insertions will not again be noticed, except in special instances.

[3] *occulto*] oculto, MS.

[4] *adjiciunt*] adiciunt, MS.

[5] *expugnent*] expungnent, MS.

A.D. 1096. rantes; sicque, peccatis exigentibus, terga hostibus ostendentes, contulerunt audaciam civibus desperatis, qui fugientes fugantes viriliter, mortem eis inevitabilem intulerunt. Ex quibus comes Emico, cum legionibus fugiens dissolutis, in suam vix patriam est reversus. Alii vero nobiles vix exitium declinantes, ad Ytaliam pervenerunt. Quidam vero de principibus[1] idem iter agentes, qui Durachium navigare proposuerant, se in Græciam non sine multo discrimine contulerunt.

De progressu ducis Godefridi sociorumque ejus.

Progress of Godfrey, duke of Lorraine, and his army.

Anno quoque sub eodem, mense Augusto, Lotharingiæ dux Godefridus, vir illustris, post Petri Heremitæ et Godescalli aliorumque progressum male fortunatum, ut prædictum est, convocatis viæ consortibus, iter magnifice aggressus est, virorum terræ suæ precibus se commendans. Erant autem qui se illi conjunxerunt viri nobiles, Baldewinus, prædicti ducis frater uterinus, Baldewinus, comes Hamaucorum, comes Hugo de Sancto Paulo, et Engelramus filius ejus, comes de Gres Garnerius, Reginaldus, comes Tullensis, et frater ejus Petrus, Baldewinus de Burgo, Henricus de Hascha, Godefridus frater ejus, Dodo de Cons, Conanus de Monte-acuto. Quos sequebantur Frisones et Lotharingi, et quicquid gentium jacet inter fluvios Renum et Garunnam et Elpham, et loca quæ sunt usque fere Danubium. Hii omnes individuo comitatu incedentes per Austriæ provinciam et Hungariam, regi modeste datis obsidibus, ad Bellegraviam, Bulgariæ oppidum,[2] et inde ad Niz et Straliciam pervenerunt. Inde ad Daciam mediterraneam,[3] quæ alio nomine

Rog. Wend. ii. 73.

Rog. Wend. ii. 74.

[1] *principibus*] Partly interlined.

[2] *oppidum*] opidum, MS.

[3] *mediterraneam*] mediteraneam, MS.

Mœsia dicitur, et ad claustra Sancti Basilii descendentes, Philipolim, urbem nobilem et copiosam, attigerunt. Ubi, cognito[1] quod Hugo Magnus, Philippi Francorum regis frater, cum aliis quibusdam ab imperatore Alexio in vinculis teneretur, dux magnificus Godefridus, missis legatis, rogat ut viros prædictos et crucesignatos alios solutos abire permittat. Prædictus enim Hugo, vir illustris, quasi inter primos iter aggressus, Alpibus transcensis, in Apuliam per Ytaliam descenderat, et cum exiguo comitatu apud Durachium mare transiens substiterat, peregrinos qui sequebantur expectans. Ubi a præside regionis vinctus, et imperatori traditus, tanquam prædo et homicidii reus tenebatur, sine causa carceri mancipatus. Sed cum nunciis ducis præcise negaretur, de communi consilio per viii°. dies regionem totam cum legionibus suis depopulantes, affligunt potenter. Hoc audiens imperator, nuncios ad ducem dirigit, rogans ut a præda se cohibens, nobiles recipiat expeditos, quos rogaverat compeditos. Dux igitur, pacatis legionibus, Constantinopolim pervenit; ubi etiam prædictos nobiles incolumes suscepit. Erant enim cum Hugone Magno, Drogo de Neella, Clarebaldus de Vendolio, Willelmus dictus Carpentarius; qui omnes duci de sua liberatione gratias exsolverunt.[2]

A.D. 1096.

Release of Hugh the Great, imprisoned by the Greek emperor.

Rog. Wend. ii. 75.

Godfrey arrives at Constantinople.

Quod stellæ videbantur de cœlo cadere.

Eodem anno stellæ cadere videbantur sub numerosa multitudine simul, in partibus mundi occidentalibus; in signum forte stragis memoratæ. Solent tamen talia frequenter secundum magis et minus naturaliter accidere. Generantur enim in aeris media regione, ubi grandines, fulgura, choruscationes et tonitrua generantur, quidam igniculi, qui se ocius per longos aeris

Falling stars, and their nature.

[1] *cognito*] congnito, MS. | [2] *exsolverunt*] exolverunt, MS.

A.D. 1096. tractus jaculantur, et apparent, maxime de nocte, stellæ cadentes. Verumtamen quando solito magis apparent, prodigiosum est et signiferum, ut in cometis. Sed hæc in libro Metheorum Aristotelis[1] plenius determinantur.

De nequissimo imperatore Constantinopolitano Alexio.

Deceitful character of Alexius, emperor of Constantinople.

Alexius autem, imperator Græcorum, vir nequam et subdolus, cum esset in palatio Nichofordi,[2] prædecessoris sui, summus princeps militiæ, contra dominum suum malitiose recalcitrans, v°. vel vi°. ante[3] hanc expeditionem anno, domino depulso, imperium invaserat et invasum nequiter detinebat. Hic semper propositum habens fallendi, sæpe cum peregrinis verba pacifica loquebatur in dolo, suspectam jugiter habens multitudinem crucesignatorum et militiæ probitatem; unde, si quandoque nocere cessavit, non hoc virtutis extitit, sed timoris. Nam dux Godefridus, cum ante urbem Constantinopolitanam tentoria fixisset, assunt nuncii imperiales, ipsum ducem invitantes, ut ad imperatorem cum paucis introire festinaret. Dux vero, habito consilio, illuc ire distulit; unde indignans imperator, forum rerum venalium ducis legionibus interdixit. Porro principes alimentorum metuentes defectum, per suburbana longe lateque hostiliter discurrentes, greges undique trahunt[4] et armenta; et tantam in castra alimentorum deferunt opulentiam, ut usque ad satietatem etiam minores abundarent.[5] Unde imperator compulsus commercium iterato restitui præcepit.

fol. 19 a. Rog. Wend. ii. 75.

His conduct towards duke Godfrey.

[1] *Aristotelis*] Aristotilis, MS. See Meteor. lib. i. capp. 3–7.

[2] *Nichofordi*] So also W. A. D. F.; Nichofrodi, C.; but *Nichofori*, I. and ed. Wend.

[3] *ante*] Before this word is written *idus*, on an erasure, and afterwards expuncted.

[4] *trahunt*] So also F.; contrahunt, W. A. C. D.

[5] *abundarent*] habundarent, MS.

De motione Boamundi principis in opus Crucis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 76. Dum hæc autem apud Constantinopolim agerentur, dominus Boamundus, Roberti Guiscardi filius et vere patrissans, princeps Tarentinus, qui ante hyemem cum suo exercitu Adriaticum mare transiens, Durachium usque pervenerat, per deserta Bulgariæ ad suos, qui eum sequebantur, pedetentim appropians accedebat. Adhæserant namque ei viri quidam nobiles ac potentes, quorum hic in parte nomina supponemus, Tancredus, Willelmi marchionis filius, Ricardus de Principatu, et Ranulphus frater ejus, Robertus de Anxa, Hermannus de Karin, Robertus de Surda-valla[1] vel valle, Robertus, Thurstani filius, Humfridus filius Radulphi, Richardus, filius comitis Ranulphi, comes de Russillun et fratres ejus, Boeleisius Carnotensis, Alberedus de Cangnano, Humfridus filius ejus. Hos autem sequebantur populi Ytalici, et quicunque a Tyreno mari in Adriaticum usque sinum conversabantur. Hii omnes usque ad urbem Castoream Boamundi vexilla sequentes, cum a civibus venalia populo non exhibebantur, contrahere greges et armenta compulsi sunt violenter. Indeque progressi, in regione Pelagonia castra statuerunt; ubi audientes quod in vicino erat municipium solis hæreticis habitatoribus refertum, illuc sub celeritate contendunt, et castrum violenter occupantes et ædificia igne conflagrantes, prædam immensam et optima inde spolia retulerunt.

A.D. 1096. March of Boamund and his followers.

De peregrinatione comitis Tholosani.

Rog. Wend. ii. 77. Subsecuti sunt autem peregrinos comes Tholosanus Raimundus et episcopus Podiensis Athelmerus. Erant autem cum eis viri generis præclari, Willelmus, Au-

March of Raimund, count of Toulouse.

[1] *valla*] At first written *valle*.

A.D. 1096. rasiensis episcopus, et comes Rainbaldus,[1] Guastus de Beders, Girardus de Russelun, Willelmus de Monte-Pessulano, Willelmus, comes Forensis, Raimundus Pelez, Gentonius de Bar, Willelmus Amanen. Hos vero secuti sunt Provinciales, Gothi, Hyspani et Wascones, et quicunque crucesignati, tam nobiles quam plebei, inter Pireneum et Alpes diffunduntur. Hii omnes per Ytaliam et Lumbardiam, et per regionem quæ Forum Julii dicitur, in Hystriam et tandem in Dalmatiam descenderunt. Cumque per dies quasi xl[a]. omnem Dalmatiam multo pertransissent periculo, demum Durachium pervenerunt; ubi expectantibus conjuncti literis imperatoris corroborati, iter communiter arripiunt. Transcursisque montibus et silvis, et universa Epyrotarum regione, demum in pagum, cui Pelagonia nomen est, copiis omnibus redundantem, ubi et tentoria fixerunt, prospere pervenerunt. Ubi cum Podiensis episcopus longius a castris tentoria fixisset, hospitandi ductus commoditate,[2] a Bulgaris clanculo et subito irruentibus captus est. Sed dum unus ex prædonibus morosius [aurum][3] quæreret et inveniret, et oriretur contentio inter ipsos quisnam illud asportaret, elapsus ex manibus eorum unus de episcopi familia, exercitum commovit universum. Et exclamato "Ad arma! Ad arma!" omnes citius armati, maleficos insequuntur,[4] et, aliquibus eorum trucidatis, episcopum potenter liberarunt. Denique resumpto itinere, Thessalonicam transeuntes et omnem Macedoniam, continuatis laboribus apud Rodestum, urbem maritimam super Hellespontum sitam, itinere dierum iiii[or]. distantem a Constantinopoli, respiraturi pervenerunt. Ubi legati principum, qui præcesserant, comiti occurrentes congaudebant, et per aliquod tempus quieverunt post

The bishop of Puy taken prisoner, but rescued.

Rog. Wend. ii. 78.

Idem {Bosforus. Hellespontus. Brachium Sancti Georgii.

[1] *Rainbaldus*] Baiubaldus, MS.; Bainbaldus, W. A. C. D. F.

[2] *commoditate*] comoditate, MS.

[3] *aurum*] Supplied from Will. Tyr., p. 661, and W., with which agree A. C. D.

[4] *insequuntur*] insequntur, MS.

laborem. Habito igitur tractatu, omnes comitem instanter postulabant, ut prævius, imperatore pacato, vias pacificas præpararet. Adquievit comes, precum victus instantia. Relicto igitur exercitu sub custodia episcoporum et virorum nobilium, qui in castris erant, ipse cum paucis Constantinopolim properans, ad imperatorem ingressus est;[1] a quo cum omni reverentia susceptus, multa instantia persuasus est, ut imperatori fidelitatis juramentum, secundum formam aliorum principum, qui eum præcesserant, exhiberet. Comes negavit plane. Unde indignatus imperator insidiabatur illi et ejus exercitui, præcipiens militibus suis, ut repente in legionibus suis spreta fide irruentes, usque ad mortem ipsum etiam comitem persequi attemptarent. Centuriones igitur imperatoris agminibus militaribus cum suis Græculis expediti, domini sui jussionem exequentes, clam et de nocte in comitis irruunt expeditiones, et quos immunitos invenerunt, plurimos peremerunt. Comes autem hæc audiens, imperatori proditionis objecit infamiam; unde imperator erubescens et facti pœnitens, Boamundum, qui adhuc in ulteriori maris litore cum suis residebat, ad se facit evocari, ut per ejus et principum suorum interventum comitis sibi animum possit reconciliare. Qui ad ejus vocationem venientes, licet multum displiceret quod factum fuerat, cum viderent quod non esset ultionis locus, cum ad majora properarent, ad exhortationem eorum comes et imperator reconciliantur. Et, juxta formam fidelitatis ab aliis factam, juramentum comes adquiescens et deprecabilis exhibendo, in imperialem gratiam plene receptus, donis ingentibus honoratur. Forma autem fidelitatis hæc est, in quam omnes consenserunt totius principes occidentis: Quod videlicet, civitates et castella, cum possessionibus aliis, quæ ad jus imperatoris spectare videbantur, si ea possent subjugare, sibi redderent incontinenti, salvis

[Margin: Fraudulent behaviour of the Greek emperor to count Raimund.]

[Margin: fol. 19 b.]

[Margin: Boamund is summoned, for the purpose of reconciliation.]

[Margin: Rog. Wend. ii. 79.]

[Margin: Form of fealty exacted by the emperor.]

---

[1] *est*] Interlined.

A.D. 1096. principibus manubiis omnibus in eisdem inventis. Quod quibusdam tamen ex nobilibus nimis videbatur iniquum, ut scilicet sui sanguinis effusione mercarentur commodum[1] alienum. Imperator autem, ut satisfaceret peregrinis, juravit quod ipsis auxilium fidele impenderet et consilium, quibus possent inimicos fidei debellare. In hoc tandem omnium pacifice et gratanter resedit sententia. Venit interea Constantinopolim comitis exercitus, qui statim de mandato ipsius ad eos qui præcesserant transiens, ceteris legionibus est conjunctus.

Dux Normannorum Robertus venit in Angliam, valedicturus[2] fratribus suis.

Robert, duke of Normandy, comes to England, to solicit pecuniary aid.

Hiis denique temporibus dux Normannorum Robertus, sanguine et strenuitate magnanimus, venit in Angliam, fratribus suis antequam peregrinaretur valedicturus, simul et ab eis consilium et auxilium cum favore fraterno postulaturus. Quem rex Angliæ Willelmus et Henricus frater ejus cum omni reverentia susceperunt. Dux autem dulci colloquio affatur utrumque, dicens, "Nostis, fratres carissimi, quid pater noster Willelmus, rex Anglorum magnificus, nobis dixerit moriturus, videlicet quod Angliam sibi[3] subjugasset, multos hujus regni nobiles multipliciter afflixit, veritatem in promissis transgrediendo. Gravi igitur ductus pœnitentia, in extremis mihi coram vobis dixit, 'Fili mi, Roberte, novi quod vir strenuus et, bellicosus sis, ad transfretandum et fidei hostes debellandum ydoneus; supplico et supplicando impero, quatinus, nacta temporis opportunitate,[4] onus peregrinationis crucesignatus pro salute tua, mea, fratrumque tuorum, hume-

[1] *commodum*] comodum, MS.
[2] *valedicturus*] valedcūturus, MS.
[3] *quod Angliam sibi*] So also in F.; but we should probably read *quod postea sibi Angliam.*
[4] *opportunitate*] oportunitate, MS.

ris tuis assume.[1] Ecce nunc tempus ydoneum.' Ego A.D. 1096. igitur paternæ exhortationis non immemor, cruce, ut nostis, pro ipso et nobis consignor, ut cum aliis principibus Deo militem in terra, quam Dominus noster Jhesus Christus consecravit; unde, sicut nobis commune est negotium, commune sit et suffragium. Unde attentius supplico, quatinus mihi de thesaurorum vestrorum copiis peregrinaturo velitis impertire." Cui rex Willelmus, tam fratris primogeniti quam patris oblitus beneficiorum, torvo vultu respondit, "Thesauris multis multum indigeo; amicus enim tuus rex Francorum mihi, ut noceat, insidiatur. Nolo pro te thesauro destitui, vel in aliquo decrescere vel depauperari." Cui dux iratus, "O fratrum medie sed degener! tu, me primogenito supplantato, regnum Angliæ opulentissimum nequiter invasisti, quo et nequiter abuteris; et si non mihi succurrere dignareris, animæ patris nostri, qui te in regem creavit, teneremini patrocinari." Et cum jam ad jurgia erigerentur, compescuit eos Henricus intumentes. Ad quem versa facie dux ait, "Et tu, frater, de subsidio postulato quid dicis? Memorare, quæso, quantum thesaurum et qualem de ærario tibi delegavit pater noster[2] patefacto; vere plus tibi soli quam toti generi suo." Cui Henricus, "Nosti, frater, quod mihi injunxit pro redemptione animæ suæ exinde unum nobile fundare cœnobium, ad quod necesse habeo auri et argenti copiis abundare.[3] Verumtamen quia, ut asseris, commune nobis est negotium istud, non possum tibi penitus deesse"—commota namque fuerunt viscera ejus affectu fraterno;—"commodabo[4] tibi mille libras argenti." Et rex Willelmus erubescens ex quo vidit fratris misericordiam Henrici, mitigato animo, ipsi duci decem milia librarum argenti

---

[1] *assume*] So in F.; but the sense requires *assumeris*.

[2] *pater noster*] Added in marg.

[3] *abundare*] habundare, MS.

[4] *commodabo*] comodabo, MS.

A.D. 1096. commodavit,[1] interposito ducatu Normanniæ pro pignore.[2] Cui dux gratias agendo adquiescens, supplicat ut tutor Normanniæ incolas non depauperaret, lucos non explanaret, terminos non abbreviaret. Quod benigne concessit uterque fratrum. Et sic valedicto ipsis, recessit dux magnificus Normannorum R[obertus].

The duchy of Normandy is left in pawn by Robert.

De peregrinatione Roberti, ducis Normannorum.

March of Robert, duke of Normandy, and his allies.

Peractis igitur provide quæ ad iter suum fuerant necessaria, se principibus adjungere præcedentibus dux omnium peregrinorum novissimus elaborat. Cui sese peregrinanti peregrinaturi adjunxerunt, Robertus, comes Flandrensis, Eustachius, comes Boloniensis,[3] Stephanus, comes Blesencis, comes Carnotensis,[4] comes Stephanus Albemarlensis, Rothrodus,[5] comes Perticensis, Rogerus de Barnevilla; de Britannia viri magni Fernanus[6] et Conanus. Sequebantur insuper Angli, Flandrenses, Brebancii, Britones, Andegavenses, Pictavienses, Galli occidentales cum Normannis,[7] et omnes populi, qui ab oceano[8] Britannico usque ad Alpes mediterraneo[9] tractu regiones incoluerunt. Isti omnes in negotium Crucifixi profecti, in Apuliam et Calabriam, circa hiemis ingruentis initium, nivium et glacierum vitantes incommoda,[10] ibidem expectantes, donec aura suavior arrideret, respirarunt.

R. Wend. ii. 79. fol. 20 a. Rog. Wend. ii. 80.

They winter in Apulia and Calabria.

---

1 *commodavit*] comodavit, MS.

2 *pignore*] pingnore, MS.

3 *Boloniensis*] Partly on erasure.

4 This is an error, copied from Wendover, since Stephen was not only earl of Blois, but of Chartres also.

5 *Rothrodus*] Bothrodus, MS.

6 *Fernanus*] So also F.; Fergandus, W. A. C. D.

7 *Galli ... Normannis*] In the MS. these words are inserted after *Perticensis*, and so in F.; but I have removed them here on the authority of W. and A. C. D., all of which, however, omit *cum Normannis.*

8 *oceano*] occeano, MS.

9 *mediterraneo*] mediteraneo, MS.

10 *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

De perfectione ecclesiæ Norwicensis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 80. Circa idem tempus fabricata est et perfecta ecclesia Norwicensis; et pro clericis, monachi feliciter subrogati. A.D. 1096. The church of Norwich completed.

De obsidione Nicææ, civitatis nobilissimæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 80. Anno Domini M°.XC°.VII°., dux Godefridus cum suis legionibus apud Constantinopolim, dux Boamundus cum suis apud urbem Castoream, comes Tholosanus cum suis apud Pelagoniam, celebres Dominicæ Nativitatis dies transigentes, decreverunt unusquisque in loco suo, intuitu religionis, manus licet avidas a præda qualibet cohibere. Hii omnes in sequenti vere, compositis sarcinis, vehiculis et clitellis, iter aggredientes, versus Nicæam civitatem nobilissimam lora dirigunt et vexilla. Qui tandem ad Nichomediam, quæ Bithyniæ metropolis est, venientes, habuerunt obviam[1] venerabilem sacerdotem Petrum Heremitam ibidem, cum paucis sibi superstitibus, reliquisque legionibus salutatis, principibus est conjunctus. Ubi ab omnibus benigne susceptus, de suorum amissione meruit compassionem et consolationem, et donativa suscipere in restaurationem. Multiplicatis igitur cotidie, ad instar torrentis, qui de nivibus resolutis suscipit incrementum, armatorum copiis, et moderamine congruo iter expedientes, Nicæam Dei gratia pervenerunt. Ubi, castris in girum dispositis, loca tamen venturis [reservantes],[2] urbem mense Maio, xv^a^. die mensis, die videlicet Dominicæ Ascensionis, obsederunt. Comes vero Tholosanus, negotiis per-

A.D. 1097. Law made by the crusaders to repress rapine.

Advance to Nicomedia.

Rog. Wend. ii. 81. Siege of Nice.

---

[1] *obviam*] So also W. A. C. D. F. Corr. *obvium* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

[2] *reservantes*] In the margin is noted *dub.* (that is to say, *dubium*, to indicate an error in the text), and the word wanting is supplied from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1097. tractatis, sumpta ab imperatore licentia, ad urbem prædictam pervenit velox et expeditus; et ceteris se principibus obsidionem agentibus est conjunctus.

Qualiter dux Robertus venit ad obsidionem Nicææ.

Robert, duke of Normandy, advances to Constantinople.

Audiens ergo dux Normannorum Robertus, Nicæam urbem a principibus, qui ipsum præcesserant, jam esse obsidione vallatam, convocatis viæ suæ consortibus, sarcinis compositis, ad mare descendit. Et moram, quam fecerat in Apulia, redimere cupiens, cum omni tranquillitate Yllyrico, Macedonia, et utraque Tracia transcursis, Constantinopolim pervenit. Ubi ab imperatore Alexio [1] honorifice vocatus, more aliorum principum fidelitatem, tam ipse quam comites qui cum ipso venerant, sub forma fecerunt prætaxata. Venerat autem dux cum majori et nobiliori comitatu, et elegantius armatis, quam aliquis ceterorum. Unde in ampliorem gratiam receptus, in auro, vestibus pretiosis, vasis tam artificio quam materia admiratione dignis, olosericis et gemmis, dona suscepit ab imperiali munificentia protinus uberiora; quæ merito occidentalibus admirationem generarunt. Deinde, sumpta ab imperatore licentia, transito Hellesponto, id est, Brachio Sancti Georgii,[2] cum suis legionibus Nicæam pervenit; quem principes ipsum expectantes cum magna devotione et gaudio amplexantur. Ipse igitur dux, et qui cum eo erant, locum sibi deputatum ac reservatum optinentes, castra magnifice statuerunt. Hic igitur primum ex diversis regionibus, linguis et nationibus exercitus Dei viventis congregatus, sub certa computatione est inventus habens peditum secenta milia, equitum vero loricatorum centum milia. Qui omnes in girum præ-

Rog. Wend. ii. 81.

Gifts received from the emperor.

He crosses the Hellespont, and marches to Nice.

Rog. Wend. ii. 82.

Nota numerum obsidentium Nicæam.

---

[1] *Alexio*] *A.* in the text; but *Alexio* in marg.

[2] *id est . . . Georgii*] Added in marg., but inserted in text of F.

dictæ urbis considentes, laborum suorum Domino Deo exercituum primitias consecrarunt. Nec mihi videtur a materia cronicorum et historiarum super eventibus Angliæ confectarum alienum, si inceptum opus hoc prosequar subarratum, et bellum hoc inclitum sub brevitate describam castigata; præsertim cum ex hoc totius ecclesiæ universalis status et conditio, immo etiam fidei Catholicæ ipso tempore dependeret. Et tam generali Christiano exercitui, frater regis Anglorum, scilicet dux Robertus, vel summus fuisset, vel unus ex summis venerabilis moderator. Hæc namque inter ingenuos principes pia fuit contentio, quod quilibet alium sibi præficere cupiebat superiorem. A.D. 1097.

Duke Robert one of the chief leaders.

Incipit historia de obsidione et captione Nicææ, civitatis nobilissimæ.

R. Wend. ii. 82. Nicæa urbs magna, nobilis et formosa, in qua quondam celebrata fuit sinodus generalis, rerum omnium opulentissima, una est de civitatibus Bithiniæ; cujus dominus erat quidam Turcorum potentissimus, et totius regionis princeps, nomine Solimannus. Hujus autem antecessores ab imperatore Constantinopolitano, Romano nomine, qui ante hunc Alexium erat tertius, has occupaverant regiones, et easdem huic tradiderant Soli-

Account of Nice.

Power of Soliman.

fol. 20 *b.* manno, cognomento [1] de Halapia. Possidebat autem provincias universas a Tharso Ciliciæ usque ad Hellespontum, ita ut in confinio Constantinopolitanæ civitatis procurationes suas haberet et procuratores, qui tributa et vectigalia totius regionis ad commodum [2] domini sui colligerent, et collecta confiscarent. Ipse autem cum multitudine copiosa armatorum montibus vicinis, vix ab obsidione decem miliaribus distans, opportunitatem [3] quærebat, quo ordine urbem posset a cruce-

[1] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.
[2] *commodum*] comodum, MS.
[3] *opportunitatem*] oportunitatem, MS.

A.D. 1097. signatorum inquietudine liberare. Tunc idem Solimannus, ut cives ibidem[1] obsessos consolaretur, duos ad illos direxit nuncios, qui navigio per lacum ad urbem descenderent, et mandata sibi imposita ad cives obsessos occulte perferrent. Sed unus ex illis missis a nostris captus est, et alter gladio confossus. Principes [autem][2] nuncium, qui vivus captus fuerat, in arcto ponentes, didicerunt ab eo, quod Solimannus in crastino venturus erat, ut obsidionem solveret et obsessos liberaret potentissime; et quod ipsi duo mitterentur, ut cives præmuniti, obsessores invaderent glomeratim exeundo. Solimannus igitur in crastino circa horam tertiam, juxta dicta nunciorum, cum quingentis armatorum milibus de montibus ad plana descendens, præmisit decem milia equitum ad portam meridianam, quæ comiti Tholosano commissa fuerat; et cum impetu multo in ejus irruunt legiones. A quibus accepti, et hostilibus conatibus mirabiliter confractis et aciebus dissolutis, jam erant in fugam versi, cum ecce Solimannus cum majoribus superveniens copiis, illos dissolutos redarguens formidolositatis, reducensque in nostros, redire compellit et invitos. At dux Godefridus et dominus Boamundus, comesque Flandrensis, cum suis ad unguem armatis, videntes comitis exercitum supra vires jam fatigari, ad instar fulguris irruunt constanter in hostium legiones; et, interfectis ex illis ad iiii^or^. milia et nonnullis captivatis, in fugam illos compulerunt. Nostrates autem hac prima felici sidere potiti victoria, obsidionem continuant, dispositis in girum catervis militaribus, secundum militarem disciplinam, in hunc modum: Ad portam orientalem, sedit dux Godefridus, cum Tancredo et aliis principibus suis.[3] Ad portam

He sends messengers to the besieged inhabitants.

Rog. Wend. ii. 83.

Soliman attacks the crusaders, but is defeated.

Disposition of the Christian forces around the city.

---

[1] *ibidem*] Added in marg.

[2] *autem*] Supplied from W.A.C.D.

[3] *cum Tancredo . . . suis*] There is a manifest error here (copied also in F.), and we should read *cum duobus fratribus suis et eorum catervis*, as in W. A. C. D., and so Will. Tyr., p, 668.

australem, comes Raimundus et episcopus Podiensis. A.D. 1097. Ad portam septentrionalem, dominus Boamundus, cum Tancredo et aliis principibus suis. Ad portam occidentalem, dux Normannorum Robertus [et][1] comes Flandrensis, cum Anglorum optimatibus et nobilibus innumerabilibus, in quibus major confidentia habebatur, utpote in loco suspecto, et qui majori discrimini patere videbatur. Sic ergo undique urbs vallata est[2] militia spectabili, ita quidem, quod antea non perlustrarunt radii solares tam præclaram. Deinde principes nostri, ad terrorem civium inclusorum, capitibus occisorum amputatis, fundis machinarum[3] immissis,[4] in urbem projecerunt mille capita, præter illa, quæ[5] cum quibusdam captivis ad imperatorem dirigebantur.[6]

De suffossione et ruina cujusdam maximæ turris.

Rog. Wend. ii. 84. Hiis ita gestis, placuit principibus ut petrarias aliasque machinas ad muros urbis applicantes, non segniter[7] ipsos impeterent. Dumque in hoc attentius artifices laborarent, et urbem frequentibus impugnarent[8] congressionibus, curriculo vii. ebdomadarum, quadam die condicto de more assultu, duos nobiles, Baldewinum videlicet Calderun, et Baldewinum de Gant, Continuation of the siege of Nice.

[1] *et*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *est*] Interlined.

[3] *fundis machinarum*] et machinis, W. A. C. D.

[4] *immissis*] immensis, F.

[5] *quæ*] Interlined, and the stop originally after *projecerunt* erased, and placed after *capita*.

[6] *in urbem . . . dirigebantur*] The sense of the original text is here singularly altered. In W. and A. C. D. we read, "in urbem projecerunt; mille capita, cum quibusdam captivis, ad imperatorem dirigentes." In the Edd. the text is (as usual) altered arbitrarily by archbp. Parker, or his editor, thus: "ad terrorem civium *obsessorum*, capitibus occisorum amputatis, *ex iis mille capita* machinis *immensis* in urbem projecerunt, *quosdam autem captivorum* ad imperatorem miserunt," which is founded on a passage in Will. Tyr., p. 668.

[7] *segniter*] signiter, MS.

[8] *impugnarent*] impungnarent, MS.

A.D. 1097. dum animosius in expugnatione[1] decertarent, nostri casu misero amiserunt. In alio similiter conflictu, de principum consilio iterato, comes Willelmus de Foreis et Gualo de Insula, sicut alii, prædicto[2] jactu lapidis et ictu sagittæ ceciderunt. Guido præterea de Possessa, vir nobilis, ibidem carne solutus est, infirmitate correptus. Quadam autem die, dum principes universi machinas suas certatim ad murum applicarent, comes Hermannus et Henricus de Ascha, Theutonici, instrumentum quoddam satis artificiose composuerunt machinale, in qua inquam[3] machina equites xx. collocantes, ad murum applicuerunt; quæ tamen, instantibus ad defensionem viriliter[4] civibus, magnorum impulsu lapidum ita contrita est, ut ipsa sui mole comprimeret contentos cadens universos. Fervebant tamen alii nihilominus ad opus inceptum, et assiduis assultibus requiem civibus denegabant. Verum lacus civitati adjacens nostrorum præcipue opus et operam præpediebat. Nam cives perinde liberius navigantes, victum et alimentorum copiam in urbem intulerunt in duplex nocumentum, dum nostris subtraheretur et in urbem apportaretur. At principes, adhibitis ad lacum navibus et armatis impositis, victualia civibus subtraxerunt. Ad turrim quoque quandam, quæ erat in parte urbis australi, ceteris omnibus eminentior ac fortior, cum omnia deficerent argumenta, tandem fossores adhibuerunt, qui eam cum multo labore suffodientes, et ligneis appodiis ad horam sustentantes, demum quo consumerentur igne supposito, cum materies sustentativa in cineres foret redacta, turris cum lignorum fragore et lapidum collisione cecidit, ut mugitu et terræ-motu horribili audientium corda perturbans,

Rog. Wend. ii. 85.

One of the chief towers is undermined.

fol. 21 *a*.

---

[1] *expugnatione*] expungnacione, MS.

[2] *prædicto*] This word refers to a sentence not found in the present text, but is inserted in W. A C. D. after *Gant*, namely, "unum jactu lapidum, alterum jactu sagittæ."

[3] *inquam*] Om. F.

[4] *viriliter*] On an erasure.

non modicum ingereret sua ruina terrorem. Ad sonitum tanti præcipitii[1] excitatæ legiones nostræ, clamorem insultationis ad sidera levantes, ad arma convolant, animos excitant, quasi urbem protinus ingressuri. A.D. 1097.

De captione Nicææ civitatis famosissimæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 85.

The wife of Soliman is taken prisoner.

Solimanni vero uxor, ex turris ruina in desperationem versa, navibus cum suis sibi carioribus devecta, ab urbe clam egreditur. Sed galeati, qui in galeis lacum nocte dieque perambulantes transitus custodiebant, fugientem capiunt, et captam principibus præsentant. Captis igitur cum illa duobus filiis suis adhuc tenellis, sub arcta custodia deputatur.[2] Tunc etiam temporis dux magnificus Godefridus Turcum quendam, qui multos ex nostris telis confoderat venenatis, et insuper principes verbis probrosis affecerat, considerata subtiliter opportunitate, sagitta cerebro perforato, extra murum in fossatum dedit præcipitem. Tunc undique omnes nostrates ad insultum animati, lituis perstrepentibus et tubis clangentibus, urbem rapido insultu aggrediuntur. Repletur aer clamoribus, non prosunt inclusis sagittæ infectæ, non tela ignita, non molares rotantes, non ligna caduca, non missilia formidabilia, non alia excogitata argumenta defensionis. Tunc cives ad deditionem compulsi, resignaverunt urbem Tatino, cuidam imperatoris ministro, quod quidem nostris satis placuit principibus ad majora properantibus, juxta quod fuerat imperatori compromissum. Receperunt autem peregrini sclavos suos omnes, tam illos qui in obsidione capti erant a civibus et incolis, quam illos, qui de[3] exercitu Petri et aliorum a[4] Solimanno captivi detinebantur, ut prius dictum est. Principes igitur nuncios ad imperatorem dirigentes, hortati

Assault and capture of Nice.

R. Wend. ii. 86.

Release of the Christian prisoners.

[1] *præcipitii*] precipucii, MS.
[2] *deputatur*] So also F.; deputantur, W. A. C. D.
[3] *de*] On an erasure.
[4] *a*] qui a, MS. and F.

A.D. 1097. sunt instantius, ut ad partes illas tot de suis principibus transmittat, qui sufficiant ad custodiam civitatis; præsentaveruntque ei uxorem Solimanni cum filiis ejus, quod gratanter super omnia acceptavit.[1] Imperator igitur lætabundus de familiaribus suis quosdam direxit, qui urbem cum omni captivorum substantia in auro et argento et omni genere suppellectilis susciperent, per quos etiam singulis peregrinis donaria transmittens ingentia, tam literis quam viva voce benivolentiam captabat singulorum. Et pro tam laborioso servitio et imperii sui tanto incremento, gratias refert copiosas.

Cronica. Capta est autem urbs Nicæa anno Domini M°.XC°.VII°. mense Julii,[2] xx^a. die mensis.

De progressione crucesignatorum.

Advance of the crusaders. Soluta igitur obsidione, iterum de mandato principum crucesignatorum ad proficiscendum invitatur Dei exercitus triumphantis. Unde, compositis sarcinis, Rog. Wend. ii. 86.

29 June. iii°. kalendas Julii iter arripiunt prosperatum; et pontem quendam transeuntes, in duo exercitum diviserunt. Rog. Wend. ii. 87. Dominus autem Boamundus et dux Normannorum Robertus, comes quoque Blesensis, Hugo de Sancto Paulo et Tancredus, cum suis cohortibus lævam secuti, in vallem, cui nomen est Georgii,[3] prospere pervenerunt. Reliqui vero omnes dextram tenentes, vix castris prædictorum duobus distantes miliaribus, dietam compleverunt.

They are attacked by Soliman. Solimannus vero illatæ non immemor injuriæ, in crastino circa horam diei secundam, adest cum Turcorum agminibus infinitis, quorum numerus ducentorum milium æstimationem excedere dicebatur.

---

[1] *præsentaveruntque . . . acceptavit*] Added in the margin, and inserted in text of F.

[2] *Julii*] This is an error copied from Wendover, and so in A. C. D. F. We should read *Junii*. Cf. Will. Tyr., p. 672.

[3] *Georgii*] Gorgoni, W. A. C. D., and so Will. Tyr., *ibid.*

Nostri autem, per exploratores eorum adventu præcognito, sarcinas et currus cum debilibus suis secus harundinetum prope ibidem locaverunt, et ad arma convolantes, equos præparant, vexilla explicant, sese consolantur, sese invicem cohortantur[1] dicentes, "Nobiscum Deus est, quis contra nos; simus inseparabiles, et erimus insuperabiles!" Et, missis nunciis festinis ad alium exercitum, a quo temere recesserant, hortantur instantius, ut auxilium conferant desperatis. Sed interim, nostris invitis, bellum infertur horribile et cruentissimum; in quo ancipiti certamine et dampnoso Christiana contrita sunt agmina vehementer. Nam eorum equi insolitum non ferentes Turcorum buccinarum et pellium extentarum, quas tabercula vocamus, tumultum horribilem, calcaribus non parebant, appropinquare hostibus formidantes. Dum igitur Christiani fugam inire cogerentur, supervenit feliciter magnificus Normannorum dux Robertus, Normannis suis et Anglis comitantibus, voce magna clamans et dicens, "Quo fugitis, milites, quo fugitis? equi Turcorum nostris sunt velociores, unde fuga præsidio non est; melius est bene mori, quam turpiter vivere." Hæc cum dixisset, in quendam Turcorum, qui maximus inter alios esse videbatur, dux miles illustris nulli secundus lanceam vibratam direxit, acieque[2] ipsorum Turcorum hinc inde dissipata, scutum ipsius, loricam quoque cum præpectore,[3] necnon et corpus ipsius libere perforavit. Erat autem ipse prostratus quidam Turcorum multorum rex celeberrimus. Nec adhuc quievit dux fremens ac frendens dentibus; secundum quoque sed et tertium, in furore iræ et indignationis suæ, accenso sanguine regali, confossos, quasi in momento ad Tartara destinavit. Et exclamans[4] ait, "Regales, regales, Deus adjuva; contriti

A.D. 1097.

The crusaders give way, but are reinforced by the duke of Normandy.

Personal valour of Robert.

[1] *cohortantur*] choortantur, MS.

[2] *acieque*] *que* is interlined.

[3] *præpectore*] prepectori, MS. and F.

[4] *exclamans*] Written *exclans* in the text, but expuncted, and corr. in marg.

A.D. 1097. sunt inimici tui, Deus!" Et ad instar[1] leænæ catulis orbatæ in alios fulminando, Turcorum cruore micantem sine ictu nugatorio gladium inebriavit. Et socios exhortans ait, "Ne parcatis, ne parcatis canibus et caninis;" et prævium agmina militum sequebantur confidenter, animum et actus ipsius imitantes. Tunc animus rediit Christianis, pugnaque[2] committitur gravissima et horrenda, in qua dux memoratus cum suis titulum meruit immortalem. Cæsi sunt autem in illo conflictu de nostris duo principes. Nam Willelmus, Tancredi frater, dum regem quendam Turcorum lancea transfixisset, ejusdem regis lancea perforatur. Godefridus quoque de Monte, dum caput cujusdam pagani amputaret, spiculo transverberatur. Tertius quoque Robertus, scilicet Parisiacensis, eodem mortis genere vitam terminavit. Ceciderunt insuper in hoc certamine formidabile ad duo milia peregrinorum. Et cum supra modum multiplicarentur[3] inimici de locis finitimis advenientes, Christiani iterum, deficientibus agminibus, in fugam sunt compulsi. Et cum sic affligeretur populus, nec poterat eos dux Normannorum[4] R[obertus] innuens ense cruentato revocare,[5] ecce alius exercitus, quem ducebat dux Godefridus, qui ducem Robertum admodum diligebat, cum xl^a. milibus armatorum; qui omnes acriter in acies irruunt[6] perversorum, et acriter[7] satis et animose decertantes. Et dum Turci tot hostes supervenire conspiciunt, quasi cœlum super se ruiturum conspiciunt, et cum duce suo Solimanno præsidium fugæ capessunt. Quos fugientes Christiani fugantes, cum tanta instantia persequuntur,[8] ut per iiii^or. miliaria ultra eorum castra, continuam ex eis stragem usque ad

fol. 21 b.

R. Wend. ii. 88.

William, brother of Tancred, and two other chiefs slain.

The Christians again retreat, but by the aid of duke Godfrey gain the victory.

[1] *instar*] In the text *inter*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *pugnaque*] pungnaque, MS.

[3] *multiplicarentur*] multiplarentur, MS.

[4] *Normannorum*] Normanorum, MS.

[5] *revocare*] Added in marg.

[6] *irruunt*] Altered to *irruentes*, and the alteration afterwards erased.

[7] *acriter*] An error of transcription for *atrociter*, as in W. A. C. D. F.

[8] *persequuntur*] persequntur, MS.

brachiorum fatigationem continuando operarentur. Et captivos omnes, quos Turci ceperant, reducentes, ad castra eorum sunt reversi; ubi reperientes copiam auri et argenti, jumentorum cum gregibus, armentis et victualibus, tentoriis, equis pariter et camelis, in castra propria victores Christiani sunt reversi.[1] Cecidisse autem dicuntur in ea die de numero hostium et apud suos virorum potentum ad tria milia. Actum est itaque hoc prœlium die kalendarum Juliarum, pugna[2] multum dispari, Turcorum scilicet cl. milibus contra Christianorum l. milia decertantibus.

A.D. 1097.

Number of the slain.

Rog. Wend. ii. 89.

De progressu Christianorum a Nicæa subjugata usque ad Antiochiam.

Rog. Wend. ii. 90.

Onward march of the crusaders towards Antioch.

Postquam autem per triduum moram, sibi et equis necessariam,[3] in loco certaminis protraxissent, lituis monentibus, se iterum ad iter accingunt inchoatum; et, transcursa Bithinia universa, Pissidiam sunt ingressi. Ubi casu in provinciam arentem et inaquosam descendentes, ibidem positis importunitate ardoris molestia[4] cœpit populus ita deficere, ut plusquam quingenti spiritum exhalarent.[5] Tandem hiis erepti periculis, descenderunt in regionem uberrimam juxta Antiochiam minorem, quæ merito Pissidiæ metropolis est. Ex hinc quoque turmas suas dividentes, dispersi sunt per provincias, ut eas explorarent, quo possent ad principes earum notitiam pervenire.[6] Qui a castris divisi, Heracleam, Lichaoniæ urbem prætereuntes, ad Yconium, ejusdem

[1] *reversi*] recepti, C.D.

[2] *pugna*] pungna, MS.

[3] *necessariam*] necessaria, MS.

[4] *positis . . . molestia*] So also in F. In the Edd. the passage is thus printed: "Ibidem *fixis castris*, importunitate ardoris *et* molestia," but without any authority. W. A. *pr. m.* and I. have *p⁹sitis*, but *positis* in A. *sec. m.* C. D., and so ed. Wend. We should, no doubt, read, *præ sitis importunitate et ardoris molestia*, as confirmed by the original passage in Will. Tyr., p. 674.

[5] *exhalarent*] exalarent, MS.

[6] *pervenire*] perferre, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1097 regionis metropolim, pervenerunt; quam omni habitatore vacuam invenerunt. Turci enim civitates et castella deserentes, cognito peregrinorum adventu, fiduciam resistendi non habebant. Indeque Marasiam urbem transeuntes, Ciliciam sunt ingressi. Habet autem Cilicia ab oriente Cœlessyriam, ab occidente Ysauriam, a septentrione juga montis Tauri, ab austro Cypricum mare. Habet etiam duas urbes metropolitanas, Anavarzan et Tharsum, doctoris gentium Pauli solum natale. Hæc civitas jam subdita est Baldewino, fratri comitis Godefridi. Robertus quoque, dux Normannorum martius, quandam cepit urbem Azena vocatam, et dedit eam ilico, quia sicut erat magnificus fuit et munificus, cuidam militi suo Symeoni. Dux vero Boamundus et comes Reimundus ceperunt aliam urbem, quam Petro de Alpibus contulerunt. Inde quoque ad Oxan profecti, urbem optinuerunt; et Petrus de Russelun cepit Rufam, et plurima castella subegit. Guelfus quidam, natione Burgundus, Adama urbem sibi subjugavit, qui Tancredum in ea supervenientem benigne suscepit. Tancredus autem[1] inde profectus, Mamistram pervenit, et, Turcis ibidem interfectis, urbem illam sibi subjugavit. Indeque ad minorem Alexandriam descendens, urbem optinuit, et provinciam sibi totam subjugavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 90.

Cities captured by various chiefs.

Edessa submits to Baldwin, brother of duke Godfrey.

Baldewinus autem, frater ducis Godefridi, ad majorem reversus exercitum, assumpta militia, in partes septentrionales descendit, et regionem totam usque ad Eufraten in sua jura recepit. Exiit ergo fama ejus ad cives Edessanos, qui trans flumen habitant,[2] quod tantus princeps de gente occidentis advenerat. Qui vocantes eum, humiliter rogitabant, ut sibi et suæ civitati præesse dignaretur.

[1] *autem*] aū, MS.
[2] *habitant*] habitabant, W. A. C. D.

Nota quid Edessa[1] civitas.

Rog. Wend. ii. 90. Est autem Edessa nobilis Mesopotamiæ civitas, quæ alio nomine Rages appellatur; ad quam Tobias[2] senior Tobiam filium suum misit, ut a Gabelo cognato reposceret decem talenta. Ad hanc igitur veniens Baldeuuinus, a duce urbis et populo universo cum gloria suscipitur et honore. Indeque urbem Samosatum adveniens, cum vidisset eam quasi inexpugnabilem, datis[3] aureorum decem milibus, emit eam a duce civitatis, et in sua jura recepit. Et inde ad Serorgiam transiens, obsedit eam et cepit. Quod cum factum fuerat, liber commeatus ab Edessa usque ad Antiochiam transire volentibus patebat. Major interea exercitus ad urbem Maresiam profectus, quam Turci præ timore vacuam reliquerant, Christianos in ea solummodo invenerunt. Inde miserunt Robertum, Normannorum ducem, ad urbem Artasiam,[4] cum comite Flandrensi; quorum adventum cum Christiani[5] cives cognovissent,[6] Turcos omnes, qui multo jam elapso tempore eos[7] oppresserant, necaverunt, et extra urbem omnium capita projecerunt. Distat autem hæc civitas ab Antiochia miliaribus xv., quæ etiam Calquis alio nomine nuncupatur.

A.D. 1097. City of Edessa the same as Rages. Further successes of Baldwin.

fol. 22 a.

Rog. Wend. ii. 91.

Progress of the larger body of the crusaders.

De transitu cujusdam pontis, et obsidione Antiochiæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 91. Hiis ita gestis, revocatæ sunt omnes legiones dispersæ per diversas provincias, et, exercitu redintegrato, generale fit interdictum inter eos, ut nullus de cetero, nisi jussus, præsumat ab exercitu separari. Mane autem facto, acies versus Antiochiam dirigunt et vexilla; sed quoniam fluvius Orontes, qui et vulgari appella-

The forces are re-assembled.

[1] *Edessa*] Edissa, MS.
[2] *Tobias*] Tobia, MS.
[3] *datis*] dans, MS.
[4] *Artasiam*] On an erasure.
[5] *Christiani*] Added in marg.
[6] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.
[7] *eos*] Interlined.

A.D. 1097. tione Fær dicitur, in via medius erat, super quem pontem audierunt fortissimum esse obstaculum et munimen hostium, miserunt Robertum, ducem Normannicum, quasi fulgur qui tonitrum prævenit, cum sociis expeditissimis, qui sequentibus iter præparerent; et si quid difficultatis emergeret, principes sequentes super eo redderent certiores. Præcedebat autem dux majores legiones, donec ad prædictum pontem pervenirent. Erat quidem pons lapideus et magnus, in utraque fronte turres habens fortissimas, in quibus centum viri armis strenui, balistarum usum habentes, fuerant deputati, qui pontem vel fluminis vadum volentes transire violenter rearcerent. Advenerant præterea ab Antiochia equites septingenti, qui in ulteriori fluminis ripa constituti, transitum nostris denegare pro viribus decertabant. Ad hunc quoque pontem, cum transire non poterat dux Robertus, ab hostibus prædictis impeditus, fit utrobique[1] conflictus asperrimus, qui usque ad adventum majoris exercitus non cessabat. Postquam ergo universæ convenerunt legiones, lituis perstrepentibus et tubis clangentibus, pontem invadunt, viribus totis hostes repellunt; et alii interim, vado reperto, flumen potenter transeunt, et ripam, hostibus fugatis, attingunt ulteriorem. Deinde, translato exercitu universo, castra statuerunt, et[2] die sequenti inter montes et fluvium, viam regiam sequentes, ante urbem infra[3] miliare unum castra locaverunt.

Duke Robert is sent to force a passage over the river Orontes.

Rog. Wend. ii. 92.

The army encamps before Antioch.

De commendatione civitatis Antiochiæ.

Account of Antioch.

Est autem Antiochia civitas præclara, ab Antiocho, filio Alexandri Macedonis, dicta, eo quod ipsam caput regni sui constituerit. In hac postmodum apostolorum

Rog. Wend. ii. 92.

[1] *utrobique*] At first written *ibique*. F. follows the correction. In W. A. C. D. *ibidem*.

[2] *et*] in, MS. and F. Corrected from W. A. C. D.

[3] *infra*] imfra, MS., throughout.

princeps cathedram tenuit pontificalem sub Theofilo, viro venerabili, qui erat in civitate potentissimus; a quo etiam fuit Theofilis nuncupata. Hæc quoque priscis temporibus dicta est Reblata, ad quam Sedechias, rex Judæ,[1] ante Nabugodonosor regem ductus est et oculis privatus. Sita est autem in provincia Syriacœles, quæ majoris Syriæ pars est, agros habens uberrimos, rivis ac fontibus delectabilis, et amœnitate singularis. Erat autem dominus civitatis quidam, Anxianus nomine, natione Thurcus; qui de familia fuerat magni Soldani Persarum, nomine Belfecho, qui provincias illas omnes suo, expulsis Christianis, imperio subjugarat. Principibus igitur occidentis complacuit, ut ad urbem accedentes, eam obsidione vallarent; unde urbi appropinquantes xv°. kalendas Novembris, acies in girum in hunc modum disponunt. Porro cum quinque essent portæ civitatis, quarum duæ propter fluminis vicinitatem non poterant obsideri, dimisit illas exercitus inobsessas, reliquis tribus obsidione repagulatis. Superiorem igitur portam obsedit Boamundus, cum hiis qui ab initio ejus castra fuerant secuti. Juxta eum vero sedit magnificus dux Normannorum Robertus, et comes Flandrensis cum sociis suis; qui a castris Boamundi usque ad portam Canis agmina conjunxerunt. Juxta illos autem continuarunt obsidionem comes Tholosanus et episcopus Podiensis Aimerus sive Athelmarus, cum aliis nobilibus, qui eorum fuerant vexilla secuti. Juxta illos itaque sederunt aliis copulati dux spectabilis Godefridus, cum fratribus suis Eustachio et Baldewino, et aliæ legiones multæ, quæ ipsum quasi rectorem fuerant subsecutæ.

A.D. 1097.

Anxianus, governor of the city.

Rog. Wend. ii. 93.

Siege of the city, and position of the Christian army.

18 Oct.

---

[1] *Judæ*] Juda, MS.

Boamundus victualia quærens, multos Turcorum interfecit.

A.D. 1097. Progress of the siege. Civitate itaque in hunc modum obsessa, locaverunt machinas suas in locis opportunis,[1] petrarias scilicet, trubuculos et mangonellos, ex quibus crebros lapides emittebant, et dampna quæ civibus inclusis terrorem non minimum incusserunt, irrogabant. Castellum quoque ligneum latum componentes et altum, balistarios cum speculatoribus in eo caute locaverunt, qui in insidiis civium constituti, telis ignitis et venenatis multos neci ex hostibus tradiderunt. Turci e contrario machinas pro machinis constituentes, tela pro telis, et lapides pro lapidibus, in peregrinorum perniciem non segniter remiserunt. Tandem, innumeris hinc inde interfectis, et maxime ex illis qui victualia quærebant, deficientibus alimentis, dominus Boamundus et comes Flandrensis Robertus, de communi consilio, ut pabula quærerent, exierunt. Audientes autem Turchos esse in quodam castello et villa magna, in regione hostium, bonis omnibus referta, profecti sunt illuc cum legionibus suis; ubi multis, Deo volente, a paucis trucidatis, spolia multa in suos usus reportarunt. Cognoverunt autem prædicti principes per exploratores suos, Turchorum multitudinem in proximo constitutam, contra quam comitem Flandrensem direxit Boamundus cum viris communitis; ipse majoribus copiis stipatus ilico secuturus. Comes vero, in opere vir strenuus et probatus, in hostes acriter irruens, centum ex eis gladio peremit. Dumque victor ad socios rediret, ecce alii exploratores multo fortiores nunciant adventare, ex alio latere emergentes. Contra quos adveniente Boamundo, multiplicatis viribus incedentes, prævia Dei gratia, omnes in fugam compulerunt; et quasi per duo miliaria insequentes eos, stragem non modicam hostibus intulerunt. Indeque cum triumpho

Rog. Wend. ii. 93.

Rog. Wend. ii. 94.

fol. 22 b.

Defeat of the Turks by the count of Flanders, and Boamund.

[1] *opportunis*] oportunis, MS.

ad castra revertentes, cum equis, mulis, camelis, asinis, armentis et spoliis, quæ contraxerant, agros repleverunt circumpositos, et principes, in victus penuria laborantes, immensa lætitia perfuderunt. Sed quoniam tantæ multitudini vix per dies paucos[1] prædicta licet magna præda sufficere potuit, prævaluit in brevi adeo fames in populo, quod innumera hominum multitudo ab obsidione recedens, juramentorum et votivæ professionis immemores, clam ad patriam repedarunt. Inter quos etiam et Tatinus, imperatoris procurator Alexii, qui in naso simo mentis proditionem satis indicabat; homo quidem[2] formidolosius, ut quocunque modo fraudem palliaret, relicta in obsidione familia cum tentoriis, recessit irrediturus.

A.D. 1097.

A famine arises.

Rog. Wend. ii. 95.

Filius regis Danorum veniens peregrinis in subsidium, interficitur a Turcis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 95.

Hoc quoque tempore Suanus, Danorum regis filius, crucesignatus, cum viris mille quingentis optime armatis, ad obsidionem properans Antiochenam, non longe ab urbe Nicæa Turcorum perpessus insidias, cum suis omnibus interfectus est. Sed tamen diu et viriliter ipse et sui hostibus resistentes, ne inulti animas effundere viderentur, cruentam post se proditoribus victoriam reliquerunt.

Sweyn, son of the king of Denmark, killed by the Turks.

Fames in exercitu invalescit; Deus complacatus succurrit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 95.

Per idem tempus, cum in obsidione fames de die in diem invalesceret, et ex fame lues sequeretur, de mandato domini Podiensis, qui legatione sedis apostolicæ in exercitu fungebatur, statutum est, ut triduanum indiceretur jejunium in populo. Videbatur enim pru-

Increase of famine in the camp.

A fast ordained, and other regulations made.

[1] *paucos*] Added in marg. | [2] *quidem*] quidam, MS. and F.

A.D. 1097. dentibus viris et literatis, quod, peccatis exigentibus, prædicta incommoda [1] acciderunt. Decreverunt igitur pariter, meretrices omnes, quæ se lotrices appellari fecerunt, ab exercitu sequestrari; adulteria, fornicationes, ebrietates, commessationes, aleas, et horribiles jurationes, simul et omnes fraudes, interdicere universis; ut, omni spurcitia eliminata, adesse sibi divinam misericordiam humiliter implorarent. Factum est autem, ut per gratiam Dei superabundantem,[2] populo ad frugem vitæ melioris revocato, ex parte quiesceret ira Dei, qui cum iratus extiterit, misericordiæ recordatur. Rog. Wend. ii. 96.

Jocosa subtilitas Boamundi exploratores abegit.

Fear occasioned by spies in the camp.

Movebantur autem supra modum ex hoc peregrini, quod sciebant exploratores esse in exercitu ex omnibus orientis nationibus, inter quos [3] conversabantur increduli; dum unusquisque eorum de proprio statu sollicitus, scire volebat qualiter se contra tantam expeditionem defendere valuisset. Et cum hujusmodi exploratores multiplicarenter, surrepsit in populo scisma et confusio. Nec enim erat difficile exploratoribus inter nostros latere, cum mercatores in exercitu victualium, alii Græcos, alii Surianos, alii Armenios se esse affirmarent. Et cum hujusmodi exploratores famem invalescere simul et mortalitatem conspicerent in exercitu, timuerunt peregrini valde, ne, si tanta calamitas inter gentiles disseminaretur, ipsi, collectis militaribus copiis, supervenientes, peregrinos obruerent universos. Cumque principes contra hoc nullum potuissent remedium invenire, vir perspicacis ingenii Boamundus, circa primum noctis sequentis crepusculum, cum alii sodales per castra de apparatu cœnæ de more essent solliciti, adduci præ- Rog. Wend. ii. 96.

Stratagem practised by order of Boamund.

[1] *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

[2] *superabundantem*] superhabundantem, MS.

[3] *quos*] quas, MS.

cepit Turcos aliquot, quos habebat in vinculis; et tradens eos carnificibus, mandat jugulari, et, copioso igne supposito, quasi ad opus cœnæ assari. Jussit etiam suis, quod si ab aliquibus essent interrogati,[1] quid sibi vellet talis cœnæ apparatus, affirmarent sic esse decretum, ut quotquot ex hostibus deinceps aut exploratoribus eorum caperentur, omnes in prandiis principum et populi modo simili consumerentur. Audientes autem qui in expeditione erant tam admirabile factum, accurrunt universi, et rei novitatem admirantes, qui affuerunt exploratores totum serio fuisse factum et absque simulatione crediderunt. Timentes itaque, ne quid sibi simile accideret, de castris furtim egressi, ad propria sunt reversi; illis, qui eos miserant, dicentes, quoniam populus iste omnem ferarum silvestrium excedat feritatem, cum non sufficiat sibi urbes et castella subjugare, omnimodam hostium superbiam[2] diripere, nisi insuper et de carnibus eorum saturentur. Exiit ergo sermo iste ad partes orientis remotiores, et longe positas perterruit nationes. Civitas quoque Antiochena tota pertremuit, hujus facti perterrita novitate. Hæc contulit Deus populo suo per studium et operam domini Boamundi, et sic per hoc exploratorum pestis in parte maxima conquievit.

A.D. 1097.

Rog. Wend. ii. 97.

The spies withdraw, and spread reports of what had taken place

fol. 23 a.

De convalescentia Godefridi ab infirmitate sua, et de causa ægritudinis.

Surrexit præterea in exercitu ingens lætitia de convalescentia ducis Godefridi, qui de valida ægritudinis molestia plene restitutus est sanitati. Receperat namque apud Antiochiam minorem vulnus fere letiferum, ab urso quodam sibi inflictum, dum ibidem constitutus, ob gratiam recreationis silvam quandam ingressus,

Rog. Wend. ii. 97.

Recovery to health of duke Godfrey.

Rog. Wend. ii. 98.

His previous conflict with a bear.

---

[1] *interrogati*] interogati, MS.
[2] *superbiam*] So also F.; substantiam, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1097. pauperem peregrinum invenit ramalia comportantem; quem ursus ingens et horrendi corporis fugientem insequens ut devoraret, periculum imminens[1] pauper clamore protestatur. Dux autem pauperem clamantem conspiciens et rapido cursu fugientem, compatitur peregrino jam a belua devorando; quo[2] velociter accurrit, educto gladio, ut opem ferret periclitanti. Videns ergo ursus ducem gladio instantem, spreto peregrino, dentibus armatus et unguibus, in hostem se contulit fortiorem. Tandem dux, qui tunc omine ancipiti solus erat, equo crudeliter vulnerato et prædicto paupere non comparente, cum inermis fuisset, letifero patuit discrimini. Pedes igitur effectus, gladio rem agebat magnanimus. Ursus autem, patulo oris rictu et murmure occurrens horribili, ducis constantiam parvipendens, contempto gladio, nititur se cominus ingerere repugnanti.[3] Porro dux irruentem a se beluam propellere gladio totis nisibus instans, mucrone eam perfodere nitebatur; verum ursus gladium declinans, et ducem brachiis amplexum[4] constringens, in solum dejicere[5] conabatur, ut sub se positum dentibus posset et unguibus laniare. Verum miles strenuus et viribus integris solidatus, læva beluam complexus, dextra gladium[6] immergit, et impingit immersum capulo tenus, et, eliquato copioso sanguine, mortem ingerit reluctanti. Saucius tamen dux et cruore respersus, periculosissime quoque vulneratus, cruentam nimis ac fortuitam victoriam reportavit; unde nimia sanguinis effusione debilitatus, ad sodales non potuit remeare. Tandem vero, prædicto paupere, qui ejus beneficio mortem evaserat, proclamante et casum indicante, accurrunt legiones universæ, et lectica impositum detulerunt ad castra semivivum. Aspecta autem belua etiam mortua, horrorem intuentibus incussit et timo-

---

[1] *imminens*] iminens, MS.

[2] *quo*] et, W. A. C. D.

[3] *repugnanti*] repungnanti, MS.

[4] *amplexum*] amplexu, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[5] *dejicere*] deicere, MS.

[6] *gladium*] Added in marg.

rem. Sollicita autem cirurgicorum peritia dux, ut prælibatum est, curatus, totum exercitum jam feliciter exhilaravit. A.D. 1097.

Rex Angliæ Willelmus in res ecclesiæ debacchatur,[1] *nec per Anselmum subito advenientem compescitur.*

Eodem vero anno rex Willelmus,[2] qui a multis Rubeus Draco cognominabatur, ecclesias Anglicanas et præcipue vacantes multiformiter depauperavit; archiepiscopatus quoque Cantuariensis pauperes homines et cœnobii Sancti Albani contrivit. Nemora autem succidit, et thesauros ecclesiæ suis ærariis accumulavit, et incolas ad constructionem aulæ Westmonasterialis et castrorum suorum injuriose nimis angariavit. Quod audiens archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Anselmus exul, non æquo animo talia toleravit. Sciens igitur ipsum regem esse in partibus mari orientali Angliæ conterminis, eum adiit, sperans ipsum ad frugem melioris vitæ revocare. Prius destinavit ad ipsum pios intercessores, sed ipsi, spe frustrati, probris et minis reversi sunt lacessiti. Archiepiscopus igitur Londoniis latitando expectans, interim Samsonem in episcopum Wigorniensem, in ecclesia Beati Pauli consecravit, die Dominica, xvii°. kalendas Julii.[3] Quo facto, cum non proficeret in proposito,[4] sicut clam et repente venit, ita, infecto negotio, clanculo remeavit. Unde super hoc quidam versificator scribens ait,

William II., surnamed the Red Dragon, oppresses the church grievously.

Fruitless intercession of abp. Anselm.

Consecration of Sampson, bp. of Worcester. 15 June.

"Anselmus veniens illuc clam, clamque recedens," etc.

Unde ille adventus cassus et pro[5] nullo reputatur.

[1] *debacchatur*] debacatur, MS.

[2] *rex Willelmus*] rege Willelmo, MS., and so in F.

[3] On the 15 June 1096. See "Fasti Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ," iii. 49, ed. Hardy.

[4] *cum non . . . proposito*] Added in marg., and is in the text of F.

[5] *cassus et pro*] Partly on an erasure. In the margin a word has also been erased, apparently *est*.

Ricardus de Exaquio creatur abbas Sancti Albani.

A.D. 1097. Richard de Lessai made abbat of St. Alban's.

Anno quoque sub eodem Ricardus de Exaquio abbas creatur Sancti Albani; quam[1] et ipse magnifice rexit annis xx^ti^. et duobus, religionem reformando, et cellis[2] ampliando, et possessionibus, thesauris, et ornamentis, licet ipsum cœnobium nimis reperisset per tirannidem regis Willelmi dissipatum, restaurando. Rog. Wend. ii. 99.

De duorum milium strage Turcorum.

A.D. 1098. Continuation of the siege of Antioch, and great slaughter of the Turks at Hareng.

Anno Domini M°.XC°VIII°. peregrini, qui erant in obsidione Antiochiæ, dies Natalicios in obsequiis divinis et elemosinarum exhibitionibus magnifice celebrarunt. Inter quos etiam cives Antiocheni, de suo statu satis solliciti, principes infideles tam vicinos quam remotos in sui subsidium evocarunt. Factum est igitur per eorum instantiam diligentem, quod a Damasco, Jerusalem, Cæsarea, Alapia, Haman, Emissa, Ierapoli, et conterminis regionibus multis congregati referuntur circa castrum, cui nomen est Hareg,[3] quod ab Antiochia vix xiiii. miliaribus distat, ad xx^ti^. milia bellatorum. Qui omnes habuerunt propositum ex improviso irruere in peregrinos, dum circa assultum occuparentur, exeuntibus civibus super ipsos ex adverso. Sed principes nostri, quos insidiæ eorum non latebant, pedites omnes de exercitu in obsidione relinquentes, qui equites erant in primo noctis crepusculo, armis instructi, sine tumultu et quasi sub silentio de castris egressi, inter lacum quendam et Orontem fluvium, qui parum a se distant, nocte illa quieverunt. Mane autem facto, cum festina- Rog. Wend. ii. 99. Rog. Wend. ii. 100. fol. 23 b.

[1] *quam*] In reference to *ecclesia* understood. W. A. C. D. read, "abbas *ecclesiæ* Sancti Albani."

[2] *cellis*] in cellis, W. A. C. D.; cellas, E.

[3] *Hareg*] So all the MSS.; but elsewhere *Hareng*. In Will. Tyr., *Harenc*, pp. 698, 916.

tione ad arma convolantes, in sex aciebus suum disponunt exercitum, singulis earum certis ducibus assignatis. A.D. 1098. Turci vero non longe constituti, scientes jam quod nostri in vicino essent, de suis copiis duas acies præmiserunt, reliqua turba cominus subsequente. Factum est autem, ut nostri, qui vix septingenti erant, suscepto de supernis incremento, infinita milia viderentur. Procedentibus igitur paulatim ad invicem legionibus, cœperunt primæ acies eorum in nostros cum magno impetu irruere, et, immissa sagittarum grandine, ad suos confidunt habere recursum. Nostri autem cominus accedentes, vibratis more solito lanceis et gladiis incumbentes, eos omnes [1] in unam turbam solidari compellunt. Comprimentibus [2] autem illos hinc lacu, illinc fluvio, eis evagandi licentiam auferebant; unde Turci Christianorum ferre non valentes instantiam, in sola fuga constituunt spem salutis. Dantibus ergo terga infidelibus, nostrates eos certatim insequuntur [3] usque ad castrum memoratum, quod a loco certaminis generalis miliaribus x. distabat. Videntes autem oppidani [4] suorum fugam, et gladiis Christianorum fere omnes cecidisse, succenso Hareg castro, ipsi fugam capessunt. At vero Armenii et alii fideles regionis illius prædictum Rog. Wend. ii. 101. occupantes municipium, illud nostris postea principibus reddiderunt. Ceciderunt autem die illa ex hostibus ad duo milia, ex quibus quingenta capita reportantes, cum mille equis optimis et manubiis copiosis, ad castra sunt reversi. Cives quoque interea per portam civitatis certatim egredientes, fere tota die nostris gravissima, absentibus principibus, gravamina intulerunt, donec nostrorum audientes adventum jocundum Christianis, sese retrorsum retrahentes, cum confusione in civitatem sese longius receperunt. Principes itaque victores ad obsidionem reversi, ducenta Turchorum capita, in sig-

[1] *omnes*] Repeated, but expuncted.

[2] *Comprimentibus*] Comprimementibus, MS., but *me* expuncted.

[3] *insequuntur*] insequntur, MS.

[4] *oppidani*] opidani, MS.

A.D. 1098. num triumphi et doloris eorum incrementum, machinis jaculatoriis in urbem projecerunt; cetera autem ante urbem palis confixa, ut essent civibus quasi spina in oculo, confixerunt.

Peregrini trecenti a Turcis prosternuntur.

Siege continued. Cumque principes omnes ad obsidionem reversi fuissent, invadunt acriter mœnia universi; contra quos cives acerrime rebellantes, signiferum Podiensis episcopi et multos alios peremerunt. Tandem, cum in mensem quintum obsidio protraheretur,[1] venerunt naves Januensium, peregrinos et victualia afferentes, et frequentibus nunciis exigentes, ut, missis aliquot de principibus, secure eos ad castra conducerent. Quod audientes peregrini, qui in obsidione[2] erant et victus penuria vexabantur, infinitus eorum numerus ad mare descendit, ubi peractis negotiis, ad castra redire proponunt. Eliguntur itaque de principibus dominus Boamundus, comes Tholosanus, Everardus de Pusato, et comes Garnerius de Gres, ut peregrinos, qui in portu erant, tam eos qui nuper advenerant, quam alios qui ad mare descenderant, sub salvo conductu ad castra perducerent. Audientes autem Antiocheni, quod prædicti principes ad mare descenderant, missis iiii^{or}. milibus expeditorum militum, illis obviam perrexerunt, ut parantes peregrinis insidias, eos interficere laborarent. Factum est autem, cum[3] quidam plebei peregrini cum victualibus[4] et jumentis onustis inermes redirent ad castra, Turci ab

Rog. Wend. ii. 101.

Arrival of the Genoese galleys with pilgrims and provisions.

Rog. Wend. ii. 102.

Massacre of 300 pilgrims by the Turks.

[1] *protraheretur*] protraherentur, MS., but *n* expuncted.

[2] *obsidione*] Partly on an erasure.

[3] *cum*] ut, MS.; but corr. from W. A. C. D., all of which omit *quidam*. It is probable that the MS. read at first *ut cum*, but *cum* has been erased, and *quidam* written over it.

[4] *plebei . . . victualibus*] These words are written in the margin as a correction, and then inserted in the text over an erasure. F. agrees.

insidiis erumpentes, in ipsos non segniter irruerunt. A.D. 1098. Contra quos cum principes præfati diu decertassent, videntes tandem imparem nimis conflictum contra tantam Turcorum multitudinem, cum illis qui eos sequi poterant recedentes, ad castra de loco certaminis redierunt. Ceciderunt autem ibi ex pauperibus peregrinis quasi trecenti, promiscui sexus et ætatis.

De strage Turcorum gravissima, et prælio eatenus inaudito.

Rog. Wend. ii. 102. Venit interea[1] rumor in castra, quod peregrini, qui de mari advenerant, hostium in via perpessi insidias, omnes repentino impetu corruissent. Sed dum hæc inter se principes nimis condolentes ruminarent, ecce Boamundus, et post paululum comes Tholosanus, ad castra revertuntur, casumque qui acciderat principibus nunciarunt. **Return of Boamund and the count of Toulouse to the camp.** Anxianus[2] itaque, dominus civitatis, cognoscens[3] quod sui victores erant, præcepit portas civitatis aperiri, ut cives revertentes liberum haberent ingressum. *Superbia Anxiani.* **Anxianus orders the gates to be opened.** Sed principes nostri, confratrum suorum sanguinem ulcisci cogitantes, ad arma convolarunt, et, dispositis aciebus, hostibus uno spiritu occurrebant, et solita gladiis incumbentes constantia in Turcos irruunt; qui præ timore, agminibus dissolutis, pontem urbis certatim optinere contendunt. Sed dux Godefridus Lotharingiæ magnanimus, cum suis pontem præoccupans,[4] aut intrare volentes aut exire gladio detruncat, aut [in][5] principes illos insequentes redire perituros compellit. **Conflict on the bridge, and defeat of the Turks.** Rog. Wend. ii. 103. Sic ergo, cum nec hic nec alibi principum impetus, armorum instantiam, ictusque importabiles

[1] *interea*] interrea, MS.

[2] In the MS. a separate chapter is here commenced, but it undoubtedly should be joined to the preceding one, as in W. A. C. D. F., and in accordance with the last rubric.

[3] *cognoscens*] congnoscens, MS.

[4] *præoccupans*] preocupans, MS.

[5] *in*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1098. sustinere diutius valerent,[1] salutis initium ac[2] remedium fuga erat; quo frustrati penitus, gladiis perimuntur. Anxianus autem populum suum deficere videns, portas præcipit sub omni celeritate aperiri, ut eorum saltem reliquias sub tuto permitteret collocari. Reserato igitur aditu, tanta super pontem fugientium turba conglobata est, tantusque factus tumultus, ut se invicem comprimentes in fluvium præcipites submergerentur[3] infiniti. Dux quoque Godefridus, postquam in hoc conflictu multorum capita loricatorum, sine ictus repetitione solita fultus virtute amputaverat, unum ex Turcis in nostros protervius instantem, licet lorica indutum, per medium cum gladio divisit, ita ut pars ab umbilico superior[4] ad terram caderet, reliqua parte super equum, cui insederat, infra urbem cursu rapido introducta. Equus autem hinniendo inter Turcos huc illucque, ac si diabolica furia veheretur, discurrens, sessoris corpus gerens ab umbilico deorsum, omnes qui viderunt tali terruit novitate. Dux insuper Normannorum Robertus alium sibi nimis infestum in capite percutiens, galeam et clipeum, caput, dentes et collum, ut solet ovicula a carnifice truncari,[5] usque in pectus deorsum diffidit. Quo in terram ruente, ait Robertus, "Omnibus Tartareis ministris animam tuam cruentam commendo." Ceciderunt utique die illa ex hostibus quasi ad duo milia Turcorum, et, nisi nox superveniens bellum dirimisset, finem[6] procul dubio die illa negotium Antiochenum sortitum fuisset adoptatum. Compertum est fideliter a nostris per captivos Turcos, quod xii. de majoribus eorum cum aliis cor-

fol. 24 a.

Prowess of duke Godfrey and duke Robert.

Slaughter of the Turks.

Rog. Wend. ii. 104.

[1] *valerent*] non valerent, MS. and F.

[2] *initium ac*] So also F. In the MS. *ac* is added above the line, and the reading *unicum* in W. A. C. D. (omitting *ac*) is doubtless the true one.

[3] *submergerentur*] submergeruntur, MS.

[4] *superior*] Added in marg.

[5] *truncari*] Added in marg. Om. W. A. C. D. F.

[6] *finem*] Repeated superfluously before *sortitum*, and so in F.

ruerunt. Cives vero de nocte clam suorum corpora defunctorum lugubri sepulturæ tradiderunt; sed de nostris pauperibus quidam nebulones, quos vulgus ribaldos vocat, funera eorum effodientes, aurum et vestes pretiosas ex sepultis canibus extraxerunt.[1] A.D. 1098.

De duobus milibus equorum a peregrinis caute lucratis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 104.

Two thousand horses captured by the Christians.

Post hanc autem victoriam divinitus peregrinis concessam, cum castra nova quædam et machinas ad urbis expugnationem construxissent, audierunt quod cives, pro defectu pabuli, ad locum quendam pascualem equos suos consueverant destinare, qui vix ab urbe iiii^or^. miliaribus distare videbatur. Quod nostri cognoscentes, et ad locum memoratum properantes, occisis qui armentis et equitiis præerant, exceptis mulis et mulabus, duo milia equorum nobilium ad castra deduxerunt. Per idem tempus quoque Baldeuuinus, ducis Godefridi frater, qui, ut dictum est, Edessam civitatem sibi subjugaverat, audiens quod peregrini magna rerum laborarent inopia, missis donis ingentibus in auro, argento, gemmis, olosericis, et equis pretiosis, rem principum reddidit ampliorem. Insuper autem et duci, fratri suo, de[2] terra quam[3] circa Eufraten possidebat, omnes redditus in frumento, vino, hordeo[4] et oleo, necnon et aureorum, quæ l.m. aureorum[5] numerum excederat, destinavit.

Presents sent by Baldwin to the army.

¶ *De quibusdam pretiosis exenniis.*

---

[1] *extraxerunt*] extraxherunt, MS.

[2] *de*] quæ de, MS., and so W. F. The MSS. A. C. D. omit *quæ*, and the printed text of Wendover reads *qui de*, which is evidently wrong.

[3] *quam*] quæ, MS. and F. Corr. from Will. Tyr., p. 703. There is no repetition of the pronoun in W. A. C. D.

[4] *hordeo*] ordeo, MS.

[5] *aureorum*] Repeated also in F.

Rumor de adventu Persarum.

A.D. 1098. Rumour of the approach of the Persians.

Eodem quoque tempore nunciatum est principibus, quod Soldanus, Persarum dominus, ad Antiochenorum instantiam urgentissimam et suorum postulationes assiduas, innumerabiles armatorum copias in Syriam transmiserat, qui jam quasi imminere[1] dicebantur. Hæc quoque famæ disseminatio adeo principes nostros perterruit, ut Stephanus, Carnotensium comes, ægritudine simulata et sumpta a fratribus licentia, cum iiii^or. armatorum milibus ab obsidione recederet irrediturus. Quo facto tam notabili tamque funesto principes, qui in castris erant, consternati, cœperunt anxie deliberare quomodo huic morbo occurrerent, ne hoc exemplo pernicioso alii simile quid attemptarent. Placuit ergo omnibus decretum voce præconia edici, ut quicunque se a castris sine principum licentia subtraheret, tanquam sacrilegus aut homicida in exercitu haberetur et puniretur; unde factum est, ut omnes pariter, tanquam viri claustrales, principibus suis obedientiam voluntate spontanea fideliter exhiberent.

Rog. Wend. ii. 104.

Stephen, count of Chartres, leaves the army.

Rog. Wend. ii. 105.

Decree that no one should withdraw from the camp, without leave.

De Emyfero, per quem tradita est Antiochia.

Solet autem divina clementia servorum deficientibus argumentis propitius subvenire, nec suos ultra quam sustinere possint temptari permittit. Erat nempe in civitate,[2] in urbe Antiochena, inter alios tributarios et oppressos, vir quidam genere præclarus et Christiana professione insignitus, Emyfer vel Emyferus nuncupatus; homo potens nimis, et Anxiano, urbis domino, multa

Rog. Wend. ii. 105.

Emyfer, a Christian,

[1] *imminere*] iminere, MS. Written at first *iminere quasi*, but marked to be transposed.

[2] *in civitate*] So in F.; but these words are superfluous, and are not in W. A. C. D.

conjunctus familiaritate. Erat enim in loricis faciendis magister præpollens et singularis, habens sub se hujusmodi artifices. Insuper in palatio Anxiani notarii officio fungebatur, unde omnia civium secreta cognoverat. Hic autem vir prudens, audiens quod Boamundus princeps esset illustris et magnificus, statim post obsidionem urbis, per internuncios archanos et fideles ejus sibi gratiam reconcilians, civium et urbis statum diebus singulis denudaverat, et in omnibus agendis fideliter instruxerat. Boamundus quoque, vice versa, hoc misterium prudenter occultabat, ita scilicet, ut nullus internunciorum alterutræ partis aliquod secretorum ipsorum posset colligere argumentum. Cumque jam quasi mensibus vii. hæc se inter eos occulta continuasset amicitia, plerumque habitus est sermo inter eos, quomodo Christianæ religioni civitas redderetur. Et cum super hoc a Boamundo Emyfer sæpius esset conventus, semel ei per filium suum, qui secretorum erat interbajulus, dicitur respondisse, "Si patriam pristinæ restituere libertati, et, exclusis canibus, quorum violenta dominatione premimur, populum Dei cultorem possem inducere, certus sum, quod cum sanctis animabus æternæ beatitudinis præmia possidebo; si vero rem inceptam consummare nequivero, deprehensus procul dubio domus mea et præclaræ nomen familiæ meæ delebitur ita, ut non memoretur nomen illius ultra. Sed si hoc posses apud tuos consortes optinere, quod civitatem meo tibi studio traditam appropriare, et in tuos usus convertere valuisses et voluisses, ego tui gratia ad opus prædictum me accingam, et turrim meam munitissimam hanc, ut vides, tibi tradam; unde principibus vestris liber in civitatem patere poterit ingressus. At hoc[1] noveris, quod nisi hoc in proximo fiat, in perpetuum differetur. Veniunt enim in subsidium civitatis ex toto oriente equitum ducenta milia,

A.D. 1098.

Correponds secretly with Boamund.

Rog. Wend. ii. 106.

fol. 24 b.

Offer made by him to betray the city.

[1] *At hoc*] Ad hæc, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1098. qui jam circa Eufraten castra statuerunt." Hæc audiens Boamundus, venit in castra, et majores principes a turba seorsum advocans, ita ipsos alloquitur, dicens, "Video vos, fratres dilectissimi, de adventu illius multitudinis nimia sollicitudine macerari, et illius ducis Corbaranni formidine molestari, qui jam obsidionem[1] Edessæ civitatis, ubi per tres septimanas consederant, ad hoc reliquerunt, ut civibus Antiochenis ferant subsidium. Videtur mihi, quod ad hoc deberet omnis nostra festinare intentio, ut ante hujus adventum multitudinis civitas in nostram descenderet potestatem. Quod si modum quæritis, quo id effectui valeat mancipari, in promptu[2] est nobis via, qua facile ad finem perveniamus adoptatum. Habeo enim in civitate amicum fidelem, qui turrem habet in sua potestate firmissimam, quam certis promissionibus, si illam ab eo exegero, fide mediante, resignare tenetur. Si ergo vobis id utile videtur, ut scilicet civitas mea sollicitudine subjugata in meam perpetualiter et successorum meorum transeat potestatem, paratus sum pacta ilico[3] complere; sin autem, elaboret aliquis vestrum peritus[4] id ipsum facere, ego illi meam concedo partem, et renuncio juri meo."

Boamund discloses the plot to the princes.

Rog. Wend. ii. 107.

He offers to gain possession of the city, on condition it should be bestowed on himself and successors.

De captione Antiochiæ, et spoliis civitatis.

Hiis ita dictis, gavisi sunt principes universi gaudio magno valde, et petitioni factæ omnes, præter comitem Tholosanum, grato concurrentes assensu, datis dextris, compromiserunt, quod sibi creditum nemini revelarent sacramentum secretissimum. Boamundum autem attentius monent, quatinus ad rei consummationem viribus attendat universis. Soluto igitur conventu, Boamundus stabilis propositum urgens subarratum, amico significa-

The princes consent, with the exception of the count of Toulouse.

Rog. Wend. ii. 107.

---

[1] *obsidionem*] obsidione, MS.
[2] *promptu*] promtu, MS.
[3] *ilico*] Added in marg.
[4] *peritus*] On an erasure.

vit, quod apud principes pro voto cuncta impetraverat; unde per fidem amicum invitat, ut nocte proxima sequente res effectui mancipetur. Emyfer e contra Boamundo denunciat, ut circa horam nonam principes omnes egrediantur, tanquam hostibus obviam profecturi, de castris, et circa primam noctis vigiliam in silentio revertentes, parati sint hora noctis media juxta ejus monita se habere. Quod cum ita factum fuisset, jam noctis medio adveniente, cum se civitas universa quieti dedisset, interpretem domesticum ad amicum dirigit memoratum, ut ab ipso inquirat, utrum sibi adhuc domini sui familiam adesse judicet opportunum.[1] Adveniens autem nuncius ille, cum ei domini sui exposuisset voluntatem,[2] respondit ei, "Sede hic quietus et tace, donec revertar ad te." Ille vero paululum expectans, quousque magister vigilum, qui ter vel quater in nocte muros cum laternis circuire[3] consueverat, si quos ex ministris in excubiis[4] inveniret sompnolentos, pertransiret, protinus vir ille, visa opportunitate,[5] ad nuncium reversus ait, "Vade cito, et dic domino tuo, ut festinus adveniat cum viris præelectis, et nullo formidoloso." Qui citius ad dominum recurrens, invenit eum[6] cum principibus promptum[7] et paratum; et ilico, sicut instructi erant, subito ante turrim prædictam, quasi vir unus, in maximo silentio astiterunt. Emyfer interea turrim ingressus, fratrem suum reperit sompno prægravatum. Cujus mentem a suo proposito sciens alienam, timens ne per eum inceptæ impeditum rei[8] eveniret, ipsum gladio transverberavit, facto pius et sceleratus eodem existendo. Post hæc autem rediens, et principes paratos conspi-

A.D. 1098.

Time fixed by Emyfer to betray the city.

Rog. Wend. ii. 108.

Emyfer kills his brother, and lowers a cord,

---

[1] *opportunum*] oportunum, MS.

[2] *voluntatem*] Added in marg. F. reads *verba*, as W. A. C. D.

[3] *circuire*] circuere, MS.

[4] *in excubiis*] On an erasure.

[5] *opportunitate*] oportunitate, MS.

[6] *eum*] The text from *compromiserunt* to this word has been written by Matthew Paris on a piece of vellum pasted over a space originally left blank.

[7] *promptum*] At first written *promtum*.

[8] *rei*] Interlined.

A.D. 1098. ciens, funem demittit inferius,[1] quo scalam ad se pertrahat sullevatam. Erecta igitur scala, nemo repertus est, qui ad vocem superioris vel ad vocem Boamundi præsumat ascendere, inter optimates universos, proditionem metuentes. Quod videns Boamundus, ascendit ilico scalam intrepidus. At Emifer tenens ejus manum, deosculatus eam ait, ducens eum in turrim, "Vivat hæc manus!" Et ducens eum interius, ostendit ei fratrem, quem pro opere tam sancto necaverat, amico causam exponendo. Ruit igitur Boamundus in oscula viri, constantiam ejus admirans; et reversus ad scalam, hortatur suos ut ascendant. Sed nullus ascendere ausus est, donec Boamundus per scalam ad suos rediens, suæ incolumitatis dederat evidens argumentum. Deinde certatim ascendentes, in momento turrim repleverunt; et non solum turrim illam, sed et de collateralibus nonnullas occuparunt, quæ fuerunt numero decem, earum custodibus sub silentio interfectis, prævio semper Emyfero. Et deinceps portam unam, quæ adulterina erat, docente duce, aperientes, principes de foris expectantes introduxerunt. Crevit igitur statim eorum numerus ita, qui jam intus erant,[2] ut ad portam quæ Pontis dicitur concurrentes, cæsis custodibus, eam aperiunt violenter. Cognoscentes[3] igitur, quia jam aurora rutilaret, cornibus et lituis cœperunt perstrepere, ad urbis ingressum[4] exercitum invocando, omnes[5] alacriter animando. Vexillum igitur ilico domini Boamundi in unam turrim eminentiorem ejus ministri collocantes, voce clara in edito captam pronunciant civitatem. Cives autem ex tanto tumultu expergefacti, dubitant quid sibi velit[6] clamor ille subitus et insolitus. Qui tandem videntes armorum splendorem et armatorum discursus per plateas, quas scatere

by which Boamund ascends the tower.

fol. 25 *a*.

Rog. Wend. ii. 109.

The tower is occupied, and the army admitted within the city.

[1] *inferius*] imferius, MS.

[2] *erant*] erat, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *Cognoscentes*] Congnoscentes, MS.

[4] *ingressum*] ingresum, MS.

[5] *omnes*] At first written *omnesque*, but *que* erased.

[6] *velit*] Added on to the text.

cernunt funeribus, domibus relictis, cum uxoribus et liberis effugere satagebant; sed incaute fugientes, stragem undique repererunt. Qui autem in urbe habitabant servuli Christiani, arreptis [armis],[1] nostrorum cœtibus adjunguntur, et stragem civibus eorum oppressoribus non minimam intulerunt, secretorum ipsorum non ignari. Ædificiis igitur omnibus cum penetralibus et apotecis confractis et occupatis, aurum, argentum, vestes pretiosas et gemmas, cum vasis impretiabilibus, olosericis, cum omni suppellectili nobilissima, inter se æqua sorte distribuentes, super admirationem ditabantur. Et qui prius esurientes in exercitu mendicaverant, bonis jam omnibus[2] usque ad fastidium abundabant.[3] Cæsi referuntur in civitate plusquam decem milia Turcorum, quorum corpora per plateas miserabiliter insepulta jacuerunt. Equi inventi sunt, qui ad arma facerent, quingenti, omnes tamen macie confecti et inedia tabescentes; quia nec equis vel etiam hominibus aliquid alimenti in civitate est repertum.

A.D. 1098.

Massacre of the inhabitants, and pillage.

Rog. Wend. ii. 110.

De interitu Anxiani, Antiochiæ principis.

R. Wend. ii. 110.

Anxianus, prince of Antioch, is slain.

Anxianus autem, vere jam Anxianus et anxius, videns urbem suam tam præclaram Christianis jam fuisse subjugatam, solus absque comite per posticum egressus, et præ doloris immanitate non se capiens, amens effectus, errabundus aufugit. Qui casu Armenios quosdam obviam habens, cum cognitus esset ab eis, illum in terra dejicientes[4] ipsum decollaverunt, et caput in urbem afferentes, illud coram populo palam principibus optulerunt. Alii vero de civitate nobiles, in tanto rerum discrimine extra se rapti quid agerent ignorantes, in

The nobles in the city perish.

---

[1] *armis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *omnibus*] On an erasure.

[3] *abundabant*] habundabant, MS.

[4] *dejicientes*] deicientes, MS.

A.D. 1098. præsidium superius se recipere decreverunt. Dumque illuc tota properarent intentione, casu contigit, quod nostros a parte superiori habentes obviam, et inter locorum intercepti angustias, ut neque ascendere neque propter montis devexitatem descendere valuissent, nostris desuper astantibus, dum fugere nituntur, præcipitati sunt equis et armis, confractis cervicibus, numero treocenti. Alii autem ad montana melius fugere[1] decreverunt, quos nostri cominus insequentes, partim ceperunt, vinculis eos mancipantes; pars autem eorum, equorum beneficio ad montana inaccessibilia præ timore evadentes, vitæ consulunt et saluti. Capta est itaque Antiochia anno ex quo subacta fuit[2] a paganis xiiii°., ab incarnatione Domini anno M°.XC°VIII°., mense Junio, tertia die mensis.

Date of the capture of Antioch.

De Sensabolo, et quomodo castellum suum tradidit, Corbaranno.

Proceedings of the Christian princes.

Post captam autem Antiochiam, cum civitatis tumultus, sedatis omnibus, quievisset, convenerunt principes in unum, communi decreto statuentes, ut montem, qui urbi imminebat,[3] ascenderent, et situm in eo præsidium expugnarent. Quo pervenientes, cum de municipio[4] constaret quod omnino esset inexpugnabile, nisi fame premeretur, ad alia argumenta se convertunt. Erat autem in illo præsidio dominus et[5] magister Sansabolus, Anxiani sive Garsitherii[6] supradicti filius, cum copiis Turcorum multis; qui in Corbaranni et Persarum multitudinis adventu confidens, cum ipsum in partes Antiochenas advenisse cognovisset,[7] confugit ad ipsius alas cum lacrimis, de morte patris et Antiochiæ

Rog. Wend. ii. 111.

Sensabolus, son of Anxianus, seeks the aid of Corbaran.

[1] *fugere*] Added in marg.
[2] *fuit*] Added in marg.
[3] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.
[4] *municipio*] Partly on an erasure.
[5] *et*] On an erasure.
[6] *Garsitherii*] Partly on an erasure. W. A. D. F. read *Garsiani*; C. *Grassiani*.
[7] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

desolatione lugubrem deponens querimoniam. Cui Corbarannus, "Si volueris," inquit, "ut totis viribus pro te contendam, castellum tuum in manu mea committe. Et cum de te certus fuero, plebeculam illam expugnabo." Sensabolus in arcto positus, Corbaranni petitionibus adquiescens, municipium tradidit sub potestate defensoris. Corbarannus itaque, accepto castello,[1] suos imposuit, et Sensabolo auxilium efficax et fidele repromisit. Audientes itaque principes nostri, quod Corbarannus finibus appropinquasset Antiochenis, die altera post captam urbem, cum circa ejus custodiam et pro alimentis inferendis nimis sollicitarentur, ecce equitus trecenti de exercitu Corbaranni venientes ante urbem satis lascive, ut nostros ad exitum provocarent, sese procaciter ostentarunt.[2] Quod videns Rogerus de Barnevilla, miles in armis strenuissimus, de gente Roberti ducis Normannici, quindecim sumptis consortibus, in prædictos irruit animosius. Sed illi dolose fugientes usque ad socios, quos habebant in insidiis constitutos, dum Rogerus illos acrius insequeretur, consurgentibus aliis, qui in insidiis latuerant, et in nostros ardenter irruentibus, eos compulerunt in fugam. Nostri quoque numero impares et viribus, dum ad urbem fugere contendissent, equorum hostilium velocitate præventi sunt; ubi Rogerus sagitta confossus interiit, ceteris in urbem reversis. At pagani, viri memorabilis caput amputatum reportantes, indempnes ad socios remearunt.

A.D. 1098.

fol. 25 b.

Rog. Wend. ii. 112.

Roger de Barneville attacks a body of horse, and is slain.

De nova obsidione Antiochenæ a Corbaranno facta potentissimo.

Rog. Wend. ii. 112.

Corboran, prince of the Per-

Die autem tertia ex quo capta est Antiochia, Corbarannus, princeps Persarum, vir bellicosus et vafer,

[1] *castello*] castallo, MS.
[2] *sese . . . ostentarunt*] Added in marg., but is in text of F.

A.D. 1098. cum militaribus copiis infinitis ante urbem castra metatus, a porta orientali usque ad occidentalem universum australe latus obsidione vallavit. Erat autem secus portam orientalem præsidium quoddam, quod Boamundo commissum fuerat ad custodiendum.[1] Circa quod cum hostes castra locassent, et assultus creberrimos ibidem facerent, Boamundus non ferens eorum insolentiam egressus est contra eos. Sed egredienti duci occurrit Turchorum multitudo, quorum impetum dux perferre non valens, inita fuga, se recepit in urbem; ubi hostibus proterve instantibus, dum plebs in introitu præsidii comprimeretur, ducenti ex eis ceciderunt. Altera vero vice Turci quoddam præsidium de nova constructum acriter invadentes, nisi ab hiis, qui in urbe erant, citius subveniretur, illud quantocius expugnassent.[2] Sed adveniente Roberto, Normannorum duce, ad instar draconis ignem jaculantis, cum suis agminibus, pluribus ex hostibus interemptis et captivatis, residuos terga dare coegit. Alia quoque die, cum Turci quidam nostros ad conflictum provocarent, contigit ut ex equis descendentes, iis qui in muro stabant acrius instantes, ad vindictam alios excitarunt. At Tancredus per portam orientalem egressus, antequam hostes ad equos possent habere recursum, sex ex eis interemit, ceteris per fugam elapsis.

[Margin: ...sians, besieges the city.]

[Margin: Boamund makes a sally, but is driven back.]

[Margin: Rog. Wend. ii. 113.]

[Margin: Robert, duke of Normandy, and Tancred repulse the enemy.]

De flagellis Dei, quæ peregrinis acciderunt, peccatis exigentibus.

[Margin: Increase of famine in the city.]

[Margin: Rog. Wend. ii. 113.]

Crevit interea in civitate fames miserabilis, et populus gravi supra modum inedia fatigabatur. Factum est autem hoc, exigentibus peccatis aliquorum, qui in des-

[1] *custodiendum*] At first written *ad custoditum*, but this is afterwards expuncted.

[2] *expugnassent*] expungnassent, MS.

perationem lapsi, juramentorum suorum et voti immemores, clam funibus et in sportis per murum demissi, relictis in periculo fratribus, ad mare confugerunt. Erant autem qui sic aufugerunt desperati ac meticulosi, de Dei bonitate diffidentes, non solum plebei et pauperes, sed etiam viri nobiles et multa generositate insignes, Willelmus videlicet de Grantemenil, Appulus, et Albericus frater ejus, Willelmus dictus Carpentarius, et Guido frater ejus, Lambertus, et alii multi ipsis associati. Alii quoque de subventione desperantes, ad hostes Crucis se apostatantes, quod est memoratu horribile, contulerunt. Quorum aliqui, ultore Deo, in duris[1] manibus hostium inciderunt. Erant et alii multi, qui fugam sollicite meditabantur, sed per episcopum Podiensem et ducem Boamundum fuerunt revocati; et quod de negotio Christi non recederent, per juramentum constricti, quousque bellum, quod futurum in proximo dicebatur,[2] Deo beneplacitum[3] finem sortiretur.

A.D. 1098. Many Christians make their escape, and others apostatize.

Rog. Wend. ii. 114.

De fame miserrima et hactenus inaudita.

Rog. Wend. ii. 114.

Progress of the famine.

Fames interea adeo in civitate omnes afflixit, ut pro alimentorum defectu plebs ad turpia nimis incommoda[4] declinaret. Gallina enim solidos xv. vendebatur, ovum, solidis duobus, nux pro denario; arborum vero folia, carduos, equorum et asinorum coria devorabant. Morticina quoque et carnes mulorum, equorum, asinorum, canum, et immunda absorbentes, ea pro deliciis reputabant. Erat autem miserabile videre viros prius robustos, et generis nobilitate præclaros, præ nimia nunc debilitate baculis innixos, et arma movere non valentes. Willelmus interea de Grantesmeisnil, et alii, qui vix manus hostium effugerant, ab exercitu turpiter recedentes, scilicet Stephanus, Carno-

Sinister rumours spread concerning the army.

[1] *in duris*] On an erasure.
[2] *dicebatur*] Partly on an erasure.
[3] *beneplacitum*] beneplatum, MS.
[4] *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

A.D. 1098. tensium comes, et ejus comites innominabiles,[1] miserias, quas peregrini inclusi patiebantur apud Antiochiam, omnibus Christianis, per quos transierunt, exponunt cum incremento. Et ne ipsi ob levem causam et tanquam timidi socios deseruisse viderentur, cum magnis juramentis affirmant obsessos necessario cito perituros; unde multos ad iter procinctos, ut obsessos juvarent, revocarunt, ne similibus calamitatibus[2] involverentur. Venientes tandem ad imperatorem, qui cum xl^{a}. milibus Latinorum, exceptis copiis quas ex nationibus universis contraxerat, Antiochiam proficiscens nostris subsidium collaturus, dissuaserunt ne procederet, per hæc verba, "Fideles tui, imperator potentissime, cum, capta Antiochia, rem crederent consummatam, urbe jam recepta, factus est error novissimus priore deterior. Vix enim ab urbe capta tertia dies elapsa fuerat, cum ecce Corbarannus, Persarum princeps potentissimus, cum orientalium copiis infinitis, quarum multitudo numerum[3] videtur excedere, eandem urbem obsidione vallavit. Noster igitur populus circumseptus fame, frigore, siti, cædibus et clade, in tantum maceratur, ut nec in civitate dicitur tantum superesse alimentum, ut unius diei necessitati valeant subvenire. Unde videntes fratrum propositum finem adoptatum sortiri non posse, potius abire quam obire maluimus et elegimus; præsertim cum ipsos obstinatos non potuimus a temerario eorum ausu revocare. Testis est horum quæ loquimur vir prudens Tatinus, tuæ celsitudinis fidelis procurator, quem nobiscum direxisti. Qui nostrorum cognoscens defectum, ab eorum se sub traxit cautius conventiculis, ut hæc tuæ[4] nota faceret majestati."

The emperor is dissuaded from any further advance.

Rog. Wend. ii. 115.

fol. 26 *a*.

---

[1] *innominabiles*] innumerabiles, F.

[2] *calamitatibus*] At first, *calamitatis*.

[3] *numerum*] omnem numerum, W. A. C. D.

[4] *tuæ*] Interlined.

Auxilium imperatoris et spes tollitur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 115. Hiis auditis, imperator de consilio suorum, legionibus præparatis,[1] quasi repercussis umbonibus, licentiam dedit repatriandi. Rumor autem iste cum ad nostros pervenisset, spes et lætitia accrevit paganis, et desperatio Christianis. Erat autem duplex in populo Christi afflictio, desperatio scilicet et famis pestilentia. A.D. 1098. He disbands his forces.

De consolatione peregrinis divinitus collata.

Rog. Wend. ii. 116. Cum ergo sic contereretur plebs Christiana, respexit ipsum Dominus, et gemitus ejus propitius exaudivit, mittens eis de sede suæ majestatis consolationem. Venit enim sacerdos quidam peregrinus et pauper de exercitu ad principes, ita dicens, "Audite, fratres mei, audite et amici carissimi,[2] visionem quam vidi. Cum in ecclesia Dei genitricis pernoctassem, pro nostris calamitatibus Deum orans, vigilans aut semisopitus nescio, Deus scit, vidi Dominum nostrum Jhesum Christum, nec tamen agnovi eum. Aderat etiam sanctissima ejus[3] genitrix, et princeps apostolorum Petrus, quos aspiciebam, nec tamen eosdem[4] cognoscebam. Dixit autem mihi Dominus, 'Agnovisti me?' Cui ego, 'Nequaquam, Domine.' Interim crux splendida super caput ejus enituit apposita. Iterum interrogavit[5] me ut prius, et ego, 'Domine mi, si bene percipio, ex signo crucis capiti tuo imposito, crucifixum Redemptorem nostrum te esse intelligo.' Qui respondit, 'Ita est plane, ut dicis.' Et ego, perfusus genas lacrimis, ad pedes ejus singultiens cecidi, et adjeci, 'Domine, Domine, miserere nostri; Domine, memor esto populi tui; Domine, ad- Promise of miraculous assistance revealed to a priest. Rog. Wend. ii. 117.

[1] *præparatis*] preparatis licentia, MS.
[2] *carissimi*] kmi, MS.
[3] *ejus*] On an erasure.
[4] *eosdem*] The letter *m* is on an erasure.
[5] *interrogavit*] interogavit, MS.

A.D. 1098. juva nos.' Et Dominus, 'Ego hucusque juvi vos. Nam et Nicæam vos optinere permisi; me duce in multis articulis vicistis, et hanc urbem optinuistis; hactenus prævaluistis, triumphastis, contritis inimicis. Sed beneficiis meis ingrati, contra me intumuistis, dum cum mulierculis etiam alienis et infidelibus admixti, fornicati estis.' Tunc Mater Misericordiæ et Petrus ad pedes ceciderunt Redemptoris, et hiis supplicationibus iram mitigarunt improperantis et minitantis, 'Domine, tot annis gens pagana domum istam tuam, quæ prompto favore monitis[1] apostolicis post passionem tuam citius conversa feliciter obedivit, optinuit, suisque spurcitiis,[2] proh dolor! maculavit; et ecce, aliquorum exigentibus culpis, populo toti irasceris? Parce, Domine, parce populo tuo, et ne des hereditatem in perditionem, ut dominentur[3] eis nationes.' Adquievit igitur sanctus sanctorum misericors Deus, jamque vultu factus serenior, dixit mihi, 'Vade, et dic populo, Lupanar et omnem abusum removete; aleas et juramenta detestabilia, quasi virus, evitate, et vestra fletibus abluite facinora; et ad me revertimini, et ego revertar ad vos. Nec ascribatis vestræ fortitudini gloriantes et jactitantes triumphos inopinatos, sed nomini Domini gloriam exhibete, et infra v. dies auxilium vobis providebo, quod optatis opportunum.[4] Decantent interim cotidie, 'Congregati sunt inimici nostri, et gloriantur in virtute sua; contere fortitudinem eorum, Domine, et disperge illos, ut cognoscant,[5] quia non est alius qui pugnet[6] pro nobis, nisi tu, Deus noster.'" Rog. Wend. ii. 118.

Contritio et pœnitentia.

Contrition and repentance of the people. Hæc et alia cum sacerdos, homo integræ famæ et fidedignus, et pro tali certissime cognitus,[7] seriatim R. Wend. ii. 118.

[1] *monitis*] Added in marg.
[2] *spurcitiis*] spurciis, MS.
[3] *dominentur*] dominientur, MS.
[4] *opportunum*] oportunum, MS.
[5] *cognoscant*] congnoscant, MS.
[6] *pugnet*] pungnet, MS.
[7] *cognitus*] congnitus, MS.

prosequeretur, populus ad pœnitentiæ lamenta convertitur, et de reatus confessione alius alium cohortatur. Eliminantur ab exercitu lotrices fatuæ, aleatores et nebulones cum joculatoribus. Videres profusas [lacrimis][1] virorum pœnitentium genas, capitibusque cineratis, in laneis et nudis pedibus processionaliter ecclesiam beati Petri, in qua, dum in mundo quandoque extitit, sederat, petunt oraturi. A.D. 1098.

Conjuratio de stabilitate propositi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 118. Dixit ergo Boamundus, in arcto consilii vir quasi singularis, "Optimates incliti, votum facientes juremus universi corde alacri et devoto, quod nullus nostrum ab hac terra recedet repatriaturus, quoad vixerit, vel subterfugium quærat, donec sepulchro Domini, pro quo viam hanc initiavimus,[2] deosculato, vestigia ejus et Terram Sanctam,[3] quam benedictis pedibus calcavit, inhabitavit, perambulavit, et tandem sanctissimo suo sanguine[4] consecravit, attigerimus; et ibidem ipsum sincero corde et mera devotione cum oblationibus adoraverimus. Et quia secus fecimus, videlicet per devia evagando, et[5] principale propositum suspendendo, venit super nos[6] indignatio, nec mirum, immo merito dura toleramus, et duriora promeruimus." Placuit sermo fol. 26 *b*. universis, et, expleto juramento, et voto solempniter peracto, animata est universa fidelium multitudo, et adeo magnifice corroborata, ut sitienter jam cuperent contra Christi hostes, non considerato numero, usque ad mortem dimicare.

They swear to persevere until they reach the Sepulchre of Christ.

---

[1] *lacrimis*] Supplied from W.A. C. D.

[2] *initiavimus*] inniciavimus, MS.

[3] *Terram Sanctam*] In the text *terram terram*, but corr. in marg.

[4] *sanguine*] Added on to the text.

[5] *et*] At first *venerunt* was written before *et*, but afterwards underscored and partially erased.

[6] *nos*] Interlined.

A.D. 1098.

Animatio ad exeundum.

Revelation of the holy lance.

Eadem quoque hora clericus quidam, nomine Petrus, de regione quæ Provincia dicitur oriundus, accedens[1] ad episcopum Podiensem et comitem Tholosanum, asserens quod beatus apostolus Andreas sibi in sompnis apparuerat, et eum ter vel quater attentius commonuerat, quatinus ad principes occidentis loquens nunclaret, ut lanceam, qua Domini nostri Jhesu Christi corpus[2] fuerat perforatum, in ecclesia principis apostolorum, juxta aram, super quam idem apostolus in carne existens missam primitus celebraverat, repositam in terra, ipsius terræ[3] effosa superficie bipedali, perquirerent; locum certissimis indiciis manifestans. Accedens ergo ad viros prædictos, verbum, sicut ei injunctum fuerat, ex ordine revelavit; asserens se ab eodem apostolo multis terroribus ad hoc fuisse compulsum, quia renitebatur, ne ypocritari videretur. Addidit quoque, quod absque mortis periculo, præcepto nequiverat obaudiendo obviare; adjecitque tanquam certissimus, "Finis testimonium veritati perhibebit." Hii autem, cum id ceteris principibus communicassent, secum ipsum clericum adducentes, qui adhuc constanter asserebat consilium ejusdem apostoli et voluntatem Dei fuisse, ut memorata lancea foret exercitui Domini pro vexillo triumphali, ad locum, quem eis in ecclesia designaverat,[4] convenerunt; et, effosa aliquantulum terra, lanceam, sicut prædicebatur, repererunt. Quod audiens populus, ad ecclesiam devotus accurrit, oblationibusque et osculis tam pretiosum inventum thesaurum venerantes, cœperunt a suis angustiis respirare, scientes jam confidentius Deum propitius eos in proximo subventurum. Jam jamque[5] Emifer, multis antea

¶ *Nota de lancea Domini.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 118.

Rog. Wend. ii. 119.

[1] *accedens*] So W. A. C. D., but in Will. Tyr., p. 721, *accessit*, more grammatically.

[2] *corpus*] Interlined by a later hand, but is also in F. In W. *latus*, with which agree A. C. D.

[3] *ipsius terræ*] On an erasure.

[4] *designaverat*] desingnaverat, MS.

[5] *jamque*] *que* is interlined.

lacessitus[1] probris, caput extulit, persuadens pusillanimes, ne de misericordia Dei proxima, velut alter Achior,[2] desperarent. A.D. 1098.

Consilium exeundi communiter.

Rog. Wend. ii. 119. Convenientes itaque in unum principes et populi, cum sibi cognovissent[3] immissum divinitus fervorem et favorem, de communi decreverunt consilio bellum indicere Corbaranno in crastino profuturum.[4] Instillavit autem alter in alterius auriculis, "Sicut fuerit voluntas in cœlo, sic fiat. Melius est nobis mori in bello feliciter, quam fame contabescentes vitam infelicem protrahere, et tandem ad arbitrium hostium nostrorum probrose nimis exanimari. Sed bene nobis Dominus, ut[5] multis indiciis certificamur,[6] providebit et suffragabitur." Quod, inquam, magnificum edictum cum eidem Corbaranno per ministerium Petri Heremitæ fuisset propalatum, summo diluculo omnes peregrini divinis interfuerunt obsequiis. Quibus cum summa devotione peractis, confessione pura præcedente, Dominici corporis communione roborantur; omnem iræ cujuslibet rancorem ad invicem condonantes, mutuis osculis et amplexibus, datis dextris in vinculo caritatis, fraterno affectu confœderantur, quasi vale ultimum communicantes. Et sic audacter contra hostes Crucis ad pugnam[7] procedere non formidant. Quarto igitur kalendas Julii, invocato de superius, ut dictum est, auxilio, acies instruunt, et procedendi ordinem instruc- 28 June.

The princes resolve to give battle to Corbaran.

They send him notice by Peter the Hermit.

---

[1] *lacessitus*] lascessitus, MS.

[2] *velut alter Achior*] Added on to the text.

[3] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.

[4] In the margin is the following note: "Et tunc fecit Corbarannus decapitari Emedelisium, scilicet quendam provincialem exploratorem apostatam, eo quod dixerat, quod omnes Christiani turpiter fame contabuerant. Iste sæpe in civitatem venerat inter Christianos, ut omnia insidiando statum hostibus nunciaret." This addition is not in F.

[5] *ut*] Interlined.

[6] *certificamur*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[7] *pugnam*] pungnam, MS.

A.D. 1098. Order of battle of the Christian forces.

tis assignant. In prima igitur acie Hugonem Magnum ducem constituunt, et eidem Anselmum de Riburgis-[monte],[1] cum aliis nobilibus multis, quorum nec nomina nec numerum tenemus, conjungunt. Secundam vero moderabantur comes Flandrensis et Robertus Friso, cum aliis, qui ab initio eorum vexilla sequebantur. Tertiam itaque dux Normannorum Robertus, cum Stephano, comite Albamarlensi, et alii potentes, qui in eorum advenerant comitatu. Quartæ siquidem præerant Aimerus, episcopus Podiensis, et comes Tholosanus, cum suis familiis; Dominicam secum lanceam pro vexillo hostibus Christi formidabili deferentes. Quintam vero duxit Reinardus, comes Tullensis, cum Petro de Stadeneis, Garnerio de Gres, Henrico de Ascha, Galterio de Domedaet,[2] et aliis multis, qui a principio sua fuerant vestigia subsecuti. Sextæ vero aciei præfuerunt Reinbaldus, comes de Oringis, Lodowicus de Mascuns, Lambertus, filius Cononis de Monteacuto. Septimam nempe minavit dux Godefridus, cum fratre suo Eustachio, cum ceteris Deo dilectis optimatibus et militaribus suo insigni pertinentibus. Octavæ siquidem præfuit miles insignis Tancredus, cum viris quamplurimis suis ducatibus intendentibus. [Nonam duxit comes Hugo de Sancto Paulo, cum Engelranno filio suo, et Thoma de Feria, Baldewino de Burgo, Roberto filio-Gerardi, Reginaldo Belvacensi, et Galone de Calvo-Monte.][3] Decimæ profecto præfuerunt Rothrodus, comes Perticensis, Everardus de Pusato, Drogo de Moncy, Radulphus filius-Godefridi, et Conanus Brito. Undecimam nempe gubernaverunt Hysoardus,[4] comes Diensis, Reymundus Piletus, Gastus Bedernensis, Gyrardus de Ruisselone, Willelmus de Monte-Pessulano, et

Rog. Wend. ii. 120.

---

[1] *monte*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *Domeduet*] Domedart, W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *Nonam . . . Calvo-Monte*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[4] *Hysoardus*] Hyscardus, MS. and C.D.F., but erroneously. See before, p. 57.

Willelmus de Avinione,[1] cum quamplurimis tractuum eorumdem. In acie vero duodecima, quæ novissima erat et ceteris fortior, moderator fuit dominus Boamundus, cum suis sequelis, ut hiis, qui fortius ab hostibus gravarentur, auxilium impenderet opportunum.[2] Comitem utique Tholosanum, qui valida ægritudine gravabatur, in urbe dimiserunt ad ejus custodiam, ut hiis,[3] qui erant in præsidio superiori adhuc rebelles, in absentia principum, urbe vacua, reprimeret idem comes, cum iis qui ejus[4] nutui subjacebant. Erant autem permixti præcedentibus turmis sacerdotes et levitæ, amicti stolis albis, signum Crucis mirabile bajulantes. Qui autem in urbe remanserant, in lacrimis et orationibus devotissimis perseverantes, tam mulieres quam viri, qui imbelles vel imbecilles erant, muros urbis ascenderunt, pro salute populi spiritu indefesso supplicantes, ut pro nostris dimicarent orationibus, manibus ad Deum elevatis, efficacius, quibus minus fuerat usus armorum materialium.

A.D. 1098.

The count of Toulouse left to guard the city.

Rog. Wend. ii. 121.

fol. 27 *a*.

De rore cœlesti Christianis collato desuper.

Rog. Wend. ii. 121.

A miraculous dew descends on the Christians.

Accidit autem, quod nequaquam arbitror prætereundum, quod quidam ros suavissimus de supernis super ipsum nostrum exercitum incomparabiliter placidus descendit, ut quasi in eo benedictionem suam et gratiam cœlitus elapsam videretur Dominus nostratibus infudisse. Nec solum hominibus sed et equis vigor insolitus ita infusus est, ut qui antea per multos dies non nisi folia et cortices arborum comederant pro pabulo, tota die illa equos hostium et celeritate vincerent et labore.

---

1 *Avinione*] So also F.; but *Amane*, W. A. C. D.

2 *opportunum*] oportunum, MS.

3 *hiis*] We should probably here read *illos* or *hos*; but *hiis* is borrowed from W., and so in A. C. D. F. They all, however, have a differently constructed sentence, requiring *ne* in the place of *ut*, and so corrected in Edd. and edit. Wend.

4 *ejus*] Added on to the text.

A.D. 1098. Si hostibus id contigisset,[1] Deus scit, nescio; sed quod nec roris refrigerium nec cœlitus eis afflaverit benedictio, subsequentia declarabant.

De prœlio gravissimo et victoria Christianis desuper collata gloriosissima.

Names of the Turkish kings and admirals.

Corbarannus interea, intellecto nostrorum egressu, utpote vir bellicosus et a primis annis edoctus, disponit acies, agmina instruit, præficiens eis admiralios et reges xx[ti]. et ix. Quorum nomina hæc fuerunt, Meleduchac, Amirsoliman, Amirsolendais, Amirhegyble, Amirmatoanc, Amirmahumeth, Camirach, Cotholoseniar, Magalgotelon, Batulius, Boessac, Amirbaiach, Anxian, Sansodole, Amirgoian, Boldagis, Amirilias, Gelissassan, Gyremis, Amirgogeus, Arabeth, Amirdalis, Amirtakaor, Amirmosse, Ginahadole, Amirdungin, Amirtaph, Sogueman, Myracleus. Hos omnes reges vel admiralios Corbarannus animans, districte præcepit sub optentu gratiæ suæ, quatinus solitæ virtutis memores, frivolum reputent quicquid inermis popellus, plebs vulgaris, turba famelica conatur machinari. Solimannus præterea, Nicænorum princeps, studiose disponit agmina; et qui præcedere debeant vel subsequi, diligenter distinguit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 121.

Reversio ad materiam.

Soliman, prince of Nicæa.

Congressio anceps nimis et incomparabilis.

The armies engage in battle.

Occupaverunt interea principes nostri universa ante urbem, montes quoque et campestria, quæ a civitate distare videbantur, quasi miliaribus duobus; et, monentibus tubis atque lituis, gradatim in hostes procedunt, secundum ordinem militarem sese collaterantes. Et, facto impetu, tres primæ acies in eos potenter

Rog. Wend. ii. 122.

[1] *id contigisset*] These words are repeated, but are afterwards partly erased and partly underscored for omission.

irruunt ac proterve, lanceis et gladiis cominus instantes, A.D. 1098. contempnentes[1] Sarracenorum argumentosa tela aut strepitus artificiosos. Nostri quoque pedites, qui arcubus utebantur et balistis, equitum manipulos præcedentes, votis ardentibus hostes arcere desudabant. Quos sequentes equitum turmæ, viriliter in agone desudant. Tandem cum omnes legiones, excepta novissima, cui præerat Boamundus, cum hostibus fortiter decertarent, ita ut jam, pluribus interfectis, pæne agminibus dissolutis Turci in fugam verterentur, ecce Solimannus, cum duobus milibus ex locis maritimis adveniens, in aciem Boamundi cum multo impetu a tergo irruit truculenter, et tantam[2] sagittarum grandinem immisit, ut totam fere aciem, velut irruente tempestate pluviali, cooperiret. Moxque, arcubus relictis, malleis instant, sicis et gladiis ita ardenter, ut cum Boamundus eorum vix impetum sustineret, dux Godefridus et cum eo Tancredus avolant aura rapida velocius;[3] quorum adventu[4] et admiranda constantia et instantia, vulnera letifera et necem multis hostibus intulerunt. Tunc Solimannus, vir versutus ac martius, ad alia se convertens argumenta, fœnum multum et stipulam, quæ ad artem nocendi[5] ex adverso congregaverat, jussit succendi, vento tunc contra nostrates et cum eis flante; et, licet flammam darent modicam, favillas tamen, tetrasque scintillas[6] atque fumi caliginem ministrarunt. In hac vero fumi caligine hostes de peditibus nostris nonnullos telis occiderunt. Insuper ignem suum Græcum cum alio projecerant, ut sic duplici incendio nostri consumerentur. Cum ecce moderator et

Stratagem of Soliman, which is turned against his own forces.

[1] *contempnentes*] contepnentes, MS.

[2] *tantam*] tantum, MS. and F.

[3] *velocius*] volocius, MS.

[4] *adventu*] Corrected *adventus* in Edd. and ed. Wend., but unnecessarily.

[5] *nocendi*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[6] *scintillas*] Added to the text on an erasure, as also the letters *sque* of the preceding word, and no doubt originally written *tetram tamen*, as in W. A. C. D. The correction is followed by F.

A.D. 1098. ventorum imperator Dominus Jhesus, qui sicut mari ita et ventis imperat, ventum cum ignibus in paganos retorquens, excæcavit eosdem; et per proprias muscipulas illaqueati, ceciderunt in foveam quam aliis eruderaverant. Unde in fugam præcipites conversi seipsos conglomerantes, vitæ propriæ raptim consulunt et saluti. Quos militiæ principes Christianæ acriter insequentes, ad sua agmina prius dissoluta violenter recurrere compulerunt; cædentes eos absque pietate usque ad eorum tentoria, ubi suorum majorem fortitudinem esse cognoscebant. Obstabant igitur ibidem Turci omni qua pote- Rog. Wend. rant virtute urgentissima. Unde hinc indeque resumpto ii. 123. spiritu redivivo audaciæ, scientes quod præcise res pro capite agebatur, congressum ineunt cruentissimum. Incipit igitur jam conflictus, extrahuntur gladii sanguine hinc indeque inebriandi, resonabant æneæ cassides malleis ferreis et mucronibus repercussæ, et, ut malleis solent incudes, emicantibus scintillis[1] resonabant. Fra- fol. 27 b. gor hastarum, tinnitus gladiorum, gemitus percussorum, equorum tumultus compressorum, vociferatio sese ad invicem[2] cohortantium,[3] fumus anhelantium,[4] moti pulveris ascensus turbulentus, aera usque ad nubes commoverunt;[5] immo etiam ad memoriam redacta, nedum visa, hominis constantissimi cor impellere ad timorem poterant[6] vel horrorem. Hinc enim aliqui mucronibus transverberantur, hinc alii, quasi verubus[7] altilia, lanceis perforantur; hinc illi decollantur, hinc alii eviscerantur; hinc illi excerebrantur, hinc alii exoculantur. Nonnulli quoque, manibus aut pedibus detruncati et sellis expulsi, sub equorum pedibus conculcantur; umbo umbone repellitur, enses ensibus repercutiuntur, clamor clamore retunditur. Nec recolitur post tempora diluvii gene-

[1] *scintillis*] cintillis, MS.
[2] *invicem*] Partly on an erasure.
[3] *cohortantium*] chohortantium, MS.
[4] *anhelantium*] hanelantium, MS.
[5] *commoverunt*] At first written *commovere*, but *re* expuncted, and *vel runt* interlined.
[6] *poterant*] Added in marg.
[7] *verubus*] veribus, MS.

ralis tam cruentum, tam horribile bellum genus humanum concussisse, aut terræ superficiem sanguine perfudisse copiosiori. A.D. 1098.

Auxilium de cœlo manifestum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 123.

Miraculous aid is sent to the Christians.

Tandem cum victoria utrimque diu fluctuasset incerta, ecce ab ipsis montibus visus est exercitus descendere invincibilis; cujus bellatores equis albis insidentes, vexilla in manibus candida præferebant. Cognoverunt[1] igitur, divina revelante gratia tali,[2] ex inspectione[3] vexillorum, divinum adesse præsidium, sanctosque Georgium, Demetrium et Mercurium præcedere, et prædicta vexilla mirifica, exercitum innumerabilem cœlestis militiæ[4] ipsos subsequentem. Sed, sicut non est datum omnibus intelligere hoc misterium, sic non omnibus concessum est intueri; sed, sicut nobis postea conversi et captivi paganorum retulerunt, omnes hostes ipsos ad eorum confusionem martires adeo terribiles, adeo formidabiles, ac si essent ignivomi dracones vel leones rugientes, aspicere potuerunt. Nec etiam omnes Christiani eos videre potuerunt, sed quibus Deus suum archanum voluit revelare. Et qui videbant Christiani, ipsos amicabiles et favorabiles in spiritu cognoscebant,[5] sicut pagani hostiles et horribiles, et sibi adversaturos,[6] indubitanter perpendebant eosdem. Cognito[7] igitur, ut dictum est, signo triumphali, Turci tremuli certatim aufugerunt, omnem suppellectilem pretiosam, cum tentoriis mirabilibus et thesauris concupiscibilibus et vic-

---

[1] *Cognoverunt*] Congnoverunt, MS.

[2] *tali*] Added on to the text.

[3] *ex inspectione*] The text is faulty (as also in F.) and reads *expectione*, with *vel ins* interlined; and the word *inspectione* occurs again after *vexillorum*. I have restored the obvious reading from W. A. C. D.

[4] *militiæ*] milice, MS.

[5] *cognoscebant*] congnoscebant, MS.

[6] *adversaturos*] Written at first *adversatur*, and *os* afterwards interlined.

[7] *Cognito*] Congnito, MS.

A.D. 1098. tualibus delectabilibus, Christianis vacuis et fame confectis relinquentes; insequentibus et prosternentibus ipsos cœlesti exercitu ac terrestri.[1] Visi sunt insuper a nonnullis angeli in aere volitantes, et super Turcos fugientes, ignem fulmineum jaculantes. Quæ visio, sicut Sarracenis incussit timorem, ita Christianis lætitiam contulit ampliorem.

Jocunda Christianorum victoria, et[2] paganorum lugubris confusio.

Flight of Corboran. Corbarannus autem ab initio certaminis turbam declinans, in colle quodam constitutus, cum repente dissipatas per discrimen memoratum conspicit legiones, relictis castris, trans Eufraten aufugit.[3] Et, ut sibi consuleret et liberius possit, ne præda fieret inimicis, avolare, equos fatigatos deserens, recentes alternatim obiter mutuavit. Nostri quoque principes defectum[4] equorum macilentorum et multum vexatorum metuentes, non multum sunt, licet in hostes[5] acres et accensi, prosecuti, excepto Tancredo, qui cruentis calcaribus et equinis lateribus minime parcens, ipsos ex ardenti spiritus acerbitate, cum aliis paucis sodalibus, usque ad solis occasum hostes prosternendo instantius prosequebatur. Tantum enim infidelibus[6] pavorem eis virtus divina immiserat et diffidentiam, ut nec resistere, nec a se insectantium possent injurias propulsare. Decem enim ex nostris ipsis decem milia videbantur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 123.
Rog. Wend. ii. 124.

De spoliis impretiabilibus Turcorum fugientium.

Spoils captured from the Turks. Consummato itaque glorioso tanto certamine, reversi sunt principes nostri ad castra hostium, ubi tantam

Rog. Wend. ii. 124.

[1] *terrestri*] teresti, MS.
[2] *et*] Interlined.
[3] *aufugit*] At first written *effugit*.
[4] *defectum*] Repeated superfluously in the margin after *vexatorum*. F. repeats the word in the text.
[5] *hostes*] hostres, MS.
[6] *infidelibus*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1098.

rerum omnium in auro, argento, gemmis, olosericis, vestibus pretiosis et vasis impretiabilibus, et, quod tunc omnibus erat præstantius, tantam victualium invenerunt opulentiam, ut neque inde numerus esset vel mensura. Equorum insuper, armentorum et gregum, servorum, ancillarum et puerorum, cum tentoriis et papilionibus, nimiam invenerunt abundantiam;[1] quæ omnia secum in urbem contulerunt. Inter cetera vero unum admirabile tabernaculum invenerunt, in modum civitatis turribus, cameris, diverticulis et propugnaculis communitum, ex optimo serico variis coloribus contextum et distinctum. A cujus medio, quasi a triclinio, in partes diversas distincta,[2] velut claustralia, defluebant arcuata[3] diversoria superius concamerata; in quibus spatiose possent duo hominum milia considere, et illud per aliquod tempus a discursoribus defendere. Turci autem qui in eo quasi in præsidio, erant, illud principibus nostris tali resignarunt conditione, ut libere liceret eis recedere cum salute. Tunc exultavit Emifer,[4] primus civitatis Antiochenæ introductor, et totius negotii supradicti moderator et instructor; qui et donis amplioribus et honoribus locupletatur. Acta autem sunt hæc, ad honorem Christi et ecclesiæ universalis, anno Domini M°.XC°VIII°. mense Junio, vicesima[5] die mensis.

Date of the battle.

De ecclesiarum reparatione.

Rog. Wend. ii. 125. fol. 28 *a*.

The churches of Antioch are repaired;

Principibus itaque de prœlio reversis, et urbe in omni tranquillitate composita, placuit omnibus, et præcipue episcopo Podiensi, ut majorem ecclesiam,[6] olim in

[1] *abundantiam*] habundantiam, MS.

[2] *distincta*] disticta, MS., on an erasure.

[3] *arcuata*] Added on to the text.

[4] *Emifer*] In the margin opposite is the following note: "Ecce Emifer factus est secundus Achior, de quo legitur in Judith."

[5] *vicesima*] So in W. A. C. D. F., but in Will. Tyr., p. 727, *vicesima octava*, and with him agree Baldric, p. 122; Guibert. Abbas, p. 523; Will. Malm. ii. 559; Ord. Vit. iii. 563.

[6] *placuit . . . ecclesiam*] Written over an erasure.

A.D. 1098. honorem principis apostolorum Petri consecratam, cum aliis civitatis ipsius ecclesiis, in pristinum decorem reformarent,[1] et ut in eis prælati et ministri instituantur, Domino militaturi. Dominum quoque patriarcham, nomine Johannem, in sede pristina cum honore condigno locaverunt. Per urbes quoque finitimas, quæ cathedralem habere consueverant dignitatem, episcopos constituunt. Urbis autem dominium Boamundo omnes benigne concesserunt; qui, quoniam apud suos nomine et dignitate princeps dicebatur, meruit in posterum Antiochiæ Princeps nominari.

and a patriarch appointed.

The city is given to Boamund, henceforth styled Prince of Antioch.

De dignitate et eminentia Antiochiæ.

Description of Antioch.

Est autem civitas pulcherrima[2] et antiqua Antiochia Rog. Wend. ii. 125.
et munitissima, habens intra se iiii^or. montes satis altos; in quorum uno castellum est, quod toti præeminet civitati. Deorsum vero civitas est decenter ædificata, et muro duplici circumcincta. Murus autem interior amplus et in aera porrectus est; in quo turres sunt cccc^tæ. quinquaginta, formosis mœniis et propugnaculis defensæ. Murus exterior non tantæ utique est celsitudinis, sed tamen admirandæ venustatis. Continet autem in se ccc^tas. et xl^a. ecclesias, cujus patriarcha centum quinquaginta tres episcopos habet sibi subjectos. Quatuor montibus ab oriente clauditur; ab occidente autem habet flumen, quod quidam Farfar, quidam Orontem esse contendunt. Octoginta et quinque reges eam construxerunt, quorum primus Antiochus fuit, ex quo extat Antiochia nomi- Rog. Wend. ii. 126.
nata. Obsederant autem eam Christiani, antequam comprehenderent eam, per viii^o. menses et diem unum; qua capta, obsederant eam iterum gentiles per tres septimanas, priusquam exirent ex ea ad prœlium Christiani.

---

[1] *reformarent*] reformare, MS. | [2] *pulcherrima*] pulcherima, MS.

De quadam peste suborta in urbe Antiochiæ. A.D. 1098.

Rog. Wend. ii. 126. Requieverunt igitur in illa Christiani mensibus v. et ix. diebus. Quo tempore ex causis occultis, sed creditur quod post penuriam præteritam, subsequentem repentinam victualium abundantiam,[1] tanta clades populum afflixit, quod infra dies paucos ad quinquaginta milia hominum utriusque sexus deperierunt. Inter quos et dominus Aimerus, Podiensis antistes, qui quasi pater plebis erat et moderator, defunctus, cum lacrimis omnium in basilica principis apostolorum, in loco quo inventa fuit lancea Christi, sepultus[2] est, anima merito ad cœlos avolante. Ceciderunt autem in illius cladis acerbitate Henricus de Ascha, Reginaldus de Armesbach, qui pro probitate[3] notabili,[4] quam in prœlio nuper commisso exercuerant, et eorum generis præclara nobilitate, meruerunt[5] ab omnibus inconsolabiliter deplorari. Principes autem nostri, ut instantis cladis pericula declinarent, ab invicem ea conditione sunt divisi, ut in[6] kalendis Octobris iterum convenientes, hominibus revocatis et equis, votum peregrinationis communiter expedirent, quam jam feliciter, Deo propitio, subarrarunt.

A pestilence arises in the city.

Death of the bishop of Puy, and others.

The princes agree to separate until 1 Oct.

De quadam strage fidelium particulari.

Rog. Wend. ii. 126. Reimundus interea, cognomento[7] Piletus, major sibi se,[8] dicens otium esse inertium nimis execrandum, contra

Raimund Pilet takes the castle

---

[1] *abundantiam*] habundanciam, MS. The construction is faulty here and in F., and we should probably read, *subsequente repentina victualium abundantia.*

[2] *sepultus*] sepeltus, MS.

[3] *probitate*] at first written *probate.*

[4] *notabili*] In the text *nota*, but corr. in marg.

[5] *meruerunt*] merueruunt, MS.

[6] *in*] So also W. A. C. D., but in the text *o* has been interlined, to read *iii°.* (*tertio*), and this is followed by F. It must be remarked, that the author of the "Gesta Francorum," ap. Bongars, p. 22, reads, "ad kalend. *Novembris*," which appears to be right.

[7] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[8] *major sibi se*] The same expression occurs under the year 1200. See ed. Wats., p. 206.

A.D. 1098. majorum consilium cum suis legionibus equitationem faciens, cepit castrum quod Thalamania est vocatum. Indeque Marram veniens, urbem Sarracenis repletam, pugnavit contra cives, qui obviam ei cum impetu perrexerunt. Qui primo a nostris in fugam compulsi, in fine animati vicerunt, et magnam stragem dederunt ex fidelibus.

of Thalamania.

He is defeated at Marrah.

Qualiter Hugo Magnus ad imperatorem missus, non rediit.

Hugh the Great is sent to the emperor, and does not return.

Cum hæc ibidem agerentur, Hugo Magnus a principibus ad imperatorem Alexium missus, non mediocriter famam præteritam denigravit, dum, expleto negotio, ad eos qui eum miserant nec responsa detulit, nec redire curavit; illud ad memoriam Juvenalis non reducens,

Rog. Wend. ii. 126.

Rog. Wend. ii. 127.

"Omne animi vitium tanto conspectius in se
Crimen habet, quanto qui peccat major habetur."[1]

The count of Toulouse takes Albara.

Comes autem Tholosanus interea, qui jam plene convaluerat, cupiens otia infirmitatis redimere,[2] Albaram, urbem ditissimam, obsedit et cepit; atque in ea Petrum quendam, genere Narbonensem, fecit episcopum[3] ordinari. Deinde kalendis Novembris, cum jam omnes principes ex condicto essent congregati, accingunt se ad iter Jerosolimitanum; et iiii°. kalendas Octobris[4] ad Marram venientes, obsederunt eam. Distabat autem ab Antiochia quasi trium dierum itinere, habens cives præ multitudine divitiarum suarum nimis arrogantes. Nam cruces super turres et mœnia civitatis figentes, sputis et alapis et aliis modis probrosis, in contumeliam Christi et nostratuum, afficiebant; unde nostri majorem

1 Nov.

28 Nov. [as corr.]

Marrah is besieged and captured.

---

[1] From Juv. Sat. viii. 140, and quoted thus by Will. Tyr., p. 729.

[2] *qui jam . . . redimere*] Added in marg. Om. F.

[3] *episcopum*] Added in marg.

[4] *Octobris*] So Will. Tyr., p. 734, with whom agree Wendover and A. C. D. F.; but we should certainly read *Decembris*, as appears from Rob. Monach., p. 68; Baldric., p. 124; Guib. Abb., p. 526. Marrah was taken on 11th December.

indignationem concipientes, urbem acrius aggrediuntur. A.D. 1098.
Et post aliquot dierum infestationes, applicatis ad murum scalis, mœnia violenter ascendunt, urbemque sine omni obstaculo ingressi, eam vacuam invenerunt. Cives namque ad speluncas[1] subterraneas[2] sese conferentes, suæ saluti, ad tempus saltem, providerunt; sed mane facto nostri, ad speluncas ignibus applicatis, eos ad deditionem compulerunt, et partim capitibus amputatis, multos vinculis manciparunt. Undecimo vero die Decembris moritur ibidem Willelmus, Aurasiensis antistes, vir religiosus et justus, ac timens Deum. Manserunt autem in urbe illa peregrini per mensem unum et dies iiii^{or}.

Quomodo rex Anglorum Willelmus regnum in tributis et exactionibus gravaverit.

Rog.Wend. ii. 128. fol. 28 b.

Grievous oppression of the people by William Rufus.

Eodemque anno rex Anglorum Willelmus, cognomento,[3] capite, et mente Rufus et vulpinus, fuit in Normannia, curis martiis mancipatus, populum regni tributis et variis exactionibus affligens, omnibus molestus et infestus, omnia abradens, omnia auferens; maledictiones omnium et imprecationes nequaquam abhorruit. Inter quas injurias, tam a Normannia quam Anglia et aliis terris pecuniam non minimam extorsit, sub optentu justitiæ suam pallians avaritiam, et asserens se eam Roberto fratri suo, Deo in Terra Sancta militanti, per Templarios transmissurum fideliter, ad precum suarum instantiam urgentissimam. Cui indigenti, ut dicebat, fraterno affectu compatiebatur, qui[4] nihil penitus transmittebat, sed potius terram suam depauperabat.

---

[1] *speluncas*] An erasure of two letters occurs in the middle of this word.

[2] *subterraneas*] subteraneas, MS.

[3] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[4] *qui*] On an erasure, and originally written *cui*.

A.D. 1098. *Obierunt in Anglia quidam episcopi.*[1]

Deaths of certain personages. Eodemque tempore obiit Walkelinus,[2] episcopus Wintoniensis, et Hugo Salopesbiriensis ab Hiberniensibus occisus est, cui frater ejus Robertus de Beleasmo successit. Rex autem W[illelmus] ilico manus rapaces episcopatui Wintoniensi injiciens,[3] quantam potuit emunxit[4] pecuniam. Rog. Wend. ii. 128.

The king seizes the bishopric of Winchester.

Principes nostri populo obmurmuranti satisfacientes, procedunt.

A.D. 1099. Anno Domino M°.XC°IX°. principes occidentis et peregrini Christiani dies Natalicios apud Marram sollempniter celebrarunt, ubi inter Boamundum et comitem Tholosanum orta est dissensio; sed quia non multum ad præsens negotium hoc[5] pertinet, ad cetera transeamus, ostendentes qualiter populus nimis moleste tulit, quod principes moras fecerunt inutiles, et obiter pro singulis civitatibus captis inter se jurgia suscitarent, unde iram Dei merito formidarent, quibus principale propositum quasi neglectum[6] suspendebatur. Comes igitur Tholosanus, ut populo satisfaceret, assumptis x. milibus armatorum et equitibus trecentis quinquaginta, arripuit iter Jerosolimitanum, sequentibus eum duce Normannorum Roberto et Tancredo, cum quater xx. equitibus et peditum multitudine numerosa. Post dies autem aliquot, media regione transcursa, in campestria urbis, non longe a mari sita,[7] Archis nuncupatæ, descenderunt; juxta eandem, licet populo displiceret, castra statuentes. Est autem illa urbs una ex urbibus Fenicis regionis, ad radices Libani sita; quam, ut

Rog. Wend. ii. 128.

Quarrel between Boamund and the count of Toulouse.

The latter marches towards Jerusalem, and is followed by duke Robert and Tancred.

Rog. Wend. ii. 129.

[1] *episcopi*] So in MS. We should read *magnates*.

[2] *Walkelinus*] Willelmus, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *injiciens*] iniciens, MS.

[4] *emunxit*] emuncsit, MS.

[5] *hoc*] On an erasure.

[6] *neglectum*] necglectum, MS.

[7] *situ*] So read W. and all the MSS., but corr. *sitæ* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

habent veterum traditiones, Aracheus, septimus filiorum Canaan, fundasse perhibetur, et eam de suo nomine Archeam[1] appellasse, et postmodum, per corruptionem nominis, Archis dictam fuisse. Hanc nostrates longa obsidione prementes, nihil omnino profecerunt. Ibidem orto jurgio et diversis sententiis de lancea Domini inter quosdam in fide vacillantes, per copiosum ignis incendium vera fuisse comprobata est, tam in ligno quam mucrone. A.D. 1099. Siege of Archis.

Procedunt et alii principes.

Rog. Wend. ii. 129. Per idem tempus dux Godefridus et alii principes, qui apud Antiochiam remanserant, ad instantiam populi Rog. Wend. ii. 130. se ad iter expedientes, kalendis Martii ad Laodiciam Syriæ cum xxv. milibus armatorum fortium pervenerunt; ubi dux Godefridus a præside civitatis, quæ Christianos aliquos[2] habuit habitatores, Guenemerum[3] Boloniensem, quem tenebat in vinculis, sibi restitui postulavit. Præses vero, qui infidelis extitit et fraudulentus, non amore sed timore ductus, reddidit eum duci, cum sociis suis et classe universa. Nam idem Guinemerus[4] crucesignatus cum armatorum classe valida illuc applicans, imprudenter captus ibidem fuerat a civibus, et vinculis mancipatus; et sic liberatum dux suæ classi præficiens, eundem ducem alios sequi præcepit per terram gradientes. Godfrey and the other princes follow. Guenemer of Bologne is liberated from prison.

De victoria Ricardi de Calvo-Monte.

Tempore quoque sub eodem facta est lamentatio magna, et dolor inauditus per multa climata totius fere orientis et civitates Sarracenorum cum[5] confu- Lamentation of the Saracens for their losses.

---

[1] *Archeam*] At first written *Archis*, as in A. C. D., but corr. in marg. In I. and Will. Tyr. *Arachis*, but in W. *Aracheum*.

[2] *quæ Christianos aliquos*] On an erasure.

[3] *Guenemerum*] Gnenemerum, MS.

[4] *Guinemerus*] Gninemerus, MS.

[5] *cum*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1099

Flight of Corbaran, who is accused of treason.

sione personuit inaudita, super tanta strage suorum apud Antiochiam perpetrata. Fugiens enim Corbarannus, contritionem, omnes[1] nobilium orientalium per partes, per quas fugerat, et tandem Soldani[2] omnium orientalium, plenius certificavit.[3] A quo idem Corbarannus graviter de proditione accusatus est, quia re vera omnibus, nec mirum, incredibile videbatur, quod tanta orientalium fortitudo per tantillam gentem, macie[4] confectam, deperiret contrita. Qui cum se purgando asseruisset, quod unus Christianus duobus paganis æquipolleret vel præcelleret, rapuit verbum ab incircumspecti ore Soldanus iratus, dicens, "Nisi invenias unum Christianum, qui duos paganos, quos elegero, in bello vicerit, ut proditor convictus condempnaberis. Os enim tuum locutum est contra te, ut in tuum caput tua redundet iniquitas." Unde Corbarannus sollicitus, Ricardum de Calvo-Monte, natione Normannum, quem captivum tenebat, produxit in medium. Et contra ipsum duo Turci, videlicet Murgalus de Valle-griseo, sagittarius incomparabilis, et Golias de Mecha, pugnator egregius, ad pugnandum[5] parabantur, ut illius, non duelli sed potius trielli, finalis eventus assertionis Corbaranni veritatem comprobaret. Quos ipse Ricardus, in conspectu ipsius Soldani et omnium principum orientis, vicit[6] et peremit. Unde Corbarannus de infamia purgatus, ipsum Ricardum, multis honoratum donativis, cum sociis[7] liberum abire permisit.

Combat between Richard de Caumont and two Turks.

---

[1] *omnes*] Added in marg., but in text of F.

[2] *Soldani*] Written *Soldañ* on an erasure and afterwards altered. In F., *Soldanum*.

[3] *plenius certificavit*] On an erasure.

[4] *macie*] On an erasure.

[5] *pugnandum*] pungnandum, MS.

[6] *vicit*] Added in marg.

[7] *sociis*] Repeated in the text, but afterwards struck out.

Quomodo principes, multis regionibus transcursis, ad Tripolim pervenerunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 130. fol. 29 *a*. A.D. 1099. The princes advance to Gibel.

Principes autem nostri interea maritima transeuntes, ad urbem Gabulensem, quæ alio nomine Gibelum dicitur, pervenerunt. Distabat a Laodicia miliaribus quasi xii., ubi cum, castris in girum locatis, urbem aliquandiu obsedissent, is qui urbi præerat, Soldani Egiptiorum domini procurator, aureorum sex milia duci optulit, cum aliis donativis pretiosis, ita ut obsidionem amoveret. Quem cum flectere nequivisset, ad comitem Tholosanum dirigens[1] prædictam pecuniam pollicens per internuncios, si eum posset a ducis manibus liberare. Ipse igitur, clam suscepta pecunia, misit ad ducem Albariensem episcopum, anxie sollicitans eum, ut, dimissa obsidione, ad se non differat properare; significans quod hostium multitudo a tractu adveniret Persico, ut injurias[2] ultum iret, quas apud Antiochiam perpessa fuerat sub præside Corbaranno. Et super hiis omnibus dicebat se recepisse nuncios fidedignos. Ille igitur et ceteri principes, dictis ejus fidem adhibentes, soluta protinus obsidione, et urbem Valentiam transeuntes, Maracleam, quæ prima est ex urbibus Fenicis provinciæ, sinistrantes, Tortosam usque pervenerunt. Et inde ad urbem Archensem[3] pervenientes, castra ibidem locaverunt. Quibus occurrens Tancredus, fraudem comitis Tholosani detunicavit; unde et ipsi longe a tentoriis ejus seorsum sua tabernacula statuerunt. Videns autem comes animos principum a se alienatos, missis muneribus, omnes præter Tancredum sibi reconciliavit. Deinde principes, relicto

Nota proditionem dampnosam. Treachery of the count of Toulouse. Rog. Wend. ii. 131. They march onwards to Archis. The count of Toulouse is reconciled to all the other princes, except Tancred.

[1] *dirigens*] So also A. C. D. F. I., but the construction would seem to require us to read *direxit internuncios, prædictam pecuniam pollicens, si*. Cf. Will. Tyr., p. 738. In W. the word is omitted.

[2] *injurias*] injuriam, MS.

[3] *Archensem*] Arthensem, MS.

A.D. 1099. in obsidione Archensi Albariensi[1] episcopo, aliisque viris nonnullis, versus[2] Tripolim agmina direxerunt. Quo pervenientes, præsidem loci illius cum universa multitudine civitatis, ordinatis agminibus, rebellaturos repererunt;[3] unde nostrates indignantes, acriter in eosdem irruerunt, et in primo impetu, dissolutis catervis, eos ad urbem redire compellunt, septingentis ex eis in ore gladii trucidatis. Ibique ante Tripolim peregrini Pascha Domini sollempniter celebrarunt, iiii^{or}. idus Aprilis. Tunc præses Tripolitanus cognoscens quod non potuit cum nostris contendere a pari, missa legatione, a principibus optinuit, ut, datis xv. aureorum milibus, cum equis, mulis, sericis et vasis pretiosis, cum gregibus et armentis, fines[4] illos pacifice pertransirent. Tunc nostri recedentes et maritima sequentes, juga montis Libani sinistrantes, Bibliumque percurrentes, supra ripam maris, in loco cui nomen est Emaus, castra statuerunt. Inde vero die tertia ante urbem Britensium[5] castra metati, sequenti die Sydonem attigerunt. Et in crastino, percursa Sarepta, Elyæ prophetæ mansione,[6] ad illius regionis metropolim Tyrum pervenerunt. Et dehinc profecti Achon, et ab Achon progressi Galileam a læva deserentes, inter Carmelum et mare Cæsaream, Palestinæ metropolim, quæ et Turris Stratonis alio nomine nuncupatur, attigerunt. Quidam autem principum per castrum Bethelon transeuntes, applicuerunt ad urbem Baruth, die Dominicæ Ascensionis. Inde quoque per Sagittam[7] ad Arram et Caypham transeuntes, diem Pentecostes omnes pariter congregati apud Cæsaream iiii^{o}. kalendas Julii[8] solempniter celebrarunt.

They advance to Tripoli.

10 April.

Thence to Cæsarea.

Rog. Wend. ii. 132.

19 May.

29 May [as corr.]

[1] *Albariensi*] Abariensi, MS.
[2] *versus*] Added in marg.
[3] *repererunt*] reppererunt, MS.
[4] *fines*] ut fines, MS., and so W. A. C. D. F.
[5] *Britensium*] Bricensium, MS.
[6] *mansione*] mansionem, MS.
[7] *Sagittam*] In the margin is this note: "id est, Sydonem; *Saete*, Gallice."
[8] *Julii*] So also W. A. C. D. F., but we ought to read *Junii*, with Will. Tyr., p. 742.

De desolatione ecclesiæ Sancti Georgii.

Rog. Wend. ii. 132. Peracta itaque ibidem trium dierum mora, relictis a dextra locis maritimis Antipatrida et Jope, Eleucheriam[1] transeuntes, Liddam, quæ et Elyopolis dicitur, ubi Georgii martiris egregii corpus requiescit, pervenerunt. Cujus ecclesiam hostes fidei, quia ipsum habent exosum, paulo ante adventum peregrinorum dejecerant, metuentes ne trabes basilicæ, quæ multæ erant proceritatis, in machinas voluissent convertere, et inde mœnia urbis expugnare.[2] Profectus autem inde comes Flandrensis Robertus, Ramulam pervenit, et portas ipse et sui, quas patentes inveniunt, ingredientes, urbem vacuam repererunt. Nocte sane præterita Turci, nostrorum cognoscentes[3] adventum, recedentes sibi consulere procurabant. Principes vero alii in crastino illuc venientes, sicut et primi, omnem abundantiam[4] frumenti, vini et olei invenerunt in eadem. Atque per triduum ibidem moram facientes, Robertum quendam, genere Normannicum, episcopum constituerunt; et ei Liddam (Rog. Wend. ii. 133.) Ramulamque urbes cum suburbanis adjacentibus possidendas jure perpetuo contulerunt. Indeque iter prosequentes nostri, Nicopolim[5] pervenerunt. Est autem Nichopolis civitas Palestinæ, quæ olim, dum vicus esset, Emaus dicebatur. Ante hanc vero urbem, ubi Christus cum Cleopha ambulasse post suam resurrectionem cognoscitur,[6] fons quidam est salutaris, in quo homines infirmi simul et jumenta ablutione aquæ sanantur, et a diversis languoris maculis emundantur. Nam Christus tempore quodam cum discipulis suis per fontem illum, ut adhuc incolæ Terræ Sanctæ recolunt, transiens, in

A.D. 1099. The crusaders march on to Lidda.

Thence to Ramula, where a bishop is appointed,

and thence to Nicopolis, or Emaus.

Nota de fonte.

[1] *Eleucheriam*] So all the MSS.
[2] *expugnare*] expungnare, MS.
[3] *cognoscentes*] congnoscentes, MS.
[4] *abundantiam*] habundantiam, MS.
[5] *Nicopolim*] In the text *Neopolim*, but corr. in marg. thus: "*vel Nicopolim*; Emaus } idem."
[6] *cognoscitur*] congnoscitur, MS.

A.D. 1099. eo pedes suos lavit pulverulentos;[1] ex quo aqua illa diversarum medicamen passionum est effecta.[2]

Turci sanctam civitatem præmunientes, Christianos, qui in civitate erant, spoliant.

The Turks fortify Jerusalem.

Turci interim, qui Jerusalem inhabitabant, peregrinorum cognoscentes[3] adventum, urbem communire cum omni satagunt sollicitudine. A fidelibus quoque cunctis, qui in urbe habitaverant sub tributo et gravi servitutis jugo, universam quam habebant extorserunt pecuniam; et quicquid habere videbantur, tam a patriarcha, qui tunc urbi præerat, quam a populo toto, xiiii^or. aureorum milia abstulerunt. Quibus bonis omnibus spoliatis, universos ab urbe, exceptis senibus et infirmis,[4] mulieribus et parvulis, depulerunt. Peregrini interea, quibus mora procedendi periculosa videbatur, summo diluculo cum fervore devotionis iter aggredientes,[5] et e vicino urbem sanctam Jerusalem contemplantes, cum gemitu præ[6] gaudio et[7] lacrimis fusis, nudis vestigiis cœpto itineri ferventius instituerunt; atque subito ante urbem convenientes, viii°. idus Junii eam obsidione vallarunt. Dicitur autem fuisse numerus obsidentium quasi milia quadraginta peditum, equitum vero mille quingenti, præter senes et valitudinarios et inerme vulgus, quorum erat[8] in expeditione orationibus incumbere indefessis. In urbe autem dicebantur esse Turcorum fortium et optime armatorum quadraginta milia, tam ut urbem regiam ab instantibus tuerentur periculis, quam ut propriæ consulerent et suorum saluti. Principes itaque perspicue considerantes, quod neque ab oriente, neque ab occidente,

Rog. Wend. ii. 133.

fol. 29 b.

The crusaders arrive at the Holy City, and besiege it. 6 June.

Rog. Wend. ii. 134.

[1] *pulverulentos*] pelverilentos, MS.

[2] *effecta*] After this word is added *est medicinalis*, and so in F.; but these words are superfluous.

[3] *cognoscentes*] congnoscentes, MS.

[4] *infirmis*] imfirmis, MS.

[5] *aggredientes*] agredientes, MS.

[6] *præ*] On an erasure.

[7] *et*] On an erasure.

[8] *erat*] On an erasure.

neque ab austro, propter quarundam vallium profunditates proficerent, a septentrione eam obsidere decernunt. Ab ea ergo porta, quæ Sancti Stephani dicitur, et ad aquilonem respicit, usque ad illam, quæ Turris David dicitur, et in parte civitatis occidentali sita est, castra principes nostri locaverunt. In quorum ordine dux Godefridus [1] primus sedit, et juxta eum dux Normannorum Robertus et consul Flandrensis. Circa turrim vero, quæ ab angulo quodam Angularis dicitur, dominus Tancredus [2] et alii quidam cum eo nobiles consederunt. Ab illa autem turri usque ad portam occidentalem, comes Tholosanus cum suis legionibus urbem obsedit. Partem suorum agminum super montem, super quem civitas ædificata est, inter urbem et ecclesiam, quæ dicitur Syon, et ab urbe distat quantum arcus semel jacere potest, in plaga septentrionali locavit. Is enim locus erat, in quo Salvator cum discipulis suis cœnasse asseritur, et eorum pedes lavasse. Ibi etiam Spiritus Sanctus super discipulos descendit in linguis igneis; ibique Dei Genitrix humanæ naturæ debitum persolvit. Ibidem quoque beati Stephani prothomartiris sepulchrum veneratur.

A.D. 1099.

Disposition of the forces.

De prima et impetuosa urbis invasione.

Rog. Wend. ii. 135.

The first assault of Jerusalem.

Locatis igitur in girum castris, die quinta post adventum eorum, lituis, buccinis, cum tubis et voce præconia perstrepentibus, omnes, ut urbis invadant mœnia, alacriter invitantur. Qui armis omnimodis communiti et artibus instructi, a majore usque ad minimum ad murum convolantes, et ex præteritis spem bonam concipientes, tanta instantia et virtute continuabant congressum et congressionis assultum, ut, civibus invitis, antemuralibus confractis, cogerent defensores retroire, et intra muros interiores sese recipere trepidantes et de resistendo desperantes. Et si illo pugnandi fervore

[1] *Godefridus*] Godofridus, MS. | [2] *Tancredus*] Tantancredus, MS.

A.D. 1099. scalas aut machinas habuissent, procul dubio die illa negotium consummassent. Videntes tandem, cum per vii. diei horas in ipso ardore perstitissent, et[1] quod absque machinis non multum proficere potuissent, distulerunt opus ad tempus, et cum immenso labore ligna ad hoc idonea et artifices invenerunt. Quibus cum sumptu gravissimo ad urbem delatis, ex subjecta materie castella, petrarias, trebunculos et arietes, cum scrofis ad murum suffodiendum, construxerunt. Pro nihilo[2] enim reputabant quicquid antea actum fuerat, si in hoc negotio, pro quo tam laboriosam assumpserant peregrinationem, deficere cogerentur. Cum igitur circa machinas construendas, crates et scalas connectendas, tótus noster desudaret exercitus, protrahitur obsidio. Et cum locus civitati adjacens aridus esset et inaquosus, rivos, fontes aut puteos[3] non habens nisi remotos, ab urbe v. vel vi. miliaribus distantes, siti intolerabili [populus][4] fatigatur. Turci enim Christianorum audientes adventum, si quæ fuerunt aquæ, jactu pulveris et aliis modis eas opilaverant, vel, quod formidabilius fuit, intoxicaverant, ut obsidentium conditio ineptior redderetur. Sed et cisternas et pluvialium aquarum receptacula aut dissipaverant, ut aquas nequirent continere, aut occultaverant, ut remedium subtraherent populo sitienti. Dispersus igitur populus per loca diversa, ut aquas quærerent tabescentes, dum exirent cum paucis, ut latices reportarent, alii idem habentes propositum multo plures supervenerunt; et, inventis fontibus, lites adeo contestati sunt, ut nonnunquam inter eos seditio oriretur. Equi præterea, muli et asini, greges et armenta, siti ariditateque consumpta moriebantur interius liquefacta; unde in castris fœtor exhalavit[5] intolerabilis, et pestilens nimis aeris corruptela.

Preparation of warlike machines.

Nota pestem inter Christianos et sitim.

Scarcity of water.

Rog. Wend. ii. 136.

---

[1] *et*] So also W. A. C. D. Om. ed. Wend. In Edd. it is retained, but the *cum* preceding altered to *quod.*

[2] *nihilo*] nichilo, MS.

[3] *puteos*] putuos, MS.

[4] *populus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[5] *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

Auxilium in tribulatione, in adventu Januensium. A.D. 1099.

Rog. Wend. ii. 136. Venit interea nuncius ad obsidionem, qui classem Januensium in portu Jopensi applicuisse nuncians, petiit a principibus, ut militia dirigeretur ad eos, sub cujus conductu ad urbem accedere valuissent. Mittitur[1] igitur a domino Tholosano Gualdemarus quidam, in armis strenuus, cum xxx. equitibus et peditibus l. Qui venientes[2] ad campestria Liddæ et Ramulæ civitatum, fol. 30 a. habuerunt obviam Turchos secentos; verumtamen consequenter de nostris advenerunt in adjutorium nostrorum, ne forte deficerent, Reimundus Piletus et Willelmus de Sabulo, cum equitibus l. Turci vero protinus in nostros irruentes, iiii^or^. equites et pedites plures peremerunt; sed nostri demum prævalentes, cæsis ducentis ex numero Turchorum, ceteros in fugam compulerunt, Rog. Wend. ii. 137. Ceciderunt tamen ex nostris viri nobiles, Gilebertus de Trena et Aicardus de Monte-Merla; alii autem apud Jopen incolumes pervenerunt. Et sic inde cum omni substantia sua Jerosolimam sunt conducti, ubi a legionibus gaudenter excepti, consolationem castris non modicam attulerunt.

Arrival of the Genoese at Joppa. An armed force is sent to their aid, which defeats the Turks.

Machinis constructis, civitas iterum impugnatur.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 137. Cumque per mensem unum circa machinas laborantes ad negotii consummationem pervenerunt,[4] placuit ergo episcopis, principibus et sapientibus de exercitu, ut, inter omnes pace reformata, jejunia indicerentur, processiones fierent cum devotis orationibus. Et sic die statuto, orationibus[5] rite peractis, affuit peregrinorum armis instructa ad urbem impugnandam copiosa mul-

Second assault of the city.

---

[1] *Mittitur*] Mittuntur, MS.; *Mittatur*, A. C. D. *pr. m.*, F.; but *Mittitur* in W. D. *sec. m.*, and I.

[2] *venientes*] veniens, MS.

[3] *impugnatur*] impungnatur, MS.

[4] *pervenerunt*] So all the MSS. Corr. in Edd. *pervenissent*.

[5] *orationibus*] his omnibus, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1099. titudo, unum habentium commune propositum, aut animas pro Christo ponere, aut urbem Christianæ restituere libertati. Accedentes igitur ad pugnam universi, muro nitebantur machinas applicare. At cives viriliter resistentes, telorum jactu, sagittarum imbre, lapidum contorsione, ignium immissione, conamina impugnantium horrendo impetu retorquebant. Nostri e contra, protecti clipeis, targiis et cratibus, tam arcubus quam balistis tela frequentia remittebant; et fundis pugillares lapides, et trubunculis petrariisque saxa molaria transmittentes, ad murum accedere conabantur, hiis, qui in turribus erant, requiem subtrahentes et audaciam resistendi. Vix enim manus vel caput, etiam hora brevissima, in propugnaculis, quin telo vel telis ilico impeteretur, potuit apparere.[1] Alii vero infra constituti machinas et castella lignea, nostrates multifariam defendentes dum protervos assultus facerent, omni nisu satagunt mœnia crebris impulsibus incutere et debilitare, vel prosternere; sed nec multum proficere comprobantur. Nam Turci, qui intus erant, a propugnaculis saccos stramine et palea repletos, restes et crates, tapecia, cum trabibus, culcitras bombice refertas, a turribus et muro aliquantulum demiserant, ut per eorum mollitiem et mobilitatem contortorum molarium ictus eluderent, et nostrorum laborem inanirent; lapides etiam dampnosos ex suis machinis cum telis non segniter[2] remittentes; et sic nostros ab opere repellebant inchoato. Nostris insuper, ut vallum jactu ruderum, cespitum, lapidum, fruticum et terræ implerent, et ad mœnia pararent accessum, cura fuit propensior. Sed inclusi e converso argumenta argumentis opponentes, ut eorum propositum irritarent,[3] in ipsas machinas torres incensos, tela ignita oleo et sulphure pasta et illita, ut eas exurerent, certatim jaculabantur. Erat quidem nostris impar labor et periculum, dum nostri ab imis, alii ab eminen-

Rog. Wend. ii. 138.

---

[1] *potuit apparere*] Added in marg.
[2] *segniter*] signiter, MS.
[3] *irritarent*] iritarent, MS.

tibus locis assultus facerent indefessos. In hoc certamine dux Godefridus, dux Normannorum Robertus, comes Tholosanus, titulum meruerunt immortalem. A.D. 1099.

De tertio impetu in captionem civitatis.

R. Wend. ii. 138. Mane autem facto, quia sola nox non fatigatio certamen præcidit, redeunt in id ipsum, aurora rutilante, cum omni aviditate excitus populus ad conflictum, Rog. Wend. ii. 139. revertuntur ad officium singulis deputatum. Fiebat igitur ex utroque populo strages non modica, dum alii lapidum asinariorum ac molarum impulsu, alii spiculorum grandine, alii ignium fulminatione miserabiliter deperirent; nec erat facile discernere, uter populus studiosius aut laboriosius decertaret. Erat autem una ex machinis nostris, quæ saxa miri ponderis in urbem procul transmitteret, nunquam frustra. Contra quam, cum Turci nulla possent se arte contueri, duas adduxerunt Arabes maleficas, ut eam fascinnarent, et magicis artibus redderent impotentem. Quæ dum suis instarent præstigiis intuentes eam, quia sic ars earum deposcebat, super murum incantantes, ex eadem machina molaris emissus utramque illarum cum tribus ancillis suis[1] repente contrivit, et ex muro inferius dejecit in fossatum; unde in castris plausus et exultatio, in urbe ululatio resonabat. Cum igitur usque in horam diei septimam sine certa victoria protraheretur certaminis negotium cruentissimi, desperantes et supra modum[2] fatigati, propositum habuerunt castella et machinas alias, jam igne recepto fumantes, longius a muris subtrahere, et conflictum procrastinare; cum ecce virtus divina affuit, et desperatis attulit consolamen. Nam de monte Oliveti miles quidam, splendidum et satis refulgentem ventilando[3] clipeum, signum dedit nostra-

Third assault of the city.

Two Arab sorceresses are killed by a stone thrown from one of the machines of war.

Miraculous appearance of a knight on Mount Olivet.

---

[1] *suis*] On an erasure.
[2] *modum*] Added in marg.
[3] *ventilando*] ventilantem, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1099. tibus, ut redirent ad conflictum, et congressum iterando continuarent. Hoc quoque signo dux Godefridus exhilaratus, magnis clamoribus alacriter ac confidenter populum[1] revocavit universum;[2] qui tanto fervore ad pugnam est reversus, ut de novo incipere prœlium recenter videretur. Rog. Wend. ii. 140.

Iterum consolatio de supernis.

The Christians are encouraged by the promises of a hermit.

Auxit præterea vires omnium et lætitiam solitarius quidam, qui in monte Oliveti habitabat, qui confidenter promiserat peregrinis illa die urbem fore capiendam, divinitus[3] certificatus. Erat autem idem solitarius heremita sanctus, signa faciens in populo, omni[4] fide dignus et acceptione. Hæc quoque signa omnes accenderant fideles vehementer, et securiores reddiderant de victoria optinenda. Rog. Wend. ii. 140. fol. 30 b.

Impetus redivivus.

Renewed attack on the city.

Ducis igitur Godefridi et comitum ejus legiones, prævia Dei gratia, eousque profecerant, ut, vallo repente complanato, ad murum haberent, civibus defatigatis, accessum. Hortante itaque duce, in culcitras bombice plenas et saccos stramine refertos, qui in castello erant, ignem injecerunt; qui, flante Borea, accensus, fumum infra urbem caliginosum retorsit. Quo protervius instante, qui murum intus tenebantur defendere, ora vel oculos non valentes aperire, muri custodiam reliquerunt. Quo comperto, dux sub omni celeritate trabes, quas hostes in muris ad nostrum appenderant[5] nocumentum, assumpsit; et caput unum in machina positum et firmiter clavatum aptavit, et aliud super murum in uno Rog. Wend. ii. 140.

[1] *populum*] At first written after *clamoribus*, but subsequently underscored to be omitted. F. retains the word in both places.

[2] *universum*] Added on to the text.

[3] *divinitus*] At first written *divinus*.

[4] *omni*] On an erasure.

[5] *appenderant*] appenderunt, MS.

propugnaculorum collocavit. Deinde pontem, qui in machina erat, super ipsas trabes demittens, ipse dux primus omnium, ut miles strenuissimus, urbem audacter introivit. Quem frater ejus Eustachius, duxque Normannorum Robertus, et comes Flandrensis, cum Litolfo et Gileberto fratribus ejus, sunt secuti, et consequenter infinita multitudo tam equitum quam peditum; ita ut pons ipsos glomeratim compressos sustinere non possit. Videntes autem Turci, quod nostri jam murum occupaverant, et dux etiam suum vexillum introduxerat, turres deserunt et mœnia, ad vicorum angustias sese conferentes. Porro alii cognoscentes,[1] quod maxima pars nobilium turres occupaverant civitatis, scalas ad murum certatim applicant civitatis jam occupatæ, ne viderentur desides et nihil fecisse, per quas ascendentes murum, ceteris se conjungunt. Tunc dux Godefridus quosdam ad portam septentrionalem, quæ hodie Sancti Pauli[2] dicitur, dirigens, ut eam aperientes populum introducant deforis expectantem, vexillum et insigne suum palam facit in urbe acclamari, cum nomine Christi triumphali. Qua sub omni celeritate reserata, ingressus est exercitus universus, sexta feria, hora nona, mense Julio, decima[3] die mensis, anno Domini M°.XC°.IX°., anno[4] ex quo fideles Christi peregrini votum et viam tantæ peregrinationis assumpserant quarto, sedente in cathedra Romana papa Urbano II°., Romanorum imperium administrante Henrico, Græcorum vero imperatore Alexio; in Francia regnante Philippo, in Anglia Willelmo Rufo, regnante in perpetuum Domino Jhesu Christo.

A.D. 1099.

Duke Godfrey and other nobles secure an entrance.

Rog. Wend. ii. 141.

Capture of Jerusalem.

[1] *cognoscentes*] congnoscentes, MS.

[2] *Sancti Pauli*] So also in W. and A. C. D. F., but *Sancti Stephani*, Will. Tyr., p. 758.

[3] *decima*] So A. C. D. F. I., but incorrectly, for *quinta decima*, as in Will. Tyr., *l. c.*; Baldric, p. 134; and Fulch. Carnot., p. 399. In W. the text is here imperfect, but may be supplied from I.

[4] *anno*] nono anno, MS., which places also a stop erroneously after *assumpserant*, and so in F.

De occisione Turcorum et mundificatione Jerusalem.

A.D. 1099. Capta igitur civitate sanctissima, dux Godefridus et fideles omnes, qui cum eo erant, per plateas strictis gladiis discurrentes, quotquot de hostibus repererunt, in ore gladii indifferenter trucidarunt. Tanta quoque interemptorum strages erat, et præcisorum acervus capitum, ut jam nemini via pateret aut transitus, nisi in sanguinum rivulis et super corpora peremptorum. Latebant autem adhuc hæc omnia comitem Tholosanum et principes alios, qui circa montem Syon viriliter decertabant; sed, audito nostrorum et Turcorum clamore et civium strage, cognoverunt[1] urbem violenter effractam et nostrarum victoriam legionum. Qui statim scalas ad murum applicantes, nemine obstante, urbis mœnia transierunt, stragem non modicam in illa parte operantes. Portam itaque australem, quæ illis erat contermina, aperientes cum impetu, populum universum quantocius introducunt. Factum est autem, quod Turci, qui a duce et suis agminibus aufugerant,[2] ad partes illas declinantes, hos obviam habuerunt, qui Scillam evitantes inciderunt in Caribdim. Tanta igitur exinde per urbem strages facta est, ut etiam ipsis victoribus tam horrenda sanguis effusio tædium ingereret et horrorem. Audiens autem Tancredus, quod infra septa templi Turcorum se incluserat multitudo, contulit se illuc ingenti cum armatorum multitudine; et templum violenter ingressus, post stragem multam, infinitas auri et argenti copias inde secum dicitur asportasse. Hoc autem reliqui milites audientes, intromissa equitum et peditum multitudine, quotquot[3] ibi repererunt[4] gladiis trucidantes, universa sanguine repleverunt, ut, justo Dei judicio, eorum qui locum illum

Massacre of the Turks.

Rog. Wend. ii. 141.

Rog. Wend. ii. 142.

The count of Toulouse and the rest of the army enter the city.

The temple is forced, and the Turks within it slaughtered.

[1] *cognoverunt*] congnoverunt, MS.
[2] *aufugerant*] Written *auferant* in the text, but corr. in marg.
[3] *quotquot*] quot, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.
[4] *repererunt*] reppererunt, MS.

et alia sancta polluerant, proprio sanguine demum cruentarent. Cecidisse autem referuntur infra templi ambitum ad decem milia Turcorum, exceptis aliis, qui passim per urbem truncabantur, quorum minor non fuisse numerus ferebatur. Nostri nempe per vicos et diverticula discurrentes, et occulta perlustrantes universa, patresfamilias[1] cum uxoribus[2] et liberis, cum familia tota ex secretis domiciliis extrahentes in publicum, aut gladiis transverberabant, aut a muris præcipites[3] dabant, ita ut fractis cervicibus expirarent. Et quicunque domum vel palatium confringere vel prius intrare poterat, ea sibi cum universa substantia jure perpetuo vendicabat. Sic enim inter principes convenerat, et acclamatum fuerat, ut, urbe expugnata,[4] id quod quilibet adquireret, jure hereditario possideret. Unde quicunque prius domum vel ædificium quodcunque occupavit, vexillum vel clipeum, vel quodlibet armorum genus in introitu configebat, ut esset signum, ne quis alius aggredi præoccupata[5] præsumeret.

A.D. 1099.

Rog. Wend. ii. 143.

fol. 31 *a*.

Principes nostri loca sancta petunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 143.

The princes visit the holy places.

Civitate itaque subjugata, et spoliis a peregrinis collectis et colligatis, cœperunt, depositis armis, in spiritu humilitatis cum gemitu et lacrimis, nudis pedibus, loca venerabilia, quæ Salvator propria dignatus est sanctificare præsentia, cum omni devotione circuire, et specialiter ecclesiam sanctæ resurrectionis et Dominicæ passionis. Erat autem intueri jocundissimum, quanta devotione fideles populi utriusque sexus, quanta mentis exultatione et dulcedine spirituali, suspiriis et lacrimis ubertim profusis, ad loca sancta accederent; quantas gratias Deo agerent, qui tantæ eis peregri-

[1] *patresfamilias*] At first written *patremfamilias*, as in W. A. C. D. F.

[2] *uxoribus*] At first, *uxore*, as W. C. D.

[3] *præcipites*] Originally *præcipico*.

[4] *expugnata*] expungnata, MS.

[5] *præoccupata*] preocupata, MS.

A.D. 1099. nationis consummationem ad effectum perducere concessit. Fuit autem omnibus una in arram[1] futuræ retributionis fiducia, quod per collationem donorum præsentium, firma sit eis expectatio futurorum; et per eam, quæ hic peregrinatur Jerusalem, ad eam perveniant, cujus extat in id ipsum participatio. Porro episcopi et sacerdotes ecclesias, præcipue templi ambitum, a cadaveribus occisorum et sordibus universis mundantes, et loca venerabilia Domino consecrantes, et sacra missarum sollempnia populo celebrantes, pro collato sibi beneficio omnibus gratias exhibebant. Visus est autem ea die vir in omnibus commendabilis,[2] Aimerus, Podiensis episcopus, qui apud Antiochiam, ut prælibavimus, in fata concesserat, in sancta civitate a multis, ita quod viri plurimi de exercitu fidedigni eum super murum primum omnium viderunt ascendisse civitatis, et ceteros ad ingressum animasse. Qui etiam oculis corporeis se ipsum vidisse asserentes, et cum principibus loca sancta circumeuntem manifestissime conspexerunt. Alii autem[3] quamplures, qui in peregrinatione piam in Christo dormitionem acceperant, quasi Christo sic jubente, ut desiderium suum non mutilatum feliciter adimpleretur, in eadem sancta civitate, sicut quondam in passione ejusdem Domini nostri, id est, Christi, apparuerunt multis, loca sancta cum aliis devotissime requirentes. Petrus quoque, Heremita[4] venerabilis, qui quinto antea anno obierat,[5] a patriarcha civitatis, clero, populoque fideli visus fuerat; et per cujus sollicitudinem principes occidentis ad hanc venerant[6] peregrinationem, ab eisdem et a prædicto patriarcha cognitus[7] est. Cui et ipsi gratias exhibuerunt, quod rei consummationem diu desideratam videre meruerunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 144.

The churches are cleansed and consecrated.

Aimer, bishop of Puy, appears to many.

Peter the Hermit is also seen.

---

[1] *arram*] arra, MS. and F.
[2] *commendabilis*] comendabilis, MS.
[3] *autem*] Partly on an erasure.
[4] *Heremita*] herema, MS.
[5] *obierat*] So also in W. and F., but the word is an interpolation, and omitted in A. C. D. See Will. Tyr., p. 761.
[6] *venerant*] Added in marg.
[7] *cognitus*] congnitus, MS.

Spolia pretiosissima reperiuntur.

A.D. 1099.

Rog. Wend. ii. 144. Rog. Wend. ii. 145.

Spoils found in the city.

Hiis igitur omnibus rite peractis, principes ad domos et hospitia, quæ interim eis sua familia præparaverat, reversi, urbem repererunt[1] bonis omnibus redundantem; unde a majore usque ad minimum cœperunt copiosius abundare.[2] Reperiebantur[3] enim in ædificiis et domibus confractis auri et argenti, gemmarum pretiosarum et vestium, et omnis supellectilis, frumenti, vini et olei, sed et aquarum in cisternis, unde in obsidione maximam fuerant perpessi penuriam, ingentes copiæ; unde indigentibus mensura bona referta, coagitata et supereffluens[4] omnibus erogabatur sine improperio. Factum est autem, ut secunda post victoriam die et deinceps, in foro publico rerum victualium optimis conditionibus exhiberentur commercia, ita quidem ut plebs inferior[5] necessariis omnibus abundaret,[6] secundum illud propheticum, "Fortitudinem gentium comedetis, et in gloria eorum superbietis."[7]

Tractatur de electione regis in Jerusalem, et patriarchæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 145.

Meeting of the princes to elect a king of Jerusalem.

Cumque per dies septem principes in sancta civitate in quiete et lætitia spirituali[8] quievissent, convenerunt in unum octava die, tractaturi per gratiam Spiritus Sancti, ut aliquem de suo eligerent collegio, qui præsit civitati regiæ ac regioni, regiam rite optinens dignitatem. Et cum, diligenter fusis orationibus et accensis super altaria cereis, commissisque eorum singulis candelis extinctis, ut per accensionem indicium voluntatis

---

1 *repererunt*] reppererunt, MS.

2 *abundare*] habundare, MS.

3 *Reperiebantur*] Repperiebantur, MS.

4 *supereffluens*] superefluens, MS.

5 *inferior*] imferior, MS.

6 *abundaret*] habundaret, MS.

7 Is. lxi. 6.

8 *spirituali*] spūli, MS.

A.D. 1099. Robert, duke of Normandy, is miraculously designated, but refuses. Duke Godfrey is unanimously elected.

divinæ panderetur, dux Normannorum Robertus suam candalem clam aliquotiens extinxisset; et dum diu oravissent, iterumque et iterum de electione communiter[1] tractavissent, tandem omnes unanimiter, relicto duce Roberto, constanter immo obstinate contradicente,[2] ducem Godefridum consonantes gaudenter elegerunt, et electum sepulchro Domini cum laudibus et hymnis[3] sollempniter, erubescente duce Roberto, præsentaverunt. Et hoc merito, ut primus ad capturam qui intravit, primus et dignissimus in dominatu acclamaretur.

Election of the patriarch of Jerusalem.

Et cum ejusdem civitatis patriarcha noviter obiisset,[4] de alio ipsius loco constituendo tractatum habentes, favore ducis Normannorum Roberti,[5] quendam Maturanensem[6] de Calabria, Arnulphum nomine, sibi familiarem, quendam scilicet[7] sacerdotis filium, et inter peregrinos de incontinentia et nimia levitate notatum, in sede contradunt[8] patriarchali. Sed idem Arnulphus cita morte, Deo ultore, præventus, temere susceptam coactus est deponere dignitatem. Post illum autem, vacante sede per menses quinque, qui præsentes fuerunt, post multam deliberationem, venerabilem virum Daibertum in throno patriarchali et in cura collocant pastorali. Fuit autem antea episcopus Pisanæ ecclesiæ,

---

[1] *de electione communiter*] Added in marg.

[2] *contradicente*] So written at first, but afterwards altered improperly to *contradicentes*, which is followed by F.

[3] *hymnis*] ymnis, MS.

[4] *obiisset*] obisset, MS.

[5] *Roberti*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[6] *quendam Maturanensem*] The text was, no doubt, originally written *episcopus quidam Maturanensis* (as in W. A. C. D. I.), but has been subsequently erased and altered, so as to make it appear that Arnulphus was a native of Martorano in Calabria, whereas his real name was Arnulphus de Rohes, a Fleming, who is said by Will. Tyr., pp. 763, 764 (who is followed by Wendover and A. C. D.), to have been made patriarch of Jerusalem through the intrigues of the bishop of Martorano. See Albert Aquens, p. 285; Ord. Vital., iii. 612; Ughelli, "Ital. Sacra," ix. 270; and Le Quien, "Oriens. Christ.," iii. 1243.

[7] *scilicet*] Interlined.

[8] *contradunt*] Partly on an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *contrusit.*

vir eleganter instructus,[1] et in agendis ecclesiasticis a puero eruditus. A.D. 1099.

Exercitus Soldani Ægiptiorum et Damascenorum vincitur.[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 147. fol. 31 b.

The Soldan of Egypt sends an army to Ascalon.

Urbe autem sancta recenter adhuc a fidelibus subjugata, Soldanus Ægiptiorum et Damascenorum, princeps inter omnes orientales potentissimus, cum civitatem sanctam Jerusalem a fidelibus captam cognovisset,[3] vocato ad se principe militiæ suæ Elafdalio, præcepit ut universum robur Ægipti, et omnes imperii sui vires colligens, in Syriam ascendat, et popellum temerarium illum, Crucifixum adorantem, de superficie terræ deleat, ut non memoretur nomen illius ultra. Erat quidem Elafdalius iste natione Armenius, a Christianis parentibus originem habens, sed præ immensitate divitiarum apostataverat a fide; et qui in fonte regenerationis Emyreius dicebatur, factus apostata Elafdalius nuncupabatur. Assumptis igitur hic Crucis inimicis, universisque viribus Ægypti cum partibus adjacentibus, Arabiæ quoque et Damasci, venit Ascalonem; et ibidem cum copiis suis universis castra locavit, inde Jerosolimam profecturus. Proposuit enim, ut fideles in Jerusalem irremediabiliter obsideret, et post victoriam Dominicum sepulchrum funditus dilapidaret.

Deliberatio quid in illo articulo agendum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 147.

The Christians pray for aid.

Tunc peregrini hæc audientes, qui super omnia obsidionis ærumpnas formidabant, exclamabant in propatulo, dicentes, "Hucusque auxiliatus est[4] Dominus, qui

---

[1] *instructus*] Originally written *erud.* in the text, and *eruditus* in the margin, but both afterwards erased, and *instructus* substituted.

[2] This rubric is copied from Wendover, and applies to the three chapters following, which in Wendover form only one.

[3] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[4] *est*] Interlined.

A.D. 1099. usque ad consummationem nos non derelinquet. Absit, absit a nobis obsidio, cujus miserias experti sumus frequentius!" Convenerunt igitur in unum clerus et populus universus, et arma spiritualia prius bajulantes, ad sepulchrum Domini corde contrito et cum fletibus humiliato profecti, et orantes in terram prostrati, a Domino instantissime et urgentissime postulabant, ut populum suum misericorditer ab imminentibus[1] periculis liberaret, vincatque Dominus exercituum, qui æque dimicat in paucis ut multis, invictæ virtutis ac magnificus triumphator.

Contra hostes audacter procedunt.

They march against the enemy under duke Godfrey.

Deinde, sumpta ex Dei parte audacia, ab urbe versus Ascalonem procedunt, audacter hostibus occurrentes. Portabant autem secum partem ligni Dominicæ Crucis, quam civis quidam[2] Jerosolimitanus, nomine Syrus, principibus nuper propalaverat, ab antiquis a se temporibus custoditam. Dux vero, qui rex etiam erat Jerosolimitanus, cum ceteris principibus[3] peregrinis Ramulam perveniens, edoctus est ibi plenius, quod prædictus Emyreius apud Ascalonem[4] cum suis copiis consedisset. Præmisit itaque dux equites ducentos, qui viam et statum hostium prudenter explorarent; sed cum aliquantulum processissent, invenerunt armenta boum, equorum et camelorum cum pastoribus eorumdem. Ad quos cum noster exercitus pervenisset, fugerunt tam pastores quam qui pastoribus præerant equites, gregibus et armentis sine custode derelictis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 147.

Rog. Wend. ii. 148.

[1] *imminentibus*] iminentibus, MS.

[2] *quidam*] In the text *qui*, but corr. in marg.

[3] *rex etiam ... principibus*] These words have been erased, and are almost illegible; but W. and A. C. D. F. agree, except that they read *qui et rex erat*. In the lower margin are the words *præcipuus eorum erat, cum ceteris*, written with a plummet, which, no doubt, were intended to partly supply the place of those erased.

[4] *Ascalonem*] Ascalonam, MS.

Capti sunt tamen quidam ex eisdem, quorum relatione A.D. 1099. de hostium proposito edocti nostrates cognoverunt,[1] quod princeps memoratus, qui juxta eos ad vii. miliaria castra statuerat, post biduum accedere et nostrum de sub cœlo delere exercitum cogitabat. Erant autem nostri numero quasi mille equites et ducenti, pedites vero quasi sex milia numerati. Qui omnes dė prœlio jam certi, novem acies instruunt, quarum tres præponunt, tres locant in medio, et tres subsequi præcipiunt, ut, undecumque ad eos hostium fiat accessus, triplicem reperiant[2] ordinem objectum acierum. Sic itaque, optenta sine contradictione præda memorata, quæ præ nimia multitudine numerum excedebat, noctem illam transegerunt, subarrata Dei misericordia, gratulantes.

Miraculum de pecoribus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 148. Mane autem facto, tubis et lituis clangentibus bellum indicitur, et instructis ordinibus procedunt, Domino rei exitum commendantes; et quasi vir unus exercitus totus in Domino sese confortabat et animabat. Procedentibus igitur legionibus juxta militaris ordinis disciplinam lento gradu ad pugnam, visa sunt superno armenta infinita,[3] ut creditur, instinctu, cornibus erectis et caudis, acierum lateribus a dextris et sinistris comitari, nec ulla posse violentia præpediri. Rog. Wend. ii. 149. Quod hostes eminus intuentes, solaribus radiis hebetatis[4] luminibus, ante prœlium animis conciderunt, credentes innumeram esse multitudinem armatorum, quamvis et ipsis multo major militaris copia non deesset. Invictissimus autem et imperterritus[5] dux Normannorum Robertus, [qui][6] moderator erat et signifer

Miraculous appearance of herds of cattle.

[1] *cognoverunt*] congnovverunt, MS.
[2] *reperiant*] repperiant, MS.
[3] *armenta infinita*] Added in marg. after *superno*, and so in text of F.
[4] *hebetatis*] ebetatis, MS.
[5] *imperterritus*] imperteritus, MS.
[6] *qui*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1099. acierum, pro re bene gesta frequenter a me memoratus et memorandus, admiravisii standardum a longe considerans, quod in summitate hastæ tolum[1] habebat aureum, hasta vero argento cooperta albicabat, ipsum deprehendit ibidem esse. Et audacter per medias acies, hinc inde fulgurante gladio,[2] Turcis corruentibus, super eum truculenter irruens, ad mortem usque graviter ipsum[3] vulneravit. Quod factum non mediocrem gentilibus incussit formidinem cum diffidentia; dux enim ad suos indempnis remeavit.

The Turkish admiral is wounded.

Lamentatio admiravisii vulnerati et jam victi.

Lamentation of the admiral.

Admiravisius autem vix palpitans, letaliter enim vulneratus, alto pectore ingemuit, et hujusmodi planctum prorumpentibus singultibus emisit, "O omnium Creator, quid hoc est? Quid accidit? Quod fatum[4] nobis infestum nocuit? Heu mihi, quam[5] ineffabile dedecus, quam diuturnum improperium genti nostræ contigit! Gens misera et misella, modica et mendica genti nostræ prevaluit! Unde hoc? Conventione, proh dolor! facta, adduxi huc militum ducenta milia, et peditum quorum numerum excedit multitudo, quos toti mundo credidi prævalituros. Nunc autem, ut non mentiar, a minus quam mille militibus et paucis peditum milibus tam indecenter, tam inopinabiliter sunt superati! Aut procul dubio illorum Deus omnipotens est, et pro eis pugnat,[6] aut noster nobis iratus est, et nos nimis austero furore redarguit et castigat. Quicquid contingat, hoc erit, quod in eos denuo non erigar, sed ad patriam meam ignominiosus et confusus, mortuus

Rog. Wend. ii. 149.

fol. 32 a.

Rog. Wend. ii. 150.

---

[1] *tolum*] pomum, W. A. C. D.; pomum vel tolum, F.

[2] *gladio*] On an erasure.

[3] *ipsum*] Added in marg.

[4] *fatum*] factum, MS. and D. F., but erroneously, as appears from Baldric, Hist. Hieros., p. 138; Ord. Vit. iii. 619; with whom agree W. A. C. L., all of which have *fatum*.

[5] *quam*] quod, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[6] *pugnat*] pungnat, MS.

revehar, aut revertar semivivus." Turcis igitur fugam meditantibus, eques quidam Lotharingus, qui in agmine extremo cum duce erat Godefrido, a lateribus equitans, libertatem fugæ fugitivis denegavit. Unde ipsi a duce Normannorum, qui in prima acie erat cum equitibus et sagittariis, penetrati et dissipati, et ab extremis inclusi, et sic quasi inter molas contriti, cæsi sunt ad fidelium voluntatem. Admiravisius[1] autem saucius et cruentus super dromedarium positus, rapido cursu elapsus est, ne ad voluntatem hostium suorum penitus detruncaretur.

A.D. 1099.

The Turks are put to flight.

De spoliis hostium a Christianis adquisitis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 150.

Collata igitur sic fidelibus de supernis victoria incredibili, in hostium tabernacula[2] noster devenit exercitus lætabundus; ubi tantam auri, argenti, variæ suppellectilis, gemmarum, divitiarumque peregrinarum copiam[3] invenit, ut usque ad nauseam satiati, mella fastidirent et placenta, ita ut minimus dicere possit, "Inopem me copia fecit."[4] Dux autem Robertus emit standardum[5] ab hiis qui illud retinuerunt, dum ille, emolumentis nequaquam inhians, hostes acrius insequeretur, viginti marcis argenti. Et duxit illud in sepulchrum Domini et optulit,[6] ad monumentum et memoriam talis triumphi tamque gloriosi. Alius quoque ensem ejusdem admiravisii[7] bisanciis xl. comparatum, ad ostentationem[8] ibidem posteris dereliquit. Omnia enim Deo, non hominibus ascribebant. Sic igitur, fugientibus adversariis, palma nostratibus cœlitus concessa, cum ingenti gaudio reversi sunt in Jerusalem, diversis manubiis[9] onerati. Ubi aliquot

Spoils found in the enemy's camp.

Duke Robert purchases the admiral's standard, and offers it at the Holy Sepulchre.

[1] *Admiravisius*] Admirasius, MS.
[2] *tabernacula*] Added in marg.
[3] *copiam*] tantam copiam, MS.
[4] Ovid. Metam. lib. iii. v. 466.
[5] *standardum*] standarium, MS.
[6] *et optulit*] Added in marg.
[7] *admiravisii*] admirasii, MS.
[8] *ostentationem*] At first written *ostentionem*.
[9] *manubiis*] In Edd. and ed. Wend. printed incorrectly *manibus*.

A.D. 1099. diebus quiescentes post labores, Dominum merito collaudabant.

Manifestior ostensio causæ redditus[1] *Ducis Normannorum Roberti.*[2]

Cause of the return of Robert duke of Normandy.

Non prætereundum censeo, quod, sicut prælibatum est, peregrinorum universitas hoc decretum inter se sanxerunt, quod, invocata Dei gratia, cum de eligendo rege in Jerusalem contractarent, singuli principum candelas suas sine igne manibus suis, dum fieret oratio, tenebant, ut, igne cœlesti indice, voluntas Dei populum certificaret dubitantem, quem vellet Dominus habere populi sui regem et gubernatorem. Dux autem Robertus suum quem tenebat cereum, qui cœlitus est accensus ter, quod sine lacrimis nequeo recitare, clam extinxit, electioni de se divinitus factæ nullatenus consentiens, immo penitus rebellis et imbellis[3] bella Dei refutavit; multum in hoc redarguendus, secundum illud Ysaiæ, "Væ qui spernis, nonne et tu sperneris?"[4]. Unde piæ ac gloriosæ recordationis dux Godefridus, post electionem de se factam, et iterum post memoratam victoriam, regnum optulit sponte ac gratanter Roberto; asserens ipsum Robertum se digniorem ac præstantiorem, ac Deo, ut credebat, acceptabiliorem. Sed adhuc dux Robertus oblata refutavit impudenter, inhians regno Angliæ, in quo se credebat desidem et illecebrosum quietius regnaturum. Jactitabat enim majus jus habere in regno illo fratre suo W[illelmo], qui illud ex sorte primogenito[5] injuste occupaverat.

---

[1] *redditus*] reditus, MS.

[2] On the edge of the lower margin is written by Matthew Paris:—

"Majestas { Orbe brevi brevior modico conclusus in orbe
Orbem transgredior totus diffusus in orbe."

[3] *et imbellis*] Added to the text, and the two next words are on an erasure.

[4] Is. xxxiii. 1.

[5] See pp. 11, 30, *ante*.

A.D. 1099.

Insuper erectus est in superbiam, eo quod in multis periculis, ut prædictum est, tam gloriose triumpharat, reputans omnes Anglos strenuitate et viribus inferiores. Sed Deo, ultionum Domino, qui de se præsumentes conterit, omnes postea actus suos[1] merito, proh dolor! reprobavit, ut sequens sermo plenius declarabit.

Repatriant duces Normannorum et Flandrensium.

Rog. Wend. ii. 151.

The duke of Normandy and count of Flanders return home.

Hiis ita gestis, dux Normannorum Robertus, robur militiæ Christianæ, nullo potuit hortatu retardari, quin ipse et Robertus, comes Flandrensis, consummato, ut asserebant, peregrinationis voto, ad propria reverterentur. Unde valefacientes fratribus suis principibus, versus occidentem, non sine dolore regis Jerosolimitani Godefridi et omnium peregrinorum, iter direxerunt. Sequebatur autem eos potissima pars exercitus Christiani. Rex igitur Godefridus consolationem a Deo accipiens, detento secum viro nobili Tancredo,[2] et de Gres comite Garnerio,[3] et aliis quibusdam viris occidentis, commissum sibi a Deo regnum strenue administrabat et prudenter. Deus enim omnia ejus opera dirigebat. Concessit autem jure hereditario possidendam urbem Tyberiadensem, super lacum Genesir sitam, cum comitatu toto Gibelet,[4] et Caypham, quæ alio nomine Porphiria dicitur, urbem maritimam, domino Tancredo; in quo principatu ita Deo placere studuit, quod usque in præsentem diem ecclesiæ regionis illius de ejus patrimonio[5] gloriantur. Qui infra biennium post, meritis exigentibus, ad principatum vocatus An-

Godfrey administers the affairs of the kingdom of Jerusalem.

He grants Tiberias and other cities to Tancred, who becomes prince of Antioch.

---

[1] *suos*] Repeated, but underscored for omission.

[2] *Tancredo*] Tancreto, MS.

[3] *Garnerio*] Gautero, MS. and F.; Garero, W. A. C. D.; Garcero, I. Corr. from Will. Tyr., p. 770. See p. 57, *ante*.

[4] *Gibelet*] So also F.; but *Galileæ*, Will. Tyr., p. 770, and W. A. C. D.

[5] *patrimonio*] So also F. In W. A. C. D. *patrocinio*.

A.D. 1099. tiochenum, illam nobilitavit ecclesiam a temporibus gloriosam, plurima largiendo beneficia et insignia. Sed et principatum, pluribus subjugatis urbibus et castellis necnon et provinciis, longe lateque finibus[1] ampliavit.

De situ sanctæ civitatis, et locis circumpositis.[2]

Site of Jerusalem and adjacent territories.

Civitatem sanctam Jerusalem in sullimibus esse montibus sitam, et in sortem Benjamin novimus constitutam. Ad cujus dignitatem pertinet, quod natalis patria est Redemptoris; in medio scilicet nostræ[3] habitabilis posita, ut illud adimpleatur Davidicum,[4] "Operatus es salutem in medio terræ;"[5] et hoc ad passionem dinoscitur pertinere. Ibidem insuper magis prædicavit Dominus, et Judæorum duritiam reprehendit, secundum illud Ysaiæ, "De Syon exibit lex, et verbum Domini de Jerusalem."[6] Hæc autem ab occidente tribum habet Symeon, Philistinorum,[7] [et mare Mediterraneum],[8] a quo prope[9] Jopen oppidum[10] xxiiii^{or}. miliaribus distat, inter se et prædictum mare habens castellum Emaus; Modin etiam, sanctorum Machabæorum præsidium, et Noben, viculum sacerdotum, et Diospolim,[11] quæ est Lydda, ubi Petrus Eneam paraliticum restituit sanitati, et ubi apud Symonem coriarium hospitatus, Cornelii nuncium suscepit, sicut apud Jopen discipulam, Thabitam nomine, suscitavit. Ab oriente vero Jorda-

Rog. Wend. ii. 151. fol. 32 b.

Rog. Wend. ii. 152.

[1] *finibus*] sinibus, MS.

[2] In the margin, opposite to this chapter, is written vertically, in red letters, "*Notandum de situ Terræ Sanctæ.*"

[3] *nostræ*] scil. *terræ.*

[4] *Davidicum*] Daviticum, MS.

[5] Ps. lxxiii. 12

[6] Is. ii. 3.

[7] *Philistinorum*] So W. and all the MSS. The Edd. insert *terram* before this word, but without authority. In Will. Tyr., p. 46 (from whom this chapter is chiefly borrowed) we read, "et Philistiim *regionem.*"

[8] *et mare Mediterraneum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Will. Tyr., p. 746.

[9] *prope*] prope est, W. A. C. D. In Will. Tyr., "ubi propius est."

[10] *oppidum*] opidum, MS.

[11] *Diospolim*] In the margin is added *vel Neapolim*, and in F. *Neapolim* is substituted in the text.

nis habet fluenta, et solitudinem filiorum prophetarum, quasi ad miliaria xiiii., et vallem silvestrem, et Mare Mortuum. Citra Jordanem vero habet et Galgala, Helisæi domicilium; ultra vero Jordanem, Galaad, Basan, Amon et Moab, quæ postmodum Ruben, Gad et dimidia tribus Manasse susceperunt in sortem, quæ hodie regio generali appellatione Arabia nuncupatur. Ab austro vero habet sortem Judæ, in qua est Bethleem,[1] felix Dominicæ nativitatis locus, et Thecua, urbs prophetarum Abacuc et Amos, et Ebron, quæ est Cariatarbe, sanctorum sepulchrum patriarcharum. A septentrione quoque habet Gabaon, Josue filii Nun victoriam[2] insignem, et tribum Effraim, et Sylo, Sichar quoque et Samariæ regionem, et Bethel, peccati Jeroboam testem; sed et Sebasteam, Helisei[3] et Abdiæ sepulchrum, et Baptistæ Johannis martirium. Hæc olim a monte Somer dicta est Samaria, sicut et regio tota, quæ et thronus fuit regum Israel. Habet etiam et Neopolim, ubi filii Jacob, Symeon[4] et Levy, in ultionem stupri, quod Sichem, filius Emor, sorori eorum Dinæ intulerat, ipsum et filios ejus in ore gladii percusserunt, urbem eorum igne succendentes.

A.D. 1099.

De ratione nominis Jerusalem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 153.

Origin of the name Jerusalem.

Est autem Jerusalem Judææ metropolis, quæ juxta veteres hystorias primum dicta est Salem, a Sem, filio Noe primogenito, qui eam fundavit, et in ea regnavit. Hic postmodum dictus est Melchisedech, qui revertenti Abrahæ a cæde iiii^or. regum optulit panem et vinum; Melchisedech autem rex justitiæ interpretatur, quem Deus a diluvio reservavit, ut ex ejus semine post-

[1] *Bethleem*] Beethleem, MS., but the first *e* expuncted.

[2] *victoriam*] So W. A. C. F. D., but we ought to read *victoria*, with Will. Tyr., p. 746.

[3] *Helisæi*] Halesei, MS.

[4] *Symeon*] Symeo, MS.

A.D. 1099. modum Christus nasceretur. Erat quidem eo tempore alia civitas, secundum Ieronimum, Salem appellata, in qua idem Melchisedech sicut et alias[1] regnavit. Quod et verum comprobatur; ejus enim ruinæ usque hodie juxta fluenta Jordanis discernuntur. Deinceps, regnante in ea Jebusæo, dicta est Jebus, et sic ex Jebus et Salem dicta est Jebusalem; unde inde post, dempta B et addita R, dicta est Jerusalem. Postea autem, expulso Jebus a David, dicta est Civitas David. Deinde vero, regnante Salomone, filio ejus, vocata est Jerosolima,[2] quasi Jerusalem Salomonis. Hanc postea xl°.ii°. anno post passionem Domini, Judæorum exigentibus peccatis, Titus, Vespasiani filius, Romanorum princeps magnificus, obsedit et expugnatam[3] dejecit, ita ut, juxta verbum Domini, non remaneret in ea lapis super lapidem. Illam vero postea Ælius Adrianus, quartus ab ipso Romanorum Augustus, reparavit, et de suo nomine Eliam nuncupavit. Et cum prius in clivo præcipiti montis esset sita, ita ut partim in orientem et in austrum tota devexa despiceret, in latere tam montis Syon quam Moriæ montis constituta, et solum templum et castellum, cui nomen erat Antonia, in sui haberet fastigio, ab eodem imperatore Rog. Wend. ii. 154. in montis verticem tota translata est, ita ut Dominicæ passionis et resurrectionis locus, qui extra urbem fuerat, urbe reædificata, infra murorum ambitum clauderetur.

De locis venerabilibus infra sanctam civitatem.

Of the holy places within Jerusalem.

Hæc autem sancta et Deo dilecta ac inter omnes Rog. Wend. ii. 154. mundi præelecta civitas, et minor maximis est et mediocribus major; forma quidem oblonga, et parte altera longiore tetragona, vallibus profundis in tribus

[1] *alias*] Written at first *alia*, and so W. A. C. D.

[2] *Jerosolima*] In the margin is added, *vel Jeru*[*solima*], which is followed by F.

[3] *expugnatam*] expungnatam, MS.

partibus circumsepta. Nam ab oriente vallem habet Josaphat, in cujus imo sita est ecclesia Dei Genitricis, ubi sepulta fuit, et gloriosum ejus monstratur sepulchrum; sub qua est torrens Cedron, ex aquis ortus pluvialibus, de quo dicitur, "Egressus Jhesus[1] trans torrentem Cedron,"[2] etc. Ab austro autem habet vallem Ennon, prædictæ valli contiguam, quæ sortis Benjamin et Juda fuit in funiculo distributionis. Et inde se erigens ad verticem montis, qui est contra Beennon ad occidentem, in qua est Acheldemach, hoc est, ager sanguinis, emptus de pretio Domini in sepulturam peregrinorum. Ab occidente vero ejusdem vallis habet partem, in qua sita est vetus piscina, quæ celebris fuit temporibus regum Juda; et inde protenditur ad piscinam superiorem, quæ Patriarchæ dicitur, juxta cimiterium quod est in spelunca, quæ cognominatur Leonis. A septentrione vero plano itinere ad urbem acceditur, in quo locus est, ubi prothomartir Stephanus lapidatus est. A.D. 1099.

De dignitate patriarchæ Jerosolimitani, et suis sibi subjectis prælatis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 154. Patriarcha quoque hujus sanctæ civitatis habet iiii^or^. archiepiscopos, unum Cæsariensem, alium Tyrensem, tertium Nazarensem, quartum vero Petracensem, fol. 33 *a.* id est, Montis Regalis. Primus est in regione Palestinæ, Rog. Wend. ii. 155. alius in regione Phœnicis, tertius Galileæ, quartus autem in regione Moabitarum. Cæsariensis suffraganeum habet episcopum Sebastenum; Tirensis suffraganeos habet episcopos Achonensem, Sydonensem, Beritensem, et Belinacensem, quæ est Cæsarea Philippi; Nazarenus habet suffraganeum, Tyberiadensem; Petracensis vero unum habet suffraganeum, Græcum scilicet, in monte

Of the patriarch of Jerusalem, and the prelates subject to him.

[1] *Jhesus*] So also, rightly, W. F. I.; but in ed. Wend. *ejus*, as in A. C. D.
[2] Joh. xviii. 1.

A.D. 1099. Synai. Habet præterea patriarcha, nullo mediante, episcopos suffraganeos Bethleemitanum, Liddensem, et illum de Ebron, ubi sepulti fuerunt Adam et Eva, cum Abraham,[1] Isaac et Jacob. Sunt autem in urbe loca venerabilia, ut ecclesia Dominicæ resurrectionis in Calvaria sive Golgatha, ubi sunt canonici nigri sub priore; Templum Domini, in quo sunt milites; aliud quoque templum, in quo sunt clerici. In ecclesia montis Syon sunt canonici regulares sub abbate. In ecclesia montis Oliveti sunt canonici regulares sub abbate. In ecclesia vallis Josaphat, monachi nigri sunt sub abbate. Isti omnes mitrati sunt, et cum episcopis prædictis in ministerio patriarchæ assistunt. Sunt præterea aliæ civitates, quæ non habent episcopos, ut Aschalona, quæ est sub episcopo Bethleemitano; Joppe, quæ est sub canonicis Dominici sepulchri; Neapolis, quæ est sub clericis Templi; Cayfas, quæ est sub archiepiscopo Cæsariensi. Nazareth locus est, in quo Maria, Mater Domini, nata est, et in quo Filius Altissimi in uterum Virginis descendit. Bethleem, in qua natus est panis cœlestis. Jordanis locus est, in cujus flumine Christus baptizatus apparuit. Locus alius est,[2] in quo Christus jejunavit, et a diabolo temptatus est. Stagnum Genesareth, ubi Christus discipulos vocavit, et multa fecit miracula. Mons Thabor, in quo Christus transfiguratus apparuit. Infra sanctam civitatem templum est, in quo Christus extitit præsentatus; mons Syon, in quo Salvator cum discipulis cœnavit, et Spiritus Sanctus super discipulos venit, Materque Domini ex hoc mundo migravit; Calvaria, ubi mortem in cruce sustinuit; sepulchrum, in quo quievit, et unde tertia die surrexit; mons Oliveti, ubi in asinam sedens, a pueris honorabatur, et unde in cœlum ascendit; Bethania, ubi Lazarum resuscitavit; Syloe, ubi cæco nato visum restituit; Gethsemani, id est, vallis

Religious establishments in Jerusalem.

Cities which have no bishops.

Notable localities in Palestine, and Jerusalem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 156.

[1] *Abraham*] Written at first *Habraham*, but *H* erased.

[2] *est*] Added on to the text.

Josaphat, ubi Christus a Judæis captus, et beata Maria sepulta fuit; ecclesia Sancti Stephani, ubi lapidatus occubuit; Sebastea, ubi Johannes Baptista sepultus fuit, cum prophetis Elysæo et Abdia. Hæc autem ex libro venerabilis viri Willelmi, Tyrensis archiepiscopi, excerpta, de captionibus Antiochiæ et Jerusalem, ubi dux Normannorum Robertus cum suis Normannis et Anglis locum tenuit potiorem, et sine quibus nihil memoria dignum peractum est, sufficiant. Si quis residuum libri illius, necnon et alterius libri, in quo mirabilia orientis et lex Machometi pseudoprophetæ continentur, quem idem Willelmus de Arabicis fideliter ac luculenter[1] exemplaribus transtulit, et scripsit in Latinis, inspicere desiderat,[2] apud Sanctum Albanum[3] sedulus inveniet explorator.[4]

A.D. 1099

The above information derived from the work of William, archbishop of Tyre.

Henricus, frater regis Anglorum Willelmi, corda magnatum blandis pollicitis sibi inclinavit.

Temporibus vero sub eisdem, videlicet dum dux Normannorum Robertus tam per mare quam per terram versus partes tenderet occidentis, Henricus, frater ejus junior, vir videlicet literis addictus et jam eleganter in grammatica[5] et jure eruditus, mente sagax, corpore decorus, viribus integer, perpendens quod rex Anglorum frater ejus liberis careret, et tunc temporis solus heres in regno appareret, donativis pretiosis quamplurimis,[6] quibus ex dono patris abundavit,[7] affatuque blando et pollicitis amplissimis magnatum Angliæ corda sibi studuit inclinare; talibus utens

Henry, brother of king William, allures the nobility to him.

[1] *fideliter et luculenter*] These words, with part of the next, are on an erasure.

[2] *desiderat*] Before this word has been added *qui*, and so in F.; but it only disturbs the sense.

[3] *Albanum*] Added in marg.

[4] *explorator*] In the margin opposite is added the following note: "¶ Hunc librum tulit episcopus Wintoniensis P[etrus] de Terra Sancta, quem vix, qui hæc scripsi, ab eodem impetravi." Om. F

[5] *grammatica*] gramatica, MS.

[6] *plurimis*] On an erasure.

[7] *abundavit*] habundavit, MS.

A.D. 1099. sermocinationibus, "Pater meus Willelmus, hujus regni conquestor, mihi nil terræ in testamento reliquit; auxilietur mihi nunc Deus, non enim habeo ubi reclinem caput meum. Verumtamen quasi prophetico spiritu, multis circumstantibus, ut nostis, condens testamentum moriturus mihi dixit, 'Fili mi carissime,[1] ne solliciteris tanquam exsors, et inter fratres tuos extorris, nam tu denique omnia heres universorum possidebis.' Propicio Deo et vobis consentientibus, hoc prænosticum verificetur. Adjecit adhuc, quod omnes antecessores meos gloria et honore et pacis abundantia[2] superarem, regnans in Anglia diu ac feliciter. Reposita est hæc spes mea in sinu meo.[3] Hoc toto spiritu desidero, non propter personam meam,[4] novit ille qui nihil ignorat, sed propter vos, diu oppressos, ut sub rege pacifico possitis aliquando respirare. Frater meus Robertus, ut toti mundo patet, vir bellicosus, indomitus et pacis impatiens, et nunc post orientalia prœlia plus solito. Fama vero publica referente, in regem Jerosolimitanum pompose nimis est electus et creatus. Nec invideo, immo potius fraternis congaudeo successibus. Expedit vobis, ne unquam Angliæ fines[5] ingrediatur, vos conculcaturus, expoliaturus, et variis angariis exacturus, atque de spoliis vestris Normannos ditaturus. Me[6] vero, pacis ac tranquillitatis[7] et legum Angliæ antiquarum piarum et justarum amatorem et zelatorem, si contingat super fol. 33 b.
vos regnare, vos in caritatis vinculis et brachiis specialis dilectionis strictius ac dulcius amplexabor, et summæ pacis deliciis confovebo, possessionibus ampliabo, omnes avitas[8] vobis libertates favorabiliter concedendo et

---

[1] *carissime*] karissime, MS.
[2] *abundantia*] habundancia, MS.
[3] *meo*] Interlined.
[4] *meam*] Interlined.
[5] *fines*] Added in marg.
[6] *Me*] On an erasure.
[7] *tranquillitatis*] transquillitatis, MS.
[8] *avitas*] A late hand has noted in the margin, "*avitas* male hic ponitur."

irrefragabiliter confirmando, et vestrum consilium in omnibus exaudiendo." Talibus igitur blanditiis et promissis omnium fere nobilium Angliæ corda sibi inclinavit et enervavit, et a Roberti Ducis amore[1] alienavit. Dux interim, post multa maris discrimina et morosa viarum dispendia, iter versus Normanniam,[2] quod tamen Angli vel etiam Normanni penitus ignorabant, maturavit.

A.D. 1099.

Quomodo rex Willelmus in nova aula apud Westmonasterium curiam suam tenuit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 156.

Eodem quoque anno, rex Anglorum Willelmus a Normannia in Angliam rediens, apud Westmonasterium in nova aula sua curiam suam primo pompose nimis tenuit. Quam cum ipsam inspecturus cum multa militia introisset, et[3] alii eam dicerent nimis magnam esse et æquo majorem, dixit eam rex debitæ magnitudinis dimidia parte carere, nec eam esse nisi thalamum[4] ad palatium, quod erat facturus. Adhuc posset indagator sedulus reperire fundamentum aulæ, quam proposuerat facere, scilicet a Tamensi[5] usque ad publicam stratam; tanta enim debuit esse longitudo.[6]

William II. holds his court in Westminster Hall.

The foundations of the hall still remained.

Nota magnificentiam regis.[7]

Deinde infra paucos dies[8] venit ad eum, cum pranderet una die festiva, nuncius, nec voluit differre nuncium propter prandium; et anhelo[9] spiritu affir-

News is brought to the king of the siege of Mans.

---

[1] *amore*] Added in marg.

[2] *Normanniam*] Normannia, MS.

[3] *et*] On an erasure.

[4] *thalamum*] talamum, MS.

[5] *Thamensi*] scil. *fluvio*. This ellipsis occurs frequently.

[6] *Adhuc . . . longitudo*] Added in the margin, and is inserted in the text of F.

[7] From the beginning of this chapter to the end of the reign of Will. II., MS. F. ceases to follow the text, but agrees with the larger Chronicle in A. C. D.

[8] *dies*] On an erasure.

[9] *anhelo*] hanelo, MS.

A.D. 1099. mavit familiam suam in urbe Cenomannica arctissime obsideri,[1] et solam expectare, nisi citius liberarentur, miserabilem captionem. Rex autem hæc audiens, cum intinctam buccellam ori applicuisset, volens eam comedere, redarguit eum nuncius graviter, jurando affirmans, quod tepide motus fuit super tali suorum periculo et propria jactura, insuper de succursu morosus conferendo. Rex autem dictum nuncii commendans,[2] illico jussit cementarios vocari, murum palatii collateralem effracturos, ut, facto ibidem patulo hiatu, exiret, ne tantum deviaret a recto itinere, ut per ostium exiret. In quo facto ab omnibus meruit commendari;[3] dixit enim, quod decuit tam festinanter obsessos liberare. Et cum festinans nec secuturos expectans ad mare pervenisset, et mare ventis tam contrariis quam procellosis turbabatur, navem ilico ascendit. Cui cum nauclerus dixisset, "Cur, hominum audacissime, nec hostium impetus ad quos properas, nec maris commoti formidas periculum; nunquid tu ventis et mari poteris imperare?" Cui rex, "Non frequenter auditum est, reges Christianos Deum invocantes fluctibus fuisse submersos. Aliqui de oppressis et obsessis apud Cenomannem orant pro me, quos Deus, etsi non me, clementer exaudiet." Et ilico sedata tempestate, ventus prosper, velis sinuatis, ipsum regem cum exercitu suo, quem tunc propter suam festinationem modicum habuit, impulit indempnem ad ulteriorem portum adoptatum. Et statim ad liberationem suorum properans,[4] venit ad tria miliaria prope Cenomanniam, ubi in obsidione extra urbem in castris tota Galliæ consederat fortitudo, die noctuque urbem infatigabiliter infestando. Cum igitur jussisset rex Baldewino cuidam, principi ac duci exercitus sui, ut inimicorum numerum et fortitudinem præcedens caute

He embarks forthwith, in defiance of a storm,

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 156, 157.

and lands in safety; then advances to Mans.

---

[1] *obsideri*] At first written *obsidere*.

[2] *commendans*] comendans, MS.

[3] *commendari*] comendari, MS.

[4] *properans*] Interlined is *dum*, as if to read *properandum*.

A.D. 1099.

consideraret et æstimaret, atque festinus renunciaret, ipse præivit, et, facta æstimatione, certificatus rediit ad regem, dicens, "Revertere festinus; hostes enim præmuniti assunt legionibus ordinatis, qui parantur ad bellum, qui plures sunt nobis in duplo." Cui rex, "Ergo pares sumus; præsentia mea valet dimidium exercitus eorum; procedamus intrepidi." Et jussit exercitum ad prœliandum, explicatis vexillis, progressurum ordinari. Quorum accessus intrepidus cum hostibus innotuisset, dicebant, "Nullatenus credendum est, quod rex Willelmus, draco rubeus—sic enim eum appellabant, propter ejus tirannidem—cum tam parvo exercitu, ut apparet, veniat, sine multorum subsecutione." Et cum appropinquasset rex, ita ut uterque exercitus sese jam eminus intuerentur, fugit exercitus adversariorum glomeratim. Quos rex rapido cursu insequebatur; et, misso nuncio expeditissimo, obsessis insinuavit, ut contra fugientes exirent. Quod et factum est. Unde, confuso exercitu, fugit consul[1] graviter saucius, et vix elapsus. Interfectis igitur quampluribus et captis nonnullis, inter alios capti sunt tres eorum potentissimi, et compedibus et manicis ferreis mancipati. Quos cum rex ante ipsum adductos intueretur, dixit eis, "Sic Deus et sanctus Leonardus vos liberet, si vos me sic teneretis compeditum et captum ad vestrum arbitrium, quid de me faceretis?" Ipsi autem sese ad invicem respicientes primo siluerunt, sed postea unus eorum a rege stimulatus, palam protestatus est cum juramento dicens, "Si ruptis vinculis liberi distaremus a te per unum miliare, revocatis sociis, in te acriter irruentes, te tuosque indubitanter occuparemus, et occupatum te vel perpetuo carceri traderemus, vel potius in frustra trucidaremus. Sed decipiebamur, credentes vos in decuplo plures fuisse quam eratis, et icciro, heu! heu! Deo nobis adverso, terga dedimus

The king's forces engage the enemy, who are put to flight.

Generosity of the king to some prisoners.

---

[1] *consul*] scil. Helias. Cf. Ord. Vit. iv. 59.

A.D. 1099. fugitivi." Hæc autem cum audisset rex, statim advocato fabro, fecit captivos ipsos solvi, et, vinculis eliminatis,[1] poni in equis bonis. Et dixit eis cum autentico juramento, "Melior fuit conditio vestra ligatis quam solutis. Ite liberi quocunque volueritis." Unde, obtenta civitate,[2] ad Angliam transfretavit. *Eodem anno rex Wilhelmus dedit episcopatum Dunelmensem pacitatori[3] Ranulpho, viro pessimo; et Osmundus, Sarisberiensis antistes, diem clausit extremum.[4] Hoc quoque anno visus[5] est sanguis ebullire de terra apud Fiscamstede,[6] in pago Bercensi; et post hæc apparuit cœlum tota nocte rubeum, tanquam arderet.*

He returns to England.

Ralph [Flambard] made bp. of Durham.

Death of Osmund, bishop of Salisbury.

Bloody spring at at Finchamstead, in Berkshire.

R. Wend. ii. 157. fol. 34 *a*.

De morte regis Willelmi Rufi, et quibusdam signis prævenientibus mortem.[7]

A.D. 1100. *Anno Domini millesimo centesimo rex Anglorum Willelmus, cognomento Rufus, cum gloriose curiam*

Death of William Rufus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 157.

[1] *eliminatis*] elimatis, MS.

[2] *Unde obtenta civitate*] Instead of these words the text originally read, *Unum pro vero sci[tote]*, as appears by a transcript of this MS. made for abp. Parker in 1567, preserved in MS. C. C. C., Cambr. No. lvi. Subsequently to this date these words have been partially erased, and others substituted by the same hand, of the 16th century, which has supplied in the MS. the two leaves which follow, the text of which is distinguished above by *italics*. On the lower margin of fol. 33 *b*, the bishop of Lincoln [about 1490] has noted, "Male abscissa sunt dua folia quæ sequebantur. *Jo. Lincoln.*" Some words have also been originally written with a plummet on the margin, which, with difficulty, may be deciphered thus: "Nota, quod hic est magnus (?) defectus, videlicet de fine Willelmi Rufi." As it is uncertain from what source the text has been copied or compiled in the two leaves thus supplied, I have collated it throughout with Wendover, the three MSS. of the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris, A. C. D., and the Cecil MS. at Paris, F.

[3] *pacitatori*] So also read W. A. C. D. F. I.; but in ed. Wend. it is altered to *placitatori*, which is more correct, as appears from Flor. Wig., ii. 46, and Sim. Dunelm., col. 225.

[4] *extremum*] After this word is inserted in W. A. C. D. the following passage: "Sigisbertus, Gemblacensis monachus, cronica sua huc [hæc, A. C. D.; hic, I.] usque digessit."

[5] *visus*] in æstate visus, W. A. C. D. F.

[6] *Fiscamstede*] So W. A. C. D. F.; but we should read *Finchamstede* with the Sax. Chron., p. 364, and Domesday Book, i. 57.

[7] *prævenientibus mortem*] ejus mortem prævenientibus, W. A. C. D. F.

suam ad Natale apud Gloverniam, ad Pasca apud A.D. 1100.
Wintoniam, et apud Londonias in[1] *Pentecoste*[2] *tenuisset, in crastino sancti Petri ad Vincula perrexit* 2 Aug.
Rog. Wend. ii. 158. *venatum in Nova Foresta; ubi Walterus Tirell cum sagitta, cervo intendens, inscius*[3] *regem percussit. Rex autem in corde percussus corruit in terram, nec verbum edidit, sed vitam crudelem fine misero terminavit.*
Ejus quoque mortem signa plurima prævenerunt. Nam Portents which preceded his death.
idem rex, pridie ante necem suam, vidit per sompnium[4] *sese fleubotomiæ ictu sanguinem emittere, et radium cruoris ad*[5] *cælum usque extentum lucem obnubilare, et diei*[6] *interpolare*[7] *claritatem. Rex autem, sancta Maria invocata, et somno excussus, lumen inferri præcepit, et cubicularios a se recedere*[8] *non permittens, residuum noctis insompne*[9] *peregit. Mane vero, cum aurora illuxisset, monachus quidam transmarinus, qui pro ecclesiæ suæ negotiis regis curiam sequebatur, Roberto filio-Hamonis, viro potenti et regi familiari, somnium retulit, quod nocte eadem viderat mirificum et horrendum. Vidit enim per somnium regem in quandam venire ecclesiam, gestuque superbo et insolenti, ut solebat, cœpit despicere circumstantes; ubi Crucifixum dentibus apprehendens, brachia illius corrosit et crura pæne detruncavit; quod Crucifixus, cum diu tolerasset, regem demum dextero pede ita depulit, ut caderet in pavimentum*[10] *supinus, et ex ore jacentis tantam exire flammam conspexit et ita diffusam, ut fumorum nebula, quasi chaos magnum, usque ad sidera volitaret.*[11] *Hanc visionem cum Robertus regi retulisset, cachinnos*[12] *ingeminans*

---

[1] *in*] ad, C. D. and ed. Wend.
[2] *Pentecoste*] Pentecosten, W. C. D. F.
[3] *inscius*] justius, MS.
[4] *sompnium*] sompnum, W. A. C. D.
[5] *ad*] in, W. A. C. D.
[6] *diei*] Dei, A. C. *pr. m.*, D. F. I.
[7] *interpolare*] So all the MSS.; but altered to *interpellare* in Edd. and ed. Wend.
[8] *recedere*] discedere, W. A. C. D. F.
[9] *insompne*] insomnis, W.
[10] *pavimentum*] pavementum, MS.
[11] *volitaret*] In W. is added *et obfuscaret.*
[12] *cachinnos*] chachinnos, MS.

A.D. 1100. *ait, "Monachus est," inquit, "et lucri causa monachiliter somniavit. Da ei centum solidos, ne videatur inaniter somniasse." Item,*[1] *videbatur regi per somnium nocte proxima ante diem mortis suæ, quod vidit unum infantem pulcherrimum super altare quoddam, et cupiens et esuriens supra modum adiit, et corrosit de carne infantis, et videbatur ei prædulce quod gustaverat; et volens plus avidius [sumere],*[2] *infans torvo aspectu et voce minaci ait, "Desiste, nimis accepisti." Expergefactus a somno, rex consuluit mane super hoc quendam episcopum. Episcopus autem suspicans*[3] *judicium vindictæ, ait, "Desiste, rex bone, a persecutione ecclesiæ; præmunitio enim hæc*[4] *Dei est, et benigna castigatio. Nec, ut proposuisti, venatum eas." Rex contemnens salutaria monita, in silvas venatum ivit. Et ecce, casu cervus magnus, cum per*[5] *eum transiret, ait rex cuidam militi, scilicet Waltero Tirel, "Trahe, diabole!" Exiit ergo telum volatile, de quo bene et vere potuit dici et vaticino denotari,* fol. 34 *b.*

"Et semel emissum volat irrevocabile telum."[6]

Et, obstante arbore, in obliquum reflexum faciens, per medium cordis regem[7] *sauciavit, qui subito mortuus corruit. Sui autem, et præcipue miles ille,*[8] *in partes fugerunt; aliqui tamen redeuntes, corpus in sanguine suo circumvolutum et tabefactum supra*[9] *bigam cujusdam carbonatoris imposuerunt fragilem, et macilentissimo jumento uno tractam.*[10] *Rusticulus igitur coactus corpus ad civitatem Wintoniam*[11] *trans-*

[1] *Item*] From this word to *fide expertus* is not found in Wendover, but is added by Matth. Paris on the margin of A. and inserted in the text of C. D. F.

[2] *sumere*] Supplied from A. C. D. F.

[3] *suspicans*] Altered to *suspirans* by a second hand.

[4] *hæc*] hoc, MS. and F.

[5] *per*] ante, Edd.

[6] Altered from Hor., Ep. i. xviii. 71.

[7] *cordis regem*] On an erasure.

[8] *ille*] Added in marg.

[9] *supra*] super, MS. and F.

[10] *tractam*] tractum, MS.

[11] *Wintoniam*] Omitted in A. C. D.

portare, dum transiret per quandam profundam et lutosam viam, fracta biga sua debili, corpus, imo cadaver, rigidum et fœtens in luto circumvolutum volentibus asportare dereliquit. Eadem hora comes Cornubiæ in silva, ab illa qua hoc[1] *acciderat per duas dietas distante, dum venatum iret, et solus casu a suis derelinqueretur sodalibus,*[2] *obvium habuit unum magnum pilosum et nigrum hircum, ferentem unum regem nigrum et nudum, per medium pectoris sauciatum. Et adjuratus hircus per Deum trinum et unum, quid hoc*[3] *esset, respondit, "Fero ad judicium suum regem vestrum, imo tyrannum, Willelmum Rufum. Malignus enim spiritus sum, et ultor malitiæ suæ, qua desævit in ecclesiam Christi; et hanc necem suam*[4] *procuravi, imperante prothomartire Angliæ beato Albano, qui conquestus est Domino, quod in*[5] *insulam Britanniæ, cujus ipse fuit primus sacrator, supra modum grassaretur." Comes igitur hæc statim sociis*[6] *enarravit. Infra triduum autem hæc omnia vera reperit; permediata igitur res*[7] *est oculata*[8] *fide expertus. Cujus*[9] *præterea mortem miseram, ut prædictum est, sanguis de terra ebulliens præsignavit.*[10] *Nam Anselmus,*[11] *Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ob illius tyrannidem per triennium trans mare pulsus, a Roma Marceniacum venit, kalendis*[12] *Augusti, ut sancti Hugonis, Cluniacensis*[13] *abbatis, colloquio frueretur. Ubi cum de rege Wil-*

A.D. 1100.

R.Wend. ii. 158.

Rog.Wend. ii. 159.

1 Aug.

---

[1] *hoc*] hec, MS. and F.

[2] *derelinqueretur sodalibus*] sodalibus linqueretur, A. C. D. F.

[3] *hoc*] hec, MS. and F.

[4] *necem suam*] suam necem, A. C. D. F.

[5] *in*] Interlined.

[6] *statim sociis*] sociis statim, A. C. D. F.

[7] *permediata igitur res*] per mediatores, A. C. D.; permediata res, F.

[8] *oculata*] ocula, MS.; and so A. C. D. F.

[9] *Cujus*] Ejus, W. A. C. D.

[10] *præsignavit*] presaginavit, MS. After this word is inserted in W. A. C. D., "licet experimenta alia non deessent."

[11] *Anselmus*] Ancelmus, MS. and F.

[12] *kalendis*] circa kalendas, W. A. C. D.

[13] *Cluniacensis*] Clunacensis, MS.

A.D. 1100. *lielmo inter eos sermo haberetur, abbas ille venerabilis archiepiscopo respondens, sub testimonio intulit veritatis, "Proxima nocte intempesta* [1] *præterita vidi regem illum ante thronum Dei adductum et accusatum, et a justo judice damnationis in illum sententiam promulgatam." Sed quomodo illud sciret, nec ipse tunc exposuit, nec archiepiscopus, propter illius eminentiam sanctitatis, nec illius audientium quilibet. Item, sequente die, cum archiepiscopus inde progressus Lugdunum venisset, et nocte sequenti monachi, qui cum Anselmo erant, matutinas,* [2] *ipso præsente, decan-* fol. 35 *a.* *tassent, ecce juvenis quidam ornatu serenus et* [3] *vultu, clerico cuidam ipsius archiepiscopi, qui prope hostium thalami jacebat in lecto,* [4] *et necdum dormiens oculos tamen clausos habebat,* [5] *astitit, et vocans eum nomine suo, dixit, "Adam," inquit, "dormis?" Cui cum clericus responderet, "Non," ait, "Vis audire nova?" "Libenter," respondit. Et ille, "Pro certo," inquit, "noveris, quod totum dissidium inter archiepiscopum et regem Willielmum exortum jam penitus est sopitum." Ad hoc clericus alacrior factus, caput erexit, sed oculis apertis, neminem vidit. Item, cum nocte proxime* [6] *sequente unus ex monachis ejusdem archiepiscopi ad matutinas* [7] *staret, et cantaret, ecce [quidam illi cartulam admodum parvam exhibuit ad legendum. Quam intuens monachus,]* [8] *"Obiit rex Willielmus," in ea* [9] *scriptum invenit. Qui confestim oculos aperiens, præter socios nullum vidit. Nec multo post elapso*

[1] *intempesta*] On an erasure. Om. W. A. C. D. F.

[2] *matutinas*] matutinos, W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *et*] ac, W. A. C. D. F.

[4] *jacebat in lecto*] in lecto jacebat, W. A. C. D. F.

[5] *habebat*] tenebat, W. A. C. D. F.

[6] *proxime*] proxima, MS., and C. *sec. m.*, D. *sec. m.*

[7] *matutinas*] matutinos, W. A. C. D. F.

[8] *quidam . . . monachus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[9] *ea*] So written at first (as in all the MSS.), but afterwards altered to *carta*, in consequence, probably, of the omission after *ecce*.

Rog. Wend. ii. 160. *termino, duo ex monachis ejus ad ipsum venientes, et* A.D. 1100.
regis mortem nunciantes, hortati sunt attentius ut ilico sedem suam repetere dignaretur. Jure[1] *autem rex in medio totius injustitiæ suæ præreptus est;*[2] *occubuit, qui supra hominem erat, et consilio perversorum quicquid mali poterat, id semper agebat; et suis nequam, alienis nequior, sibi nequissimus, subjectos omnes continuis geldis et talagiis vexabat, vicinos werris et exactionibus assiduis provocavit;*[3] *nec respirare potuit*[4] *Anglia sub ipso miserabiliter suffocata. Ipse namque, et qui ei famulabantur, omnia rapiebant, omnia conterebant et subvertebant, adulteria violenter et impune committebant. Quicquid fraudis et nequitiæ antea non erat, his temporibus pullulavit. Invisus namque rex nequissimus Deo et populo, die qua obiit in proprio tenebat archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem, episcopatus Wintoniensem et Saresberiensem, cum duodecim abbatiis, quas aut vendebat, aut ad firmam dabat, aut in manu sua tenebat. Nec luxuriæ scelus exercebat occulte, sed ex impudentia coram sole. Quid plura? Quicquid Deo Deumque diligentibus placebat, hoc regi regemque diligentibus displicebat.*

The evil deeds of William II.

Sepultus est autem in crastino perditionis suæ apud Wintoniam, in ecclesia cathedrali, in choro;[5] *in cujus sepultura lacrimæ locum præ gaudio non habebant, cum regnasset annis xiii.*[6] *Tam subitanea morte, ut dictum est, præreptus, ictu sagittæ, quæ utrum,*[7] *sicut quidam aiunt, jacta ipsum percusserit, an, quod plures*

He is buried at Winchester.

Eadmer, Hist. Nov, p. 54.

---

[1] *Jure*] This word commences a new chapter in W. A. C. D. F., with the rubric, *De vitiis regis Willelmi.*

[2] *est*] Omitted in W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *provocavit*] provocabat, W. A. C. D. F.

[4] *potuit*] poterat, W. A. C. D. F.

[5] *in . . . choro*] Omitted in W. A. C. D. F. agrees with the text.

[6] *cum . . . xiii.*] Om. W. and D. Here the text, supplied by the hand of the 16th century, ceases to agree with Wendover and the MSS. of the larger Chronicle, but to the end of fol. 35 *b* is derived from other sources.

[7] From the words *quæ utrum* to *vitæ subtraxit*, is borrowed almost verbally from Eadmer, Hist. Nov., p. 54.

A.D. 1100. *affirmant, illum pedibus offendentem superque ruentem occiderit, disquirere otiosum putamus, cum scire sufficiat eum judicio Dei prostratum atque necatum. Hic occurrit animo quid rex iste quondam Roffensi episcopo dixerit, videlicet, quod "Deus nunquam*[1] *eum bonum habiturus esset pro malo quod sibi inferret;" et perpendo quid postmodum erga illum egerit, donec vitæ præsenti superfuit. Scitur enim quia ex quo illa verba protulit, depulso languore, quo notum est illum fuisse gravatum, tantum in deprimendo et subjugando inimicos, in adquirendo terras, in exercendo*[2] *voluptates suas prosperatus est, ut omnia sibi arridere putares. Ventus insuper et ipsum mare videbantur ei obtemperare. Verum dico, non mentior, quia cum de Anglia in Normanniam transire, vel inde cursum,*[3] *prout ipsum voluntas sua ferebat, redire volebat, mox, illo*[4] *mari appropinquante, omnis tempestas, quæ nonnunquam in fluctibus*[5] *immane sæviebat, sedabatur, et transeunti mira tranquillitate famulabatur. Quid amplius? Ita fateor in cunctis erat fortunatus, ac si verbis eis*[6] *responderit Deus, "Si te pro malo, ut dicis, nunquam bonum habebo, probabo an saltem pro bono possim te bonum habere; et ideo in omni quod tu bonum æstimas, velle tuum adimplebo." Sed quid? In tantum ex successibus*[7] *suis profecit, ut, sicut ii qui in*[8] *factis illius*[9] *die noctuque præsentes exstiterunt, attestantur, nunquam vel de lecto surgeret vel in lecto se collocaret, quin seipso*[10] *aut collocante aut surgente semper deterior esset. Quapropter dum nec malo corrigi voluit, nec bono ad bene agendum attrahi potuit, ne in perniciem*

Sayings and character of the king. — fol. 35 *b.*

[1] *nunquam*] numquam, MS.
[2] *exercendo*] excercendo, MS.
[3] *cursum*] cursim, MS.
[4] *illo*] illo adveniente et, Eadm.
[5] *in fluctibus*] On an erasure. These words are not in Eadmer.
[6] *eis*] ejus, Eadm.
[7] *successibus*] sucessibus, MS.
[8] *in*] Om. Eadm.
[9] *illius*] ejus, Eadm.
[10] *seipso*] seipsum, Eadm.

bonorum diutino furore sæviret, compendiosa illum A.D. 1100.
æquus Arbiter et momentanea cæde huic vitæ subtraxit. In[1] *operibus*[2] *fuit*[3] *levis, in verbis tam*[4] *stabilis fuit*[5] *adeo, ut si cui bonum vel malum promitteret, inde securus esse posset. Et cum esset pecuniæ avidissimus, quoddam*[6] *tamen semel gessit memoria dignum. Defuncto enim*[7] *quodam abbate semel in Anglia, duo monachi, collecta magna pecuniæ summa,*[8] *ut abbatis officium alter alterum supplantando obtineret, cum quibus quidam*[9] *tertius ea intentione perrexit, ut abbatem constitutum domum*[10] *reduceret. Cumque*[11] *coram rege illi duo starent, et unus altero plura promitteret, rex a tertio monacho, tunc tacente, quid dare vellet, inquisivit. At ille, se nihil promittere aut dare velle, respondit. "Accede," inquit rex, "tu solus dignus es tam sacrum onus subire." Sed erat rex ille magna pecuniarum cupiditate flagrans. Nam, eo regnante, fiebant in Anglia deprædationes, proscriptiones et confiscationes. Quamvis tolerabilius fuisset unius imperium ingemiscere, quam novis dominis subjacere.*[12]

Higden Polychron. lib. vi. c. 11.

---

[1] From the words *In operibus* to *onus subire*, is taken, nearly *verbatim*, from the Polychronicon of Higden, lib. vi. cap. 11. I have collated the text with MS. Harl. 4875, fol. 170.

[2] *In operibus*] At quamvis in operibus, Higd.

[3] *fuit*] fuisset, Higd.

[4] *tam*] tamen, Higd.

[5] *fuit*] fuerat, Higd.

[6] *quoddam*] quiddam, Higd.

[7] *enim*] nempe, Higd.

[8] *summa*] Higd. adds, "regem adeunt."

[9] *quidam*] Om. Higd.

[10] *domum*] humiliter domum, Higd.

[11] *Cumque*] Cum quibus, MS., but corrected from Higden.

[12] Here end the two leaves inserted by the recent hand.

A.D. 1100. *De coronatione Henrici Primi, Anglorum regis.*[1] fol. 36 *a.*



Defuncto itaque rege Willelmo, cognomento Rufo, cum magnates ignorarent quid actum esset de Roberto, Normannorum duce, regis defuncti fratre primogenito, qui jam per quinquennium in expeditione Jerosolimitana moram protraxerat Christo militando, timuerunt diu sine regimine vacillare. Quod Henricus, fratrum ultimus et juvenis sapientissimus, cum callide cognovisset,[2] congregato Londoniis clero Angliæ et populo universo, multis et solito[3] pluribus emollivit[4] omnes pollicitis amplioribus, et blandis sermocinationibus omnium procerum constantiam enervavit, Robertum ducem depravando et se ipsum collaudando. Promisit insuper legum emendationem, quibus oppressa fuit injuste Anglia, tempore W[illelmi], patris sui, similiter et W[illelmi], fratris sui; et hoc juramentorum firmissima assertione confirmabat. Et sic animos omnium in sui promotionem et amorem illaqueavit,[5] ita videlicet, ut nullum præter illum in regem susciperent et patronum. Respondit igitur regni universitas, asserens quod, si animo volenti ipsis concederet et carta sua communiret illas libertates et consuetudines antiquas, quæ floruerunt in regno tempore sancti Edwardi regis, in ipsum consentirent, et in regem unanimiter sullimarent; præsertim cum absens fuisset Robertus, heres legitimus, nec possent sine[6] maximo periculi discrimine diutius expectare. Henrico autem hæc omnia vultu serenissimo cum multiplici juramento concedente, et se

Rog. Wend. ii. 160.

Rog. Wend. ii. 161.

Henry I. promises to reform the laws.

[1] The royal shield of arms is repeated in the margin, with a crown and sceptre by the side.

[2] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[3] *solito*] Interlined.

[4] *emollivit*] Added to the text, and partly on an erasure.

[5] *illaqueavit*] Added to the text.

[6] *nec possent sine*] On an erasure.

id ilico facturum indubitanter affirmante, consecratus est in regem apud Westmonasterium, in die Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ, favente clero et populo universo. A.D. 1100. He is crowned at Westminster.

Contra objectionem detrahentium Normannorum.

Nec poterant ullatenus Angli in hoc facto redargui proditionis, quasi consentientes iniquæ supplantationi, cum disseminata fuisset, Henrico procurante, fama, quod dux Normannorum Robertus regnum Jerosolimitanum suscepisset gubernandum. Præterea rex Willelmus, pater ejusdem Roberti, erga ipsum R[obertum] iratus nimis, cum in extremis ageret, et merito, ut prædictum est, maledixit illi in amaritudine animi, exsortem[1] faciens regni Angliæ, conquestus scilicet sui, quod habiturus fuisset, quia primogenitus, si pie et juste sese habuisset. Unde pater illud Willelmo Rufo contulit, et Roberto Normanniam,[2] quæ ipsum W[illelmum] patrem tanquam ducem contingebat. Ipso igitur Henrico, ut prælibatum est, regio diademate sollempniter insignito, convenerunt omnes regni magnates cum gaudio, promissa consecuturi. Has igitur libertates subscriptas in regno, ad exaltationem sanctæ ecclesiæ et pacem populi, tenendas concessit. Reply to the objections made by the Normans.

Nota de libertatibus, quas rex Henricus I. in regno concessit.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 161. Henricus I[us].,[4] Dei gratia[5] rex Angliæ,[6] Hugoni de Boclande vicecomiti et omnibus fidelibus suis, tam Francis quam Anglis,[7] in Herefordsire, salutem. Sciatis me Dei misericor- Charter of liberties granted by Henry I.

[1] *exsortem*] exortem, MS.

[2] *Normanniam*] Normaniam, MS.

[3] This important charter is printed in the "Statutes of the Realm," vol. i., p. 1, ed. 1810, from the "Textus Roffensis" (in which it is assigned to the year 1101), collated with two copies in the "Red Book of the Exchequer," marked R. 1 and R. 2. I have noted the principal variations in addition to those in W. A. C. D.

[4] *Ius.* Om. R. 1, R. 2, and W. A. C. D.

[5] *gratia*] Added above the line.

[6] *Angliæ*] Anglorum, R. 1, 2.

[7] *Anglis*] Anglicis, A. C. D.

A.D. 1100. dia et communi consilio baronum regni[1] Angliæ regem[2] esse coronatum. Et quia regnum oppressum erat injustis exactionibus, ego respectu Dei, et amore quem erga vos omnes[3] habeo, sanctam Dei ecclesiam liberam[4] facio, ita quod nec eam[5] vendam, vel[6] ad firmam ponam, nec, mortuo archiepiscopo vel[7] episcopo sive[8] abbate, quicquam[9] accipiam de dominio ecclesiæ, vel de hominibus,[10] donec successor in eam ingrediatur. Et omnes malas consuetudines, quibus regnum Angliæ opprimebatur,[11] inde aufero; quas malas consuetudines in parte hic pono.[12] Si quis baronum meorum, comitum vel[13] aliorum, qui de me tenent, mortuus fuerit, heres suus non redimet terram suam, sicut facere consueverat[14] tempore patris[15] mei, sed justa et legitima relevatione [relevabit eam. Similiter et homines baronum meorum justa et legitima relevatione][16] relevabunt terras suas de dominis suis. Et si quis baronum vel aliorum hominum meorum filiam suam voluerit tradere,[17] sive sororem, sive neptem, sive cognatam[18] nuptui,[19] mecum inde loquatur; sed neque ego aliquid de suo pro hac licentia accipiam, neque defendam ei, quin eam det, excepto si eam dare voluerit[20] inimico meo. Et si, mortuo barone vel[21] alio homine meo, filia heres remanserit, dabo illam cum[22] consilio baronum meorum, cum terra sua. Et si, mortuo marito,[23] uxor ejus remanserit, et sine liberis fuerit, dotem suam et maritagium[24] habebit; et eam non dabo marito, nisi secundum velle suum. Si vero uxor cum liberis remanserit, Rog.Wend. ii. 162.

---

[1] *regni*] totius regni, Text. Roff.
[2] *regem*] ejusdem regem, T.R.; ejusdem regni regem, R. 1, 2.
[3] *omnes*] om. T.R. and R. 2.
[4] *liberam*] imprimis liberam, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[5] *eam*] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[6] *vel*] nec, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.
[7] *vel*] sive, T.R.; seu, R. 2.
[8] *sive*] vel, R. 1 and W. A. C. D.
[9] *quicquam*] aliquid, T.R., R. 1,2, and W A. C. D.
[10] *hominibus*] hominibus ejus, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[11] *opprimebatur*] injuste opprimebatur, T. R., R. 2, and W. A. C. D.
[12] *hic pono*] suppono, R 1.
[13] *vel*] sive, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[14] *facere consueverat*] faciebat, T. R. and R. 1, 2.
[15] *patris*] fratris, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[16] *relevabit . . . relevatione*] Supplied from T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.
[17] *tradere*] nuptum tradere, T.R. and R. 2; nubitum, R. 2.
[18] *cognatam*] congnatam, MS.
[19] *nuptui*] Om. T.R., R. 1, 2, and A. C. D.
[20] *dare voluerit*] vellet jungere, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[21] *vel*] sive, T.R.
[22] *cum*] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[23] *marito*] viro, T.R.
[24] *maritagium*] maritationem, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

dotem[1] suam et maritagium habebit, dum corpus suum legitime servaverit,[2] et eam non dabo, nisi secundum velle suum; et terræ[3] liberorum custos erit sive uxor, sive alius propinquior,[4] qui justius[5] esse debet.[6] Et præcipio, ut homines[7] mei similiter se contineant erga filios et filias et[8] uxores hominum suorum. Monetagium commune, quod capiatur[9] per civitates vel[10] comitatus, quod non fuit tempore Edwardi regis, hoc ne amodo fiat,[11] omnino defendo. Si quis captus fuerit, sive monetarius sive alius, cum falsa moneta, justitia recta inde fiat. Omnia placita et omnia debita, quæ regi[12] fratri meo debebantur, condono, exceptis firmis[13] meis, et exceptis illis, quæ pacta erant pro aliorum hereditatibus, vel pro illis[14] rebus, quæ justius alios[15] contingebant. Et si quis aliquid pro hereditate sua pepigerit,[16] illud condono, et omnes relevationes, quæ pro rectis hereditatibus pactæ erant.[17] Et si quis baronum vel hominum meorum infirmabitur, sicut ipse dabit vel dare disposuerit[18] pecuniam suam, ita datam esse concedo. Quod si ipse præventus vel armis, vel infirmitate, pecuniam suam nec[19] dederit nec dare disposuerit, uxor sua, sive liberi, aut parentes, et legitimi homines sui[20] pro anima ejus eam dividant, sicut eis melius visum fuerit. Si quis baronum vel hominum meorum forisfecerit, non dabit vadium in misericordia pecuniæ suæ, sicut faciebat tempore patris[21] vel fratris mei, sed secundum forisfacturæ[22] modum. Nec[23] ita emendabit, sicut emendasset retro, tempore patris mei vel

A.D. 1100.

Rog. Wend. ii. 163.

fol. 36 *b*.

[1] *dotem*] dotem quidem, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[2] *servaverit*] servabit, R. 1 and W. A. C. D.
[3] *terræ*] terræ et, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[4] *propinquior*] propinquarius, T. R.; propinquorum, R. 1, 2.
[5] *justius*] justus, R. 1 and A. C. D.
[6] *debet*] debeat, T.R.; debebit, R. 1, 2.
[7] *homines*] barones, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[8] *et*] vel, T. R. and R. 1, 2.
[9] *capiatur*] capiebatur, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[10] *vel*] et, T.R.; et per, R. 1, 2.
[11] *fiat*] sit, T.R. and R. 2.
[12] *regi*] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[13] *firmis*] rectis firmis, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[14] *illis*] eis, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[15] *alios*] aliis, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[16] *pepigerit*] pepigerat, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[17] *erant*] fuerant, T.R.
[18] *disposuerit*] disponet, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[19] *nec*] non, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W.
[20] *sui*] ejus, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[21] *patris*] patris mei, T.R. and R. 1.
[22] *forisfacturæ*] forisfacti, T.R. and R. 1, 2.
[23] *Nec*] Om. T.R. and R. 1, 2.

A.D. 1100. fratris.[1] Quod si perfidiæ vel sceleris convictus fuerit, sicut erit culpa,[2] sic emendabit.[3] Murdra etiam retro ab illa die, qua in regem coronatus fui, omnia condono, sed[4] ea, quæ amodo facta fuerint, juste emendentur, secundum[5] lagam regis Edwardi. Forestas communi consilio[6] baronum meorum in manu mea ita[7] retinui,[8] sicut pater meus eas habuit. Militibus, qui per loricas terras suas defendunt,[9] terras dominicarum carucarum suarum quietas ab omnibus geldis et[10] omni tempore[11] condono,[12] et[13] proprio dono meo concedo, ut sicut[14] tam magno gravamine alleviati sunt, in[15] equis et armis bene se instruant, ut apti et parati sint[16] ad servitium meum et ad defensionem regni mei. Pacem firmam pono in toto regno meo, et teneri amodo præcipio. Lagam regis Edwardi vobis reddo, cum illis emendationibus, quibus pater meus eam emendavit consilio baronum suorum.[17] Si quis aliquid de meo,[18] vel de rebus alicujus, post obitum regis Willelmi fratris mei cepit, totum cito reddatur absque[19] emendatione. Et si quis inde aliquid retinuerit, ille super quem inventum fuerit, graviter mihi emendabit. Hiis testibus, Mauricio, Londoniensi episcopo, Willelmo, Wintoniensi electo, Girardo, Herefordensi episcopo, Henrico, comite, Simone, comite, Waltero Giffard, comite, Roberto de Monte-forti, Rogero Bigod, et aliis multis.[20]

Rog. Wend. ii. 164.

Copies of this charter sent to

Factæ autem sunt hujus tenoris tot cartæ, quot sunt comitatus in Anglia; et expedienter fabricato sigillo.

---

[1] *vel fratris*] Om. T.R. and R. 2; et fratris mei, R. 1. After these words is added in all three, "in tempore aliorum antecessorum meorum."

[2] *erit culpa*] justum fuerit, T.R. and R. 2; justum erit, R. 1.

[3] *emendabit*] emendet, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C. D.

[4] *sed*] et, T.R., R. 1, 2, and W. A. C D.

[5] *secundum*] scd'an, MS.

[6] *consilio*] consensu, T.R. and R. 1, 2.

[7] *ita*] Om. T. R.; sic, R. 1.

[8] *retinui*] Over this word is written *vel o*, meaning that we might also read *retineo*; but the other MSS. do not sanction any such change.

[9] *defendunt*] deserviunt, R. 1, 2.

[10] *et*] et ab, R. 1, 2.

[11] *tempore*] opere, T.R. and R. 1, 2. Om. W. A. C. D. F.

[12] *condono*] Om. W. A. C. D. F.

[13] *et*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D. F.

[14] *dono . . . sicut*] On an erasure.

[15] *in*] ita, T.R. and R. 1, 2; et, A. C. D.

[16] *ut . . . sint*] Om. T.R.

[17] *suorum*] meorum, MS. and F.

[18] *meo*] rebus meis, T.R.

[19] *absque*] sine, T.R.

[20] *multis*] T.R. and R. 1, 2 add: "apud Londoniam (*or* Westmonasterium) quando fui coronatus."

consignatæ, rege sic jubente, transmissæ et positæ sunt in abbatiis singulorum comitatuum, ad memoriam hujus rei roborandam et perpetuandam. Successu vero temporis, quando, maligno spiritu instigante, pœnituit regem hæc fecisse, sublatæ sunt hæ[1] cartæ diversis viribus vel fallaciis, vix tribus remanentibus, videlicet apud Cantuariam, apud Sanctum Albanum, et apud Eboracum. A.D. 1100. the abbeys in each county.

De reditu Anselmi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, in Angliam.

Rog. Wend. ii. 164. Rex itaque Henricus in regem, ut dictum est, coronatus, dedit episcopatum Wintoniensem Willelmo Giffard,[2] et continuo de possessionibus cunctis ad episcopatum pertinentibus illum, contra novi statuta concilii, de quo superius mentionem fecimus, tam fratrissans quam patrissans investivit, remuneratus.[3] Deinde, de concilio totius ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, misit ad partes Rog. Wend. ii. 165. transmarinas nuncios sollempnes ad Anselmum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, summopere illum sollicitans, ut cum festinatione ab exilio rediens, sedem suam repetere non pigritaret. William Giffard made bishop of Winchester. Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury, is recalled.

Repatrians redit dux Normannornm R[obertus].

Rog. Wend. ii. 165. Rediit interea Normannorum dux Robertus, expleta, ut sufficienter præscriptum est, magnifice peregrinatione Jerosolimitana, in Normanniam; in qua peregrinatione[4] jam per quinquennium fere fuerat demoratus. Ubi cum lætitia et honore susceptus est ab universo populo regionis. Return of Robert, duke of Normandy.

---

[1] *hæ*] hee, MS.

[2] He was not consecrated till 11th Aug. 1107. Fasti, iii. 7.

[3] *remuneratus*] Added on to the text.

[4] *peregrinatione*] Added in marg.

De malitia Ranulphi, episcopi Dunelmensis.

A.D. 1100. Imprisonment of Ralph, bishop of Durham.

Rog. Wend. ii. 165.

Tenuit autem eo tempore rex in custodia Ranulphum, episcopum Dunelmensem, hominem perversum et ad omne scelus pronum et paratum; quem frater ejus rex Willelmus episcopum fecerat Dunelmensem, et regni Angliæ apporriatorem et potius subversorem, nam [1] vir fuit cavillosus. Qui cum regi jam dicto nimis fuisset familiaris, constituerat eum rex W[illelmus],[2] quia quilibet sibi similes quærit questores, procuratorem suum in regno, ut evelleret, destrueret, raperet et disperderet, et omnia omnium bona ad fisci commodum [3] comportaret.[4] Sed, mortuo rege iniquo, et Henrico coronato, de communi consilio gentis Anglorum posuit eum rex in vinculis. Sed una dierum cum,[5] custodibus carceris per eundem multiformem proditorem inebriatis, et pecunia data et uberiori promissa, evasisset, ilico clam in Normanniam transfretavit.[6] Ubi sua detestabili persuasione ducem Robertum commovit, incitavit et exacuit in fratrem suum debellandum, animans eum, et dominium regni indubitanter pollicendo; ad quod dux nimis credulus factus est [7] et proclivus. Elevatum enim erat cor ejus de gratia triumphali, quam ei Dominus concesserat in terra Jerosolimitana. Præterea literas occultas ad Angliæ magnates transmittens, allegavit quod esset primogenitus filiorum regis Willelmi, qui Angliam sibi subjugaverat, et hac ratione de jure sibi competere regnum Angliæ affirmabat, et ipsum nequiter supplantatum fuisse, dum Deo in Terra Sancta fructuose militaret, protestando quod nulli debet sua fraus patrocinari.

Præambulus A[dæ] de Marisco, episcopi Dunelmensis.

He escapes to Normandy, and incites duke Robert against his brother.

The duke lays claim to England.

---

[1] *subversorem, nam*] There is an erasure in the text, but the reading is supplied in marg., and confirmed by F.

[2] *W[illelmus*] Interlined.

[3] *commodum*] cōmodum, MS.

[4] *comportaret*] conportaret, MS.

[5] *cum*] Interlined.

[6] *transfretavit*] tranfretavit, MS.

[7] *factus est*] Added in marg.

Multi nobiles Angliæ mandacis ducis Roberti enervantur. A.D. 1100.

Rog. Wend. ii. 165. Hiis igitur auditis, multi nobiles de regno Angliæ causæ illius favorem præbentes, colorem justitiæ prætendenti, fidele consilium ei pariter et auxilium indubitatum promiserunt. Robertus vero interim paravit viam, ut jus suum prosequeretur. Sed quia nuper de peregrinatione pauper rediit, distulit ad tempus negotium mente conceptum, ut illud tempore congruo efficacius effectui manciparet. Quod et secretis amicis, ne vacillarent, nunciavit, et eosdem, ut sese roborarent, animavit. Eodem tempore, defuncto Thoma, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Girardus successit.

Many of the English nobles espouse his cause.

Rog. Wend. ii. 166.

fol. 37 *a*.

Death of Thomas, archbishop of York. Girard succeeds.

Urbano papa defuncto, succedit Paschalis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 166. Anno quoque sub eodem, defuncto papa Urbano, viro pio et justo, creatur Paschalis.[1] Qui sedit post eum in cathedra Romana annis xviii°.

Death of pope Urban II. Paschal II. succeeds.

De virtute regis Godefridi, et morte immatura apud Jerusalem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 166. Diebus autem sub eisdem, rex Jerosolimorum claræ memoriæ Godefridus, de cujus præstantia multa præscribuntur et bonitate, ad instantiam quorundam baronum suorum, Jordanis flumine transito,[2] in regionem Amonitarum, quam tunc Arabes inhabitabant, ingentem gregum et armentorum necnon et captivorum contrahens prædam, cum manubiis infinitis feliciter remeavit.

Acts of Godfrey, king of Jerusalem.

---

[1] Pope Urban II. died 29 July 1099, and Paschal II. was elected 13 Aug. following.

[2] *transito*] In the text *transacto*, but corr. in marg. *vel transito*; and the latter reading is confirmed by W. A. C. D. F.

A.D. 1100. Quo audito, princeps quidam de gente Arabum præclarus et potens, atque in disciplina militari ferventissimus, per internuncios pace impetrata, ad regem Godefridum cum ejusdem gentis nobili comitatu accessit. Audierat enim multorum relatione de regis et populi occidentis viribus et magnificentia, qui per tot terrarum spatia, marium tractus et pericula, montium peragrationes laboriosas, advenientes in Dei sui famulatum, universum sibi[1] subjugare nitebantur orientem. Unde studio ipsum famosum regem G[odefridum] ferventissimo videre gestiens, ad regis præsentiam adductus, reverenter illum salutavit. Et cum diu regem intuitus corporis ejus dispositionem admiraretur, cœpit cum multa precum instantia rogitare, ut in conspectu ejus gladio suo camelum maximum, quem ad hoc adduxerat, decollando percutere dignaretur, ut virtutem suæ fortitudinis fide videret oculata, et visa veraciter nunciaret. Rex vero, non ad jactantiam, erat enim vir humillimus[2] et pius, sed ut barbaris nationibus timorem incuteret, evaginato gladio suo, camelum percussit, et leviter sereno vultu, tanquam esset res perfragilis, decollavit. Est autem collum cameli longum, flexibile, et cartilaginosum ac nervosum, atque talis scematis et substantiæ, ut vix sit amputabile. Quo viso, Arabs obstupuit, et qui cum eo erant; sed in mente sua id ensis acumini ascribebat, intuitus enim ensem, laudavit. Unde, impetrata licentia ut confidentius loqueretur, quæsivit propensius, si id posset cum alterius gladio operari. At rex subridens ait, "Si bonus est gladius, pro munere caro accipe et[3] accepta; sed tuum mihi[4] paulisper accommoda."[5] Quo arrepto, alium camelum priori parem sibi jussit præsentari, quem simili decollavit alieno gladio facilitate, et sibi suum ensem Arabi resignavit, et ipsi jocose

His great strength displayed before an Arab prince.

Rog. Wend. ii. 167.

[1] *sibi*] Repeated after *subjugare*, but expuncted in the second instance.

[2] *humillimus*] humilimus, MS.

[3] *accipe, et*] Added in marg.

[4] *mihi*] michi, MS.

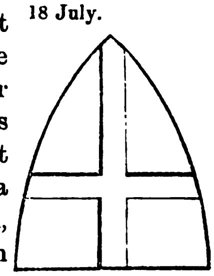
[5] *accommoda*] acomoda, MS.

dixit, "Caute meum gladium adquisisti." Cui Arabs, "Carior est mihi[1] omni thesauro." Sicque potentissimus ille Arabum princeps, quod de regis G[odefridi] virtute audierat verum esse comperiens, multis regi in auro et argento, equis ac rebus pretiosis, muneribus collatis, ejus sibi gratiam comparavit, et reversus ad propria omnibus regis strenuitatem prædicavit. Deinde quoque non longo tempore, idem rex G[odefridus] Jerosolimorum magnificus, mense Julio incurabili morbo correptus, ægrotare cœpit irremediabiliter. Assumpto igitur humanæ salutis viatico, dictoque Vale Christi commilitonibus, et diligenter, ut Christo militarent constanter, ac pro hereditatis suæ starent [et][2] usque ad mortem defensione dimicarent, admonens,[3] confessor Christi fidelissimus diem clausit extremum, cum beatis Christi athletis præmia æterna possessurus.[4] Obiit autem XV°. kalendas Augusti, et sepultus est in ecclesia Dominici Sepulchri, sub loco Calvariæ; ubi, sicut ei, successoribus usque in præsentem diem ad sepulturam deputatus est locus specialis.

A.D. 1100.

Death of Godfrey.

18 July.



Advocatur Baldewinus regnaturus.

og. Wend. ii. 167.

Tandem vero, cum per tres menses regnum vacasset Jerosolimitanum, judicio principum universorum et cleri citatus est Baldewinus, frater ejus ex utroque parente, ut post fratrem suum jam defunctum et liberis carentem, sicut jus dictabat, coronaretur.

Accession of Baldwin to the throne of Jerusalem.

---

[1] *mihi*] michi, MS.

[2] *et*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[3] *admonens*] Added in marg.

[4] In the margin is drawn the shield of arms of Jerusalem, reversed, viz., or, a cross argent, with a small crown beneath.

De coronatione regis Jerosolimitani Baldeuuini, et ejusdem potestate.[1]

A.D. 1101. Coronation of Baldwin. Anno Domini M°.C°.I°. Baldewinus, comes Edessanus et frater regis G[odefridi], Jerosolimam veniens, in die Nativitatis Dominicæ per manum patriarchæ Daiberti in regem Jerosolimorum inunctus est, et regio diademate laureatus. Tancredus autem, vir nobilis et omni laude dignissimus, veteris injuriæ prætactæ a Baldeuuino jam in regem coronato sibi illatæ non immemor, sumpta ab eo recedendi licentia, reddidit ei urbes Tyberiadensem et Caypham, quas ex dono regis susceperat Godefridi; et Antiochiam veniens, a populo civitatis benigne susceptus est. (Tancred retires to Antioch.) Fuerat autem paulo ante Boamundus, princeps civitatis, apud Meletemiam,[2] Mesopotamiæ urbem, a Danisma Turco quodam captus, et nondum a vinculis liberatus. Unde et Tancredus a principibus Antiochenis sæpe vocatus, ut præesset eis, donec Boamundus a vinculis solveretur, adquievit petitionibus eorum, et tam urbis quam regionis administrationem suscepit. (Rog. Wend. ii. 168.)

De quodam facto regis Baldeuuini valde laudabili.

Humanity of Baldwin to the wife of an Arab prince. Contigit autem tempore sub eodem, regem Baldeuuinum Jordanem transire, et, ut regionum finitimarum exploraret infirmiora, in Arabiam descendere, ejusdemque provinciæ hostiliter intima perlustrare. (Rog. Wend. ii. 168.) (fol. 37 b.) Ubi de nocte subito super Turcos ruens non præmeditatos, in ipsis eorumque tabernaculis de viris multos trucidavit, mulieres quoque cum parvulis universas et omnem eorum substantiam sibi fecit in prædam. Rex autem rediens cum spoliis, feminam quandam, uxorem cujusdam principis Turcorum velocitate equi Arabiæ (Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 169.)

[1] In the margin is repeated the shield of Jerusalem, but erect, with a crown above.

[2] *Meletemiam*] Meleremiam, MS.; Melertemiam, F. Corr. from W.A. C. D.

optimi vix elapsi, invenit in partu laborantem, et A.D. 1101. mortis discrimini jam expositam. Quod videns B[aldeuuinus] piissimus, misericordia motus, fecit ilico[1] de coperturis equi sui et equorum sociorum suorum trium vel quatuor lectum parari pro tempore idoneum, mantello quoque suo, aperta clitellario mantica, ipse eam delicate involvit. Extentoque super eam tabernaculo, fugitiva enim fuit mulier paritura et inventa sub divo, assignavit ei obstetricum,[2] quas e vicino cum summa festinatione ad hoc convocavit, securam[3] custodiam, cum cibariis delicatis et utribus aqua plenis, lactis quoque et mellis copia. Sicque jussit exercitum pertransire, ipsamque post partum cum suo infante viro suo[4] indempnem præsentari. Rex igitur camelorum, mulorum, equorum, omnibus bonis onustorum præda ditatus, ad propria victor[5] rediit lætabundus. Die vero sequenti magnus ille Arabum princeps, dictæ sponsus mulieris, credens ipsam mortuam fuisse cum prole vel captam, plus de ipsius casu doluit quam de omni quod ei accideret adversitate. Erat namque mulier elegans et ortu præclara, et sponso gratissima, et talis ac tanta, quod si captivaretur, multis milibus talentorum redimenda fuisset, ad regii thesauri augmentationem.[6] Quod cum prædiceretur, noluit rex cupidorum consentire sibilis, quin eidem officium præscriptum humanitatis impenderet. Rediens igitur princeps memoratus post nostrorum recessum, in uxorem casu incidit in puerperio sic jacentem, et de adventu sponsi et de propria et prolis sospitate jam plenius gratulantem. Quæ cum rei gestæ marito seriatim ordinem retulisset, annectens cum testimonio ancillarum, etiam regem ipsum lectum mulieris inter crepundia stravisse, et ipsam gementem

[1] *ilico*] Repeated in the text, but expuncted.

[2] *obstetricum*] obstitricum, MS.

[3] *securam*] On an erasure.

[4] *viro suo*] Added to the text, on an erasure.

[5] *victor*] Added to the text.

[6] *augmentationem*] aucmentationem, MS.

A.D. 1101. in molli ac duplici clamide cum dulci consolatione involvisse, ille princeps stupens de humanitate et misericordia, quam rex pius hosti fecerat, cœpit cum maximo clamore nomen regis ad sidera junctis manibus extollere, dicens, "Etsi non valeam, reddat ei hanc vicissitudinem Deus naturæ! Et ego ei de cetero in omnibus necessitatis articulis fideliter adhærebo." Quod et effectui, prout dicetur, mancipavit.

Rex Henricus Matildam duxit, filiam regis Scotorum.

The author returns to the acts of Henry I.

Redeuntes autem ad Anglorum historiam, de regis Henrici I. gestis referamus, in omnibus ad votum, nisi quod tantummodo impetus fratris sui R[oberti] formidavit, prosperantis. Habuit autem rex Scotorum Malcolmus ex regina sua sanctissima filiam elegantissimæ speciei, et, quod pluris erat, vitæ sanctissimæ. Quæ vere regis piissimi M[alcolmi] et reginæ Deo placitæ Margaretæ filia, in omnibus studuit tam patrissare in moribus quam matrissare.[1] Erat itaque puella in sanctimonialium claustro propter honestatem educata, et, ut dicitur, velo sacro Deo dicato ac jam[2] professa. Rex autem Henricus I. ipsam propter ipsius mores et faciei venustatem sitienter adoptavit, et instanter petiit in uxorem. Quod audientes pater puellæ ac mater, non sunt ausi tam potentis viri instantiam propellere; accedentes autem ad puellam, de consensu tantæ copulæ sciscitabantur. At ipsa præcise abnegans, asserebat se ab alio amatore, scilicet Christo, præveniri, increpans patrem et matrem[3] de zelotipiæ[4] præsumptione, nec ipsos debere de corpore suo fructum mortalitatis exposcere, vel fructum posteritatis infructuosum. Et sic

He asks the daughter of the king of Scotland in marriage, who refuses.

[1] *matrissare*] On an erasure.

[2] *jam*] Interlined.

[3] *patrem et matrem*] A hand of the 16th century has here noted in the margin: "Errat hic auctor, nam parentes puellæ mortui erant, ut ipse superius in vita Rufi est testatus."

[4] *zelotipiæ*] zelotopie, MS.

pater tristis recessit, sed matri propositum puellare complacuit. Quod cum regi Henrico nunciaretur, ex repulsa cœpit flagrantius, spiritu luxuriæ stimulante,[1] exardescere in virginalium amplexuum illicitam[2] concupiscentiam. Missis igitur sollempnioribus nunciis, urgentius adolescentulam in reginam expostulans, "imperium, promissa, preces, confudit in unum."[3] Rex igitur Malcolmus, nesciente regina sua[4] uxore, quam noverat tali matrimonio nullatenus consentire, abbatissam, quæ beatæ virgini M[atildæ] præerat in cura pastorali, fascinnavit, ut cor virginis suis sermocinationibus ad consensum matrimonii prætaxati cautius inclinaret, proponens utilitatem inde proventuram, scilicet regnorum fœdera, regum mutuam dilectionem, pacis tranquillitatem, propagationis posteritatem,[5] reginalem dignitatem, honoris magnificentiam, divitiarum affluentiam, amoris desiderium, amatoris pulchritudinem. Cum autem undique virgo circumveniretur, tandem patris sui et abbatissæ et aliorum consensit persuasionibus, maledicens fructui sui[6] ventris affuturo. Archiepiscopus igitur Anselmus, qui jam vocatus advenerat, sollempnia desponsationis inter regem H[enricum] I. et reginam Matildam memoratam celebravit. Et sic, nuptiis sollempniter, ut decuit, celebratis,[7] facta est commotio magna in regno, quasi Deo irato, quoniam rex H[enricus] zelotipaverat; et sicut fratrem Robertum de regno supplantando[8] alienaverat, sic Christum de sponsa sua rex H[enricus] defraudaverat. Dux enim, ut rumor asseruit, ad hoc venit cum exercitu copioso, ut sibi[9] Angliam subjugaret. Quo cognito,[10] misit rex Henricus navalem expeditionem

A.D. 1101.

Henry sends again to urge the marriage.

She consents, but unwillingly.

Rog. Wend. ii. 169.

The marriage is celebrated.

fol. 38 *a*.

[1] *stimulante*] stumulante, MS.
[2] *illicitam*] On an erasure.
[3] Ovid. Met. iv. 471.
[4] *sua*] Interlined.
[5] *propagationis posteritatem*] So also in F.
[6] *sui*] Interlined.
[7] On the lower margin is written with a plummet, coeval with the text, "Nota nuptias illicitas."
[8] *supplantando*] At first written *supplando*, and the letters *nt* afterwards added.
[9] *sibi*] At first, *si*.
[10] *cognito*] congnito, MS.

A.D. 1101. contra fratrem hostiliter supervenientem; sed pars major exercitus se Roberto subdidit venienti. Cum ergo apud Portesmuam ante kalendas Augusti applicuisset, et rex tenderet contra eum cum exercitu copioso, principes utrimque constituti fraternum non ferentes discidium, concordiæ fœdus inter eos tali pacto statuerunt, quod rex Roberto annis singulis tria milia marcas argenti daret ab Anglia. Et quis eorum diutius viveret, heres esset alterius, si absque filio moreretur. Hoc autem cum per duodecim magnates juratum esset utrimque, dux Robertus perendinavit[1] cum fratre suo rege usque ad festum sancti Michaelis, et postea ad propria transfretando remeavit.

Duke Robert of Normandy lands at Portsmouth.

Peace made between Henry II. and Robert.

Robert returns to Normandy.

Rog. Wend. ii. 170.

Henricus jam imperat.

Eodem vero anno Henricus, Romanum adeptus imperium, annis xxxv. imperavit. Eodemque tempore rex Anglorum Henricus dedit episcopatum Herefordensem Reinelmo[2] cuidam sine electione, et contra nova[3] decreta concilii; quia jam de regno secure possidendo sibi cor erectum fuerat, ipsum publice, non curans de prædictis, investivit.

Henry V., emperor of Germany.

Reinelm made bishop of Hereford.

Rog. Wend. ii. 170.

De concilio apud Londonias habito, et de degradatione quorumdam abbatum.[4]

A.D. 1102. Anno Domini M°.C°.II°. rex Anglorum Henricus obsedit castellum Harundelle, quod erat juris Roberti de Beleasmo, contra regem illud tenentis. Sed[5] cum grave

Siege of Arundel castle.

Rog. Wend. ii. 170.

[1] *perendinavit*] perhendinavit, MS.

[2] *Reinelmo*] Reinolido, MS. and F. Corrected from W. A. C. D.

[3] *nova*] So also F.; but W. A. C. D. have *novi*, as at p. 181.

[4] This rubric has been crossed out by a late hand, but is found also in W. A. C. D. F. In A., however, it is transferred by a mark in the margin to the paragraph commencing "Eodemque anno Anselmus," and in its place Matthew Paris has himself written, "*Obsidetur castrum de Harundelle.*"

[5] *Sed*] Set, MS., *passim*.

esset ad expugnandum, castellum aliud ligneum contra illud construxit, et interim castellum de Bruges obsedit et cepit. Nec cessavit, donec redditum fuisset ei castellum memoratum de Harundel. Et, capto municipio, rex Robertum ab Anglia exilio relegavit.[1] Eodemque anno Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, concilium tenuit Londoniis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, præsente rege et suffraganeis episcopis, circa festum sancti Michaelis. In hoc concilio sacerdotes concubinarios excommunicavit, nisi eas ex tunc amoverent. Deinde regi, quæ Romæ decreta in concilio generali acceperit de investituris ecclesiarum, plano sermone descripsit, quod, videlicet, nullus ecclesiarum prælatus, episcopus, vel abbas, vel clericus, investituras alicujus ecclesiasticæ dignitatis de manu suscipiant laicorum. Unde idem archiepiscopus degradavit abbates quosdam, qui de manu laicorum, et data pecunia, abbatias suas optinuerant. Qui hii fuerunt, Ricardus Elyensis, Aldwinus Rameseiensis, Burgensis, Tavistokensis,[2] Cernelensis, et Middeltunensis, et quidam alii,[3] quorum nomina non tenemus. Et quoniam ad jussionem regis quosdam episcopos, qui institutiones a rege susceperant, consecrare noluit vel eisdem communicare, rex vehementer iratus præcepit Girardo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo,[4] ut ipsos consecraret. Sed Willelmus Giffardus, Wintoniensis electus, quem consecrare debuit, Girardi sprevit consecrationem, quare regis judicio eliminatur exul a regno. Reinelmus vero, Herefordensis antistes, eo quod a rege institutionem acceperat, ei suum reddidit præsulatum.

A.D. 1102.

Robert de Belesme is exiled.

Rog. Wend. ii. 171.

Council held in London. 29 Sept.

Degradation of certain abbats.

---

[1] *relegavit*] After this word is inserted in the MS. another rubric, "*De consilio apud Londonias, et de dissentione et perturbatione rediviva,*" but this is omitted in Wendover and the other MSS., in all of which the text is continued without any break.

[2] *Tavistokensis*] Tamstokensis, MS., but the first syllable on an erasure; and so W. A. C. D. F. Cf. Eadmer, p. 67.

[3] *quidam alii*] Added in marg.

[4] *archiepiscopo*] In the text *episcopo*, but corr. in marg.

Anselmus Romam profectus, abbates degradatos secum duxit.

A.D. 1103. Anno Domini M°.C°.III°. Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, post multas tribulationes et injurias, quas a rege perpessus fuerat, Romam perrexit, sicut inter ipsum et regem convenerat, ducens secum abbates degradatos et Willelmum, Wintoniensem electum. Quo Romam veniente, a papa Paschali susceptus est reverenter. Deinde, die pro regiis constituto negotiis, Willelmus de Warevast, clericus et procurator regis Anglorum, causam ipsius in medium protulit, ac inter alia constanter allegavit, quod nec ipse pro regni amissione investituras ecclesiarum amittere vellet, et hoc verbis minatoriis[1] cum juramento affirmavit. Ad hæc papa, "Si, quemadmodum dicis, rex tuus nec pro regni amissione donationes ecclesiarum amittere pateretur, scias præcise, coram Deo dico, quia nec pro capitis redemptione eas ei impune permitterem optinere." In hiis ergo regis negotio terminato, Anselmus archiepiscopus pro episcopis et abbatibus degradatis multa precum instantia papam rogare cœpit, ut cum illis misericorditer dispensaret, ut possent amissas recipere dignitates. Tunc sedes clementissima, quæ nulli deesse consuevit, dum modo albi aliquid vel rubei intercedat, præscriptos pontifices et abbates ad pristinas dignitates revocavit, et ad sedes proprias destinavit. Eodemque anno dux Normannorum Robertus, regis procurante cavillosa versutia, tria milia marcarum, quas rex illi singulis annis reddere debuerat, condonavit eidem.

Anselm goes to Rome with the degraded abbats.

Rog. Wend. ii. 172.

William de Warewast pleads the king's cause.

The degraded prelates are reinstated.

Duke Robert relinquishes the annual payment due to him.

---

[1] *minatoriis*] Partly on an erasure, and originally written *minacibus*, as in W. A. C. D. F. follows the correction, as usual.

Quomodo multi nobiles Jerosolimam profecti, imperatoris Constantinopolitani dolo perierunt. A.D. 1103.

Rog.Wend. ii. 173. Circa dies illos multi nobiles de finibus occidentis crucesignati, ad iter suæ peregrinationis se [1] accingentes, duces habuerunt Hugonem Magnum, comitem Viromandensem, qui nuper ab eadem peregrinatione redierat, Stephanum, Carnotensem et Blesensem [2] comitem, cum Stephano, comite Burgundensi. Hii omnes uno eodemque desiderio accensi, cum turba non modica Constantinopolim pervenerunt. Ubi ab imperatore Alexio reverenter sed dolose suscepti, invenerunt ibi comitem Tholosanum, qui, semel [3] peregrinatione incepta, perseverare et nunquam ad propria proposuerat remeare. Qui omnes, sumpta ab imperatore licentia, comitem fol. 38 *b*. Tholosanum tunc pro duce summo constituentes, transito Hellesponto, Nicæam [4] Bithiniæ urbem attigerunt. Tunc imperator Alexius, proditor nequissimus, nostrorum invidens successibus, principibus Turcorum, per quos peregrini transituri erant, crebras transmisit epistolas, exhortans attentius, ne tantum Christianorum populum libere transire in suam perniciem paterentur. Nostri autem nimis inconsulte agentes, et nil sinistrum suspicantes, divisis agminibus incedebant, vinculumque caritatis non habentes, facti sunt quasi arena [5] sine calce ad constructionem divinæ mansionis. Unde dati sunt in manus, heu! heu! insidiantium hostium, ita quod ex eis una die in ore gladii plusquam quingenta milia peremptorum, quod relatu lugubre est, ceciderunt. Rog.Wend. ii. 174. Quibus autem datum est hostium manus effugere, amissis omnibus, apud Tharsum Ciliciæ convenerunt. Et,

Many nobles, who had taken the cross, go to Constantinople.

They elect the count of Toulouse as leader, and cross the Hellespont.

Treacherous conduct of the emperor Alexius.

Great slaughter of the crusaders by the Turks.

---

[1] *se*] Interlined.

[2] *Blesensem*] The MS. reads, erroneously, *Carnotensem. Et Blesencem*, as if there were two persons.

[3] *semel*] At first written *simel*, and then altered to *simul*, and so in F. The correct reading is in W. A. C. D.

[4] *Nicaam*] Nicheam, MS.

[5] *arena*] harena, MS.

A.D. 1103. defuncto ibidem Hugone Magno, præ dolore ut creditur, in ecclesia doctoris gentium sepultoque, Antiochiam sunt profecti. Indeque Jerosolimam festinantes, Tortosam pervenerunt, urbemque obsidione vallantes, infra dies paucos ipsam optinuerunt, civibus interemptis aut servituti perpetuæ mancipatis.

Death of Hugh the Great.

Capture of Tortosa.

Rex Jerusalem tres civitates subegit.

Assur and Cæsarea are taken by king Baldwin.

Diebus autem sub eisdem, in portu Jopensi magna[1] navium Januensium classe appulsa, in Paschali sollempnitate[2] Jerosolimam ascenderunt. Horum rex Baldeuuinus fultus auxilio, Assur oppidum[3] maritimum obsedit, et illud potenter subjugavit; et, in eo custodibus relictis, Cæsaream usque pervenit. Quam cum rex effractam cum maximo labore victoriosus intrasset, interfectis civibus, spolia impretiabilia reportavit, quæ distribuit commilitonibus affluenter. Erat autem in una parte hujus civitatis templum deorum, ad quod populus causa optinendæ salutis confugerat; sed illo confracto, tanta ibi strages facta est, ut horror esset occisorum multitudinem intueri. In illo autem vas viridissimi coloris repertum est, ad modum parapsidis figuratum; quod Januenses smaragdinum reputantes, pro magna pecuniæ summa receperunt, et pro ornatu pretioso suæ illud ecclesiæ optulerunt. Adducti sunt autem coram rege civitatis procurator, qui lingua eorum Emyr dicitur, et juridicus, qui Cadmys[4] appellatur, qui sub[5] spe magnæ[6] redemptionis sunt compedibus mancipati. Rex vero constituit ibi archiepiscopum Baldewinum quendam, qui cum duce Godefrido illuc advenerat; et,

Rog. Wend. ii. 174.

Smaragdine vessel obtained by the Genoese.

Baldwin made archbishop of Cæsarea.

Rog. Wend. ii. 175.

[1] *magna*] mangna, MS.
[2] *sollempnitate*] At first written *sollempni.*
[3] *oppidum*] opidum, MS.
[4] *Cadmys*] Cadmis, W. A. C. D. More correctly, *Cadius*, in Will. Tyr., p. 785.
[5] *sub*] Interlined.
[6] *magnæ*] mangnæ, MS.

relicto ad custodiam civitatis præsidio militari, ad Ramulam festinavit. A.D. 1103.

Prœlium inopinatum et victoria Christianorum.

Rog.Wend. ii. 175. Misit eo tempore Caliphus Ægipti principem militiæ contra regem Baldewinum, cum xi[cim]. milibus equitum et xx[ti]. milibus peditum, præcipiens, ut populum inopem et mendicum a finibus terræ collectum a suis, ut dicebat, finibus propulsarent. Quos cum rex advenire cognovisset,[1] obviavit illis intrepidus cum equitibus ducentis et sexaginta, et peditibus nongentis. Et, invocato de supernis Ejus auxilio, qui æque in paucis dimicat sicut in multis, tam viriliter quam audacter irruerunt in hostes. Quibus post cruentissimum conflictum in fugam compulsis, insecuti sunt eos nostrates usque Ascalonam, stragem non modicam operantes per viii[o]. miliaria; et nocte illa victores læti sed admodum fatigati, in campestribus quieverunt. Ceciderunt autem in illo certamine ex hostibus quinque milia, et ex nostris equites septuaginta; peditum vero certus numerus hinc vel inde non habetur. Principibus interim occidentis, de quibus supra retulimus, Jerosolimam festinantibus, rex Jerusalem obviam eis adveniens, in sanctam civitatem cum gaudio retroduxit.

Victory obtained over the Caliph of Egypt.

Rex Henricus I. terras Roberti fratris sui depopulatur.

Rog.Wend. ii. 175. Anno Domini M[o].C[o]IIII[o]. surrexit inter regem Henricum et Robertum, Normannorum ducem, fratres, causis intercedentibus,[2] discordia. Unde rex, missa in Normanniam expeditione militari, a quibusdam proditoribus ducis recepti, prædis et combustionibus non modicum dampnum rebus ducis subito intulerunt. Sed A.D. 1104.

War in Normandy between king Henry and his brother.

[1] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[2] *intercedentibus*] intercidentibus, MS.

A.D. 1104. Willelmus, comes Moretonii, causa perfidiæ nuper a rege proscriptus ab Anglia, animo perfecto, ut vir strenuus, regalibus turmis audacter bellum indixit. Sed dux Robertus fratris sui divitias metuens, castella sua et terræ infirmiora in quantum potuit, etsi occulte, communivit. Eodem anno apparuerunt circa solem iiii^or^. circuli mirabiliter picti, in meridie. Cometa quoque apparuit, mense Februarii. Anno quoque ante hunc transacto proximo, electus est [Rogerus][1] ad episcopatum Sarcsbiriensem, sed in principio hujus consecratus. Et in æstate proximi anni præteriti et in principio hujus, hominum et animalium pestifera mortalitas fuit et generalis.[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 176.

Solar circles and comet.

Roger elected bishop of Salisbury.

Mortality of men and animals.

Anselmo interdictum est, ne rediret in Angliam.

Return of archbishop Anselm forbidden by the king.

Rog. Wend. ii. 176.

Hac quoque tempore Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, a Roma rediens cum Lugduno appropinquasset, Willelmus Warevast, regis Anglorum procurator, de quo superius mentionem fecimus, interdixit ei ex parte domini sui, ne rediret in Angliam, nisi omnes patris ac fratris ipsius consuetudines se ei fideliter promitteret servaturum. Quod ille audiens admiratus est, sciens se alia conditione ab Anglia recessisse. Perveniens autem Lugdunum, resedit cum Hugone, archiepiscopo civitatis, omnibus quæ Dei sunt diligenter intendens. Rex autem Henricus, ut comperit tam papam quam archiepiscopum in sua perstare sententia, mox archiepiscopum bonis omnibus spolians, archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem, jam patrissans et fratrissans, in suum redegit dominium, qui nec silvis pepercit vel hominibus.

The king seizes the see of Canterbury into his hands.

fol. 39 *a*.

---

[1] *Rogerus*] Supplied from C. D., but there placed at the close of 1102. He was elected 13 April 1103, but not consecrated till 11 August 1107. Fasti, ii. 594.

[2] *et generalis*] Added on to the text.

De quodam Turcorum principe, qui regem Jerosolimorum curialiter liberavit. A.D. 1104.

Rog. Wend. ii. 176. Circa dies quoque istos Arabes sive Arabitæ cum Ægiptiis fines Christianorum apud Liddam, Sauronam et Ramulam ingressi, ad numerum viginti milium, prædis ibidem instabant et rapinis. Quid ut regi Jerusalem Baldewino nunciaretur, præter morem nimis inconsulte agens, non convocatis ex urbibus finitimis militaribus copiis, sed de sua præsumens virtute, vix ducentos secum habens equites contra hostes prorupit. Sed nostrorum paucitas a tanta infidelium multitudine oppressa, cæsis plurimis, in fugam est compulsa.[1] Qui autem evadere potuerunt, ad Ramulam oppidum[2] confugerunt. Ceciderunt autem ibidem uterque comes Stephanus, qui nuper advenerant,[3] et alii nobiles multi, quorum nomina, etsi non retinemus, scripta profecto sunt in libro vitæ. Rex vero, licet de oppidi[4] securitate non multum confideret, tamen, ut mortis dispendium declinaret, illud ingreditur, spem non habens aliam evadendi. Cumque de vita desperans, metueret[5] ab hostibus obsideri, ecce intempestæ noctis silentio affuit supradictus ille princeps nobilis de Arabia, cujus uxori, ut præmisimus, rex tantam exhibuerat humanitatem dum in partu laboraret; et voce suppressa hiis, qui in muro erant, siccine loquebatur, "Verba habeo," inquit, "ad regem secretiora, quæ perfero; facite,[6] ut introducar ad ipsum." Qui coram rege adductus, instruit eum ut de oppido[7] egrediatur, promittens secure quod ipsum sub tuto constituet, si sine tumultu exeat et cum paucis. Consilium enim inierant Arabes, ut testabatur, quod

Defeat of Baldwin by the Arabs.

Rog. Wend. ii. 177.

Death of the counts of Chartres and Burgundy.

Baldwin escapes from Ramla by the aid of an Arab chief.

---

[1] *compulsa*] conpulsa, MS.

[2] *oppidum*] opidum, MS.

[3] *advenerant*] advenerat, MS. and F.

[4] *oppidi*] opidi, MS.

[5] *metueret*] At first written *mutueret*.

[6] *facite*] facite, MS. and F. Cf. Will. Tyr., p. 788.

[7] *oppido*] opido, MS.

A.D. 1104.

summo diluculo castrum debeant obsidere. Tandemque egressus rex cum paucis, amicum sequens, ad montana conscendit. At vir nobilis ille ab eo digrediens, opportunum regi qui tempore congruo promisit obsequium, sic dictis facta compensavit. Rex vero duobus sociis comitatus, per medias hostium insidias Assur usque pervenit, ubi a suis gaudenter exceptus est, et sumpto cibario confortatus. Hostes autem in crastino Ramulam obsederunt, quam violenter subjugantes, fideles, qui in præsidio erant, partim neci partim perpetuæ servituti subdiderunt.

He arrives safely at Assur.

Capture of Ramla by the Arabs.

Succursus advenit tempestivus.

Hugh de St. Omer joins the king.

Rog. Wend. ii. 178.

Venit interea Hugo de Sancto Audemaro, cui rex dederat urbem Tyberiadensem, apud Assur ad regem, cum equitibus octoginta. Quorum rex fretus auxilio, assumptis secum civibus[1] Jopitis cum equitibus nonaginta, in spem bonam erectus decrevit hostibus occurrere, et injurias eis refundere cum usuris. Erant autem prope quasi ad tria miliaria. Et ecce rex cum suis, infusa de supernis virtute et divina gratia præeunte, in hostes potenter irruens, eorum agmina dissipavit, et, interfectis ex eis non paucis, ceteros compulit fugam inire. Deinde in castra hostium reversi fideles, spolia cum asinis, camelis, papilionibus, utensilibus et alimentorum copiis colligentes, per menses vii. imbelles quieti indulserunt. Eodemque tempore dominus Tancredus Appamiam, Cœlessiriæ metropolim, obsedit et cepit. Inde Laodiciam transiens, illam recepit in suam. Hiis autem urbibus ampla nimis cum oppidis et suburbanis multis territoria[2] adjacebant. Eodem etiam tempore dominus Boamundus, Antiochenorum princeps, post annos iiii^or^. suæ captionis, pretio interveniente redemptus, Antiochiam cum gaudio est reversus.

Defeat of the Arabs.

Capture of Apamea and Laodicea by Tancred.

Boamund, prince of Antioch, is ransomed.

[1] *civibus*] On an erasure.

[2] *territoria*] teritoria, MS.

Achon,[1] *quæ et Tholomaida, regi redditur Baldewino.* A.D. 1104.

Rog. Wend. ii. 178. Eodem quoque anno rex Jerusalem Baldewinus Ptholomaidam, civitatem maritimam provinciæ Fenicis, obsidione vallavit. Hæc autem urbs portum habens infra mœnia et extra, tranquillam præbere potest navigantibus receptationem ac stationem. Hæc etiam vulgariter Achon appellatur, Terræ Sanctæ porta, et portus patens et famosus. Hanc gemini fratres fundasse Ptholomæus et Achon perhibentur; quam inter se dividentes, et muris eam per girum vallantes, a Ptholomæo Ptholomaidam, et ab Achone Achon sive Acharon vocabulum indiderunt. Obsessa igitur civitate per Rog. Wend. ii. 179. terram a rege suisque principibus, et a classe Januensi navibusque rostratis, quas galeias appellant, per mare, introitum civibus et exitum auferebant. Machinis igitur circumpositis, crebris assultibus, tam a rege per terram quam a classe per oram[2] maritimam, multos ex civibus variis eventibus peremerunt. Cumque per dies xx^{ti}. continuos nostri oppugnando, illique injurias argumentose satis a se propulsando desudassent, hac conditione regi civitatem tradiderunt, ut, qui egredi vellent, cum uxoribus et liberis et rebus omnibus, liberum haberent exitum cum conductu ad ulteriora; et qui in domibus remanere eligerent, data regi singulis annis bonis conditionibus pecunia, sub illius protectione manerent securi. Hic primum per mare accedentibus ad Terram Sanctam patuit secura tranquillitas, nam civium oblationi regis prudentia obsecundavit.

Siege and capture of Acre by Baldwin.

Conditions on which the city was given given up.

[1] *Achon*] Originally *Acchon*, but the first *c* expuncted.

[2] *oram*] horam, MS.

A.D. 1104. *Avaritia et invidia nostratuum successus*[1] *enormiter nimis impedivit.*

Siege of Haran.

Annoque sub eodem Boamundus et Baldewinus comes, cum Tancredo et Jocelino, eorumque legionibus universis, Eufratem transeuntes, Carram civitatem, de qua in gestis Abrahæ legitur, obsederunt. Cives autem post multa certamina, de subventione, quam sæpe vocaverant, diffidentes, nostratibus civitatem optulerunt. Sed, stimulante invidia cum ambitione, effusa est contentio inter Boamundum et Baldeuuinum, quis eorum urbem optineret in suam; et differentes usque mane urbem oblatam occupare, donec de illa quæstione frivola plenius discuteretur, antequam dies illuscesceret tanta hostium affuit multitudo, ut nostri etiam de vita desperarent. Patriarchæ autem, qui affuerunt nostratuum, qui demulcendo animos dissidentium pacificasse desudaverant, prævalente humani generis inimico, minime valuerant hiatibus eorum satisfacere. Aurora igitur rutilante, in primo conflictu, Deo adversante et merito, nostri ignominiose terga ostendentes, castra cum sarcinis deserentes universis, fuga salutem quærebant, quam tamen non poterant invenire. Infelici igitur in semetipsis deficientes, dissipati sunt et confusi, plurimis trucidatis. Capti sunt ibi comes Edessanus[2] Baldewinus et consanguineus ejus Jocelinus, fugientibus turpiter Boamundo et Tancredo, cum duobus patriarchis, donec ad urbem Edessam illæsis[3] corporibus sed non cordibus pervenissent. Tunc vero tradita est civitas Edessana et provincia tota sub custodia domini Tancredi, donec Baldeuuinus a carcere solveretur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 179.

fol. 39 b.

Dispute between Boamund and Baldwin.

Defeat of the Christians.

Baldwin, count of Edessa, taken prisoner.

R. Wend. ii. 180.

Edessa is ruled by Tancred, in the place of Baldwin.

---

[1] *successus*] sucessus, MS.
[2] *Edessanus*] At first written *Edissanus.*
[3] *illæsis*] Interlined.

Rex Anglorum Henricus guerram movet contra fratrem suum R[obertum].

Rog. Wend. ii. 180. Anno Domini M°.C°.V°. rex Anglorum Henricus transfretavit in Normanniam, contra fratrem suum ducem certaturus. Conquisivit igitur Cadomum et Baiocum, consulis auxilio Andegavensis, cum aliis castellis multis. Et omnes fere sese regi principes Normanniæ cum populo subdiderunt, juxta illud poeticum, A.D. 1105. Henry goes to Normandy, and takes Caen and Bayeux.

"Mobile versatur semper cum principe vulgus."[1]

Probatio sanctitatis reginæ Matildis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 180. Eodemque tempore David, frater reginæ Anglorum Matildis, venit in Angliam, ut dilectam sororem suam fraterna ductus dilectione visitaret. Qui cum nocte quadam in thalamum ejus supervenisset, domum invenit leprosis plenam. Regina vero, dominarum elegantissima, in medio stans, deposito pallio suo, lintheo se præcinxit, et, aqua pelvi imposita, cœpit lavare pedes singulorum et lintheo extergere, genibus devote flexis, et utrisque manibus strictos[2] ore et oculis amicabiliter etiam deformes deosculari. Cui frater admirans, ait, "Quid est quod agis, domina ac soror mea nobilissima? Certe, si rex sciret ista, nunquam dignaretur os tuum leprosorum pedum sanie pollutum regiis labiis deosculari." At illa subridens respondit, "Pedes regis æterni quis nescit labiis regis morituri esse præferandas? In paupere Illi ministro, qui ait, 'Quod uni ex meis minimis fecisti, mihi profecto contulisti.'[3] Exemplo mei, frater carissime,[4] disce similia operari, ut mecum præmia recipere merearis." Quod cum frater corrugans nares præcise renuisset, ipsa devotius usque ad consummationem cœptis insistebat. Humility of queen Matilda.

[1] Founded on Ovid. Trist. ix. 13.
[2] *strictos*] constrictos, W. A. C. D.
[3] Matth. xxv. 40.
[4] *carissime*] karissime, MS.

A.D. 1105.

Rediit[1] *rex in Angliam.*

The king returns to England.

Eodemque anno rex Henricus, dispositis in Normannia rebus necessariis, ad Angliam post multa fratri illata dampna remeando transfretavit, ut, multiplicatis viribus et thesauris coacervatis, fortior ac formidabilior resurgeret[2] in rebelles. Rog. Wend. ii. 181.

Rex Henricus fratrem suum Robertum, et Willelmum, comitem Moretonii,[3] *et multos alios*[4] *sub ficta pace suscepit.*

A.D. 1106.

Interview of duke Robert with his brother.

Anno Domini M°.C°.VI°. dux Normannorum sentiens se minime posse contendere a pari contra regem fratrem suum,[5] venit sub pace petita in Angliam in secreto, cum humilitate. Et apud Norhamtonam accedens ad regem, reverenter, ut apparuit, receptus est, sed non, ut decuit, vultu tam sereno et more fraterno, aut corde sincero. Dux itaque primo amicabiliter postulavit, ut sibi ablata necnon et retenta fraterna restitueret caritate, ipsumque regem in sermonis calculo, levitatis et infidelitatis graviter redarguit; unde regem non mediocriter exasperavit. Et sic ab invicem cum minaci murmure recesserunt, nec consensit Deus[6] eorum concordiæ. Dux igitur iratus valde in Normanniam, rege averso ac dissimulante, remeavit. Rex siquidem sentiens conscientiam suam, ut optentu regni et aliis multis[7] primogenito fratri suo illatis injuriis, cauteriatam, insurgentium impetus et præcipue Anglorum cœpit vehementer formidare,[8] præsertim cum leges optimas et consuetudines, quas per cartam suam et promissiones certissimas pollicitus erat, tepide observasset, immo po- Rog. Wend. ii. 181.

---

[1] *Rediit*] Redit, MS.

[2] *resurgeret*] At first written *resurget*.

[3] *Meretonii*, MS.

[4] *alios*] Written at first *alios cepit*, but *cepit* underscored to be omitted.

[5] *suum*] Added in marg.

[6] *Deus*] Added in marg.

[7] *multis*] On an erasure.

[8] *formidare*] Added in marg.

tius enormiter infirmasset.[1] Plus igitur homines timens, scilicet[2] magnates Angliæ, quam Deum,[3] Londoniis ob hoc convocatos talibus sermocinationibus super favum et oleum mellitis et mollitis circumvenit, "Amici et fideles mei indigenæ ac naturales, nostis, veraci fama referente, qualiter frater meus R[obertus], Normannorum dux, per Deum vocatus fuerat ad regnum Jerosolimitanum feliciter gubernandum, et quam frontose illud refutaverit, merito propterea a Deo reprobandus. Nostis etiam in multis aliis superbiam et ferocitatem illius, quia vir bellicosus pacisque impatiens est, vosque quasi contemptibiles, et quos desides vocat et glutones, conculcare desiderat. Ego vero rex humilis et pacificus vos in pace et antiquis libertatibus vestris, prout crebrius jurando promisi, gestio confovere; et siquid omissum est, supplebo[4] libentius. Vos igitur Angli, si constanter stetis mecum, neque suorum Normannorum neque Francorum, quibus a multo tempore confœderatus est, minas ampulosas aliqualiter[5] pertimesco. Iterato igitur sancio[6] omnes leges sancti Edwardi ubique in regno meo inviolabiliter observari." Talibus igitur promissis, quæ tamen in fine impudenter violavit, omnium nobilium Angliæ, in quibus robur regni credebat consistere, sibi enervando inclinavit, ut pro eo[7] contra quemlibet usque ad capitis expositionem infatigabiliter dimicarent.

A.D. 1106.

Henry addresses his nobles.

Blanda pro-sermocinatio et promissio Anglis facta.

fol. 40 *a.*

Insequitur rex H[enricus] I. fratrem suum R[obertum] in Normanniam.

R. Wend. ii. 181.

Rex igitur, pacificato populo et bene sibi confœderato, trahens secum infinitum populum, insecutus est fratrem suum Robertum ultra mare hostiliter usque Tenher-

The king goes to Normandy, and defeats

---

[1] *infirmasset*] imfirmasset, MS.
[2] *timens scilicet*] Partly on an erasure.
[3] *quam Deum*] Added in marg.
[4] *supplebo*] suplebo, MS.
[5] *aliqualiter*] On an erasure.
[6] *sancio*] sanccio, MS.
[7] *eo*] Interlined.

A.D. 1106. chenbrai. Habuit autem rex secum omne robur Angliæ, Andegaviæ et Britanniæ, et multos de ducatu Normanniæ nobiles et potentes, ut fratrem suum potentius debellaret. Fautores autem ducis, cum adventum regis cognovissent,[1] in quoddam castellum munitissimum sese receperunt. Duce vero declinante, milites ipsius obsidionem regis imperterriti[2] expectarunt, sese viriliter defendentes. Venit itaque dux R[obertus], et cum eo Robertus de Beleasmo et consul Moretonii[3] et alii fautores ejus, ut obsidionem solverent inchoatam; et, buccinis perstrepentibus, cum paucis multos audacter invasit. Erat enim expertus in Jerosolimitanis congressionibus, unde regales aggressus acies, fortiter eas repulit[4] et horrende. Willelmus nihilominus, comes Moretonii,[5] aciem Anglorum de loco in locum perturbans promovit, et fere in fugam compulit ignominiosam. Sed rex Henricus obviam veniens fugitivis, cum suis quas sibi reservavit Anglorum, tam peditibus quam equestribus aciebus, omnes ad pugnam[6] animavit et exemplo solidavit. Dux interim adversantium sanguine gladium choruscantem impiger inebriavit. Tandem acies equestris Britonum in aciem ducis ex adverso irruens, eam potenter dissipavit; unde mole magnitudinis oppressa, gens ducis dissoluta est et contrita. Ceciderunt autem utrobique in illo conflictu cruentissimo multi nobiles et præclari, nec est visum tam dampnosum bellum nostris temporibus in partibus Cisalpinis. In hoc vero martio opere potissimum laudandus fuit ex parte regis Willelmus de Albeneto, qui quasi leo vulneratus gladio cruentato discurrens, belli negotium consummavit. Capti sunt itaque ibidem dux Normannorum Robertus fortissimus, et consul Moretonii Willelmus; Robertus vero de Beleasmo fuga sibi consuluit, cum

Robert at Tenchebrai.

¶ *Bellum cruentissimum inter fratres Henricum regem et R[obertum].*

Rog. Wend. ii. 182.

Bravery of William de Albeni.

Robert and the count of Mortain taken prisoners.

[1] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.
[2] *imperterriti*] imperteriti, MS.
[3] *Moretonii*] Meretonii, MS.
[4] *repulit*] reppulit, MS.
[5] *Moretonii*] Merotonii, MS.
[6] *pugnam*] pungnam, MS.

complices captos respexit et compedibus mancipandos, viii°. kalendas Maii.[1] A.D. 1106. 24 April.

Reprobatio.

Rog. Wend. ii. 182. In hoc vero casu reddidit Deus vicem Roberto, quem cum in actibus Jerosolimitanis reddidisset gloriosum, tum[2] oblatum sibi respuit regnum Jerusalem contra infideles defendendum, magis eligens quieti, immo potius desidiæ, indulgere, quam Regi regum in Terra Sancta strenue militare. Reproof of duke Robert.

Signum terribile. Signum terribilius.

Rog. Wend. ii. 182. In hujus rei signum eodem anno cometa apparuerat, a sole distans quasi cubito uno, ab hora tertia usque ad horam nonam, radium ex se longum emittens. Visæ sunt etiam in Cœna Domini lunæ binæ et plenæ, una in oriente, et altera in occidente. Prognostics seen in the heavens.

Dictum patris prænosticum.[3]

Sicque impletum est, quod rex Willelmus I. Henrico filio suo moriens dixit. Nam cum Roberto Normanniam et Willelmo II. Angliam legaverat, cum lacrimis patri dixit Henricus, "Et mihi, pater, quid tribuis?" Cui pater, "Quinque milia libras argenti, absque supellectili et jocalibus pretiosis, tibi do, fili mi, cum paterna benedictione, quam tamen Roberto fratri tuo, licet primogenito, denegavi,[4] qui quandoque regi Francorum contra me confœderatus est." Ad hæc Henricus, "Quid Prophetical speech of William I. to his son Henry.

---

[1] This date is an addition by Matthew Paris, and is erroneous, since all the older authorities agree that the battle was fought on the vigil of St. Michael, 28th September. See Sax. Chron., p. 368; Will. Malm. i. 625.

[2] *tum*] Added in marg.

[3] *prænosticum*] So also in p. 164.

[4] *denegavi*] Added on to the text.

A.D. 1106. faciam de thesauro, si locum habitationis, quo illum exponam, non habuero?" Cui pater, "Æquanimis esto, fili, et confortare in Domino; pacifice sustine, ut fratres tui majores te præcedant. Tu autem alter Jacob, benedictione mea munitus, tempore opportuno[1] honorem totum quem adquisivi possidebis feliciter, et fratres tuos, immo omnes antecessores patres tuos, gloria, divitiis et honore superabis."

Ordo Saresbiriensis.

Order of canons founded at Salisbury.

Hoc quoque anno canonicorum Saresbiriensium Ordo[2] constitutus est.

Paci et securitati rex datus, addidit fratrem suum carceri artiori.[3]

Henry returns to England, and commits duke Robert to prison.

Rex autem Henricus victoria, ut prælibatum est, potitus, lætus in Angliam remeavit, et fratrem suum Robertum omni spoliatum honore in castro de Devisis,[4] deputata ei tutissima custodia, sub libero carcere jussit reservari. Cujus custodiæ xii. viros probatissimos deputavit, ut sex quiescentibus, alii sex circa eum diligenter excubarent. Ipse tamen dux, sanguine regio ebulliente, in verba prorupit ampulosa et comminacia,[5] quamvis carceri mancipatus. Alios autem captivos misit alibi custodiendos.

Pacificatur regi Anselmus.

A.D. 1107. Archbishop An-

Anno Domini M°.C°.VII°., cum rex Henricus, deletis vel subactis hostibus, in[6] Angliam venerat, quieti Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 183.

[1] *opportuno*] oportuno, MS.

[2] *Ordo*] On an erasure.

[3] *carceri artiori*] Omitted in F., and these words seem rather to apply to the following year. See ed. Wats., p. 63.

[4] *Devisis*] Written at first *Derisi*.

[5] *comminacia*] At first written *minacia*.

[6] *in*] cum in, MS.

A.D. 1107.

selm is reconciled to the king.

William, count of Mortain, and others are imprisoned.

indulserat[1] ac lætitiæ. Duxerat autem secum archiepiscopum Anselmum, quem apud Beccum invenerat, ut post victoriam cum rege pacificatus plenius gratularetur; qui, serenato rege, pristinam recepit cum jacturarum restitutionibus dignitatem. Rex autem commotus valde contra Willelmum, Moretonii consulem, sancivit[2] ipsum, sicut et fratrem suum R[obertum] et fol. 40 b. quosdam alios nobiles, perpetuis carceribus mancipandos. Floruit igitur rex Henricus in omnipotentatu[3] regni sui, fortuna sibi in omnibus arridente.

The king proves ungrateful to God.

Dedit autem Deus, rex[4] regum omnipotens, regi Henrico I. tria munera, sapientiam, victoriam, et divitias, quibus prosperans omnes antecessores suos jam, juxta paternum vaticinium, superavit. Sed in hiis omnibus factus est Deo ingratissimus, et suis fidelibus[5] promissionis suæ transgressor manifestus, dilationes quærens cum cavillationibus; unde nobiles regni, quos deludebat, Deo conquesti sunt Domino ultionum. Subjugatis enim omnibus inimicis, securus erat, nec aliquem, ut primitus, formidabat, præter papam, et hoc non propter spiritualem sed temporalem auctoritatem et potestatem.

Libertas ecclesiæ restituitur.

Council held at London.

Rog. Wend. ii. 183. Eodem quoque anno factus est conventus episcoporum et abbatum pariter et magnatum Londoniis, in palatio regis, præsidente archiepiscopo Anselmo. Cui, juxta promissionem suam factam ei apud Beccum,[6] annuit rex Henricus et statuit,[7] ut ab eo tempore in reliquum, nunquam per donationem baculi pastoralis vel anuli quisquam de episcopatu vel abbatia per

Concessions made relative to investitures.

---

[1] *indulserat*] We ought, perhaps, to read *indulsit*.

[2] *sancivit*] sanxcivit, MS.

[3] *omnipotentatu*] At first written *omnipotentu*.

[4] *rex*] Interlined.

[5] *fidelibus*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[6] *Beccum*] The last letter is on an erasure.

[7] A hand of the 15th century has written in the margin, "Nota, de confirmatione libertatum ecclesiæ."

A.D. 1107. regem vel quamlibet laicam manum investiretur in Anglia; concedente archiepiscopo, ut nullus ad prælationem electus, pro homagio, quod regi faceret, consecratione suscepti honoris privaretur.

Consecrantur quidam episcopi.

Consecration of several bishops.

Annoque sub eodem consecrati sunt episcopi, Willelmus Wintoniensis, Rogerus Saresbiriensis, Reinelmus Herefordensis, Willelmus Exoniensis, et Urbanus Clamorganensis, ab Anselmo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, apud Doroberniam, die Dominica, iii°. idus Augusti. Rog. Wend. ii. 183.

11 Aug.

Obiit M[auricius] episcopus, fundator ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli.

Death of Maurice, bishop of London. Foundation of Christchurch at London.

Obiit autem eodem tempore Mauricius, episcopus Londoniensis, ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli fundator magnificus. Normannus quoque prior fundavit ecclesiam Christi, Sanctæ scilicet Trinitatis,[1] Londoniis, ibique constituit canonicos regulares. Rog. Wend. ii. 184.

Death of Edgar, king of Scots, Alexander succeeds.

Edgarus, rex Scotorum obiit, succedit Alexander.[2]

Eodemque anno obiit rex Scotorum Edgarus, cui successit frater ejus Alexander. Rog. Wend. ii. 184.

A.D. 1108.

Girardo Eboracensi successit Thomas.

Death of Girard, archbishop of York. Thomas, the king's

Anno Domini M°.C°.VIII°., defuncto Girardo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Thomas, regis capellanus, ad illius ecclesiæ eligitur præsulatum; sed continuo, facta electione, Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, inter- Rog. Wend. ii. 184.

---

[1] *Sanctæ . . . Trinitatis*] Added in marg., but inserted in the text of F.

[2] This heading has been omitted in the text, but is written (as in some other instances) on the edge of the lower margin, as a memorandum for the rubric.

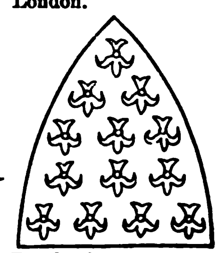
dixit ei, ne curam pastoralem in aliquo exerceret,[1] donec sibi et ecclesiæ Cantuariensi subjectionem faceret et obedientiam canonicam, quam sibi fecerant ejus prædecessores, Thomas et Girardus, ex consuetudine debita et antiqua. "Quod si hoc," inquit, "facere nolueris, omnibus Britanniæ episcopis sub anathemate interdicimus, ne ullus eorum tibi manus ad promotionem imponat. Nec, si ab exteris promotus fueris, pro episcopo te suscipiant aliqui,[2] vel pro episcopo tibi communicando te habeant."

A.D. 1108. chaplain, elected, but is refused consecration.

Consecratur R[icardus] in Londoniensem episcopum.

Consecration of Richard de Beumais, bishop of London.

Rog. Wend. ii. 184. Eodemque anno Ricardus de Beumais, Londoniensis electus, ab Anselmo consecratur apud Pagaham.



Obiit rex Francorum.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 184. Eodemque tempore regi Francorum Philippo successit Lodouuicus.

Death of Philip, k. of France; Louis [VI.] succeeds.

De morte Anselmi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.[4]

A.D. 1109. Death of Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury.

Rog. Wend. ii. 184. Anno Domini M°.C°.IX°. Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Christi philosophus doctorque eximius, in Quadragesima diem clausit extremum, post multa quæ sustinuit pro ecclesiæ libertate certamina; cujus vitam et mortem laudabilem crebra miracula protestantur.

---

[1] *exerceret*] excerceret, MS.

[2] *aliqui*] Added on to the text.

[3] In the margin is drawn Philip's shield of arms, reversed, viz., azure semée of fleurs-de-lis, or, 4, 3, 3, 2, 1, with a crown beneath, also reversed.

[4] In the margin is drawn a mitre reversed.

A.D. 1109. *Postulatur ab imperatore H[enrico] Matildis, filia regis Henrici.*

Marriage of the king's daughter Matilda to the emperor.

Eodemque anno missi sunt nuncii sollempnes ab Romanorum imperatore Henrico in Angliam, filiam regis Matildem in domini sui conjugium postulantes. Tenuit itaque rex apud Westmonasterium in Pentecoste curiam suam, qua nunquam tenuerat splendidiorem; et sacramenta de conjugio filiæ suæ ab imperatoris legatis petiit et accepit. Data est igitur filia regis imperatori sicut decuit, ut breviter dicatur; et rex cepit ab unaquaque hida terræ totius Angliæ iii. solidos, sicut mos erat regibus Anglorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 185.

Hidage taken on that account.

Consecratur Thomas in archiepiscopum Eboracensem.

Consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York.

Eodem anno convenerunt, rege jubente, Londoniis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli, Ricardus Londoniensis, Willelmus Wintoniensis, Radulfus Rofensis, Herbertus Norwicensis, Radulfus Cicestrensis, Ranulphus Dunelmensis, et Herveus Bangornensis episcopi, v°. kalendas Julii, die Dominica, ad consecrationem Thomæ, Eboracensis electi. Ubi, ecclesiæ Cantuariensi et episcopis ejus catholice ordinatis facta canonica obedientia, consecratus est a Ricardo, Londoniensi episcopo.

Rog. Wend. ii. 185.

27 June.

Elyensis abbatia in episcopalem sedem transfertur.

Foundation of the see of Ely, and Hervey appointed bishop.

Anno quoque sub eodem rex Henricus Helyensem abbatiam ad sedem transtulit episcopalem, et Herveum, quandoque Bangornensem,[1] ibidem episcopum fecit ordinari. Nam, defuncto Ricardo, qui ultimus abbas fuit in insula, et comitatu de Cantebrugge episcopo Lincolniensi subtracto, huic novo pontifici lege diocesana subjicitur[2] comitatus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 185.

Rog. Wend. ii. 186.

---

[1] *quandoque Bangornensem*] Added in marg., but is in text of F.

[2] *subjicitur*] subicitur, MS.

Boamundus terram Alexii, imperatoris Constantinopolitani, depopulatur. A.D. 1109.

Rog. Wend. ii. 186. Circa hos denique dies Boamundus, Antiochenorum princeps, memor injuriarum quas Alexius imperator constanter, vir maliciosus et nequam, peregrinis transmeantibus sine intermissione irrogaverat, communem volens ulcisci querimoniam, equitum v. milia et peditum xl^a. milia virorum fortium congregavit;[1] et terram dicti imperatoris hostiliter ingressus, universas pæne maritimas urbes in direptionem dedit, omnemque Epyrum depopulatus est, tam Primam quam Secundam. Et tandem Durachium obsidens, Epyri Primæ metropolim, regionem undique incendiis consumpsit et rapinis. Quod audiens imperator, cum ingenti militia in succursum venit; sed, intervenientibus amicis, imperator fol. 41 *a*. fœdus iniit cum eo, interpositis juramentis, quod ultra Christi fidelibus in orientem per ditionem suam transire volentibus sine fraude consilium ad iter peragendum et auxilium ministraret; formidolosus enim extitit ipse Alexius, ut quem conscientia propria sauciavit. Et sic, fœdere confirmato, idem Boamundus in Apuliam descendit, familiaribus negotiis evocatus. Sequente vero æstate, dum Antiochiam redire disponeret cum copiis militaribus undique collectis, valida ægritudine correptus, in fata concessit;[2] relicto filio suo nomine Boamundo, Rog. Wend. ii. 187. quem ex Constantia genuerat, filia regis Francorum Philippi, nuper defuncti. Incepit vero tunc regnare, pacificata tota Francia, vir illustris, ut prætactum est,[3] Lodowicus, qui xx^{ti}.viiij^o. annis regnavit.

Boamund leads a hostile force into Epirus.

Siege of Durazzo.

Treaty with the emperor Alexius.

¶ *Moritur Boamundus.*

Louis VI. reigns in France.

---

[1] *congregavit*] congragavit, MS.

[2] He died in February 1111. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 441.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

A.D. 1109.

Tripolis subjugatur.

Baldwin, count of Edessa, and Jocelin escape from the Turks.

Per idem tempus Baldeuuinus, comes Edessanus, et Jocelinus consanguineus ejus, datis pro redemptione sua obsidibus, a Turcorum vinculis liberantur; et post dies paucos, iidem obsides, custodibus interfectis, ad propria libere sunt reversi. Eodemque anno Bertrannus, comes Tholosanus, comitis Reimundi filius, apud urbem Tripolitanam cum classe Januensium applicans, Biblium, urbem maritimam Fœnicis regionis, obsedit et cepit, et Christianæ restituit unitati. Deinde post dies paucos, rex Jerusalem Baldewinus, auxilio ejusdem comitis et classis prædictæ, Tripolim subjugavit, et eam comiti Bertranno donavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 187.

Capture of Byblus.

Tripoli is subdued.

Robertus, quandoque dux Normannorum, propter suam[1] contumaciam pejus tractatur, tandem excæcatur.

Robert, duke of Normandy, is released from prison.

Tempore quoque sub eodem,[2] multiplicatis intercessoribus viris gravibus, qui dicebant probrosum esse per totum mundum regi et regno Angliæ,[3] ut frater fratrem teneret incarceratum, liberatus est a carcere Robertus, quandoque dux Normannorum, ita tamen ut Angliam perpetuo abjuraret et Normanniam; et concessæ sunt ei induciæ xl^a. dierum et unius ascensus maris et refluxus. Quæ lex omnibus Angliam abjurantibus usque in hodiernum diem custoditur. Robertus autem solutus, immemor illius salubris consilii, "Humiliamini sub manu potentioris,"[4] elatus est in superbiam, et in minas resolutus, abusus est misericordia vix illi impetrata.

[1] *suam*] Repeated after *contumaciam*, but struck out by a recent hand.

[2] In A. C. D. and Edd. this event is placed under 1107, and related very briefly.

[3] *Angliæ*] Repeated, but expuncted.

[4] From 1 Ep. Pet. v. 6, which reads *potenti* with A. C. D.

Infra igitur eosdem xl^a^. dies memoratos, comitem Cestriæ et alios suæ factionis complices adiit clandestinus,[1] quasi valedicturus, cujus occulta intentio fuit, ut, in regno seditione mota, cum exercitu collecto regem infestaret, et tandem a regni fastigio præcipitaret. Quod cum regi nunciaretur, vocavit ipsum ad colloquium. Qui, si sponte nollet venire, cogeretur. Cum autem vidisset Robertus regios nuncios in manu valida venientes, timuit sibi, ne propositum regi suum panderetur, et palefridi quem insidebat non parcens lateribus, ilico fugit; quem raptim nuncii insequebantur, donec, immerso Roberti palefrido in quodam luto bituminoso, ipse R[obertus] est[2] captus, et regi præsentatus. Cum autem rex de Roberti proposito et fuga plenius certificaretur, jussit eum iterato irremediabiliter et sine spe redemptionis perpetuo carceri mancipari, et, cum nec humiliaretur, oculorum luce privari. Verumtamen jussit eum omnibus diebus vitæ suæ epulis refici cotidie deliciosis, et vestibus regalibus, quas robas regis dicimus, redimiri, et sex militum custodia et famulatu diligenti horis omnibus excubari.

A.D. 1109. He attempts to raise a rebellion.

Capitur dux Normannorum Robertus, fugiens a facie fratris regis.

Is again imprisoned, and deprived of sight.

Rex Henricus quosdam inimicos suos exilio dampnavit.[3]

Anno Domini M°.C°X°. rex Anglorum Henricus gravem contra comitem[4] Cestriæ movit quæstionem, arguens ipsum de crimine læsæ majestatis; imponens[5] ei, quod regnum perturbare proposuit, et, rege deposito, Robertum, quandoque Normannorum ducem, subrogare. Hæc autem omnia, comite constanter inficiante et se volente per duellum purgare, licet, ut inquit, Robertus ad hæc eum sæpe instigasset, rex aliquantulum mitigatus est,

A.D. 1110. The earl of Chester accused of treason.

---

[1] *clandestinus*] clamdestinus, MS.
[2] *est*] Added on to the text.
[3] *dampnavit*] dapnavit, MS.
[4] *comitem*] Added in marg.
[5] *imponens*] Written at first *imponensque*, but *que* erased.

A.D. 1110. et sic, intermeantibus amicis, in gratiam regis comes sed vix est receptus. Rex autem exheredavit Philippum de Brausia, Willelmum Malet, et Willelmum [Binard],[1] et alios proditores suos et quosdam suspectos; Elyam quoque, Cenomanniæ comitem, qui comitatum illum de rege tenebat, vita privavit. Quod audiens comes Andegavensis Gaufridus, suscepit filiam ejusdem Elyæ cum comitatu illo, et tenuit illud contra regem Henricum.

Philip de Brause and others are disinherited.

Rog. Wend. ii. 187.

Elyas, count of Maine, put to death.

Mirabile de luna.

Marvellous appearance of the moon.

Anno quoque sub eodem luna facta est velut extincta et luminis expers.

De translatione Beati Oswini, regis et martiris.

Translation of S. Oswin's relics to Tynemouth.

Eodem quoque anno Ricardus, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani abbas venerabilis, pretiosas beatissimi regis et martiris Oswini reliquias, cum magno cleri et populi tripudio, in novam Dei Genitricis Mariæ transtulit basilicam apud Thinemuam, ab antiquo ejusdem Dei Genitricis oratorio, in quo corpus ejusdem sanctissimi regis et martiris fuerat prius inventum, et in novo feretro collocatum. Facta est autem hæc translatio in die passionis ejusdem[2] martiris, x°. kalendas Septembris.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 187.

Rog. Wend. ii. 188.

23 Aug.

De Sancto Godrico, heremiticam vitam inchoante.

St. Godric, the hermit.

Eodem etiam anno sanctus Godricus apud Finchale, non procul a Dunelmo, vitam heremiticam inchoavit. Quam per annos lx. laudabiliter continuans, carne tandem solutus, cœli conscendit palatium, æternis deliciis cum sanctis ibidem fruiturus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 188.

fol. 41 *b*.

---

[1] *Binard*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *ejusdem*] In the text *ejus*, but corr. in marg.

[3] *Septembris*] After this word is added, in A. C. D., "secundum rotulum Cancellarii."

Cometa. A.D. 1110.

Rog. Wend. ii. 188. Hoc etiam anno cometa apparuit more insolito, nam cum ab oriente surgens in firmamentum ascendisset, non progredi sed regredi videbatur. Unusual appearance of a comet.

Berithum adquiritur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 188. Eodem vero tempore rex Jerusalem Baldewinus Beritum, civitatem Fœnicis[1] regionis maritimam, sibi potenter subjugavit, et, ibidem constituto episcopo, eam Christianæ restituit unitati. Est autem sita inter Biblium et Sydonem civitates. Ibique legitur mansisse maximus medicorum naturæ indagator Ypocras, et pineti silvam vicinam ad emendandum aera plantasse. Capture of Beirout by king Baldwin.

Rex Henricus terram comitis Andegavensis depopulatur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 188. Anno Domini M°.C°.XI°., rex Anglorum Henricus pergens in Normanniam contra comitem Andegavensem, qui Cenomanniam eo tenebat invito, werræ leges, quæ sunt exleges, contra eum ferro simul et incendio constanter exercuit, ipsumque et terram ejus totam gravi depopulatione contrivit. A.D. 1111. Henry makes war on the count of Anjou.

Pestis et mortalitas.

Tunc quoque temporis mortalitas, tabes et fames fuit hominum et animalium, quam forte cometa, quæ præapparuit,[2] prænunciavit. Pestilence and mortality.

De sancta Fretheswitha.

Rog. Wend. ii. 188. Eodem quoque tempore Rogerus, Saresbiriensis episcopus, dedit locum in Oxonia, in quo corpus beatæ Foundation of the canons of

[1] *Fœnicis*] Fefiis, MS., but corr. in marg.

[2] *præapparuit*] preaparuit, MS.

A.D. 1111. St. Frideswith at Oxford. Frethesuithæ virginis requiescit, cuidam canonico nomine Wimundo; qui multos ibidem canonicos congregavit, super eos vices gerens prioris.

Dissensio orta est inter papam et imperatorem.

A.D. 1112. Contention between the pope and emperor, respecting investitures. Anno Domini M°.C°.XII°.[1] facta est contentio Romæ inter papam Paschalem et Henricum imperatorem, hac de causa. Imperator uti voluit privilegio antecessorum suorum habito annis trecentis sub Romanis pontificibus sexaginta, qui licite dederant episcopatus et abbatias per anulum et baculum pastoralem. E contra censebant Romani pontifices, scilicet, nec posse debere dari per virgam vel anulum episcopatum, vel aliquam institutionem ecclesiasticam a manu recipere laicali. Facta est autem pax inter imperatorem Henricum et papam Paschalem, ita ut episcopi deinceps et abbates institutionem accipiant ab imperatore et suis successoribus per virgam et anulum, et post[2] faciant ad episcopum, ad quem pertinuerit, canonicam obedientiam, et consecrationem accipiant assuetam. Acta vero sunt hæc ante altare apostolorum Petri et Pauli, in oculis omnium. Et sic papa corpus Christi absoluto contulit imperatori. Rog. Wend. ii. 190.

Obiit Tancredus.

Death of Tancred, and succession of Roger Fitz-Richard. Obiit autem Tancredus, vir illustris, de quo multa præscribuntur in actibus Jerosolimitanis, magnificus princeps Antiochiæ et comes Edessanus. Cui successit[3] Rogerus filius-Ricardi, vir nobilis, ea conditione, ut Rog. Wend. ii. 190.

[1] This controversy should be more correctly placed under the year 1111. See Jaffé, "Reg. Pont.," p. 501.

[2] *post*] This reading is confirmed by W. A. C. D. E. F. The Edd. of M. Paris and ed. Wend. read *prius*, which is erroneous, and contrary to the words of the bull of Paschal II. See Flor. Wig. ii. 63, and Jaffé, p. 502. The error arose from the contraction p9 in the MSS.

[3] *successit*] sucessit, MS.

quandocunque Boamundus junior Antiochiam reposceret, eam ipsi sine contradictionis repagulo sponte resignaret. A.D. 1112.

De discordia[1] *inter archiepiscopos Cantuariensem et Eboracensem.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 191.

Anno Domini M.°C°.XIII°. rex Henricus I. dedit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem Radulpho, Londoniensi[2] episcopo, et illum per anulum et pastoralem baculum investivit.[3] Assumpserat enim cornua audaciæ, tam contra ecclesiam quam contra regni sui universitatem, Roberto fratre suo et multis aliis, quos timuerat, adversariis edomitis. Unde sigillum suum primitivum, ut cartam suam totiens juratam totiensque promissam, annullaret, confregit;[4] et quod hactenus sub vulpina versutia palliaverat,[5] jam manifeste contradicens, in solio potestatis confirmatus infirmavit.[6] Obiit eodem anno Thomas, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, cui Thurstanus successit. Orta est autem inter Radulphum Cantuariensem et Thurstanum Eboracensem archiepiscopos magna dissensio, eo quod Eboracensis subjici[7] noluit Cantuariensi de more, sicut ejus antecessores facere solebant. Causa autem coram rege et domino papa ventilata est, sed non fine debito terminata.

A.D. 1113. Ralph, bishop of Rochester, translated to Canterbury. The king acts openly against the church. Death of Thomas, archbishop of York. Thurstan succeeds. Dispute between the archbishops of Canterbury and York.

Subjugata est Wallia regi Henrico.

Rog. Wend. ii. 191.

Eodemque anno rex Henricus exercitum ducens in Walliam, sibi subdidit, licet cum difficultate, Walenses, et pro arbitrio regiæ voluntatis legibus informavit.[8]

The Welsh are subdued.

---

[1] *discordia*] disordia, MS.

[2] *Londoniensi*] A mistake for *Roffensi*, copied from Wendover, and so in A. C. D. F. He is rightly named, and the date given more correctly under the year 1114.

[3] *investivit*] investitivit, MS.

[4] *confregit*] Added in marg.

[5] *palliaverat*] pallaverat, MS.

[6] *infirmavit*] imfirmavit, MS.

[7] *subjici*] subici, MS.

[8] *informavit*] imformavit, MS.

A.D. 1113.

Cometa et terræ-motus.

Comet and earthquake.

Anno quoque sub eodem, mense Maio, cometa ingens apparuit. Et post paululum terræ-motus partem urbis Mamistræ [1] prostravit, non longe ab Antiochia, cum duobus castellis, Triphaleg scilicet et Mariscum. Quod in triste auspicium evenit, ut testatur poeta Claudianus, qui de cometæ dicit apparitione, Rog. Wend. ii. 191.

"Quæ crine minaci
Nunciat aut ratibus ventos, aut urbibus hostes." [2]

Menduc, Persarum princeps, in finibus Christianorum debacchatur. [3]

Menduc, prince of Persia, invades the Christian territories.

Sub ipso quoque anno Menduc, Persarum princeps, fines Christianorum ingressus, tantam secum traxit armatorum copiam, ut nequirent sub numero comprehendi. Qui, regionibus multis transcursis, circa pontem, sub quo Jordanis effluit, castra composuit. Quod audiens rex Jerusalem Baldeuuinus, Rogerum, principem Antiochenum, in suum subsidium evocavit; sed rex temerarius, antequam ejus auxilia convenissent, ut scilicet gloriosius triumpharet, impetuose nimis et de sua virtute præsumptuose confidens, hostibus obviam cum paucis processit. Nam in insidiis, quas ei paraverant, nescienter intrusus, ex hostium multitudine repente oppressus in fugam compellitur, necessitate compulsus, in loco certaminis vexillo derelicto. Arnulphus quoque patriarcha et alii principes, qui cum illo erant, relictis castris et rebus omnibus, turpiter aufugerunt. Ceciderunt autem ex nostris [equites] [4] xxx^{ta}. et pedites mille quingenti. Turci vero scientes reliquas regni partes militia destitutas, missis de suis copiis, cœperunt in

Rog. Wend. ii. 191.

Baldwin attacks him, but is defeated.

Rog. Wend. ii. 192.

fol. 42 *a*.

Ravages of the Turks.

---

[1] *Mamistræ*] manifeste, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.
[2] De raptu Pros. v. 235.
[3] *debacchatur*] debacatur, MS.
[4] *equites*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

variis partibus universam terram[1] perlustrare, cædes passim et incendia operari, effringere suburbia, captivare colonos, in villis et oppidis[2] prædas secum et manubia contrahentes. Rex autem Baldeuuinus castellum quoddam, quod sui juris erat, fugiens ingressus, tam diu ab hostibus obsidione vallatus est, quousque eo pacto redderet illud eis, ut cum suis ad propria liber abire sineretur. A.D. 1113. Escape of Baldwin.

A.D. 1114.

Rex Henricus fecit jurari fidelitatem filio suo W[illelmo].

Oath of fealty to the king's son William.

Rog. Wend. ii. 192. Anno Domini M°.C°.XIIII°., rex Anglorum Henricus fecit omnes suæ potestatis magnates fidelitatem jurare filio suo Willelmo, quem pepererat ei Matildis regina sua. Eodemque anno, mense Decembris, cœlum repente rubens apparuit, ac si arderet, et luna eclipsim passa est. Quartoque kalendas Aprilis Tamisia exsiccata[3] est, ut posset leviter transvadari Londoniis in refluxu. Similiter et mare per xii. miliaria in plano litore se retraxit per duos dies. Rofensis episcopus Radulfus eligitur[4] in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, vi°. kalendas Maii. Eodem quoque anno diversæ tempestates mortales exterruerunt, menseque Maii cometa apparuit. Annoque sub eodem dedicata est ecclesia Cantuariæ.

Eclipse of the moon. The Thames partly dried up. Ralph, bp. of Rochester, elected abp. of Canterbury. 26 April. Tempests and comet. Dedication of the church of Canterbury.

De consecratione Radulfi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 192. Anno Domini M°.C°.XV°., consecratus est Radulfus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ab Anselmo, domini papæ legato, v°. kalendas Julii, et pallium suscepit ab eodem.[5]

A.D. 1115. Consecration of prelates. 27 June.

---

[1] *terram*] partem, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[2] *oppidis*] opidis, MS.

[3] *exsiccata*] exiccata, MS.

[4] *eligitur*] In the margin is added, *vel postulatur*.

[5] *suscepit ab eodem*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1115. Et eodem die idem archiepiscopus[1] Theophilum[2] Wigorniensem et Bernardum Menevensem antistites consecravit.

Thurstan, archbishop of York, refuses to make profession to the archbishop of Canterbury.

Deinde post dies paucos, cum Turstanus, Eboracensis electus, ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi moneretur, ut more solito benedictionem ab eo acciperet, et sibi obedientiam[3] faceret, respondit, se benedictionem ab ipso suscepturum libenter, sed professionem, quam exigebat, se nullo modo facturum. Quod audiens rex Henricus, protestatus est manifeste, quod nisi ecclesiæ Cantuariensi, juxta morem antecessorum suorum, faceret quod debebat, ipsum Eboracensi episcopatu cum benedictione penitus cariturum. Sicque ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi interposita appellatione, ne ab alio quam a se consecrationem acciperet, ab invicem recesserunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 193.

De dedicatione ecclesiæ Sancti Albani.

A.D. 1116. Dedication of the church of St. Alban's. 28 Dec.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XVI°., in contermino scilicet præteriti et anni subsequentis, quia die Innocentium, rex Henricus cum regina sua et multis magnatibus et prælatis interfuit dedicationi ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, quam dedicavit archiepiscopus Rothomagensis Gaufridus; sed, cum præ magnitudine ecclesiæ ante consummationem sollempnis officii fatigaretur, subiit onus episcopus Lincolniensis, ab abbate postulatus.[4] Missam tamen non celebravit, neque sermonem fecit. Hæc autem sollempnitas consummata[5] fuit sub abbate Ricardo; cui, inquam, solempnitati[6] assistebant Londoniensis episcopus Ricardus, Saresbiriensis Rogerus, Dunelmensis Ranulfus,[7]

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 193.

[1] *idem archiepiscopus*] At first, *archiepiscopus idem*, but marked for transposition.

[2] *Theophilum*] So E. F., Edd., and ed. Wend., but *Theophum*, W. A. C. D. His real name appears to have been *Theoulfus*. See Hardy's note in Fasti, iii. 49.

[3] *obedientiam*] ebedienciam, MS.

[4] *ab abbate postulatus*] On an erasure. In the lower margin is written, *ab abbate requisitus*, as in W. A. C.D.

[5] *consummata*] consupmata, MS.

[6] *solempnitate*] solepnitate, MS.

[7] *Ranulfus*] Rogerus, MS. Om. F.

[cum][1] multis quoque abbatibus, prioribus et ecclesiæ prælatis, ipso abbate omnibus eodem die necessaria procurante.[2] Et rex Henricus dedit ecclesiæ præfatæ Bissopescote, in dotem perpetuam, et carta sua sollempniter confirmavit. A.D. 1116. Bishopscote given to the abbey.

Discordia mota est inter reges Francorum et Anglorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 194. Eodem anno surrexit discordia inter reges Anglorum et Francorum, hac de causa. Theobaldus, comes Blesencis, nepos Henrici regis, contra regem Francorum arma promoverat; in cujus auxilium rex Henricus militiam suam [misit],[3] et regem Lodowicum non mediocriter afflixit. Turbatus ergo rex Francorum, convocavit in suum auxilium comites Andegavensem et Flandrensem, qui pariter juraverunt se regi Henrico Normanniam ablaturos, et eam Willelmo, filio ducis Roberti, fratris Henrici regis, collaturos, cui justius competere videbatur. Rex autem Anglorum Henricus, ut vir sapiens et circumspectus, ascivit in suum præsidium comitem Britanniæ et Theobaldum prædictum, cum Anglis, Normannis et Britannis; et sic adventantes, tutus minas expectabat et adventum adversariorum. Rex vero Francorum cum præfatis procuratoribus et exercitu copioso Normanniam ingressus, cum in ea vix pernoctasset, regis Anglorum formidans adventum et proditorum suorum muscipulas, imbellis remeavit. Eodemque anno, pro necessitate regia, fuit Anglia variis exactionibus depressa.[4] Quarrel between the kings of England and France. The king of France invades Normandy. Taxes imposed in England.

De commotione elementorum.

A.D. 1117.

Rog. Wend. ii. 194. Anno Domini M°.C°.XVII°., tonitrua, grandines et ventorum impetus dampnosissimi, et, in Longobardia et Tempests and earthquakes.

---

[1] *cum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *procurante*] Partly on an erasure.

[3] *misit*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[4] *Eodemque . . . depressa*] Omitted in F.

A.D. 1117. tractibus orientalibus, terræ-motus, ecclesias, turres, mœnia, ædificia, arbores et homines contriverunt. Luna quoque facta est quasi sanguinea, iii°. idus Septembris. (11 Sept.) Anno etiam sub eodem Robertus prior cum paucis fratribus Meretonam primo inhabitavit, et regulam sancti Augustini inviolabiliter cœpit ibidem custodire. (The priory of Merton first inhabited.) Anno quoque sub eodem venerabilis vir vitæ, et in sacris scripturis ad plenum eruditus et doctor egregius, Yvo, Carnotensis antistes, diem clausit extremum. (Death of Ivo, bishop of Chartres.)

A.D. 1118.

Suscitatur scisma[1] *pro antipapa. Obiit regina Ma[tildis].*

(Death of Pope Paschal II. Gelasius II. succeeds.) Anno Domini M°.C°.XVIII°., defuncto papa Paschali, Gelasius antipapa anno uno successit. (Rog. Wend. ii. 194.) Obiit etiam eodem anno Matildis, Anglorum regina, cujus corpus apud Westmonasterium quietem suscepit sepulturæ, et anima se cœlum possidere evidentibus signis et crebris miraculis palam ostendit. (Death of queen Matilda.) (Rog. Wend. ii. 195.) Hæc autem regina beatissima, inter alia pietatis opera, versus occidentalem[2] Londoniarum plagam, unam domum ad leprosorum sustentationem, cum oratorio et officinis, ædificavit, quæ usque hodie Hospitale reginæ Matildis nuncupatur. (*Nota de Hospitali Sancti Egidii, Londoniis.*) (fol. 42 b.) Eodem anno obiit Petrus, primus prior Beremundesheie.[3] (Death of Peter, prior of Bermondsey.)

De origine Ordinis Templariorum.

(Foundation of the Order of Templars.) Circa dies istos[4] viri quidam nobiles de equestri ordine, religiosi ac Dominum timentes, in manus patriarchæ Jerosolimitani, Christi servitio sese mancipantes, more canonicorum regularium in castitate et obedientia, propriæque voluntati renuntiantes, perpetuo vivere sunt professi. (Rog. Wend. ii. 195.) Quorum primi fuerunt Hugo de Paganis

---

[1] *scisma*] cisma, MS.

[2] *opera, versus occidentalem*] Partly on an erasure.

[3] *Eodem . . . . Beremundesheie*] Om. F.

[4] *istos*] Added in marg.

et Godefridus de Sancto Æodemaro. Qui primo adeo pauperes licet strenui fuerunt, quod unum solum dextrarium illi duo habuerunt; unde propter primitivæ paupertatis memoriam, et ad humilitatis observantiam, in sigillo eorum insculpti sunt duo unum equum equitantes.[1] Isti vero duo milites memorati, cum certum non haberent domicilium, et sibi habitaculum quærerent, rex Baldewinus misertus et miseratus, in palatio suo, quod secus Templum Domini ad australem habet plagam, eis concessit mansionem. Canonici vero Templi Domini plateam, quam circa prædictum habebant palatium, ad officinas construendas eis[2] concesserunt. Patriarcha quoque et rex, cum suis proceribus et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis, de propriis dominicis suis pro victu et vestitu certa eis beneficia contulerunt, propitius comparando. Prima vero eorum professio erat, ut, in remissionem peccatorum suorum, vias, itinera et passus suspectos, peregrinantibus nocivos, ad salutem fidelium transmeantium contra latronum insidias pro viribus conservarent. Tandem vero, post ix. annos, in concilio Trecas[3] celebrato, instituta est eis regula, et habitus albus a papa Honorio assignatus. Et, jam decursis fere novem annis, fratres qui prius tantummodo novem fuerunt, cœperunt multiplicari, et possessiones in immensum dilatari. Postmodum vero, tempore Eugenii papæ, cruces de panno rubeo suis assuerunt mantellis a parte sinistra, ut esset eis tam triumphale signum pro clipeo, ne fugerent pro aliquo infideli, tanta talique protectione communiti, utque sic signati, a ceteris religiosis viris valerent discerni. Numerus igitur eorum in brevi ita ditatus et multiplicatus est, ut hodie in conventu plusquam trecentos

A.D. 1118.

Seal of the Order.

Grant of land to them by king Baldwin.

Profession of the Order.

A white habit assigned to them by Honorius II.

Rog. Wend. ii. 196.

Red crosses sewn on their mantles.

Increase of the Order.

[1] In the lower margin is a drawing of two Templars riding on one horse, a coarse engraving of which is given in edit. Wats. In front of the horse is fixed a banner, party per fess, sa. and arg.

[2] *eis*] Interlined.

[3] *Trecas*] Tecras, MS. See Harduin, Concilia, vi. 2. col. 1134.

A.D. 1118. habeant equites, exceptis fratribus aliis, quorum numerus fere discernitur infinitus. Florente igitur Ordine et in humilitate prosperante, invidit humanæ prosperitatis inimicus, et quæ huic virtuti videntur adversantia superseminavit, videlicet superbiæ genimina, quæ solent inobedientiam cum scismatibus et multis aliis malis generare. Possessiones vero, tam citra quam ultra mare, adeo immensas habere dicuntur, ut jam non sit in orbe Christiano provincia, quæ eis bonorum suorum non contulerit portionem, ita ut regiis excellentiis præstantiores existant. Qui, quoniam juxta Templum Domini mansionem habuerunt primitivam, Fratres Militiæ Templi nuncupantur. Et cum diu, ut prætactum est, in honesto starent proposito, rerum affluentia insolentiam generante, jam suæ professionis obliti,[1] humilitate neglecta, a [2] domini patriarchæ, a quo et Ordinis institutionem, mansionem, protectionem, et omnia prima beneficia susceperant, se subtraxerunt obedientia; interveniente opima retributione versus papam exempti,[3] ut magis gloriarentur libertini. Unde, hoc cognito, patriarcha conquestus est, dicens, "Filios enutrivi et exaltavi, ipsi autem spreverunt me."[4] Unde ecclesiis Dei decimas, privilegiis adquisitis, armati subtrahentes, facti sunt multis valde molesti.

They refuse obedience to the patriarch of Jerusalem.

Obiit rex Jerusalem Baldewinus.

Death of Baldwin I., king of Jerusalem.

Eodemque anno obiit rex Jerusalem Baldeuuinus primus, vir magnificus, qui urbes Achon, Cæsaream, Berithum, Sydonem, Tripolim, Arbath,[5] cum terris Arabum usque ad Mare Rubeum, suo imperio potenter adjecit. Successit autem ei alius Baldeuuinus, comes Edessanus, et coronatus est in regem mense Aprilis, secunda die mensis. Rog. Wend ii. 196.

Baldwin II. succeeds.

[1] *obliti*] Added in marg.

[2] *a*] Interlined.

[3] *exempti*] exẽpti, MS.

[4] Is. i. 2.

[5] *Arbath*] So also F.; but more correctly, *Arsuth*, A. C. D., as Will. Tyr., p. 783. In W., *Arluth*.

Defuncto papa Gelasio, Calixtus successit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 196. Anno Domini M°.C°.XIX°., defuncto papa Gelasio, successit Calixtus, annis x., mensibus totidem, et diebus xiii.;[1] fuerat autem episcopus Viennensis, Wido prius vocatus, et in papam consecratus, vocatus est Calixtus. Hic Remis concilium tenuit, ad quod rex Angliæ Henricus quosdam Angliæ et Normanniæ episcopos destinavit. Turstanus quoque, Eboracensis electus, illuc veniendi a rege licentiam impetravit, interposita[2] fide, quod benedictionem ab eo non reciperet. Qui ad concilium veniens, Romanos, sicut eis mos est, in suum favorem retributionis beneficio muscipulando per peram inclinavit, et per eosdem infidelis infideles, ut a papa consecraretur, impetravit. Quod ut regi innotuit, omnem ei locum suæ dominationis interdixit.

(Margin: Rog. Wend. ii. 197. — A.D. 1119. Death of pope Gelasius. Calixtus II. succeeds. Council held at Rheims. Thurstan, archbishop of York, consecrated by the pope.)

De concilio Remensi, in quo condempnatur error Gileberti Porretæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 197. In hoc vero concilio[3] idem papa errorem magistri Gileberti Porretæ, qui in capitulis quatuor errasse dicitur, condempnavit. In quorum primo dixit, "Quod divina natura, quæ divinitas dicitur, Deus non sit, sed fol. 43 a. forma qua Deus est; sicut humanitas non est homo, sed forma qua homo est." Concilium: "Credimus simplicem naturam divinitatis esse Deum, nec aliquo sensu catholico posse negari, quin divinitas [sit Deus].[4] Sic vero, ubi dicitur, Deum sapientia sapientem, magnitudine magnum, æternitate æternum, unitate unum, divinitate esse Deum, credimus non nisi ea sapientia, quæ est [ipse][5] Deus, sapientem[6] esse; non nisi ea

(Margin: Errors of Gilbert Porrée condemned.)

[1] Calixtus II. was pope only from Feb. 1119 to Dec. 1124. The error is copied from Wendover.

[2] *interposita*] On an erasure.

[3] Not in this council, but in another held at Rheims in 1148 by Eugenius III. See Harduin, vi. 2, col. 1299.

[4] *sit Deus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[5] *ipse*] Supplied from the same.

[6] *sapientem*] This word in MS. and F. is written after *sapientia*.

A.D. 1119. magnitudine, quæ est ipse Deus, magnum esse; non nisi ea æternitate, quæ est ipse Deus, æternum esse; non nisi ea unitate, quæ est ipse, esse unum; non nisi ea divinitate [Deum],[1] quæ in ipso est; id est, in seipso sapientem, magnum, æternum, unum Deum." Secundo dixit, "Quod non unus Deus,[2] vel una substantia, aut unum aliquid sit tres[3] personæ, id est, Pater, et Filius, et Spiritus Sanctus; ipsæ vero tres personæ tria sunt differentia et numero, ac si tres homines humanitatem unam numero habere invenirentur." Concilium: "Cum de tribus personis loquimur, Patre, Filio, et Spiritu Sancto, ipsas unum Deum, unam divinam substantiam esse fatemur, et e converso; cum enim de uno Deo, una divina substantia loquimur, ipsum unum Deum et unam divinam substantiam esse tres personas profitemur." Tertio dixit memoratus Gilebertus, "Quod proprietates[4] personarum relationes quædam sunt[5] æternæ, quæ non sunt ipsæ[6] personæ, sed tres[7] divisæ numero, et divisa substantia, et habeant tres unitates; et sic multa æterna sint,[8] quorum nullum sit Deus." Concilium: "Credimus solum Deum, Patrem, et Filium, et Spiritum Sanctum, æternum esse, nec aliquas omnino tres,[9] sive relationes, sive proprietates, vel unitates dicantur, adesse Deo, quæ sunt ab æterno, quæ non sint Deus." Quarto dixit, "Quod divina natura non sit incarnata." Concilium: "Credimus ipsam divinitatem, sive substantiam divinam, sive naturam divinam dicas, incarnatam esse, sed in Filio."

Rog. Wend. ii. 198

Campestre prœlium inter reges Francorum et Anglorum.

Battle between the kings of France and England.

Eodem anno actum est campestre prœlium inter Lodowicum, regem Francorum, et Henricum, regem Anglorum, in hunc modum. Rex Francorum, duabus

Rog. Wend. ii. 198.

[1] *Deum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[2] *Deus*] est Deus, MS. and F.
[3] *tres*] Om. W. A. C. D.
[4] *proprietates*] propriietates, MS. In W. A. C. D. *ad proprietates*.
[5] *sunt*] sint, W. A. C. D.
[6] *ipsæ*] quod ipsæ, W. A. C. D.
[7] *tres*] Om. W. A. C. D.; res, I.
[8] *sint*] sunt, Edd. and ed. Wend.
[9] *tres*] res, W. A. C. D.

aciebus ordinatis, posuit in prima acie Willelmum, A.D. 1119.
Rog.Wend. ii. 199. filium Roberti, fratris regis Henrici; ipse vero rex cum viribus maximis erat in sequenti agmine constitutus. Rex vero Anglorum Henricus, tribus aciebus dispositis, in prima Normanniæ proceres collocavit; in secunda, ipse rex cum propria residens familia, omnes animavit; in tertia, filios suos cum summis viribus peditum ordinavit. Concurrentibus igitur hinc inde catervis, prima Francorum acies proceres Normannorum penetrans, ab equis eos depellendo dissipavit. Deinde in aciem, cui rex Henricus præerat, irrumpens, ipsam etiam potenter dissolvit. Sed rex Anglorum, agminibus suis prudenter convocatis, feliciter respiravit, et ex læsione, more leonis, efficacius dimicavit. Fit conflictus hinc illinc, concurrentibus turmis regalibus, ilico cruentissimus; fragor hastarum mutuo confractarum cum percussorum gemitibus resonabat; pulvis cum fumo ascendens, aera perturbabat; sanguis sauciorum terram rubricavit; gladiis res agitur cruentatis, quorum tinnitus aures[1] equorum immutavit et galeatorum. Interea in condenso agmine decertantium Willelmus Crispinus, consul Ebroicensis, quem, culpis suis exigentibus, paulo ante rex Henricus exilio condempnarat, caput ejusdem regis, gladio tota vi evibrato, emicantibus scintillis,[2] bis percussit. Et licet galea et lorica essent impenetrabiles, ex ictuum tamen pondere lorica ipsa capiti regis adeo inserta est, ut fere corrueret excerebratus; inflicto tamen vulnere sanguis emanavit abundanter.[3] Rex vero læsum se sentiens, ad instar apri in percussorem dentibus infrenduit, in ipsum se totum ingerendo; gladioque fulminante sub ipsa ira, qua incanduit, ita Willelmum percussit, quod equum et assessorem semineces in terram prostravit. Et mox ante pedes regios,[4] antequam

William Crispin, count of Evreux, wounds king Henry.

---

[1] *aures*] Added on to the text.
[2] *scintillis*] cintillis, MS.
[3] *abundanter*] habundanter, MS.
[4] *regios*] Written at first *regis*.

A.D. 1119. spiritum resumere valeret, idem W[illelmus] captus est, et ilico vinculis mancipatus. Tunc Anglorum acies robustissima, aciesque[1] pedestris, in qua filii regis Anglorum constituebantur, quæ quidem intacta fuerat, lanceis inclinatis, ex adverso prorupit in hostes cum impetu ponderoso et tam feroci, quod Galligenas acies omnes coegit in fugam præcipitem. Ubique quoque dissoluti penitus, terga turpiter dederunt fugitivi, regi Henrico victoriam non ultro concedentes; qui potenter in campo perstitit, donec optimates hostium, rege Francorum fugiente, capti ipsi regi H[enrico] præsentarentur. Comes vero Flandrensis[2] letaliter vulneratus, ad propria est in lectica deportatus. Rex vero Henricus, non reminiscens capitalis læsionis præ gaudio victoriæ sibi divinitus collatæ, Rothomagum reversus, in signorum sonitu et cleri concentu et civium applausu occurrentium alacriter receptus, Dominum exercituum benedixit.

The count is taken prisoner.

Henry gains the victory.

He returns to Rouen.

R. Wend. ii. 200.

De morte Ricardi, abbatis Sancti Albani.[3]

Eodem quoque anno Ricardus de Albeneto, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, diem clausit extremum; cujus beneficia in libro de Gestis Abbatum, apud Sanctum Albanum habito, plenius describuntur. Huic vero successit Gaufridus de Gorham, prior ejusdem ecclesiæ, abbas xvi^us.[4] Eodemque anno obiit Herbertus, Norwicensis antistes, et comes Flandrensis Baldeuuinus, per vulnus acceptum apud Aucum[5] in Normannia, ex

Death of Richard, abbat of St. Alban's.

Geoffrey de Gorham succeeds.

Deaths of Herbert, bishop of Norwich, and of Baldwin, count of Flanders.

Rog. Wend. ii. 200.

[1] *aciesque*] So also F., but seems superfluous.

[2] *Comes Flandrensis*] This is a mistake, copied from Wendover. The count of Flanders was not in this battle (fought 20 Aug. 1119), having died on the 17th June previously. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," iii. p. 8.

[3] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier reversed.

[4] *Eodem quoque . . . abbas xvius.*] Omitted in F.

[5] *Aucum*] Aucun, MS.

manu regis Anglorum Henrici, ut prædictum est.[1] A.D. 1119
Cui successit Karolus, Cnutonis filius, regis Danorum.
fol. 43 b. Tempore quoque sub eodem papa Calixtus venit in Normanniam ad regem Henricum, et collocuti sunt apud Gisorcium rex et summus sacerdos.[2]

Pope Calixtus meets king Henry at Gisors.

Princeps Antiochenus interficitur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 200. Per idem quoque tempus Rogerus, princeps Antiochenus, cum equitibus trecentis et peditibus tribus milibus, contra tres principes, Turcorum scilicet, Damascenorum et Arabum, qui secum trahebant innumeram copiam armatorum, videlicet sexaginta milia; unde princeps præceps et temerarius[3] inæquale nimis cum ipsis committens prœlium, cum suis omnibus interfectus est, ita quod nec unus evasit, qui casum fidelibus nunciaret. Indeque progredientes Turci, oppida[4] Cereptum et Sardonas potenter ceperunt. Hoc quoque factum cum fuisset a Baldeuuino, Jerosolimorum rege, compertum, Rog. Wend. ii. 201. hostibus obviam audacter processit, atque in loco qui Mons Dani dicitur, contra multos cum paucis decertans, ex hostibus iiii^or^. milia peremit. Et tres principes prædictos in fugam compellens, oppida Cereptum et Sardonas in suos usus revocavit; hostesque fugientes insecutus, usque ad noctis initium prosternere non cessavit.

Death of Roger, prince of Antioch.

Baldwin II. defeats the Turks.

---

[1] Matthew Paris seems here to have committed another error, in confounding the count of Flanders, wounded in 1118 at the siege of *Eu*, with the count of Evreux, wounded at the battle of *Brémule* (generally, but erroneously, called Brenneville). See Ord. Vit., iv. 356; Diceto, Abbrev. Chron., p. 502.

[2] In the margin, a hand of the 14th century has noted: "Nota, quod papa Calixtus venit in Normanniam, locuturus cum rege H."

[3] *unde .... temerarius*] In consequence of the insertion of these words into the text of Wendover, a verb is required in the previous paragraph, which Matthew Paris has omitted to supply.

[4] *oppida*] opida, MS., and so below.

Multi de speciali familia regis Henrici submersi in mari perierunt.

A.D. 1120. Henry returns to England. Shipwreck of the king's children. 25 Nov. Miraculous light on the Holy Sepulchre. 18 April.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°. rex Henricus, omnibus in Gallia pro voto edomitis et cunctis in Normannia pacificatis, cum gaudio ad Angliam transfretavit. Sed, ne mundus iste prospera sine adversis impermixta perferat, dolorem maximum ex alia parte cordi regio præsentavit. Nam divina, ut timetur, ultione, qui in alia quam rex navi velificabant filii ejusdem[1] regis, Willelmus et Ricardus, ac filia ejus et neptis, Ricardus quoque, consul Cestrensis, dapiferi, camerarii, pincernæ regis, ac multi proceres cum eisdem, in mari vii°.[2] kalendas Decembris[3] naufragium pertulerunt.[4] Qui omnes, vel fere omnes, si Francigenarum adversantium probris credendum est, sodomitana labe polluti dicebantur. Ita igitur miserabiliter cuncti perierunt, quod communi fidelium, Deo irato, caruerunt[5] sepultura. Ideo, pro sequenti pœna, culpa gravis prædicta vel alia creditur præcessisse. Quod enim admiratione dignum est, mare tunc temporis extitit pacatissimum, quando absorbebantur. Hoc etiam anno venit cœleste lumen super sepulchrum Domini bis, xiiii°. kalendas Maii.[6]

Rog. Wend. ii. 201.

Rex Henricus uxorem duxit.

A.D. 1121. Marriage of king Henry to

Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°.I°. rex Henricus duxit Adeliciam, ducis Lovaniæ filiam, causa pulchritudinis qua singulariter choruscabat. Quæ a Radulpho, Cantuari-

Rog. Wend. ii. 201.

[1] *ejusdem*] ejudcm, MS.

[2] *vii°.*] viii°., MS.

[3] *vii°. kal. Decembris*] Added in marg., and so in A., but inserted in the text of C. D. Omitted in W. and F.

[4] *pertulerunt*] Here F. inserts, "Hos appellavit Merlinus calamistratos, id est, effeminatos," which is copied from a marginal note in C.

[5] *caruerunt*] Added in marg.

[6] *Hoc etiam . . . Maii*] Added in marg., and, nearly in the same words, in marg, of A., but in text of C. D. Om. W. and F.

ensi archiepiscopo, in reginam consecrata, in Pentecoste Londoniis cum rege ad mensam resedit magnifice coronata. Inde autem, cum rex ad Walliam tenderet cum exercitu copioso, Walenses eidem suppliciter obviantes, concordati sunt cum ipso juxta suæ voluntatis magnificentiam. Eodem anno papa Calixtus Mauricium[1] quendam, quem Henricus imperator antipapam constituerat, cepit, et eum, licet non ultro vel poscentem, monachum ordinavit. Luna obtenebrata est. Monachi Redinggiæ, constructa[2] ecclesia, cœperunt cohabitare. Radulpho successit Willelmus de Curboil[3] in archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem.[4]

A.D. 112 the daughter of the duke of Louvain. Rog. Wend. ii. 202. Submission of the Welsh. The antipope Maurice forced to become a monk. Monastery at Reading.

De morte quorundam episcoporum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 202. A.D. 1122. Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°.II°. Radulphus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Johannes, Bathoniensis antistes, humanæ naturæ debita persolverunt. Et eodem tempore Balac[5] admiralius cepit Gocelinum, comitem Edessanum, et ejus consanguineum Galerannum.

Deaths of prelates. Capture of the count of Edessa.

Quidam regis cancellarius male mortuus est.

Rog. Wend. ii. 202. A.D. 1123. Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°.III°. rex Anglorum Henricus, ad Natale Domini apud Dunestapliam festo celebrato, ad Berckamestudiam inde perrexit.[6] Erat autem ibi cum rege quidam cancellarius ejus, nomine Ranulphus, per annos jam xx[ti]. gravi infirmitate[7] decoctus, sed tamen ad omnia scelera perpetranda promtus et paratus. Cum igitur regem duceret ad secum hospitandum, in ipso

Violent death of the chancellor Ralph.

---

[1] *Mauricium*] Maurice Bourdier, abp. of Braga, known as Gregory VIII. Malm. ii. pp. 664, 667.

[2] *constructa*] construca, MS.

[3] William de Curboil was not elected till Feb. 1123. Fasti, i. 8.

[4] *Luna . . Cantuariensem*] Added in marg., and a similar passage is in the margin of A., but in the text of C. D. F.

[5] *Balac*] Balay, MS. and F.

[6] *perrexit*] perexit, MS.

[7] *infirmitate*] imfirmitate, MS.

A.D. 1123. montis vertice, unde castellum regis prospiciebatur, eructans verba jactantiæ et elatus mente ex equo corruit, verba blasphemiæ[1] in sanctos Dei, maxime in sanctum Albanum, Angliæ prothomartirem, jaculando.

De obitu quorundam magnatum.[2]

Death of Robert, bp. of Lincoln. William de Corboil made abp. of Canterbury, and Godfrey, bp. of Bath. The king takes the castle of Pont-Audemer. Rouen and other towns in Normandy fortified.

Anno quoque sub eodem Robertus, Lincolniensis episcopus, obiit, et Alexander successit.[3] Eodemque anno rex Henricus dedit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem Willelmo de Corbolio, priori de Chicche, et episcopatum Bathoniensem Godefrido, reginæ capellano. Quo etiam tempore Robertus de Muthlent[4] comes recessit a rege, et rex obsedit et cepit castellum ejus, quod Pundhaudemer appellatur. Tempore quoque sub eodem circa turrem Rothomagensem rex murum spissum et altum cum propugnaculis[5] construxit, turrem quoque castri Cadomensis[6] optime firmavit. Castra etiam de Archis, de Gisorcio, de Falesia, de Argentomio, de Danfronte,[7] de Oxomio, de Ambretas, de Veverei,[8] de Vira,[9] et turrim Vernonis inexpugnabiliter communivit. Rog. Wend. ii. 203.

Rex Jerusalem B[aldewinus] capitur a Balac, principe Turcorum.

Capture of Baldwin II. by the Turks.

Anno vero sub eodem rex Jerosolimorum Baldeuuinus cum exercitu in terram comitis Edessani descendens, dum nocte quadam incautus et agmine incederet dissoluto, Balach, princeps Turcorum, in insidiis constitutus, in eum subito irruit et ipsum cepit, et in castro, cui Quartapi nomen est, vinculis mancipavit. Detinebantur etiam in eodem præsidio comes Jocelinus Rog. Wend. ii. 203.

---

[1] *blasphemiæ*] blasfemie, MS.

[2] So also in F., but the rubric is at variance with the text.

[3] *successit*] sucessit, MS.

[4] *Muthlent*] Medlent, W. A. C. D.

[5] *propugnaculis*] propungnaculis, MS.

[6] *Cadomensis*] Cadamensis, MS.

[7] *Danfronte*] Darefonte, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[8] *Veverei*] Waverei, W. A. C. D.

[9] *Vira*] Vim, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

Edessæ, et ejus consanguineus Gualerannus, pro quorum A.D. 1123.
liberatione ad partes illas rex pio ex affectu descenderat.
fol. 44 a. Principes autem regni Jerosolimitani, audito casu miserabili, constituerunt regni procuratorem quendam Eustachium Grenet, virum providum et discretum, qui in regis absentia regni negotia ordinaret. Balach interea, princeps memoratus, cum xvi. armatorum milibus, Jopen obsidione vallavit. Quo audito, patriarcha Jerosolimitanus et regni procurator Eustachius, cum aliis principibus, prævia Domini misericordia, cum septem milibus armatorum supervenientes, hostes omnes in fugam coegerunt, ex eis septem milia perimentes. Unde spolia impretiabilia ibidem optinentes, inter se cum lætitia victores[1] diviserunt.

Eustace Grenet made governor of Jerusalem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 204.

Willelmus in [archiepiscopum][2] Cantuariensem consecratur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 204.

Tempore quoque sub eodem Willelmus, Cantuariensis electus, Romam profectus, pallium suscepit. Et reversus in Angliam, consecratus Cantuariæ a Willelmo, Wintoniensi episcopo, quia paulo ante obierat Ricardus, antistes Londoniensis, ad quem illa consecratio dinoscitur pertinere.

Consecration of the archbishop of Canterbury.

Quidam regis Henrici inimici capiuntur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 204.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°.IIII°. Robertus de Meblent[3] A.D. 1124.
comes, associatis sibi Hugone de Muntfort, sororio suo, et Hugone Gervasii filio, hostiliter intravit Normanniam. Willelmus vero de Tankervilla, regis camerarius, aciebus dispositis, contra illos decertans, cepit eosdem, quos et regi Henrico et rex carceri præsentavit.

Robert, count of Meulent, and others taken prisoners.

---

[1] *victores*] victore, MS.

[2] *archiepiscopum*] Omitted in MS.

[3] *Meblent*] So E. F.; *Medlent*, W. A. C. D. Elsewhere written *Meslent*.

A.D. 1124.

Obierunt quidam episcopi.

Deaths of prelates.

Eodemque anno defuncti sunt Theophus[1] Wigorniensis, et Ernulphus Rofensis episcopi. Rog. Wend. ii. 204.

Tyrus a Christianis occupatur.

Tyre besieged and taken. 25 Feb. 29 June. Death of pope Calixtus II. Honorius II. succeeds.

Eodem anno Tyrus, Syriæ metropolis, a Michaele, duce Venetiæ, obsidione vallata est per mare, et per terram a principibus regni Jerosolimitani, v°. kalendas Martii; et iii°. kalendas Julii capta est, et Christianitati feliciter restituta. Obiit Calixtus papa, successit Honorius. Sol novilunio similis factus est.[2] Rog. Wend. ii. 204.

Liberatur rex Baldewinus.

Baldwin is released from captivity.

Anno quoque sub eodem rex Jerusalem Baldeuuinus, datis obsidibus, a vinculis Turcorum liberatus est, et incolumis ad propria remeavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 204.

Johannes legatus celebravit concilium Londoniis.

A.D. 1125. Cardinal John of Crema comes to England, and holds a council. 8 Sept. Scandal occasioned by his conduct.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°.V°. Johannes Cremensis, apostolicæ sedis cardinalis, de licentia regis Anglorum veniens in Angliam, in episcopatibus et abbatiis[3] perendinans,[4] lucris et deliciis indulgebat. Et tandem, metens ubi non seminaverat, cum multis donariis saginaretur, ad Nativitatem beatæ Mariæ[5] Londoniis sollempne concilium celebravit. In quo, inter cetera, concubinas sacerdotum et sacerdotes dampnavit concubinarios. Tandem vero in eodem vitio ipse legatus deliciis crapulatus ce- Rog. Wend. ii. 2[illegible]

---

[1] *Theophus*] Theophilus, W. *sec. m.* F. See previous note *ad annum* 1115. Simeon of Durham, and Contin. Flor. Wig. place his death in Oct. 1123.

[2] *Obiit . . . est*] Added in marg., and so in A., but in the text of C.D.F.

[3] *abbatiis*] The last two letters are on an erasure.

[4] *perendinans*] perhendinans, MS.

[5] The date of the Council in Simeon of Durham, p. 254, is 9 Sept. 1126.

cidit compeditus, et deprehensus scandalum in ecclesia non minimum suscitavit. A.D. 1125.

Rex Henricus contulit quosdam episcopatus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 205. Eodemque anno rex Henricus dedit Symoni, reginæ clerico, Wigorniensem, Johanni, archidiacono Cantuariensi, Rofensem, Sifredo, abbati Glastoniensi, Cicestrensem præsulatus. Quo utique anno deceptaverunt[1] Willelmus Cantuariensis et Turstanus Eboracensis achiepiscopi de primatu, quis eorum esse dignior videretur. Nomination of several bishops. Dispute respecting the primacy.

Obiit rex Scotorum Alexander.[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 205. Anni quoque sub illius curriculo obiit rex Scotorum Alexander, et successit ei David, frater ejus, vir magnæ sanctitatis et munificæ largitatis. Death of Alexander, king of Scotland. David succeeds.

Monetarii puniuntur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 205. Illo etiam anno rex Henricus omnes Angliæ monetarios, eo quod monetam furtive corruperant, fecit turpiter ementulari et aliis modis mutilari,[3] pluribus autem dextras manus amputari. Punishment of the debasers of the coin.

Rex Jerusalem de Turcis multis triumphavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 206. Circa eosdem profecto dies Borsequinus, princeps quidam orientis potentissimus, adjuncto sibi Damascenorum rege Doldequino, transito Eufrate fluvio, partes depopulans, Caphardan castrum obsedit et cepit; indeque progressus, Harsad oppidum obsidione vallavit. Victory obtained by Baldwin over the Turks.

---

[1] *deceptaverunt*] The latter part of this word is on an erasure.

[2] On the edge of the lower margin is written, "Obiit rex Scotorum Alexander; succedit ei David, frater ejus."

[3] *mutilari*] muttilari, MS.

A.D. 1125. Quo audito, rex Baldeuuinus, qui tam Antiochiæ principatus quam regni Jerosolimitani curam gerebat, cum copiis militaribus illuc succincta sub festinatione descendit. Repertisque in obsidione præfata hostibus memoratis, dispositis sub martia disciplina suis aciebus, in ipsos irruit vehementer valde ac impetuose, lanceis incumbens ac gladiis fulminantibus. Et post certamen horribile ac cruentum, divina annuente clementia, patuit pars adversa discrimini; omnibusque in fugam compulsis, rex feliciter illæsus et indempnis triumphavit. Ceciderunt autem ibi ex hostibus ad duo milia Turcorum, et sepulti sunt in inferno. Rex autem de pecunia illic optenta filiam suam quinquennem, quam pro sua liberatione obsidem posuerat, a Turcorum vinculis caute liberavit. Et inde reversus, circa Aschalonam prædas egit non minimas; ubi etiam Turcos de dispersis, quos obviam habuit, interfecit, et sic victor lætus ad propria remeavit.

He ransoms his daughter with the booty gained.

Mortuo H[enrico] imperatore, reversa [est][1] M[atildis] imperatrix ad patrem suam, regem Anglorum Henricum.

A.D. 1126. Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°.VI°. Henricus, Romanorum imperator,[2] præsulatum Ravennæ contulit Arnulpho, viro eleganti, hac de causa. Cum esset idem A[rnulphus] diaconus et in capella imperatoris ministrans, quandam adamavit domicellam. Cujus cum quadam nocte uteretur amplexibus, et hoc auribus imperatoris instillaretur, jussit die sequenti imperator eidem A[rnulpho], ut accedens ad altare legeret ei evangelium.[3] At ipse A[rnulphus], quem propria momordit de nocturna culpa conscientia, se[4] fingens infirmum,[5] ait, "Domine, parcite

Arnulph made archbishop of Ravenna by the emperor Henry.

[1] *est*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[2] *imperator*] Interlined.
[3] *evangelium*] euuangelium, MS.
[4] *se*] Interlined.
[5] *infirmum*] imfirmum, MS.

mihi, quia graviter infirmor." At ipse[1] imperator[2] instabat imperiose, cum minis jubens ut legeret. Ipse autem præcise contradicens ait, "Domine, decollari possum, antequam flectar præcepto vestro obsecundans." Et cum non profecisset imperator, ut constantiam ejus enervaret comminando, blandiendo, præcipiendo, nec ut saltem ad altare appropinquaret, mutato vultu in serenitatem, ait, "Nunc cognovi[3] certissime quod Deum plus quam me, ut justum est, diligas et formides; tales digni sunt honore pastorali. Novi quæ causa te a lectione evangelii[4] subtrahat, et ab altari." Ex tunc igitur imperator ipsum A[rnulphum] familiarem habuit, et ad præsulatum promovit. Anno vero sub eodem pius ipse imperator mundi pompam penitus relinquens, nocturnam et clandestinam fugam[5] arripiens, incognitus[6] ad loca se contulit incognita,[7] ut in paupertate spontanea residuum vitæ suæ sub pœnitentia continuaret. Fertur quod a quodam casu mortis, Deo sibi propitio, ereptus fuerit, propter quod Deo gratus se ejus obsequio perpetuo mancipaverit. Ipse vero eodem anno vocatus a Deo ab hoc seculo, cum in[8] extremis ageret, seipsum manifestavit, unde cum honore imperiali sepultus est. Hoc autem nec tunc fecisset propter honorem sepulturæ, sed ut potius famam purgaret imperatricis, quæ dicebatur ipsum dormientem jugulasse, vel potionasse prandentem; et ut edoceret omnibus, etiam præcellentibus, mundum esse contemptibilem. Confestim autem postquam idem imperator, ut prædictum est, evanuerat, imperatrix ejus Matildis,[9] pro objecto obprobrio de propinato veneno, clanculo recedens, ad alas protectionis paternæ, regis videlicet Henrici, avolavit. Rex igitur, cum in brevi tempore sequenti rei cognovisset[10] verita-

A.D. 1126.

fol. 44 b.

The emperor resigns the throne.

Sinister rumours respecting his death.

[1] *ipse*] Partly on an erasure.

[2] *imperator*] Added in marg.

[3] *cognovi*] congnovi, MS.

[4] *evangelii*] euuangelii, MS., on an erasure.

[5] *fugam*] Added on to the text.

[6] *incognitus*] incongnitus, MS.

[7] *incognita*] incongnita, MS.

[8] *in*] Interlined.

[9] *Matildis*] Mitildis, MS.

[10] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

A.D. 1126. tem, condolens insontis viduitati et diffamatione, vocavit eam ad se, et eam consolans, habitare fecit in thalamo suo cum regina. Rog.Wend. ii. 206.

Henrico imperatori successit[1] Lotharius.

Lotharius II. succeeds.

Pio igitur Henrico imperatori successit Lotharius, qui xii. annis imperavit. Rog.Wend. ii. 206.

Juratur fidelitas imperatrici Matildi.

Henry returns to England with the empress Matilda.

Diligebat autem rex Henricus Matildam filiam suam præcordialiter ac specialiter valde, quia unicam illam habebat heredem. Rog.Wend. ii. 206. Circa festum igitur sancti Michaelis rediens rex in Angliam, duxit secum filiam suam, tanto viro, ut prænarratur, viduatam. Rog.Wend. ii. 207. Et continuo, jussu regis, omnes Angliæ et Normanniæ optimates jurantes fecerunt ei fidelitatem. Et primus omnium comes Boloniæ Stephanus, quia suspectus, ex Adala, sorore regis Henrici, et Blesentiæ comite generatus.

29 Sept. The nobility swear fealty to her.

Facta est contentio inter Cantuariensem et Eboracensem archiepiscopos.

A.D. 1127. Henry keeps Christmas at Windsor. The archbishop of York is not permitted to crown the king.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°.VII°. rex Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Windleshoram; Rog.Wend. ii. 207. ubi cum Turstanus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, in præjudicium Willelmi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, regem vellet coronare, judicio omnium probrose repulsus est, et lator crucis ejus, quam in capellam regis ante se deferri fecerat, extra capellam cum ipsa cruce contemptibiliter ejectus[2] est.

[1] *successit*] sucessit, MS. | [2] *ejectus*] exjectus, MS.

A.D. 1127.

Rex commovetur adversus nepotem suum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 207.

Tempore quoque sub eodem venerunt ad regem legati, dicentes, "Karolus, comes Flandrensis tibi dilectissimus, a proceribus suis proditione nefanda[1] occisus est in templo apud Breges,[2] et rex Francorum dedit comitatum Willelmo, filio fratris tui, nepoti tuo et inimico; in quo jam valde roboratus, diversis cruciatibus Karoli proditores interfecit." Super hiis itaque rex Henricus nimis anxius turbabatur, eo quod esset juvenis ille strenuus et animosus, et comminaretur se regi Henrico tam Angliam quam Normanniam ablaturum, quæ sibi, ut dicebat, jure hereditario debebantur.

Death of Charles, count of Flanders.

He is succeeded by William, nephew and enemy of Henry.

Ricardo, Londoniensi episcopo, successit Gilebertus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 207.

Eodem tempore, defuncto Ricardo, Londoniensi episcopo, Gilebertus Universalis successit, et a Willelmo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus suscepit consecrationis.

Gilbert 'Universalis' consecrated bishop of London.

Matildis imperatrix nupsit Galfrido, comiti Andegaviæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 208.

Anno quoque sub eodem comes Andegavensis Fulco Jerosolimam sine animo revertendi profecturus, dedit comitatum suum Galfrido filio suo, cognomento[3] Plantegenest, adolescenti elegantissimo; et peregre profectus, Jerosolimam prospere pervenit. De cujus adventu rex Jerusalem valde lætus, dedit ei filiam suam primogenitam, cum spe regni post mortem suam. Quod cum a rege Anglorum Henrico compertum fuisset, transfretavit

Fulk, count of Anjou, gives up his territories to his son, and goes to Jerusalem.

Marriage of Matilda

---

[1] *nefanda*] nephanda, MS.

[2] *Breges*] Above this word is written *vel u*, i.e. *Bruges*; and so copied in F.

[3] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

A.D. 1127. in Normanniam, et filiam suam imperatricem præfato Gaufrido, Andegavensium comiti, matrimonio copulavit. Tunc utique temporis obiit Ricardus, episcopus Herefordensis.

to Geoffrey of Anjou. Death of Richard, bishop of Hereford.

Boamundus accepit in uxorem filiam regis Jerosolimorum secundam.

Boamund marries a daughter of Baldwin.

Eodem anno Boamundus, magni Boamundi filius, in Syriam transiens, a rege Jerosolimorum Baldeuuino Antiochiam, paternam hereditatem, suscepit, et rex dedit ei filiam suam secundam matrimonio copulandam. Deinde idem Boamundus Caphardan castrum obsedit et cepit, et Turcos omnes in eo inventos trucidavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 208.

Capture of Caphardan.

De nobili abbatia, quæ dicitur Fontes.

27 Dec. Foundation of Fountains abbey.

Circa eadem tempora, die sancti Johannis Evangelistæ,[1] exierunt de abbatia Sanctæ Mariæ Eboraci, de abbatis et conventus licentia, prior et supprior, cum plurimis obedienciariis et fratribus ejusdem domus, ita quod xii.[2] erant quærentes sibi mansionem idoneam. Voluerunt enim[3] vitam pristinam artare et habitum mutare, exemplo illorum nigrorum monachorum provocati, qui de licentia sui abbatis exeuntes, Cisterciensium Ordinem inchoaverunt. Qui dum vagarentur, quærentes stationem mansionis, et locum invenissent, ut eorum aliquibus videbatur competentem, vox de cœlis elapsa est audita, secundum patrium ydioma, "Ci est à vus," quod interpretatur, "Hic state," id est, "Hic manete;" sicut in principio Ordinis, unde Cisteus locus appellatur.[4] Similiter et isti, de quibus sermo

Origin of the Cistercian Order.

fol. 45 *a*.

[1] *Evangelistæ*] Euuangeliste, MS.

[2] *xii.*] xiii., A. C. D., and so in Monasticon, v. 293.

[3] *enim*] Added in marg.

[4] *sicut . . . appellatur*] Added in marg., and is in text of F., but *sicut* seems superfluous, and we should read, *unde, in principio Ordinis, Cisteus locus appellatur*.

. nobis, quærentes mansionem, invenerunt quandam con- A.D. 1127.
. vallem, a vico Ripun iii^{bus}. miliaribus distantem, pro-
. fundam et opacam. Censentes igitur ipsum locum
. sibi competere, adquisiverunt illum sibi, et cœperunt
. ecclesiolam ædificare, et ibidem manere, qui, propter
. fontium copiam, Fontes dicitur ille.[1] Quorum primo
. tanta fuit paupertas, quod nisi Ripunenses ipsis in
. victualibus, vestimentis et calciamentis auxilium præ-
. stitissent, in penuria defecissent. In brevi autem[2]
. tantum, Deo favente, susceperunt in possessionibus et
. fratrum numero augmentum,[3] ut diebus præsentibus,
. nulli creditur illud cœnobium esse secundum.

De transfretatione regis Henrici, et morte Willelmi, comitis Flandrensis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 208. Anno Domini M^{o}.C^{o}.XX°.VIII°., rex Anglorum Henricus hostiliter perrexit in Franciam, eo quod rex Francorum Lodowicus tuebatur comitem Flandrensem, regis H[enrici] nepotem et inimicum. Perendinansque[4] apud Hespardum[5] viii. diebus, tam secure ac si in regno proprio moraretur, regem Francorum comiti Flandrensi auxilia negare coegit. Ubi, cum a quodam clerico ystoriographo et de gente Francorum peritissimo,[6] originem (Rog. Wend. ii. 209.) regis Lodowici quæreret, respondit, "Regum potentissime, sicut pleræque gentes Europæ, ita Franci a Trojanis originem duxerunt." Et cum a gemino ovo omnem regum Franciæ genealogiam retexendo explicasset, ad ultimum subjunxit, "Philippus, rex Francorum, genuit Lodouuicum, regnantem in præsenti, qui, si probitatis et audaciæ antecessorum suorum teneret vestigia, tam

A.D. 1128.

King Henry hostilely enters France.

Descent of the French from the Trojans.

---

[1] *qui . . . ille*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

[2] *autem*] Interlined.

[3] *augmentum*] aucmentum, MS.

[4] *Perendinansque*] Perhendinansque, MS.

[5] *Hespardum*] So W. and A. C. D. E.; but we should read *Sparnum* (Épernon), as in Hen. Hunt., p. 383.

[6] *peritissimo*] Partly on an erasure.

A.D. 1128. secure in regno ejus non quiesceres." Super quo dicto rex subridens, in Normanniam remeavit.

Henry returns to Normandy.

Willelmus, comes Flandrensis, triumphat.[1]

Advenit autem eodem tempore a partibus Germaniæ dux quidam Theodoricus, rege Henrico procurante, hostiliter in Flandriam, quosdam etiam proceres Flandrenses secum trahens; sed comes Willelmus obviam illis intrepidus occurrit. Pugnatum est utrimque viriliter, et comes, licet paucos in suo comitatu haberet, infatigabiliter et insuperabiliter dimicans, hostium dissipavit legiones, et invincibili probitate paucitatem sui exercitus redemit. Cruentus enim in armis et fulmineus, ense choruscante hostiles cuneos victos aufugabat. Victoriosus igitur comes Willelmus, dum castrum Augi contra regem Henricum obsedisset, et in crastino reddi coactum fuisset, hostibus jam pæne subjugatis, parvo vulnere idem juvenis in manu percussus, telo, ut creditur, toxicato interiit; sed tamen mortuus famam inauditæ probitatis perpetuavit.

Rog. Wend ii. 209.

Battle between duke Theodoric and the count of Flanders.

Siege of the castle of Eu.

Death of the count of Flanders.

Obierunt quidam episcopi.

Deaths of prelates. Hugh de S. Victor completes his Chronicle.

Eodemque anno Ranulphus Dunelmensis et Willelmus Wintoniensis episcopi obierunt. Magister quoque Hugo de Sancto Victore Cronica sua hucusque digessit.

Rog. Wend ii. 209.

Rex Henricus tenuit concilium de concubinis sacerdotum.

A.D. 1129. Anno Domini M°.C°.XX°IX°., Honorio, qui in Romana cathedra sederat annis v. et mensibus duobus, successit[2] Innocentius.[3] Eodemque anno rex Henricus tenuit con-

Rog. Wend. ii. 210.

Pope Innocent II. succeeds to Honorius II.

---

[1] *triumphat*] trihumphat, MS.

[2] *successit*] sucessit, MS.

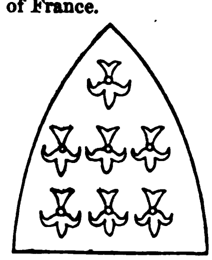
[3] Innocent II. was not elected till 14 Feb. 1130, the day of his predecessor's death, Jaffé, p. 560.

A.D. 1129. Council held at London. 1 Aug. Henry takes money from the priests, to redeem their "focariæ." Creation of some prelates.

cilium magnum Londoniis, kalendis Augusti. Affuerunt autem concilio illi Willelmus Cantuariensis et Turstanus Eboracensis archiepiscopi, cum suis suffraganeis; inter quos tractatum fuit de focariis sacerdotum prohibendis, ne cohabitarent, quos omnes rex decepit. Accepit enim rex pecuniam multam de presbiteris pro suis focariis redimendis, in præjudicium et derisum prælatorum. Eodem quoque anno Henricus, abbas Glastoniensis, nepos regis Henrici, creatus est in episcopum Wintoniensem, Robertus Porretanus[1] in Herefordensem,[2] et Robertus Simplex[3] in Lincolniensem.[4]

De morte Philippi, regis Francorum.[5]

Death of Philip of France.



Rog. Wend. ii. 210. Eodem quoque anno Philippus, filius regis Francorum, qui nuper, patre defuncto,[6] diademate fuerat insignitus, dum equum ludens ageret, obvium habuit porcum, qui cum pedes equi currentis offenderet, cecidit rex novus in terram, et, fractis cervicibus, expiravit.

Pronosticum de avibus.

Marvellous presage of flocks of birds in Normandy.

Rog. Wend. ii. 211. Anno quoque sub eodem, venit in Normanniam, nescitur unde, avium innumerabilis multitudo, quæ gregatim volitantes et longissima aeris spatia occupantes, horribiliter sese deplumando ac discerpendo ad invicem pugnabant; portendentes, ut creditur, scisma futurum inter duos paulo post apostolicos, de papatu contendentes.

---

[1] *Porretanus*] Added in marg.; in text of F.

[2] Robert de Betun was not consecrated till 28 June 1131. Fasti, p. 457. I do not find this surname of *Porretanus* elsewhere.

[3] *Simplex*] Added in marg.; in text of F.

[4] An error, copied from Wendover. Robert de Chesney did not succeed as bishop of Lincoln till Sept. 1147. See under that year.

[5] In the margin is drawn the shield of France, in trick, reversed, with a crown beneath.

[6] Another error, also from Wendover. Louis VI. did not die till 1 Aug. 1137, and the death of his

A.D. 1130. *De scismate inter duos apostolicos.*

Schism at Rome for the papacy. Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.,[1] defuncto papa Honorio, Romani in duo divisi, duos in papatus apicem elegerunt, quidam Innocentium, et alii Anacletum. Sed Anacletus, propter[2] fratres suos, qui erant viri potentes, et castri Crescencionis habebant principatum, remansit; Innocentius vero ad Cisalpinos transiit, expulsus a Romanis. Qui veniens in Galliam ad Carnotum, a rege Anglorum Henrico[3] honorifice susceptus est; et post Pascha iterum eodem modo recepit ipsum papam apud Rothomagum. Et sic, auxilio et favore ejus, per totam Galliam reverenter admissus est, et papa ab omnibus acclamatus. Et sic, diligenter Anglorum rege procurante, idem papa Lodouuicum, fratrem Philippi, Francorum regis defuncti, Remis coronavit in regem[4] sollempniter. Deinde, in Nativitate beatæ Mariæ, rex H[enricus] filiam suam imperatricem viro suo, comiti scilicet Andegavensi, destinavit.[5] Eodemque anno dedicata est ecclesia Christi Cantuariensis. Hugo quoque, abbas Redingiæ, in archiepiscopum eligitur Rothomagensem. Rog. Wen ii. 211.

Innocent II. goes to France, and is acknowledged as pope. Coronation of Louis le Jeune. Matilda is sent to the count of Anjou. 8 Sept. Dedication of Christ Church, Canterbury. Hugh, abbat of Reading, made abp. of Rouen.

De morte Boamundi, principis Antiocheni. fol 45 *b*.

Boamund II., prince of Antioch, slain. Eodemque anno Rodoam, Halapiæ princeps, fines Antiochenos hostiliter ingressus, Boamundum, Antiochiæ principem, sibi occurrentem ut ipsum reprimeret, Rog. Wen ii. 211.

son Philip, associated with him and crowned in 1129, did not occur till 13 Oct. 1131. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 574.

[1] *Anno . . . m.c.xxx°.*] On an erasure.

[2] *propter*] Partly on an erasure.

[3] *Henrico*] Henrio, MS.

[4] Louis le Jeune was not crowned till 25 Oct. 1131. Jaffé, p. 566.

[5] In the margin there is an addition, which has been subsequently erased, but which, by the aid of a chemical agent, may be read thus: "¶ *Quoddam archanum.* Nota, quid accidit ipsi, quæ [quando?] erat in navi, et duci ejus, scilicet, Stephano regnaturo." See under the years 1153, 1155.

gladio confossum peremit. Rex autem Jerosolimitanus A.D. 1130.
ab Antiochenis instantia magna vocatus, ut tantæ
Rog. Wend. ii. 212. ferat auxilium calamitati, festinato itinere, illuc iter dirigit et vexillá; et Rodoam potenter fugato, dedit filiæ suæ pro dote Laodiciam et Gabulum civitates. Filiæ vero Boamundi[1] parvulæ, post mortem suam fecit jurare Antiochiæ principatum, et sic Jerosolimam remeavit.

De morte Baldewini, regis Jerosolimorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 212. Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.I°. rex Jerusalem Baldeuuinus, miles egregius, in gravem ægritudinem prolapsus, cum sensisset sibi diem mortis imminere,[2] vocatis ad se genero suo et filia, cum filio eorum jam bimulo, nomine Baldeuuino, regni curam et plenam tradidit potestatem. Ipse vero, optentis omnibus quæ Christiani sunt, tradidit spiritum, cum piis prædecessoribus suis æterna præmia percepturus. Coronatus est autem in regem Fulco, gener ejus, miles magnificus, in die Exaltationis sanctæ Crucis regni suscipiens diadema. Annoque sub eodem obiit Innocentius I. papa; successit[3] autem Innocentius II.[4] Dedicatur quoque ab eodem ecclesia Cluniacensis.

A.D. 1131. Death of Baldwin II. Coronation of Fulk, as king of Jerusalem. 14 Sept. Dedication of the church of Cluni.

Rex novum fecit episcopatum apud Karleolum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 212. Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.II°. rex Henricus novum fecit episcopatum apud Karleolum, in limbo scilicet Angliæ et Galwalliæ. Et posuit ibi primum episcopum, nomine Athelulphum, Sancti Oswaldi priorem, cui peccata solitus fuerat confitere. Hic autem creatus

A.D. 1132. Episcopal see founded at Carlisle, and Athelulph made bishop.

[1] *Boamundi*] Boam̃di, MS.

[2] *imminere*] iminere, MS.

[3] *successit*] s̃uccessit, MS.

[4] *Anno . . . Innocentius II.*] This is another of the marginal additions made by Matth. Paris to the Chronicle of Wendover in A., and subsequently inserted in the text of C. D., and repeated here and in F. For *Innocentius I.* we should read *Honorius II.*

A.D. 1132. antistes, in ecclesia sedis suæ canonicos posuit regulares, et eam multis honoribus ampliavit. Eodemque anno natus est Galfrido Plantegenest, comiti Andegavensi,[1] ex filia regis Henrici filius, et vocatus est Henricus. Quod cum rex cognovisset,[2] convocatis regni principibus, filiam suam et heredes ex ea nascituros sibi constituit successores. Eodem quoque anno, defunctus est Robertus, Cestrensis episcopus,[3] cognomento Peccatum. Qui, rege Henrico concedente, sedem cathedralem transtulit ad Coventreiam, et locum illum caput constituit Merciorum. Successit autem ei Rogerus, archidiaconus Lincolniensis. Habet autem ille episcopatus usque hodie tres sedes, Cestrensem, Lichefeldensem, et Coventrensem. Eodemque anno Londonia pro magna parte combusta[4] est.

Nascitur Henricus, qui rex Anglorum fuit.

Henry constitutes his daughter, and her heirs, his successors.

Rog. Wend. ii. 213.

Death of Robert, bp. of Chester. Robert, archdn. of Lincoln, succeeds. Changes of the see of Lincoln. Great part of London burnt.

Fulco, rex Jerusalem, de multis Turcis triumphavit.

Anno quoque sub eodem infinita Turcorum multitudo, transito Eufrate fluvio, castra statuit in partibus Antiochenis. Contra quos Fulco, rex Jerusalem, ab Antiochenis urgenter vocatus, exercitum ducens, subito impetu in hostes facto, tria ex eis milia interfecit; et qui vivi remanserant, in fugam turpem sunt compulsi. Nostrates igitur victores ex hostium spoliis usque ad nauseam sunt onusti, Antiochiam remeantes. Per idem vero tempus, Reimundus, Pictavensium comes, Constantiam, Boamundi junioris filiam ducens, effectus est princeps Antiochenus. Et eodem tempore reædificabatur a rege Jerusalem Fulcone Bersebee, urbs

Fulk, king of Jerusalem, defeats the Turks near Antioch.

Rog. Wend. ii. 213.

Marriage of Reimund, count of Poitou, to a daughter of Boamund II.

[1] *Andegavensi*] Andegavie, E.

[2] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[3] An error, copied from Wendover. Robert Peché, or Peoceth, died 22 Aug. 1126, and his successor, Roger, was consecrated 22 Dec. 1129. The see of Chester was transferred to Coventry by Robert de Limesey in April 1102. Fasti, i. 343.

[4] *combusta*] conbusta, MS.

antiqua, quæ ab Ascalone xii. miliaribus distare videtur. A.D. 1132.

A.D. 1133. Earthquake and unusual darkness.

Terræ-motus et tenebræ in Anglia, et sol, ☽.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.III°., tenebræ factæ sunt in Anglia, et terra mota est; sol quoque similis factus est lunæ tertiæ. Rex Henricus extremo transfretavit. Eodemque anno idem rex manum sancti Jacobi misit Radingum. Anno quoque sub eodem, defuncto Herveo,[1] Elyensi episcopo, rex episcopatum Nigello contulit, et Galfrido cancellario Dunelmensem.

Henry returns to England, and gives the hand of S. James to Reading abbey. Promotion of prelates.

R. Wend. ii. 214.

Matildis imperatrix peperit filium, quem vocavit Gaufridum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 214.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.IIII°. Matildis imperatrix peperit filium, quem vocavit Gaufridum; unde rex Henricus, qui circa idem tempus transfretaverat, præ gaudio concepto de nepotibus sibi a Deo datis, illuc[2] accessit, et per aliquot dies morabatur ibidem. Eodem tempore defuncti sunt in itinere Romano episcopus Landavensis,[3] et Gilebertus cito post, Londoniensis.

A.D. 1134. Birth of Geoffrey of Anjou. Henry crosses to Normandy. Deaths of prelates.

Qualiter Robertus Curtheuse obierit.

Eodemque anno, cum Dominus noster Jesus Christus, qui neminem perire desiderat, jam duci Roberto satis amplum pœnitentiæ spatium et humiliationis concessisset, videlicet jam fere XXX^ta^. annorum in orbitate vel carcere transactorum, abusus est illo Dei beneficio. Intumuit enim superbia, minis, maledictionibus[4] et detractationibus, cum potius divinis jugiter obsequiis et

Cause of the death of duke Robert of Normandy.

[1] Herveus died 30 Aug. 1131. Fasti, i. 326.

[2] *illuc*] W. and A. C. D. have *in Normanniam*.

[3] scil. Urbanus. See Fasti, ii. 241.

[4] *maledictionibus*] meledicccionibus, MS.

A.D. 1134. precibus assiduis incubuisse teneretur, utpote diu afflictus et jam senex. Contigit igitur una dierum festivorum, cum rex novam vestem, quam vulgariter robam appellamus, de scarleto sumens, assuetus de eodem semper panno robam fratri suo Roberto transmittere, capam conabatur induere, sed invenit introitum capucii, quod *gulerun* Gallice appellatur, nimis arctum; unde contigit, quod unam suturæ puncturam tantum confringens, eam deposuit, et dixit, "Hæc capa deferatur danda fratri meo R[oberto], qui argutius me caput habet." Quæ cum ipsi delata fuisset induenda, invenit illam jam dictam puncturam, quæ per incuriam cæsoris,[1] quia minima, relinquebatur non resuta, ait dux, "Unde hæc quam sentio fractura?" Et nuncius quæ contigerant seriatim jocando duci referebat. Et dux, quasi alto vulnere saucius irrugiit, dicens, "Heu, heu, nunc nimis vivo! Quid adhuc vitam protraho infelicem? Ecce, frater meus, immo proditor meus et supplantator, me jam adeo spernit et vilem habet, ut mihi,[2] tanquam præbendario suo, pro elemosina suos veteres et dissutos transmittit panniculos!" Flens igitur et ejulans devovit manducare ex tunc et deinceps, nec postea cibum vel potum sumere voluit, in semetipso desæviens et deficiens; et sic mortuus est,[3] maledicens diei nativitatis suæ. Quod cum rex Henricus audisset, non multum infortunio condolens, jussit eum in ecclesia conventuali Gloverniæ reverenter sepeliri. Jacuit autem eo tempore imperatrix filia regis graviter infirmata, propter difficultatem partus filii sui, quem nuper pepererat; sed matrona prudens thesauros suos viduis, orphanis, et aliis pauperibus larga manu distribuit, et sic mortis evasit periculum.

fol. 46 *a*.

His burial at Gloucester

Rog. Wend ii. 214.

Sickness of of the empress.

Rog. Wend. ii. 215.

[1] *cæsoris*] So also A. F.; cessoris, C. D. The Edd. have *incisoris*, but without authority.

[2] *mihi*] michi, MS.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

De morte Henrici I. regis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 215. Anno M°.C°.XXX°.V°. rex moratus in Normannia,[1] cum die quadam a venatu rediisset,[2] apud Sanctum Dionisium in silva Leonum de murena comedit avidius, quam[3] amare præ ceteris consuevit; et, cum medici eam[4] ei prohibuissent, rex minime adquievit. Cum autem, natura succumbente, invaluisset infirmitas,[5] rex Henricus, regum terrenorum maximus, in fata concessit, cum regnasset xxxv. annis ac tribus mensibus.[6] Illius autem obitum ventus vehementissimus præsignavit, qui in vigilia Symonis et Judæ turres, ædificia et arbores usquequaque subvertit. Luna etiam eodem anno passa est eclipsim mirabiliter, iiii°. kalendas Augusti. Hic rex magnificus ac piissimus pro animæ suæ redemptione cœnobia fundavit de Radinges,[7] de Cirencestre;[8] de Prato ante Rothomagum, et de Mortuo-Mari; municipia vero, præter turres et castella, xxv. opere construxit sumptuoso. Proli suæ vero et toti generi suo prudenter ac magnifice providit. Corpus autem regis apud Rothomagum diu jacebat inhumatum, quia vivus desideraverat et præceperat, ut corpus ejus, ubicunque moreretur, apud Radingum intumularetur. Viscera tamen ejus, cerebrum et oculi apud Rothomagum sunt humata. Rog. Wend. ii. 216. Reliquum vero corpus cultello incisum, sale et mirra respersum, pro fœtore intolerabili quem cadaver exhalabat et circumstantes inficiebat, in coriis insutum est taurinis, cum pannis ceratis. Unde et medicus ille, qui magno pretio conductus caput mortui securi diffidit, ut

A.D. 1135. Death of Henry I.

Violent wind.

27 Oct.

Eclipse of the moon. 29 July.

Monasteries founded by Henry.

Putrescent state of the royal corpse.

[1] *Normannia*] Normanniam, MS. and A. C. *pr. m.*, D. F.

[2] *rediisset*] redisset, MS.

[3] *quam*] At first written *quas*.

[4] *eam*] At first *eas*, as in W. A. C. D.

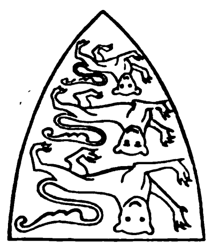
[5] *infirmitas*] imfirmitas, MS.

[6] In W. A. C. D. is added, "prima die Decembris;" but according to Flor. Wig., p. 75, and Gervase, col. 1339, he died 2 Dec.

[7] *Radinges*] Radingo, E.

[8] *Cirencestre*] Euencestre, MS. and F.; Eiuencestre, E.

A.D. 1135. cerebrum extraheret nimio jam fœtore corruptum, cecidit in extasim;[1] et quamvis lintheaminibus caput ejus involvisset, et species odoriferas prægustasset, ex fœtore tamen, licet ad talia assuetus, cirurgicus ille extinctus est, pretio sibi pacto male gavisus. Et ille fuit ultimus ex multis, quos rex Henricus interemit. Hoc quoque creditur divinitus evenisse, ut sic saltem cognoscant etiam gloriosi suæ carnis vilitatem.[2] Inde quoque corpus regium deportatum est Cadomum, ubi pater ejus requiescit. Et cum esset in ecclesia positum ante patris tumbam, cœpit humor continuo niger et horribilis coria taurina cum pannis eliquando, more olei penetrare; qui in vasis sub feretro susceptus, magnum intuentibus horrorem et olfacientibus periculum pestifer inculcavit. Et nisi hiemalis frigiditas fœtoris magnitudinem repressisset, tam aera vicinum quam homines letaliter infecisset approximantes.[3]



Obiit rex Henricus Ius.

The king's body is carried to Caen.

Nota vilitatem carnis humanæ. Prodest enim ad humilitatem.

De sepultura regis Henrici I.

Burial of Henry I. at Reading.

Tandem cadaver memoratum in Angliam, sequente multa nobilium, prælatorum et religiosorum turba, est allatum, et apud Radingum in ecclesia conventuali, quam ipse rex a fundamentis construxerat, ante majus altare regaliter, ut decuit, præsentibus archiepiscopis, episcopis et abbatibus propter hoc convocatis, diebus Nataliciis est sepultum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 216.

[1] *cecidit in extasim*] Added in marg.

[2] In the margin is drawn the shield of England reversed, with a crown beneath.

In the lower margin is added the following note: "Considera, homo, licet pulcher[r]ime, vilitatem corporis tui, quia propter hoc hæc scribuntur." In F. this note is introduced into the text, after the word *extasim.*

[3] *Unde et medicus . . . approximantes*] The whole of this passage is marked in the margin with a red wavy line, and the words "*Vacat, vacat, quia offendiculum,*" yet a similar passage appears in Wendover and in the larger Chronicle, A. C. D., and is evidently borrowed from Hen. Hunt., p. 386. See also Gerv. Cant., col. 1339, and Hoveden, col. 481.

Stephanus, filius Theobaldi, comitis Blesencis, coronatur.[1]

Rog. Wend ii. 216. Anno Domini M°.C°.XXXVI°.[2] Defuncto autem rege Henrico I. antequam corpus ejus sepulturæ traderetur, Stephanus, nepos ejusdem regis ex sorore Adala, uxore scilicet Theobaldi, comitis Boloniæ, et frater Theobaldi junioris, comitis Blesencis, vir magnæ strenuitatis et audaciæ, quamvis sacramentum fidelitatis imperatrici de regno Angliæ nunquam sibi usurpando præcipue jurasset, diadema tamen regium, Deum temptans et fidem violans, temere invasit. Unde, Deo judice et ultore, parvo tempore inde in pace gaudebat, sicut sequens sermo declarabit; sub gladio enim vivens, ætatis suæ partem consumpsit potiorem. Congregatis igitur Londoniis regni magnatibus, meliorationem legum promisit certissime, juxta piam universitatis provisionem. Willelmus quoque, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui primus sacramentum ex omnibus prælatis fecerat imperatrici, de regno Angliæ contuendo sibi et conservando, Stephanum in regem consecravit, vicesima secunda die[3] post mortem regis avunculi sui. Quid plura? Hiis visis, omnes, tam præsules quam comites et barones, qui filiæ regis et heredibus suis juraverant fidelitatem, consensum unanimem præbuerunt, dicentes fore nimis turpe, si tot nobiles, enervato tam nobili, alicui feminæ subderentur. Hugo præterea Bigod, Henrici regis senescallus, præstito juramento, probavit coram archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, quod, cum rex ageret in extremis, imperatricem exheredavit, et Stephanum sibi constituit successorem. Die igitur sancti Stephani,

[Margin, left: Rog. Wend. ii. 217. (beside "jurasset"); fol. 46 b. (beside "alicui feminæ")]

[Margin, right: A.D. 1136. — Stephen, count of Blois, usurps the crown. — *Coronatur rex Stephanus.* — The prelates and nobles swear fealty to him. — 26 Dec.]

---

[1] The shield of England, erect, with a crown above, is drawn in the margin.

[2] *Anno . . . m.c.xxxvi.*] Written over an erasure of part of the rubric. It is copied in F. In W. and A. C. D., much of what follows is entered under the year 1135.

[3] This date is taken from Malm., ii. 704. Hoveden and other authorities say 26 Dec., as, indeed, is stated further on.

A.D. 1136. omnium cum favore idem Stephanus, ut prætactum est, per ministerium Willelmi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, diademate suscepto, rex est ab omnibus acclamatus, et initiale festum regale splendide celebravit.

Juramentum Stephani, novi regis.

Stephen confirms the covenants sworn to at his coronation.

Coronatione itaque magnifice completa, homagiisque susceptis, perrexit rex novus Oxoniam, ibique confirmavit pacta, quæ Deo, populo et ecclesiæ sanctæ in die coronationis suæ in districto fidei examine spopondit, quæ hæc fuerunt: Primo, cum juramento vovit firmissime, tactis cum Dominico corpore evangeliis,[1] quod, defunctis episcopis vel abbatibus, non retineret ecclesias vacantes in manu sua, sed statim electioni canonicæ consentiret, et electos continuo investiret. Secundo, quod nullius clerici vel laici silvas in manu retineret, sicut rex Henricus fecerat, qui singulis annis eos implacitaverat, si vel venationem cepissent in silvis propriis, vel si eas ad proprias necessitates distraherent. Tertio vovit, quod Danegeld,[2] id est, de qualibet hida terræ duos solidos, quod antecessores ejus accipere consueverant pro sustinenda guerra contra Danos, nec tempore pacis voluerunt remittere, ipse benigne in perpetuum condonaret. Hæc autem specialiter, et alia multa generaliter se juravit servaturum, sed, humani generis inimico procurante, fidem in omnibus enormiter violans, nihil horum, quæ Deo promiserat, observavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 217.

Rog. Wend. ii. 218.

De quibusdam malis pronosticis.

Thunderstorm on the day of

Eodem vero anno, in triste præsagium futurorum, contra naturam hyemis, horribilia tonitrua cum damp-

[1] *evangeliis*] euuangeliis, MS. | [2] *Danegeld*] Daneweld, MS. and F.

noso fulgure et stupenda coruscatione,[1] adeo mundum perturbatione concussit[2] die qua Stephanus rex applicuit, quod videretur mundialis machina in antiquum chaos reversura. A.D. 1136. Stephen's landing.

De victrici combustione Londoniis.

Ecclesia quoque Sancti Pauli Londoniensis eodem anno ab igne, qui accensus est ad pontem, est combusta;[3] qui debacchando[4] perrexit usque ad ecclesiam Danorum. Eodemque anno Stephanus rex[5] de se confisus et jam bene corroboratus, præsentibus archiepiscopis cum duobus episcopis Wintoniensi et Saresbiriensi, totum thesaurum, quem avunculus suus congesserat, occupavit, videlicet centum milia libras,[6] exceptis vasis et jocalibus. Tunc quoque[7] comes Gloverniæ venit in Angliam, Robertus nomine; cujus prudentia et fortitudine rex S[tephanus] sustentabatur, et episcopi ei inclinarunt. The church of St. Paul, London, burnt. Stephen seizes the treasures of the late king.

Concordia facta est inter regem S[tephanum] et regem Scotorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 218. Per idem tempus David, rex Scotorum, qui imperatrici fidelitatem fecerat, in Angliam hostiliter veniens, Carleolum[8] et Novum-Castellum super Thynam cepit, et suos imposuit. Promovit igitur rex Stephanus contra eum exercitum copiosum, et regi Scotorum potenter occurrit apud Dunelmum. Sed cum ipsius impetus nimis formidaretur, intermeantibus amicis, concordatus est cum eodem, quia freno discretionis[9] cohibitus, rex David reddidit Novum-Castellum; Karleolum vero retinuit regis Stephani voluntate, pre- David, king of Scotland, takes Carlisle and Newcastle. He makes peace with Stephen.

---

[1] *coruscatione*] coruschacione, MS.
[2] *concussit*] So also in F.
[3] *combusta*] conbusta, MS.
[4] *debacchando*] debacando, MS.
[5] *rex*] Added in marg.
[6] *libras*] Altered by a recent hand to *librarum*.
[7] *Tunc quoque*] On an erasure.
[8] *Carleolum*] Karlel', E.
[9] *discretionis*] discresc̃onis, MS.

A.D. 1136.

Stephen gives Huntingdon to the son of king David.

cibus amicorum emolliti. Rex tamen Scotorum homagium regi Stephano non fecit, licet postulatus, quia homagium et fidelitatem filiæ regis Henrici et nepti suæ ante fecerat.[1] Filius autem regis David homo regis Stephani effectus est, et dedit ei rex jure perpetuo Huntendonam de se tenendam. Rediens vero

Splendid court held at London.

rex ad propria, tenuit curiam Londoniis ad Pascha, qua nunquam in Anglia splendidior tenebatur, non tantum in esculentis vel poculentis, sed in auro et argento, gemmis et vestibus pretiosis. Deinde in festo Do- (R. Wend. ii. 219.)

30 April. Rumours of Stephen's death.

minicæ Ascensionis, nescitur quo semine susurrorum initiali, divulgatum fuit per Angliam regem esse mortuum; unde maxima in regno surrexit perturbatio.

Hugh Bigot seizes the castle of Norwich.

Nam Hugo Bigot castellam Norwici ingressus, noluit illud reddere, nisi regi; et attemptata sunt alibi multis locis facta temeraria, quæ deinceps vel non sedabantur, vel difficultate, et cum dampno et scandalo sunt pacificata. Et hoc fuit magni[2] mali pullulantis seminarium, ut sermo sequens declarabit. Cœpit ergo ex hinc Normannorum oriri proditio et apparere, sed rex viriliter resistens, actibus vividis se probavit non

Stephen takes the castle of Batinton.

defunctum. Nam primo cepit castellum de Batintona, cujusdam scilicet Roberti, proditoris sui.

Siege of Exeter.

Indeque Exoniam[3] obsidens, quam tenebat Baldewinus de Redvers contra eum, violenter, sed sero et cum difficultate, castrum sibi redditum optinuit cum civitate.

Clemency of Stephen blamed.

Rex autem quorundam effeminatorum et pusillanimium pravo usus consilio, debitam vindictam in captos suos non exercuit proditores, unde multa ei postea mala machinabantur, secundum illud propheticum, "Misereamur impio, et non discet facere justitiam."[4]

The king occupies the isle of Wight, and banishes

Perrexit igitur rex ad Vectam insulam, et abstulit eam Baldeuuino memorato; et jam magis provocatus, quia

---

[1] *ante fecerat*] Added on to the text.

[2] *magni*] mangni, MS.

[3] *Exoniam*] Oxoniam, MS. and F.; but the reading adopted from W. and A. D. is the right one, as confirmed by the Sax. Chron., p. 382, and Hen. Hunt., p. 389.

[4] Is. xxvi. 10.

minime humiliabatur, ipsum ab Anglia affugans, exilio condempnavit. Rex itaque, hiis prospere gestis, venit venatum apud Brantonam, non longe ab Huntendona, et ibi de forestis procerum suorum et venationibus et quibusdam libertatibus, voluntarie et non judicialiter, multos[1] supplantavit, et votum, quod Deo et populo fecerat, a justitia nequiter exorbitans, violavit.

A.D. 1136. Baldwin de Redvers. He violates his oath as to forest rights at Bramton.

fol. 47 a.

Gaufridus, comes Andegavensis, quædam castra Normanniæ sibi subjugavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 219. Eodem tempore Gaufridus, comes Andegaviæ, et uxor ejus Matildis sine difficultate aliqua castra Normanniæ optinuerunt, cum firmitatibus omnibus Willelmi Talevaz, quas habuerat in manu sua, exulato Willelmo. Inde, mense Augusto, cum apud Rothomagum pervenissent, peperit Matildis ibi comiti Gaufrido filium suum tertium, quem vocavit Willelmum. Et jam comes ex successibus cœpit superbire, et in suos desævire. Proceres vero Normanniæ super hoc indignantes,[2] miserunt propter Theobaldum, comitem Blesencem, fratrem regis Stephani, ut ad eos venire non pigritaret, Normanniam recepturus. Qui veniens Luxovias, in jejunio decimi mensis, audivit ibi Stephanum fratrem suum in regem Angliæ sullimatum,[3] et in solio regni jam bene roboratum. Comes vero Glovverniæ Robertus reddidit Theobaldo Falesiam, asportata prius inde pecunia non modica de thesauro regis Henrici.

Rog. Wend. ii. 220.

Geoffrey, count of Anjou, acquires some castles in Normandy. Birth of William, his third son. The Norman nobles invite Theobald, count of Blois, to join them. Falaise is given up to him.

Obierunt Angliæ prælati.

Rog. Wend. ii. 220. Anno quoque sub eodem Willelmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Willelmus Exoniensis, et Johannes Rofensis[4] episcopi, obierunt.

Deaths of prelates.

---

[1] *multos*] Added in marg.
[2] *indignantes*] indingnantes, MS.
[3] *sullimatum*] Added in marg.
[4] John, bp. of Rochester, died 22 June 1137. Chron. Gerv., col. 1343.

Rex Francorum cepit homagium Eustachii, de Normannia.

A.D. 1137. Stephen crosses to Normandy. He makes peace with the king of France, and his son Eustace does homage for Normandy. Truce concluded with the count of Anjou. Annual payment to Theobald, count of Blois. Stephen returns to England.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.VII°. rex Anglorum Stephanus transfretavit in Normanniam, fugiente a facie ejus comite Andegavensi;[1] ubi, martiis actibus indulgens, omnia quæ incepit, potenter ac feliciter consummavit. Hostes enim dissipavit, hostilia castra subruit, et prosperatus est in actibus universis. Concordiam quoque cum Francorum rege prudenter composuit, et filius ejus Eustachius homagium ei de Normannia[2] fecit. Hæc autem videns consul Andegavensis Gaufridus, cujus uxori idem rex sacramentum fecerat, Angliam ab eo requirebat; sed tamen, cum vidisset se vires regias tunc temporis non posse superare, cepit inducias, acceptis ab ipso rege pro bono pacis v. milibus marcarum singulis annis percipiendis. Theobaldo etiam, fratri suo, comiti Blesenci, conquerenti quod injuste Angliam invaserat, cum esset [ætate][3] minor, duo milia marcarum reddere[4] pepigit annuatim; et sic fratres pacificati, ab invicem recesserunt. Cunctis igitur ibidem prospere gestis, ad Angliam transfretavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 220. Rog. Wend. ii. 221.

Obiit rex Francorum Lodowicus.

Death of Louis VI. Louis VII. succeeds. Marriage of his daughters.

Eodemque anno obiit rex Francorum Lodowicus, et successit ei filius suus Lodowicus. Hic duxit uxorem Alienoram, filiam ducis Aquitanniæ, miræ speciei mulierem, ex qua duas filias generavit, quas duo filii magni comitis Theobaldi Flandrensis, Henricus et Theobaldus, duxerunt uxores, primogenitus primogenitam, et junior[5] natu juniorem.[6] Rog. Wend. ii. 221.

[1] *Andegavensi*] Andegvensi, MS.
[2] *Normannia*] Normania, MS.
[3] *ætate*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[4] *reddere*] Added in marg.
[5] *junior*] minor, W. A. C. D.
[6] *juniorem*] minorem, W., but not I.

De abhominationibus, quas Scoti in Anglos exercebant.[1]

Rog. Wend. ii. 221. Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.VIII°. Conradus Romanum adeptus imperium, annis XV. imperavit. Eodemque anno rex Anglorum Stephanus in diebus Nataliciis Bedefordense castrum obsedit, dicens nulla hora pacem esse hostibus concedendam. Sed, antequam ei castrum redderetur, rex Scotorum in Northanhumbriam exercitum ducens, tam ipse quam sui rem nimis execrabilem perpetrarunt. In ultionem enim et improperium imperatricis, cui etiam idem rex fidelitatem juraverat, mulieres gravidas findebant, et fœtus anticipatos ab uteris, et lactentes nonnullos ab uberibus extrahebant, et corpuscula in altum projicientes,[2] super mucrones lancearum vel gladiorum recipiebant, ut viderentur Herodis tempora renovari; insuper presbiteros super altaria trucidabant, crucifixorum capita præcidebant. Quæcunque igitur Scoti contingebant, plena horroris et inhumanitatis[3] erant.

A.D. 1138. Conrad III. elected emperor. Siege of Bedford castle. The king of Scots invades Northumberland. Cruelties committed by his army.

Rex S[tephanus] Scociam exterminando triumphavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 221. Rex igitur Stephanus exercitum grandem promovit in Scociam, sed, antequam illuc perveniret, rex Scotorum sese in sua recepit, loca petens inexpugnabilia. Rog. Wend. ii. 222. Et rex Anglorum australes Scociæ partes igne et gladio devastavit, et hiis consummavit negotium Martis exterminiis. Et sic in Angliam victor remeavit.

Stephen ravages the south of Scotland.

---

[1] *exercebant*] excercebant, MS.
[2] *projicientes*] proicientes, MS.
[3] *inhumanitatis*] At first written *humanitatis*, but corr. in marg.

A.D. 1138.

Multiplicantur adversarii.

The English nobles rise up against Stephen.

Exarsit interea tanta procerum contra eum indignatio,[1] ut fere ab omnibus hostiliter quæreretur.[2] Willelmus enim Taleboth Hertfordense castrum tenuit contra regem; Robertus, consul Gloverniæ, Ledes et Bristoldum. Hic erat filius nothus regis Henrici. Willelmus Luvel[3] tenuit contra eum castrum de Cari;[4] Paganellus, Ludehelawe; Willelmus de Moiun, castellum de Dunestor; Robertus de Lincolnia, castrum de Warham;[5] Eustachius filius-Johannis, castellum de Meltona; Willelmus filius-Alani, Salopesberi,[6] suum et quasi proprium; quod rex violenter cepit, et captorum in eo nonnullos suspendit. Quod audiens Walkelinus, qui castrum Doverense tenebat, illud reginæ reddidit[7] obsidenti. Rog. Wend. ii. 222.

Shrewsbury castle is taken. Dover surrenders.

Rex Scociæ Northanhumbriam hostiliter ingreditur.

The king of Scots again invades Northumberland. He is opposed by the northern nobles at Alverton.

Occupato itaque rege Stephano circa partes australes Angliæ, David, rex Scotorum, innumerabilem exercitum in Northanhumbriam promovit. Contra quem proceres regni borealis, jussu et ammonitione Turstani, Eboracensis archiepiscopi, fixo apud Alvertonam standardo, id est, regio insigni, viriliter restiterunt. Hujus autem pugnæ[8] principes fuerunt, consul Willelmus Albemarliæ, Willelmus de Notingham, Walterus Espec, et Gilebertus de Lascy. Archiepiscopus vero, cum ægritudinis causa huic pugnæ interesse non posset, Rog. Wend. ii. 222. fol. 47*b*

---

[1] *indignatio*] Added in marg.

[2] *quæreretur*] quateretur, W. A. C.

[3] *Luvel*] Bavel, MS. and F. This and other names are corrected from Hen. Hunt., collated with W. A. C. D.

[4] *Cari*] Can, MS. and F.

[5] *Warham*] Watham, MS.; Waltham, F.

[6] *Salopesberi*] Salespesbrꝫ, MS.

[7] *reddidit*] reddit, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F.

[8] *pugnæ*] pungne, MS.

Rog. Wend. ii. 223. misit loco suo Radulphum, Dunelmensem[1] episcopum, A.D. 1138. ad populum exhortandum. Qui, stans in acie media, in loco eminenti, usus est hujusmodi incentivo: "Proceres Angliæ clarissimi, et Normannigenæ, contra quos audax Francia contremiscit, quos Troja, flos Asiæ, huc transmisit, erigite capita et pensate, quod populorum quisquiliæ vos ad prœlia provocaverunt; qui in hac patria templa Dei violarunt, presbiteros occiderunt, qui nec pueris nec pregnantibus pepercerunt. Suos procul dubio peccatum illaqueabit. Utquid inertes et inermes vos strenui et armati timeretis? Sed jam finem loquendi conferunt hostes inordinate prorumpentes et proruentes, atque dissute, quod satis animo meo dinoscitur complacere. Siquis autem vestrum pro Deo pugnans et patria succubuerit, et morte pia occubuerit, absolvimus eum[2] ab omni pœna peccati." Ad Rog. Wend. ii. 224. hoc autem respondit omnis populus gentis Anglorum, "Amen! Amen!" Et reboabant montes et colles ex animoso clamore.

Speech of Ralph, bishop of the Orkneys

De campestri prœlio inter Anglos et Scotos.

Rog. Wend. ii. 224. Hunc autem clamorem audientes Scoti, vociferati sunt omnes in modum muliercularum, insigne patrium exaltando, "Albany! Albany!" Sed extinctus est cito clamor gladiorum tinnitu, et hastarum vibratarum fragore, et ictuum immanitate, sauciatorum quoque gemitu et clamore morientium. Turma Loenensium, qui gloriam primi ictus a rege vix impetrarunt, augmentatis[3] missilibus et lanceis longissimis, super aciem equitum Anglorum loricatorum potenter irruunt; ad

Battle of 'the Standard.'

[1] *Dunelmensem*] Copied from Wendover; but this is an error, since Geoffrey was bishop of Durham at the time. In Hen. Hunt. he is called "episcopum *Orcadum*," p. 388, and in John of Hexham, "Radulfum Novellum, episcopum suffraganeum," col. 262. Cf. Cont. Flor. Wig., p. 89.

[2] *eum*] Interlined.

[3] *augmentatis*] aumentatis, MS.

A.D. 1138. quos, quasi muro ferreo offendentes, impenetrabiles invenerunt. Viri autem architenentes et arcubalistarii gentis Anglorum, equitibus permixti, imbre sagittarum et spiculorum grandine letali Scotos, quos inermes repererunt, penetrabant, ad Tartara destinatos. Tota namque gens Anglorum et decus Normannorum circum standardum conglobata, manebat immobilis, quasi in acie una, disciplina militari castigata. Percusso vero casu sagitta summo Loenensium duce, corruit ipse, et gens ejus tota, hoc viso, in fugam est conversa. Quod et intuens Scotorum acies, quæ ex parte altera acerrime confligebat, animo consternata condoluit, et fugæ incunctanter[1] indulsit. Regalis autem acies, ex diversis gentibus constituta, simul ut hæc vidit, cœperunt primo sigillatim,[2] deinde vero fugere catervatim, rege solo adhuc persistente. Quod amici regis intuentes, coegerunt eum equo ascenso fugere velocissimo. Cujus filius in armis strenuissimus, aliorum fugam non attendens, sed soli gloriæ ac virtuti inhians, acies hostium impetu ardenti percussit, licet illius agmina contra equites loricatos resistere non valerent; sed tandem armatorum violentia potenter in fugam ipse et sui sunt compulsi. Et sic feliciter post cædem inauditam Angli triumpharunt. In quo certamine undecim Scotorum milia fama perhibet trucidata, exceptis illis, qui in segetibus et dumetis inventi sunt letaliter vulnerati. Ex Anglorum autem omnibus equitibus frater Gileberti de Lascy solus inventus est trucidatus, et peditum admodum paucissimi. Et cum turpiter vincerentur Scoti, suis sceleribus[3] maculati, nævum opprobrii exinde contraxerunt indelebilem; cum enim illis satirice dicitur lingua sua patria, "Yry, yry, standard," quasi obice telo confunduntur repercussi. Actum est autem bellum hoc cruentissi-

Flight of the king of Scots.

Rog. Wend. ii. 225.

The English obtain the victory.

Date of the battle.

[1] *incunctanter*] incuntanter, MS.
[2] *sigillatim*] singillatim, MS.
[3] *sceleribus*] celeribus, MS.

mum mense Augusto, ex comprovincialibus gentis Transhumbranæ. A.D. 1138.

Comes Gaufridus multos sibi subjugavit.

Geoffrey, count of Anjou, subdues several towns in Normandy.

Rog. Wend. ii. 225. Eodem anno, mense Octobris, Gaufridus, comes Andegavensis, Oximenses[1] sibi subjugavit et Baiocenses, necnon et Falesiam obsidione vallavit.

Eligitur Theobaldus in Cantuariensem archiepiscopatum.

The legate Alberic holds a council at London. 27 Nov. Richard de Beumeis ordained deacon. Theobald, abbat of Bec, consecrated abp. of Canterbury.

Rog. Wend. ii. 225. Anno quoque sub eodem Albericus, Hostiensis episcopus et ecclesiæ Romanæ legatus, in Angliam veniens, in Adventu Domini[2] Londoniis concilium in ecclesia Sancti Pauli celebravit. Ubi, ipso jubente legato, Henricus, Wintoniensis episcopus, Ricardum de Beumeis diaconum ordinavit. Et ipsa die, dum ordines celebrarentur, Theobaldus, abbas Beccensis, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem ab episcopis electus est, priore ecclesiæ Cantuariensis Jeremia præsente. Qui ab ipso consecratus[3] legato, Romam profectus est, ubi a papa Innocentio pallium suscepit.

Rex Stephanus Scociam hostiliter ingressus, cum filio regis obside recessit.

A.D. 1139. Stephen marches again into Scotland. The king of Scots

Rog. Wend. ii. 225. Anno Domini M°.C°.XXX°.IX°. rex Anglorum Stephanus post Natale Domini, castello de Liedes capto, perrexit Rog. Wend. ii. 226. in Scociam; et cum rem ibi ageret, ducibus Marte et Wlcano, rex Scotorum coactus est concordari cum eodem. Henricum igitur, filium regis, obsidem rex

---

[1] *Oximenses*] Oxomenses, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[2] On the 13th Dec. Cont. Flor. Wig., p. 114; Gerv., col. 1346.

[3] He was not consecrated till 8 Jan. 1139. Fasti, i. 8.

A.D. 1139.

gives his son as a hostage.

Siege of Ludlow castle.

Seizure of the bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln.

S[tephanus] secum ducens in Angliam, Ludehlawe castellum obsedit. Ubi idem Henricus, ab inclusis unco ferreo equo abstractus, pæne intra muros projectus est, sed rex ipse ab hostibus eum, ut miles egregius, laudabiliter retraxit. Inde ad Oxoniam, subjugato castello, profectus, cepit ibi in curia sua nimis perniciose Roge- fol. 48 a.
rum, Saresbiriensem episcopum, et Alexandrum Lincolniensem, ipsius nepotem, violenter, viliter eos contrectans,[1] nihil rectitudinis recusantes. Ponens igitur in carcerem antistitem Alexandrum, Saresbiriensem secum duxit ad castellum ejus, quod Divises vocatur, quo non est[2] splendidius intra fines Europæ. Afflictus igitur fame, et collo filii ejus, qui cancellarius fuerat, laqueum annectens, ut suspenderetur,[3] hac arte castellum optinuit, atque arte eadem Saresbiriense[4] oppidum[5] in suam recepit potestatem. Accipiensque thesauros pontificis, comparavit inde Eustachio filio suo Constantiam, sororem Lodouuici, regis Francorum, matrimonio copulandam. Inde quoque rex recedens, similiter egit de Alexandro, episcopo Lincolniensi, donec reddidisset eidem castella de Neuwerc et de Latforda.[6]

The castle of Devizes and town of Salisbury taken.

Marriage of Eustace, son of Stephen, to the daughter of king Louis.

The castles of Newark and Sleaford surrendered.

Matildis imperatrix venit in Angliam.

Arrival of the empress Matilda.

She is received into Arundel castle.

Eodem vero tempore Matildis, filia regis Henrici, Rog. Wend. ii. 226.
quæ fuerat imperatrix, cui etiam Anglia jurata erat, cum comite Roberto fratre suo in Anglia venit; et ad Rog. Wend. ii. 227.
portum Harundel applicans, a Willelmo de Albineto, qui reginam Adelizam, quæ castellum de Arundel et comitatum a rego Henrico pro dote habebat, recepta est cum lætitia et summa alacritate. Comes autem

---

[1] *viliter eos contrectans*] Added in marg.

[2] *est*] Added in marg., and with a plummet is written *invenitur*.

[3] *suspenderetur*] Written *suspenderentur*, but *n* expuncted.

[4] *Saresbiriense*] An error for *Sireburnense*, as in W. A. C. D. I., and confirmed by Hen. Hunt., p. 389.

[5] *oppidum*] opidum, MS.

[6] *Latforda*] So also in W. A. C. D.; *Eslefford*, Malm. ii. 718; *Slaforde*, Hen. Hunt., p. 389.

Gloverniæ Robertus, cum x. militibus et totidem sagittariis equestribus, per mediam terram regis Stephani transiens, Walingefordiam pervenit, et inde Gloverniam, annuncians adventum imperatricis Brieno filio-Comitis et Miloni de Glovernia, et quod eam apud Arundel reliquerat cum uxore sua et aliis.[1] Qui lætati sunt valde de adventu illius, et sese sollerter ad prœlia preparaverunt.

A.D. 1139.

Brian Fitz-Count, and Milo of Gloucester, prepare to take her part.

Surrexit murmur et rebellio contra regem Stephanum.

Anno quoque sub eodem Wintoniensis episcopus, frater regis Stephani et apostolicæ sedis legatus, pro eo quod rex invitatos ad prandium quosdam episcopos et alios nobiles proditiose nimis ac indecenter, ut prædictum est, ad deditionem castrorum coegerat, indignans;[2] cum Theobaldo archiepiscopo et aliis episcopis et prælatis Angliæ concilium apud Wintoniam celebrarunt, iii°. kalendas Septembris, ad quod fecerunt regem evocari. Qui comitem Albericum de Ver, in causarum varietatibus exercitatum,[3] misit ad concilium, de captione dictorum episcoporum, super qua erat impetitus, allegantem et factum regis defendentem, et dicentem, tempus belli horrere, cujus lex exlex est, et multa exercere[4] esse inevitabile, quæ pacis tempore constat emendanda. Et sic, sub spe humilitatis et satisfactionis super-filialiter promissæ sed nunquam solutæ, ab concilio recesserunt. Fama vero regis non mediocriter ex tunc cœpit denigrari, et aversa sunt multorum corda, qui de fidei regiæ læsione graviter sunt conquesti.

Council at Winchester, to which Stephen is summoned.

30 Aug.

Alberic de Vere is sent by the king as his advocate.

He loses favour with many.

Oriuntur dissensiones et mala in Anglia multa.

Rog. Wend. ii. 227.

Eodem quoque anno obiit Rogerus, antistes Saresbiriensis,[5] tam senio confectus quam mœrore. Post cujus

Death of Roger, bishop of Salisbury.

[1] *aliis*] aliis impedimentis, W. A. C. D.

[2] *indignans*] indignantes, MS. and F. Corr. from A. C. D.

[3] *exercitatum*] excercitatum, MS.

[4] *exercere*] excercere, MS.

[5] *Saresbiriensis*] Saresbꝫ, MS.

A.D. 1139. mortem rex Stephanus exilio dampnavit Nigellum, Elyensem episcopum, quia nepos erat Rogeri, Saresbiriensis episcopi, a quo in ejus perniciem traxerat incentivum. Cessaverunt igitur ab hoc tempore in Anglia curiæ regis et festivitates sollempnes; pax nusquam, cædibus et incendiis omnia vastabantur. Verumtamen, procurantibus episcopis, abbatibus et viris religiosis, non sine pretiosis muneribus, deferebatur confugientibus ad ecclesiam et cimiterium; similiter, sed non adeo confidenter et secure, aratris et aratoribus arantibus, et crucibus in compitis.

Nigel, bishop of Ely, exiled.

Miserable state of England.

Places of refuge respected.

Obiit Eboracensis.

Death of Thurstan, archbishop of York. William, chancellor of York, succeeds.

Tunc quoque temporis, Turstano, Eboracensi[1] archiepiscopo defuncto, Willelmus, ejusdem ecclesiæ cancellarius et postea thesaurarius,[2] successit.[3] Rog. Wend. ii. 227.

Rex Stephanus Lincolniam obsedit.

A.D. 1140. Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°. rex Anglorum Stephanus infra dies Natalicios urbem Lincolniæ obsedit, non deferens tantæ sollempnitati. Cujus firmitates Ranulphus, comes Cestrensis, receperat paulo ante, qui etiam regem Stephanum arcebat ab ingressu civitatis usque ad Purificationem beatæ Mariæ. Tunc vero comes præfatus, cum Roberto, filio regis Henrici et comite Gloverniæ, socero suo, et militia magna nimis, Lincolniam venit, ut solveret obsidionem; atque paludem intransmeabilem audacter transivit, et ipsa die, aciebus dispositis, regi bellum indixit. Ipse autem cum suis, ut vir admirandæ probitatis et audaciæ, aciem primam suscepit gubernandam; secundam illi, quos rex Stephanus exilio condempnarat; tertiam comes Glovernensis Ro-

Siege of Lincoln.

Rog. Wend. ii. 227.

R. Wend. ii. 228.

2 Feb.

Forces of the earl of Chester.

[1] *Eboracensi*] Eboɀ, MS.

[2] *thesaurarius*] thesaurius, MS.

[3] He was not consecrated till 26 Sept. 1144. Fasti, iii, 99.

bertus cum suis commilitonibus conducebat. Rex igitur super hiis certificatus, missam in ipsa sollempnitate Purificationis audivit ;ubi, cum de more cereum honori regio condignum accensum Deo offerens, manibus Alexandri episcopi imponeret, extinctus est et confractus, in triste præsagium futurorum periculorum in foribus imminentium.[1] Cecidit insuper super altare vas eucaristiæ cum corpore Christi, rupto filo, præsente episcopo; quod regiæ ruinæ pronosticum fuit manifestum. Porro rex magnificus talia non librans, summa sollicitudine acies disponit. Ipse quoque pedes omnem loricatorum multitudinem circa se, abductis equis, argumentose ac instructissime secundum militarem disciplinam collocavit, consules omnes cum suis commilitonibus in duabus aciebus equis instituit pugnaturos; sed acies eorum admodum parvæ existentes, paucos secum fictos et factiosos[2] comites habuerunt. Acies tamen regalis maxima erat, unico vexillo solummodo insignita.

A.D. 1140.

Prognostics previous to the battle.

The king's forces.

fol. 48 *b*.

Belli congressio; capitur rex S[tephanus].

Rog. Wend. ii. 228.

Battle before Lincoln.

Rog. Wend. ii. 229.

In principio autem pugnæ,[3] acies exheredatorum, quæ præibat, aciem percussit regalem, in qua erant[4] comes Alanus, comesque Robertus de Meslent, Hugo vero Bigod, comes Estanglorum, comes Symon, cum illo de Waranna, tanto impetu, quod alii eorum occisi, alii capti, alii autem per fugam sunt elapsi. Acies quoque, cui præerat comes Albemarlensis, et Willelmus Yprensis, percussit Walenses, qui a latere procedebant, ipsosque compulit in fugam; sed et acies comitis Cestriæ in cohortem[5] irruit memoratam, et, sicut acies prior, dissipata est in momento. Quo viso, fugerunt omnes

---

[1] *imminentium*] iminentium, MS.

[2] *fictos et factiosos*] At first written *ficti et factiosi*, as in W. A. C. D., and confirmed by Hen. Hunt., p. 391. F. follows the correction.

[3] *pugnæ*] pungne, MS.

[4] *erant*] erat, MS. and F.

[5] *cohortem*] choortem, MS.

A.D. 1140. equites regis, et Willelmus Yprensis, vir consularis, atque alii, qui fugæ non patuerunt,[1] omnes capti sunt vinculis mancipandi. Accidit autem res miranda, dum rex Stephanus, ut leo rugiens, solus in campo hinc illinc gladio fulminante desæviret, ita ut nullus ad eum accederet, mutato bellandi instrumento, cum gladius confractus deficeret, stridens dentibus spumantibus more apri silvestris, turmas in se irruentes bipenni, quam tenebat, repellens, laudem sibi perpetuam comparavit. O, si centum sibi similes associarentur, non captionis jacturam profecto rex bellipotens incurrisset, cum ipse solus vix potuit a tot hostibus capi vel superari! Captus est igitur rex Anglorum Stephanus in die Purificationis beatæ Mariæ, et ad imperatricem ducitur præsentandus; inque turri de Bristoldo tutæ custodiæ mancipatur.

Capture of king Stephen. 2 Feb.

Eclipsis solis.

Eclipse of the sun.

Eodemque anno eclipsis solis[2] facta est per totam Angliam horribilis et tenebrosa, ut imis[3] corpora cœlestia in suo defectu concordarent.

Imperatrix a multis suscipitur in Dominam.

The empress is generally acknowledged as 'Lady.'

Quo completo bello, imperatrix pæne ab omni Anglorum gente suscipitur in Dominam reverenter, affirmante quod justitiæ propagator Deus jus rerum eventu declaravit; exceptis Kentensibus, ubi regina regis Stephani et Willelmus Yprensis, qui contra eam pro viribus decertabant, morabantur.[4] Suscepta est autem ipsa imperatrix ab Alberico, legato Romano, et postea

Rog. Wend. ii. 229. Rog. Wend. ii. 230.

---

[1] *fugæ non patuerunt*] So A. C. D. In W., *fugæ non paruerunt*; but in ed. Wend. and Edd., *fugere non potuerunt*.

[2] *solis*] Added in marg.

[3] *imis*] So also F.

[4] *morabantur*] Added in marg.

a Willelmo,[1] Wintoniensi episcopo, necnon a Londoniensium civitate. Sed mox, in eadem facta seditione, a Londoniensibus expulsa, regem Stephanum poni jussit in compedibus. Et sic post paucos dies, cum avunculo suo rege Scotorum, et fratre suo comite Roberto, et aliis armatorum copiis, turrem Wintoniensis episcopi obsedit, et civitatem gravi afflictione contrivit, et cives xii^cim^. captos xviii^o^. kalendas Octobris, ad gravem compulit redemptionem. Episcopus igitur condolens suorum miseriæ, ilico misit pro regina et Willelmo Yprensi, ac ceteris Angliæ magnatibus regi Stephano faventibus, quos in suum auxilium evocatos animavit. Et, facto gravi impetu in exercitum imperatricis, omnes[2] qui in obsidione erant, in fugam compulerunt; et fugientes viriliter insecuti, ceperunt inter ceteros Robertum, comitem et fratrem imperatricis, in cujus custodia rex S[tephanus] tenebatur, cujus sola captione rex poterat a carcere liberari. Captus est autem in die Exaltationis sanctæ Crucis, sed incontinenti datus est rex pro eo; et sic ambo sunt a vinculis absoluti.

A.D. 1140. She is expelled from London. Winchester besieged. 14 Sept. The empress's forces are defeated. Robert, earl of Gloucester, is taken prisoner and exchanged for Stephen. 14 Sept.

Comes de Meslent pacificatur comiti Andegavensi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 230. Per idem quoque tempus Walerannus, comes de Meslent, qui omnibus Normanniæ præerat proceribus, cum comite concordiam iniit Andegavensi Gaufrido; et dedit ei castellum Montis-fortis et castellum Falesiæ. Et sic subdiderunt se ei omnes viri potentes citra flumen Sequanæ usque ad ripam Rislæ, ei fidelitatem facientes.

The count of Meulent makes peace with Geoffrey of Anjou.

---

[1] *Willelmo*] An error copied from Wendover; and so also in Wallingford, Matth. Westm., and other compilers. We should read *Henrico* here and below.

[2] *omnes*] Originally *compulerunt omnes*, as in W. A. C. D., but the former word is expuncted.

A.D. 1140.

De morte quorundam magnatum.

Robert de Sigillo succeeds as bishop of London. Eodem anno, Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, qui Universalis dicebatur, defuncto, successit Robertus de Sigillo; idibus[1] quoque Maii Albericus de Ver Londoniis occiditur, obiitque Aldewinus, fundator Malverniæ. Rog. Wend. ii. 230.

15 May. Deaths of notable personages.

Comes Robertus obsides quosdam duxit in Normanniam.

A.D. 1141. Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.I°. Robertus, comes Glovernien- Rog. Wend. ii. 231.

Robert, earl of Gloucester, goes to Normandy. sis, transfretavit in Normanniam, ducens secum quosdam obsides magnatum Angliæ, qui imperatrici favebant, ut comes Andegavensis eos salvo custodiret; suadens ut ad sibi subjugandam Angliam, ad ipsam incunctanter transfretaret. Quod tamen comes ad tempus facere renuit, propter Andegavensium rebellionem, et aliorum hominum suorum ipsum infestantium. Successful proceedings of the count of Anjou. Ipse vero, præsente adhuc comite Roberto, cepit Alnei et Moritonium, Tenerchebray et Cerenches,[2] castella comitis Moretonii; et Abrincacenses et Constantinienses eidem sese subdiderunt. Geoffrey de Mandeville fortifies the tower of London. Eisdemque diebus annoque præterito, Galfridus de Mandevilla firmare non cessavit turrim Londoniarum. King Stephen is defeated at Wilton, and William Martel is captured. Eodemque anno, cum rex Anglorum Stephanus apud Wintoniam[3] castellum quoddam firmaret, supervenit hostium suorum innumerabilis multitudo, ipsumque fugam inire, impetum faciens repentinum, coegerunt; quosdam ante fugam capientes, quosdam vero trucidantes. In hac autem pugna[4] captus est Willelmus Martel, vir martius et illustris, regis Stephani dapifer; et apud Walingeford adductus, custodiæ Brieni filii-

---

[1] *idibus*] In the margin is added, *vel idus*.

[2] *Cerenches*] Cereuches, MS.

[3] *Wintoniam*] A mistake for *Wiltonam*, copied from Wendover, who has it from Hoveden, p. 488. See Hen. Hunt., p. 392; Gerv., col. 1358; the latter of whom assigns this event to 1143.

[4] *pugna*] pungna, MS.

Comitis fuit deputatus. Qui, in odium et opprobrium ipsius, quia multum ei in expeditionibus nocuerat, fecit ei carcerem in castro specialem, dicens ei satirice, "Quia Willelmus diceris cognomento Martel, tibi specialem utrem, qui Cloera vulgariter dicitur, præparabo, ut martellus includatur in cloera."[1] Et intrudens eum inibi, miserabiliter eum artavit. Et antequam exiret, reddidit imperatrici Sireburniense castellum pro liberatione sua.

A.D. 1141.

fol. 49 a.

His imprisonment by Brian Fitz-Count.

He gives up Sherburn castle to the empress.

Matildis imperatrix obsessa regem Stephanum delusit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 232.

Audiente autem eodem tempore rege Stephano imperatricem esse apud Oxoniam in castello, cum parvo comitatu, collegit exercitum copiosum, et post festum sancti Michaelis illo profectus, ipsam usque ad Adventum Domini obsidione vallavit. In tanto autem tempore, cum vidisset imperatrix ab amicis suis se esse neglectam et succursu destitutam, excubitores regis castrum obsidentis arte deludens feminea, nocte per Tamensem fluvium, glacie tunc constrictum ac nive dealbatum, albis circumamicta vestibus, cum quibusdam sodalibus per posticum illac clam de nocte exivit de castello; nec est visa a vigilibus vel exploratoribus, præ similitudine nivis et candidi muliebris vestimenti. Et sic fefellit oculos[2] intuentium. Abiit ergo nocte illa ad castrum de Walingeford, ad Brienum filium-Comitis, ut se salvaret ab hostibus. Sic tamen castrum Oxoniense regi redditum est, ipsa caute liberata.

Stephen lays siege to Oxford castle.

29 Sept.

30 Nov.

Escape of the empress by a stratagem.

She goes to Brian Fitz-Count at Wallingford.

---

[1] *dicens .... cloera*] et vocavit Cloere Brien, W. A C. D.

[2] *oculos*] Added in marg.

Concilium Londoniis salubriter celebratum.

A.D. 1142. Council held at London.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.II°. Willelmus,[1] Wintoniensis episcopus et sedis jam apostolicæ legatus, in media Quadragesima Londoniis concilium, rege præsente et nonnullis episcopis, celebravit. Nullus enim honor vel reverentia jam ferebatur, ingrassante odio et werra, Dei ecclesiæ vel ejus ordinatis; et quæ primo cœperat aliquantulum sustineri, jam, scintilla[2] penitus caritatis extincta, refriguit. Æque namque clerici et laici capiebantur, redimebantur, et vinculis tenebantur. Sancitum[3] est igitur ibi et generaliter constitutum, ne aliquis, qui ecclesiam cimiteriumve violaret, vel in clericum aut virum religiosum manus violentas apponeret, ab alio quam ab ipso papa posset absolvi. Statutum est insuper, ut aratores cum aratris, et confugientes ad cruces compitorum, pacem haberent cimiterialem. Accensis igitur candelis et pulsatis campanis, excommunicaverunt ipsi omnes prælati universos hujus saluberrimi statuti violatores, et hoc de consensu hinc inde guerram sustinentium, sicut erat a principio. Et sic pro magna parte milvorum rapacitas conquievit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 232.

Decrees sanctioned at it.

Rog. Wend. ii. 233.

Rex cepit Willelmum[4] de Mandevilla, unde plura castra lucratus est.

Capture of Geoffrey de Mandeville at St. Alban's.

Eodem tempore rex Stephanus cepit Willelmum de Mandevilla apud Sanctum Albanum, illuc veniens in manu potenti. Verumtamen antequam ipsum cepisset, certamen cruentum sustinuit; unde comes de Harundel, miles licet egregius, in medio aquæ, quæ

Rog. Wend. ii. 233.

[1] *Willelmus*] An error for *Henricus*. See note above, p. 267.

[2] *scintilla*] cintilla, MS.

[3] *Sancitum*] Sanccitum, MS.

[4] *Willelmum*] So also Wendover; but this is a mistake for *Gaufridum*, as in Malm., p. 752, and Hen. Hunt., p. 393.

Haliwelle dicitur, a Walkelino de Oxeai,[1] milite strenuissimo, simul cum equo suo prostratus est,[2] totis membris attritus et fere submersus. Milites autem beati Albani, qui tunc, ad ecclesiæ ejus custodiam et villæ fossatis circumdatæ, ipsum vicum, qui juxta cœnobium est, inhabitabant, ipsi regi in faciem viriliter restiterunt, donec ecclesiæ, quam quidam ex regiis æditnis violaverant, satisfecisset ipse rex, et ejus temerarii invasores. Reddidit igitur memoratus Willelmus regi turrem Londoniarum, quam meliorarat, cum castellis de Waldene et de Pleiseto, antequam a vinculis solveretur. Et hoc fecit rex contra jusjurandum, quod fecerat apud Sanctum Albanum, et contra statuta concilii nuper, eo consentiente, celebrati. Inde quoque magis induratus et obstinatus cœnobium adiit Ramesiæ,[3] et, expulsis monachis nonnullis, invasores suos ibidem imposuit; rurales insuper ecclesiolas obiter impudens invasit deprædando.

A.D. 1142.

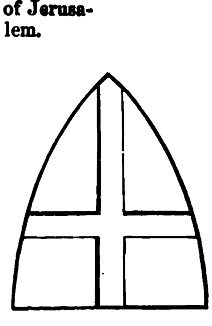
The knights of the abbey resist the king's forces.

Geoffrey de Mandeville yields up the tower of London.

Excesses committed by him at Ramsey abbey.

Fulco, rex Jerosolimitanus, moritur.[4] *Sanguinius debacchatur.*[5]

Death of Fulk, king of Jerusalem.



Rog. Wend. ii. 233.

Tempore quoque sub eodem Fulco, rex Jerosolimitanus, campos pertransiens Achonênses, contigit ut leporem sedentem excitaret. Quem cum clamor omnium insequeretur fugientem, rex, arrepta lancea, ut leporem insectaret, equum calcaribus urgebat anxius inconsulte. Qui, offensis pedibus equinis, præceps corruens in ter-

---

[1] *Oxeai*] Oxehaie, E.

[2] *est*] On an erasure.

[3] In the margin is added the following note: "*Hoc melius et plenius in sequentibus.* Nota hic, qualiter invasores et violatores ecclesiæ Ramesiæ, scilicet, Willelmus [*l.* Gaufridus] de Mandeville et ejus complices, recedentes puniebantur; facti amentes enim cantitabat unusquisque Anglice,

'I ne mai a-live,
For Benoit ne for Ive.'

Ita torquebantur ab hiis duobus, qui ibidem quiescere dinoscuntur. *Verte sequens folium.*" In F. this note is incorporated in the text, instead of the words *magis induratus . . . deprædando.*

[4] In the margin is drawn, in trick, the shield of Jerusalem, reversed, with a crown beneath.

[5] *debacchatur*] debacatur, MS.

A.D. 1142. ram, cerebrum tam per os quam aures et nares contritus effudit, ita ut nullus opem ferre posset moribundo.

13 Nov. Obiit itaque idus[1] Novembris, corpusque ejus Jerusalem delatum est, et sepultum in ecclesia Dominici sepulchri, cum lacrimis omnium astantium et lamentis, patriarcha Willelmo ministerium exequiarum sollempniter perficiente. Cum autem regis obitus inter infideles disseminaretur, Sanguinius, Turcorum vir potentissimus, cum

Capture of Edessa by the Turks.

innumera armatorum copia Edessam obsidens civitatem, diuturno eam labore subegit, atque Christianos omnes in ea inventos sine misericordia trucidavit, conditioni Rog. W. ii. 23. non parcens, sexui vel ætati. Sic itaque urbs antiquissima et Christiano nomini[2] insignita, ac Thadæi[3] apostoli prædicatione conversa, nunc, proh dolor! sub

Saints buried at Edessa.

infidelium potestate[4] est redacta. In hac enim corpus beati Thomæ apostoli, una cum corporibus sancti Thadæi supradicti et beati regis Abgari, sepulchrum dicuntur[5] accepisse. Hic autem est Abgarus ille, topar-

Testimony of Eusebius concerning the epistle of king Abgarus.

cha illustris, cujus epistolam ad Dominum missam Eusebius Cæsariensis commemorat in Ecclesiastica Historia; quem et Domini[6] dignum rescripto docet, utriusque ponens epistolam, et in fine ita subjungens, "Hæc in archivis publicis Edessæ urbis, in qua tunc Abgarus fol. 49 b regnavit, ita descripta reperimus in hiis cartis, quæ gesta regis Abgari servata[7] antiquitus continebant." Hæc præterea civitas sæpe legitur postmodum a Christianis subacta, et iterum, quasi fortunæ ludo, [a Saracenis][8] possessa.

---

[1] *idus*] This form is used often in the MSS., but in the present instance W. A. C. D. have *idibus*.

[2] *nomini*] So also in all the MSS., but corr. *nomine* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

[3] *Thadæi*] Tadei, MS.

[4] *potestate*] potestatem, MS.

[5] *dicuntur*] Added to the text.

[6] *Deum*, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C.

[7] *servata*] After this word, *sunt* has been added, and *continebant* corrected into *continebantur*; but these alterations (followed by F.) only disturb the original text, as it appears in W. A. C. D.

[8] *a Saracenis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

Obitus[1] *Innocentii papæ et quorumdam aliorum.* A.D. 1142.

Rog. Wend. ii. 234. Eodemque anno, defuncto papa Innocentio, Celestinus successit;[2] qui cum sedisset in cathedra Romana mensibus v., diem clausit extremum. Cui succedens Lucius, Romanam rexit ecclesiam mensibus xi. et diebus xii. Eodemque anno obiit Willelmus,[3] episcopus Wintoniensis, cui Henricus successit. Huic vero Henrico Lucius papa pallium misit, volens apud Wintoniam archiepiscopum constituere, et vii. ei episcopos assignare; sed subortis multorum murmurantium contradictionibus, dissimulavit papa cum silentio propositum suum consummare. Rog. Wend. ii. 235. Hoc quoque anno magister Willelmus, Malmesbiriensis[4] monachus, Anglorum Historiam scribendo terminavit.

Celestinus II. succeeds to pope Innocent II.

Pope Lucius II. sends a pall to the bp. of Winchester.

William of Malmesbury finishes his history.

Obiit Lucius papa; succedit Eugenius. Lincolnia obsidetur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 235. Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.III°., defuncto papa Lucio,[5] Eugenius sedit in cathedra Romana mensibus iiii^or^. et diebus xxi. Eodem anno rex Anglorum S[tephanus] Lincolniam obsedit, et cum construeret municipium contra castellum, quod tenebat comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, operarii ejus fere octoginta a comite præfato interfecti sunt; et sic, re imperfecta, recessit. Eodem anno Robertus Marmiun, vir bellicosus, qui monachos Coventrenses a suo monasterio expulerat, et de ecclesia illa castellum fecerat, dum contra hostes decertaret, A.D. 1143.

Siege of Lincoln.

Death of Robert Marmiun.

---

[1] *Obitus*] Obitu, MS.

[2] Innocent II. died 24 Sept. 1143, and Celestin II. was elected 26 Sept. following. Lucius II. was not consecrated till 12 March 1144. Jaffé, pp. 598, 606, 610.

[3] *Willelmus*] An error again for *Henricus*, due to Wendover. William Giffard died in 1128, as rightly stated above, p. 242, and Henry of Blois, who succeeded him in 1129, survived till 1171. Fasti, iii. 7.

[4] *Malmesbiriensis*] Malmebiriensis, MS.

[5] This is also an error, taken from Wendover. Pope Lucius II. did not die till 15 Feb. 1145, under which year the event is again rightly entered. Eugenius III. was elected the same day. Jaffé, pp. 615, 617.

A.D. 1143. inter prædones suos ante ipsum monasterium solus, nescitur quo casu, excommunicatus peremtus est.

Nota, quod puniuntur transgressores.

Fate of Geoffrey de Mandeville and other violators of the church.

Eodem vero tempore Gaufridus, consul de Mandevilla, qui consimile scelus in ecclesia Ramesiensi præcepto vel permissione regis Stephani commiserat, ultore, ut creditur, beato Benedicto, ante ipsam ecclesiam inter consertas suorum acies a pedite quodam, nescitur qua causa, solus sagitta percussus,[1] occubuit interfectus.[2] Et, quod mirabile relatu est, ecclesia illa, dum pro castello teneretur, a suis parietibus sanguinem ubertim emisit, indignationem divinam manifestans. Arnulphus etiam, ejusdem comitis filius, qui post mortem patris ecclesiam illam pro castello tenebat, a rege captus est et exilio condempnatus. Princeps etiam militiæ suæ ab equo corruens, cerebro fuso expiravit. Magister insuper peditum Reinerus, monasteria solitus incendere et confringere, cum exulans transfretaret, naufragio periit, igne Tartareo concremandus. Quid plura? Omnes, quos non salvavit tabula pœnitentiæ et satisfactionis, ecclesiæ violatores horribili ultione puniebantur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 235.

Rog. Wend. ii. 236.

Gaufridus comes in Normanniam dominatur.

Geoffrey of Anjou assumes the title of duke of Normandy.

Eodemque anno Gaufridus, comes Andegavensis, a civibus Rothomagensibus sollempniter susceptus est, et exinde dux Normanniæ appellatus.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 236.

[1] *percussus*] Originally *percussit* (and so in F.), but corrected by a later hand.

[2] *interfectus*] Intestatus, MS. and F.; but evidently an error, and corr. from W. A. C. D.

[3] *appellatus*] apellatus, MS.

Rex Stephanus castellum de Farenduna cepit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 236. Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.IIII°. rex Anglorum Stephanus comitem Gloverniæ, cum multis aliis inimicorum suorum, a constructione castri Farundunensis[1] potenter fugavit, et municipium illud in suam suscepit potestatem. Eodemque anno,[2] xviii°. kalendas Octobris, obiit Gaufridus de Mandevilla. Gaufridus quoque, comes Andegavensis, potiorem Normanniæ partem sibi subjugavit. Eodemque anno obiit papa Celestinus; successit autem Lucius. Qui plus æquo cum lucris inhiaret[3] tantum temporalibus, a quodam nominatissimo[4] versificatore sic meruit reprehensione diffamari:—[5] A.D. 1144. Capture of Faringdon castle. Death of Geoffrey de Mandeville. 14 Sept. Death of pope Celestin II. Lucius II. succeeds.

"Lucius est piscis, rex atque tirannus aquarum,
A quo discordat Lucius iste parum;
Devorat hic homines, hic piscibus insidiatur,
Esurit hic semper, hic aliquando satur.
Amborum sensus[6] si lanx[7] æquata probaret,[8]
Plus rationis habet, qui[9] ratione caret."

Satirical verses on his avarice.

Rex Stephanus cepit comitem Cestriæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 236. Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.V°. rex Anglorum Stephanus cepit Ranulphum, comitem Cestriæ, ad se pacifice venientem, apud Norhamtonam, et eum in carcere tenuit, quousque ei reddidit castellum Lincolniæ, cum ceteris, quæ suæ erant ditionis; unde rex notam incurrit proditionis indelebilem. Et sic idem rex, pudore seposito, apud Lincolniam sollempniter coronam portavit. A.D. 1145. Ralph, earl of Chester, taken prisoner. Stephen wears the crown at Lincoln.

[1] *Farundunensis*] Farundunensi, MS.
[2] *anno*] Interlined.
[3] *inhiaret*] inhieret, MS.
[4] *nominatissimo*] nominatisso, MS.
[5] These verses are quoted also by Giraldus Cambrensis, in his work intitled "Speculum Ecclesiæ" (MS. Cott. Tib. B. xiii. f. 26), but as referring to pope Lucius III.
[6] *sensus*] vitam, Girald.
[7] *lanx*] lanxs, MS.
[8] *probaret*] levaret, Girald.
[9] *qui*] quam, Girald.

Obiit Lucius papa.

A.D. 1145. Death of pope Lucius II.

Tempore quoque sub eodem Lucius, lucis expers et honoris, ab hac luce migrans, papatus sui dies, licet paucos, sine plangentium lamentatione terminavit.

Henricus, rex futurus, in Normanniam transiit.

A.D. 1146. Henry of Anjou passes over to Normandy. 9 May. Rumours spread of his future reign. William de S. Barbara made bp. of Durham.

Rog. Wend. ii. 236. Rog. Wend. ii. 237.

Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.VI°. Henricus, comitis Andegaviæ et jam ducis Normanniæ Gaufridi et imperatricis Matildis filius, in Normanniam transiens, in die Dominicæ Ascensionis apud Beccum honorifice susceptus est a conventu. Dicebatur autem passim, quasi spiritu prophetico, et de aure ad aurem cum famæ incremento, quod in Anglia diu et gloriose regnaturus erat, murmur personabat. Quo utique tempore Willelmus de Sancta Barbara, decanus[1] Eboracensis, factus est episcopus Dunelmensis.[2]

De morte Gaufridi, abbatis Sancti Albani.[3]

25 Feb. Death of Geoffrey, abbat of St. Alban's.

Rog. Wend. ii. 237. fol. 50 *a*.

Eodem anno, v. kalendas Martii, obiit reverendæ memoriæ Gaufridus, abbas ecclesiæ Beati Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, postquam annis xxvi. laudabiliter monasterium rexerat memoratum. Cujus beneficia et pietatis opera si quis audire desiderat, librum relegat de Gestis Abbatum in ecclesia prædicta confectum, et invenietur nomen ejus cum benedictione sempiterna. Vacavit autem ecclesia memorata, pio pastore viduata, a [quinto][4] kalendis Martii usque ad Rogationes proximo sequentes. Quo tempore monachi elegerunt Radulphum Gubiun, monachum de gremio ecclesiæ

25 Feb. to 8 May. Election of Ralph Gubiun as abbat.

---

[1] *decanus*] From this word the text is wanting in D. to *armaturæ*, p. 279.

[2] He was consecrated 20 June, 1143. Fasti, iii. 283.

[3] This chapter is omitted in F.

[4] *quinto*] Supplied from W. A. C. and "Vit. Abbat." p. 64.

suæ, virum utique bene literatum et bonis moribus informatum. Facta igitur rite electione, rex Stephanus in die Dominicæ Ascensionis ad Sanctum Albanum veniens, assensum præbuit et favorem, et gratanter dictum Radulphum suscepit in abbatem. A.D. 1146. Confirmed by king Stephen. 9 May.

De morte quorundam episcoporum Angliæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 237. Eodemque anno[1] defuncti sunt pontifices, Ascelinus Rofensis, Rogerus Cestrensis, et Robertus Herefordensis. Ascelino autem successit Walterus, archidiaconus Cantuariensis; Rogero Walterus, prior Dorobernensis; Roberto Gilebertus, abbas Glovernensis. Eodemque anno, post Turstanum, Eboracensem archiepiscopum, Henricus, monachus Cisterciensis, illum optinuit archipræsulatum.[2] Deaths and succession of prelates.

Cometa.

R. Wend. ii. 237. Circa idem tempus cometa, nunquam boni significativa, diebus multis apparuit in occidente, circumquaque latissime coruscando. Comet.

De discordia orta inter papam Eugenium et regem Francorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 238. Eodem anno papa Eugenius Parisius veniens, consecravit Petrum quendam, Aimerici, ecclesiæ Romanæ cancellarii, nepotem, in archiepiscopum Bithuricensem, contra Lodowici Francorum regis voluntatem. Quod Consecration of the archbishop of Bourges by pope Eugenius III.

[1] The dates assigned to the deaths and succession of these bishops are erroneous. Ascelin, bishop of Rochester, died 24 Jan. 1147-8, and was succeeded by Walter, 14 March following. Roger of Chester died 16 April 1148, and was not succeeded by Walter till 2 Oct. 1149. Robert de Betun, of Hereford, died 22 April 1148, and was succeeded by Gilbert Foliot, 5 Sept. following. Fasti, i. 457, 544; ii. 558.

[2] Henry Murdac was consecrated archbishop of York 7 Dec. 1147. Fasti, iii. 99.

A.D. 1146. in injuriam suam factam perpendens, indignatus est vehementer; appositisque publice sacrosanctis reliquiis, palam juravit, quod præfatus ille archiepiscopus, quamdiu ipse viveret, civitatem Bituricam non intraret. Sicque per triennium regis capella[1] subjacuit interdicto, et in quamcunque civitatem, vicum vel castellum intrabat, suspendebatur celebratio divinorum. Tandem, Bernardo, abbate Clarevallensi persuadente ad hoc, inclinatum est[2] cor regis, ut archiepiscopum reciperet memoratum, et pro transgressione perjurii omniumque peccatorum remissione, Jerosolimam se promitteret profecturum. Per totam igitur Galliam fit exactio generalis, ita ut nec ordo nec sexus quempiam[3] excusaret, quin auxilium regi conferret pecuniare. Unde factum est, ut, multis imprecantibus et maledictiones in caput regium congerentibus, non est prosperatum suæ iter peregrinationis, sicut apparuit, ut supradicetur, in rei consummatione.

Interdict laid on the 'Chapel' of the king.

Reconciliation with the pope, by mediation of S. Bernard.

Tax imposed in France, in aid of a crusade.

Fiunt apud Sanctam[4] Genovefam canonici regulares ex secularibus. Concilium celebratur Remis.

25 April.

The secular canons of St. Geneviève are expelled, and regulars introduced.

Eodem quoque anno,[5] in majore Letania, Eugenius papa apud Sanctam Genovefam sollenni cum fuisset processione receptus, servientes ecclesiæ, quos Margalerios vocant, clericos domini papæ inordinate se ingerentes, fustigaverunt, et infra parietes ecclesiæ sanguinem effuderunt. In cujus transgressionis ultionem, ædificia servientium, quæ circa ecclesiam erant, sunt subversa, necnon et canonicorum commutata; expulsisque eisdem canonicis secularibus, regulares sunt introducti. Papa vero inde Remis profectus, tenuit ibidem concilium,[6] in quo dampnata est hæresis[7]

Rog. Wend. ii. 238.

Rog. Wend. ii. 239.

Council held at Rheims.

[1] *capella*] So also F. In W. A. C. *persona*.
[2] *est*] Interlined.
[3] *quempiam*] quampiam, MS.
[4] *Sanctam*] Added in marg.
[5] In 1147. Jaffé, p. 626.
[6] On 21st March 1148. Jaffé, p. 631.
[7] *hæresis*] Added in marg.

Eudonis pseudoprophetæ, de cujus incantationibus et fantasiis melius est silere quam loqui. In hoc etiam concilio constituit prædicatores de negotio Terræ Sanctæ, quæ eo tempore adeo erat a Sarracenis oppressa, quod liberis discursibus eam ubilibet pervagarentur. A.D. 1146.

Imperator Conradus arripuit iter Jerosolimitanum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 239. Ad prædicationem Bernardi, abbatis Clarevalensis, viri nominatissimæ sanctitatis et scientiæ, Conradus, Romanorum imperator, crucesignatus est, et cum eo innumera hominum multitudo. Mense igitur Maio proximo sequente dictus imperator iter peregrinationis arripiens, duxit secum ad septuaginta milia equitum loricatorum, exceptis peditibus, junioribus, mulieribus, insuper et equitibus levis armaturæ. The emperor Conrad III. undertakes a crusade.

Sequitur rex Francorum Lodowicus peregrinans.

Rog. Wend. ii. 239. Secutus quoque est illum Lodowicus, rex Francorum, voto astrictus memorato, cum non minori numero armatorum. Qui propositum habentes segregatim[1] incedere, ut commodius[2] vitæ necessaria et jumentis[3] tantæ multitudinis non deessent, alacriter sunt profecti. Transcursa igitur Bavaria et Danubio flumine, [in Austriam][4] Hungariam et utramque Pannoniam, Bulgariam et[5] provincias Mœsiam et Daciam, tandem in Thraciam[6] descenderunt. Inde vero Constantinopolim pervenientes, cum imperatore Manuele colloquium habuerunt. Inde, transito Hellesponto, Europæ termino, in Bithiniam,[7] quæ He is followed by Louis VII. Route taken by the French army,

---

[1] *segregatim*] In the margin is added *vel separatim*.

[2] *commodius*] comodius, MS.

[3] *vitæ . . . jumentis*] In W. A. C. D. this passage is made clearer, by inserting *sibi* before *vitæ*, and *pabula* after *jumentis*.

[4] *in Austriam*] Supplied from Will. Tyr. p. 901 and W. A. C. D., but the MSS. all omit *in*, which is required to complete the sense. In consequence of this omission, in Edd. and ed. Wend. the accusative cases are altered to the ablative, but *contra fid. codd.*

[5] *Bulgariam et*] Bulgarorum etiam, W. A. C. D., and confirmed by Will. Tyr.

[6] *Thraciam*] Traciam, MS.

[7] *Bithiniam*] Bithitiniam, MS.

A.D. 1146. prima est ex Asianis provinciis, in pago Calcedonensi castra statuerunt.

Prosecutio viæ imperatoris.

Progress of the emperor.

Tunc Romanorum imperator Conradus, transvectis[1] Bosforum legionibus suis, relinquens a læva Galatiam et Panagoniam,[2] et utrumque Pontum, a dextris autem Frigiam, Lidiam et Asiam Minorem, per mediam Bithiniam iter agens, Nicæamque a dextris deserens, Lichaoniam pervenit. Rog.Wend. ii. 239. Rog.Wend. ii. 240.

De proditione detestanda imperatoris Constantinopolitani.

Preparations of the sultan of Iconium to resist the crusaders.

Soldanus autem Yconensis, audito tantorum principum adventu, a multo retro tempore ex ultimis orientis finibus militaria convocarat auxilia; et quomodo ab imminentibus[3] hostium [periculis][4] se posset eximere, curam gesserat propensiorem. Congregatis igitur copiis militaribus innumeris, in finibus Lichaoniæ expectabat caute, ut, loco et tempore nacto opportuno,[5] hostibus suis impedimentum, ne procederent, procuraret. Rog.Wend. ii. 240.

Treachery of the Greek emperor.

Tradiderat quoque Constantinopolitanus imperator imperatori Romano viæ duces, propter locorum abusum et itineris difficultatem, qui ipsum præcederent; sed illi consueta[6] Græcorum usi malitia, de mandato, ut dictum est, imperatoris Constantinopolitani, qui semper Latinorum successibus invidebat, cœperunt ex industria trahere legiones per salebras et invia, ut ab hostibus. fol. 50 *b*.

---

[1] *transvectis*] transjectis, W. A. C. D. In Will. Tyr., p. 901, *transjectis trans Bosphorum.*

[2] *Panagoniam*] So all the MSS.; but in Edd. and ed. Wend. corrected *Paphlagoniam*, as in Will. Tyr., p. 902.

[3] *imminentibus*] iminentibus, MS.

[4] *periculis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[5] *opportuno*] oportuno, MS.

[6] *consueta*] conconsueta, MS.

de facili opprimerentur. Et ecce, dictus Soldanus, horum conscius, videns Christianos in angusta solitudinis loca demersos, irruit in eos non præmeditatos; et tam ipse quam sui armis instantes in equis velocibus, quibus pabula non deerant, Romanos lentos et armis onustos, equos habentes fatigatos et famelicos, nec hostibus resistere nec cum eis congredi valentes, dissiparunt et vicerunt, et stragem ex eis miserabilem confecerunt et inauditam. Factum est autem occulto Dei judicio, "cujus viæ investigabiles sunt et judicia abissus multa,"[1] ut de septuaginta milibus equitum loricatorum, et de tanta peditum manu, quorum erat numerus quasi infinitus, vix decima pars evaderet, aliis fame, aliis gladio, nonnullis etiam vinculis mancipatis. Evasit tamen imperator cum paucis principibus suis, et cum difficultate nimia Nicæam usque pervenit ad urbem. Indeque Constantinopolim profectus, ibi usque ad sequentis veris initium perendinavit.[2]

A.D. 1146. Defeat of the Christian army under Conrad.

R.Wend. ii. 241.

The emperor escapes, and remains at Constantinople.

Imperator Conradus vix evadens venit Jerusalem.

Rog.Wend. ii. 241. Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.VII°. imperator Conradus, hieme transcursa, navibus devectus cum suis ad portum pervenit Achonensem. Et inde Jerosolimam profectus, a rege Baldeuuino, cleroque civitatis ac[3] populo, cum hymnis[4] et laudum canticis in sanctam perducitur civitatem.

A.D. 1147. He proceeds to Jerusalem.

Rex Francorum Lodowicus sequitur, sed a Turcis confunditur.

Rog.Wend. ii. 241. Quo utique tempore Lodowicus, Francorum rex, imperatorem secutus, post longos viarum labores, ad vada

Progress of the French army.

[1] Ep. ad Rom. xi. 33. and Ps. xxxv. 7.

[2] *perendinavit*] perhendinavit, MS.

[3] *ac*] a, MS.

[4] *hymnis*] ymnis, MS.

A.D. 1147. Menandri[1] cum lxx. milibus loricatorum militum, præter classem quæ eum sequebatur, pervenit. Ubi, Francis ad aquas accedere volentibus, ex adversa fluminis ripa hostes inveniunt[2] infideles, qui aquæ usum eis et transitum interdicere satagebant; sed, vadis demum inventis, hostibus invitis et pluribus neci traditis, ac vinculis quibusdam mancipatis, omnes in fugam compellunt, et eorum spolia rapientes, facti sunt de victoria lætiores. Inde vero Laodiciam transeuntes, montem quendam arduum et ascensu difficilem ac descensu difficiliorem in itinere repererunt. Erat autem Francorum consuetudo, ut quosdam de illustribus viris assignarent,[3] qui agmina præirent et qui a tergo sequerentur, ad imbellis populi custodiam et sarcinarum, qui etiam cum principibus de modo viæ et dietæ quantitate contrectarent.[4] Præivit[5] autem illa die vir nobilis Gaufridus de Rancona, qui cum agminibus montem ascendens, ad ejus fastigium pervenit. Quod Turci cognoscentes,[6] qui exercitum illum a latere insidiantes sequebantur, in Francos potenter irruunt non præmeditatos, et eorum dissolvunt legiones. Cecidit autem die illa, casu miserabili, gloria Francorum et virtus, qui forte peccatorum tenebris involuti, mistica secum Domino devotionis munera non ferebant. Sed quæ audeat creatura Creatori dicere, "Quare sic facis?". Rex tamen, licet mente non mediocriter consternatus, a principali proposito tamen, ne obprobrium in Francia disseminaretur, minime potuit revocari, quin peregrinationem suam ardenti desiderio cum exercitu mutilato, regina sua Alienora comitante, prosequeretur. Ad iter igitur se alacriter procingens,[7] post multos labores et

Rog. Wend. ii. 242.

Defeat of the French by the Turks.

Louis arrives with difficulty at Jerusalem.

[1] *Menandri*] So W. A. C. D. F. and Edd., yet it is an obvious error for *Mæandri*, as in Will. Tyr., p. 905.

[2] *inveniunt*] veniunt, MS.

[3] *assignarent*] assingnarent, MS.

[4] *contrectarent*] This is the form generally used, but W. A. C. read *tractarent.*

[5] *Præivit*] In the text *Præit*, but corr. in marg., and so in F.

[6] *cognoscentes*] congnoscentes, MS.

[7] *procingens*] accingens, W. A. C. D.

sollicitudines, Jerosolimam tandem pervenit. Ubi a rege honorifice susceptus, et ab universo clero et populo honoratus, de tristitia præterita aliquam suscepit consolationem; verumtamen universi de casu sinistro, qui acciderat ei, non mediocriter condolebant. A.D. 1147.

De obsidione Damasci a principibus prædictis, et de proditione orientalium magnatum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 242. Completis autem de more orationibus, convenerunt ad colloquium imperator Romanus cum regibus Jerosolimorum et Francorum, ut de fructu tantæ peregrinationis et Terræ Sanctæ agerent incremento. Tandem omnes communiter in hoc consenserunt, ut Damascum, urbem fidelibus nimis dampnosam, obsiderent; et, sicut fuerat prælocutum, ad urbem accedentes, pomeria occupant suburbana, quibusdam ibi ex hostibus interfectis. Indeque ad flumen, quod urbem lambebat, accedentes, ut sitis angustias relevarent, invenerunt secus ripam tantam hostium multitudinem, qui eis aquæ usum auferre vacabant,[1] quod nec regem Jerosolimorum vel Francorum cum eorum legionibus accedere propius permiserunt. Quo cognito, imperator Conradus ira vehementi succensus, per medias Francorum acies[2] cum suis principibus ad certaminis locum indistanter usque pervenit, et cuidam ex Turcis, fidelibus instantius resistenti et strenue nimis dimicanti, caput galeatum, collum et humerum loricatum, brachium quoque sinistrum cum subjecto latere, a reliquo corpore ense fulminante separavit. Quod factum hostes ita deterruit, quod versus urbem, flumine relicto, fugere decertarent. Obtento itaque flumine, fideles ad urbem liberius accedentes, eam obsidione cinxerunt. Unde cives post longam obsidio-

Resolution taken to besiege Damascus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 243.

Bravery of the emperor Conrad.

fol. 51 *a*.

Damascus is besieged.

[1] *vacabant*] So W. A. C. F. I.; *vocabant*, D. The Edd. have *volebant*, but without authority.

[2] *acies*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1147. nem fidelium virtutem metuentes et numerum, compositis sarcinis, clam et de nocte fugere decreverunt. Sed prius nostrorum animos, quorum corpora vincere nequibant, corrumpere auro[1] attemptantes, dederunt quibusdam principibus ex nostris de partibus orientis[2] pecuniam infinitam, qui proinde, proditione intestina nequiter machinata, obsidionem solvere conarentur. Instantibus autem ad hoc proditoribus memoratis, loquentes cum imperatore et rege Francorum in dolo, inceptæ obsidionis difficultatem allegabant, et ob hoc aliis erant de proditione suspecti. Unde eorumdem malitiam manifestam attendentes, et fraudem orientalium principum detestantes, omnes quotquot erant de partibus occidentis, præviis imperatore et Francorum rege, ad regna sua, via[3] eadem qua venerant, confusi valde sunt reversi. Qui deinceps non solum illos, qui huic interfuerunt proditioni, sed et omnium orientalium principum abominabantur[4] consortia, et mendacia abhorrebant.[5] Falsis insuper cum fictis sermocinationibus[6] per exercitum Christi disseminaverant, insuperabilem succursum ad liberationem civium ab universis finibus orientis adventasse. Proh pudor! immo et proh dolor! ipsi infideles fidelium infidelitatem execrabantur. Ex tunc igitur diatim tepuit Christianorum circa liberationem hereditatis Christi devotio, et minus ferventes in amore peregrinationis efficiebantur.

Some of the Christian princes of the East are bribed to raise the siege.

The crusaders return homewards.

Robertus fit episcopus Lincolniensis.

Eodem anno Robertus de Cheisneto, archidiaconus Legecestrensis, creatus est[7] in episcopum Lincolniensem, Rog. Wend. ii. 244.

Robert de Chesney made bp. of Lincoln.

[1] *auro*] Added in marg.
[2] *orientis*] At first written *orientibus*.
[3] *via*] Interlined.
[4] *abominabantur*] abhominabantur, MS.
[5] *abhorrebant*] aborrebant, MS.
[6] *sermocinationibus*] Added in marg.
[7] *est*] Interlined.

per manum Theobaldi, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, post jejunium mensis septimi episcopus consecratus. A.D. 1147.

Reimundus, princeps Antiochiæ, a Turcis interficitur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 244. Anno Domini M°.C°.XL°.VIII°., post recessum imperatoris et Francorum regis de partibus Terræ Sanctæ, Noradinus, Sanguinii filius, princeps Turcorum potentissimus, fines Antiochenos hostiliter ingressus, Nepam castrum obsidione vallavit. Qui enim Deum oderunt, ex casibus præteritis audaces facti extulerunt caput. Contra quem Reimundus, princeps Antiochenus, exercitum ducens, inconsulte nimis et prœlio inequali præsumens de sua strenuitate decertavit; unde contigit, quod ipse cum aliis quibusdam viris nobilissimis occubuit interfectus. Noradinus igitur, jam cornua erigens superbiæ ac audaciæ, nullo obstante progressus, Hareng castrum munitissimum obsidens, potenter occupavit. Et sic libere in partibus illis universa depopulando percursabat, donec rex Jerosolimitanorum superveniens ipsumque hostiliter impetens, retrocedere coegit potentissime, et sua repetere receptacula cum confusione. Eodem vero anno facta est translatio sancti Erkenwaldi[1] episcopi, xviii°. kalendas Decembris. Anno quoque sub eodem, in sollempnitate Pentecostes, David, rex Scotorum, militaribus armis decoravit Henricum, filium primogenitum Gaufridi Plantegenest, jam ducem Normannorum, et neptis suæ olim imperatricis Matildis.

A.D. 1148. Siege of Nepa by Noradin. Death of Reimund, prince of Antioch. Capture of Hareng. Noradin is defeated by the king of Jerusalem. Translation of St. Erkenwald. 14 Nov. Knighthood conferred on Henry, son of Geoffrey Plantagenet. 30 May.

Dux Normannorum Gaufridus dedit Normanniam Henrico,[2] filio suo.

Rog. Wend. ii. 244. Anno Domino M°.C°.XL°.IX°. Gaufridus, Normanniæ dux,[3] reddidit Henrico filio suo Normanniam, heredi-

A.D. 1149. Duke Geoffrey

[1] *Erkenwaldi*] Erkewaldi, MS.
[2] *Henrico*] Henrio, MS.
[3] *dux*] Interlined.

A.D. 1149. tatem suam ex parte matris suæ, contra prohibitionem regis Francorum; unde discordia orta est inter ipsum Gaufridum ducem et comitem et regem Francorum. Et hoc evenit infra mensem quo reversus est rex Francorum ab infausta peregrinatione sua. Tempore quoque sub eodem, reversus est et imperator ab infortunata eadem peregrinatione. Eodemque anno Lexebona capta est a Christianis. Gilebertus Folioth efficitur episcopus Herefordensis.[1] Cui non rite ingredienti in episcopatum apparuit nocte sequenti quædam horribilis visio,[2] dum de multis frivolis meditaretur, præcipue de astronomia; erat enim vir optime literatus, licet vanus et secularis. Et erat sermo increpantis personæ talis, "Gileberte Folioth, qui meditaris tot et tot, Deus tuus est Astaroth." Cui episcopus expergefactus respondit, "Non, non, sed Dominus Deus Sabaoth." Hujus visionis pronosticum dicitur per æmulos fuisse[3] completum, non habito respectu ad responsionem episcopi,[4] in persecutione beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, sicut plenius dicetur in subsequentibus.

Makes over Normandy to his son, which occasions a quarrel with France. Capture of Lisbon. Gilbert Foliot made bp. of Hereford. ¶ *Nota mirabilem visionem.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 245.

Rex Francorum L[odowicus] cepit homagium ducis Henrici.

A.D. 1150. Anno Domini M°.C°.L°., rex Francorum Lodowicus et Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, cum militia copiosa venerunt ante turrem de Archis, ob discordiam memoratam; ubi etiam affuit dux Normanniæ Henricus, et pater ejus comes Andegaviæ Gaufridus, cum ingenti exercitu Andegavensium, Britonum et Normannorum. Sed videntes utriusque partis principes, quod legiones

Louis, king of France, meets the forces of the duke of Normandy and count of Anjou at Arques.

Rog. Wend. ii. 245.

[1] Gilbert Foliot was consecrated bishop of Hereford 5 Sept. 1158. Jaffé, i. 457. The vision is placed under the year 1168 in Wendover, ii. 323, and so in A. C. D. F.

[2] *visio*] Added in marg.

[3] *per . . . fuisse*] Originally *fuisse per æmulos*, but marked to be transposed.

[4] *episcopi*] After this word, *fuisse* is superfluously repeated.

illæ nequibant sine magna sanguinis effusione congredi, cœperunt de pace tractare; et, intervenientibus utrorumque amicis cum viris religiosis, rex Francorum cepit homagium ducis Henrici de Normannia, et sic pacifice recesserunt. Dux igitur Henricus, dum tractaret cum optimatibus suis de itinere suo in Angliam, pater ejus apud castrum Lery graviter infirmatus,[1] vii°. idus Septembris ab hac vita migravit.[2] Et sic Henricus, filius ejus, factus est comes Andegavensium, qui et dux fuerat Normannorum.[3] A.D. 1150. Peace concluded, and Louis receives the homage of Henry. Death of Geoffrey of Anjou. 7 Sept.

Gelu valde diuturnum.

fol. 51 *b*. Hoc etiam anno gelu cœpit a iiii°. idus Decembris, durans usque ad xi. kalendas Martii, ita, ut crederetur fere omne genus volucrum extinctum. Rivi quoque aquarum currentium molarem traxerunt spissitudinem, stagna quoque profunda, bipedalem; pecora vero siti et frigore perierunt, et pauperes. Tamisia quoque ita congelata est, ut bigis, summariis oneratis et equitibus audacter, quasi per stratam Londoniarum[4] publicam, transiretur. Great frost. 10 Dec. to 19 Feb.

Languente Radulpho, abbate Sancti Albani, substituitur Robertus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 245. Eodemque anno Radulphus, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, decidens in languorem, Robertum de Gorham, priorem suæ ecclesiæ, per consilium conventus suum constituit procuratorem, et totius abbatiæ rectorem. Robert de Gorham made rector of St. Alban's.

---

[1] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[2] The death of Geoffrey, and the previous events of this war, really took place in 1151. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 853.

[3] In the lower margin is written with a plummet, "Obiit Gaufridus, comes Andegav. Henricus dux Normann. fit comes Andegav.," apparently intended as a memorandum for a rubric.

[4] *Londoniarum*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1150.

De hæreticis[1] *Assisinis.*

Reimund, count of Tripoli, murdered by the 'Assisini.'

Anno quoque sub eodem Reimundus, comes Tripolitanus, vir potens et in armis strenuus, ab Assesinis est interfectus. Si quis autem scire desiderat de Assesinorum mansione et ritu, et detestabili superstitione, librum de Historiis quærat Orientalium.[2] Rog.Wend. ii. 245.

Divortium celebratur inter regem Francorum L[odowicum] et Alienoram.[3]

Divorce of Alienor, queen of Louis VII. Defamatory reports respecting her.

Eodemque anno[4] celebratum est divortium inter Lodouuicum, regem Francorum, et Alienoram reginam suam, pluribus de causis. Diffamabatur de multiplici adulterio, præcipue de quodam infideli infidelium[5] principe in terra orientali, dum rex bellicis negotiis indulsit, perpetrato. Item, improperatum ei fuit, quod de cachodæmonis incubæ fuerit stirpe procreata; sed propter honestatem, suppressis aliis causis, proposita[6] fuit hæc in propatulo. Erant consanguinei rex et ipsa Alienora, in quarto gradu. Rog.Wend. ii. 247.

Andegavenses subduntur Eustachio.

The nobles of Anjou(?) do homage to Eustace, son of king Stephen.

Anno sub eodem comites et barones Andegaviæ[7] fecerunt ligianciam et fidelitatem Eustachio, filio regis Stephani.

---

[1] *hæreticis*] heretis, MS.

[2] *mansione . . . Orientalium*] Written on an erasure. The work alluded to is that of William of Tyre, p. 994.

[3] In the margin, opposite to this chapter, is written in red letters, "*vacat*," as if to be expunged; but the whole is copied in F.

[4] In the margin of A., and in text of C. (but inserted after *dilationem accepit*), is this note: "Hoc in anno præterito, secundum alios." This divorce really took place 18 March 1152. "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 576.

[5] *infidelium*] imfidelium, MS.

[6] *proposita*] Originally *propisita*, but corr. by a later hand.

[7] *Andegaviæ*] More correctly, *Angliæ*, in A. C. D., and so in Ann. Waverl., p. 157.

Dux Normanniæ Henricus Alienoram ducit in uxorem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 248. Anno Domini M°.C°.LI°. dux Normannorum Henricus Alienoram,[1] quondam Francorum reginam, quam rex Lodouuicus nuper dimiserat, plus propter singularem, qua[2] inter omnes dominas pollebat, pulchritudinem quam moralitatem, desponsavit[3] Et[4] factus est idem Henricus dux Aquitanniæ et comes Pictaviæ, qui prius fuerat dux Normannorum et consul Andegavensium. Et hoc procuravit muliebris, immo potius dæmoniaca, astutia Alienoræ, ut sic promoveretur æmulus regis Francorum futurus Henricus, qui ad regnum suspiravit Angliæ; et sic in ultionem dicti divortii Henricus efficacius regem Francorum, cum vellet, expugnaret,[5] et potentius. Quo audito, rex Francorum, hujus rei ignarus, commotus est vehementer contra ducem Henricum, maxime eo quod genuerat duas filias ex prædicta Alienora; quapropter noluit ut illa ab aliquo filios susciperet, per quos exheredarentur filiæ memoratæ. Post festum igitur[6] sancti Johannis, cum dux Henricus esset apud Barbefluvium, ut ad Angliam transfretaret, convenerunt in unum rex Francorum, Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, comes Robertus Perticensis, comes Henricus Campaniensis, et Gaufridus, frater ducis Henrici, cum ingenti copia armatorum, ut duci Henrico Normanniam, Andegaviam, cum ducatu Aquitanniæ, et omnem terram suæ dominationis potenter auferrent; quam etiam hii quinque magnates inter se præpropere diviserunt. Convenientes igitur omnes apud Novum-Mercatum, castrum illud obsidione ceperunt,[7]

A.D. 1151. Marriage of Henry, duke of Normandy, to Alienor, the divorced queen of Louis.

Anger of Louis.

24 June.

He makes war against duke Henry.

---

[1] *Alienoram*] Alinoram, MS.

[2] *qua*] Originally *quas*, but *s* erased.

[3] *quam .... desponsavit*] On an erasure.

[4] *Et*] Added in marg.

[5] *expugnaret*] expungnaret, MS.

[6] *festum igitur*] At first *igitur festum*, but marked to be transposed.

[7] *ceperunt*] We should read *cinxerunt*, as in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1151. et fratrem ducis Gaufridum miserunt cum armata manu contra ducem Andegavensem expugnandum. Hæc autem audiens dux Henricus, recessit a Barbefluvio, obsesso castello pro viribus subventurus; sed antequam dux illuc veniret, redditum est castrum regi Francorum fraude illud observantium, ac si esset captum violenter. Tunc dux Henricus castrametatus juxta fluvium Andellæ, illas partes [1] cœpit devastare. Hæc provincia ad ducatum Normanniæ pertinebat, sed Gaufridus, comes Andegaviæ, post mortem Henrici, regis Anglorum, ad tempus eam concesserat Lodowico. Tradidit etiam igni castella inimicorum suorum, Baschervillam, Chitreium,[2] et Stirpineium,[3] cum castello Hugonis de Gurnaco, quod Feritatem appellant; denegabat enim idem Hugo debitum famulatum. Castellum insuper de Brueloles,[4] et aliud, quod Villa [5] nominatur, concremavit. Et inde [in] [6] Normanniam veniens, Richerum de Aquila graviter afflixit, qui suis subsidium contulerat inimicis, et municipum Bon-Mulins combussit. Circa finem vero Augusti, statutis militibus ad custodiam Normanniæ, dux ad Andegaviam pergens, obsedit castrum Montis-Sorelli; ubi obsidione coartans inclusos, Willelmum, dominum castri, qui partes fratris sui fovebat, cum aliis quampluribus cepit militibus. Hoc quoque infortunio Gaufridus, frater ejus, compulsus est cum ipso concordari. Rex interea Francorum de ducis absentia occasionem nactus, Normanniam intravit hostiliter, partemque burgi Regulariensis,[7] cum vico

Rog. Wend. ii. 249.

Castles taken or destroyed by the duke.

Siege of Mont-soreau.

Louis enters Normandy,

[1] *illas partes*] In Rob. de Monte, *ap.* Pertz, vi. 501, and Wendover, the text is rendered clearer by reading "partem illam Wilcasini" [Le Vexin].

[2] *Chitreium*] Chireium, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[3] *Stirpineium*] Surpeneium, MS. and D. F.

[4] *Brueloles*] Brueboles, W. A. C.; *Brieboles*, D. In Rob. de Monte, *Brucroles*. In all probability, we should read *Bresolles*.

[5] *Villa*] So in W. A. C. D., but in Rob. de Monte, "*Maculfi-villam* [Maconville], in Dorcassino pago."

[6] *in*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[7] *Regulariensis*] So in W. A. C. D., but it is, apparently, an error for *Tegulariensis* [*Tillières*], as in Rob. de Monte, p. 501, and Chron. Norm. ap. Du Chesne, p. 987.

quodam castri Vernolii, combussit; sed confestim, intervenientibus viris religiosis, statutæ sunt treugæ inter regem et ducem. A.D. 1151. but a truce is made with the duke.

Robertus de Gorham creatur[1] *abbas Sancti Albani.*[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 249. fol. 52 *a*. Hoc quoque anno, rege Anglorum Stephano ad Sanctum Albanum veniente, suggestum fuit ei de languore Radulphi abbatis; ubi, mediantibus episcopis ac ceteris prælatis, concessit ut in eligendo abbate liceret monachis suis uti privilegiis. Robertum igitur de Gorham, priorem ecclesiæ suæ, unanimi assensu in abbatem elegerunt; qui postea, xiiii°. kalendas Julii, abbatis suscepit benedictionem. Supervixit autem prædecessor ejus [post][3] promotionem ipsius diebus xix., et tunc defunctus, sepultus est in capitulo, in abbatum ordine reverenter. Quorum gesta laudabilia si quis audire desiderat, librum de Gestis Abbatum ecclesiæ Sancti Albani[4] repetat memorandæ. Election of Robert de Gorham, abbat of St. Albans. Rog. Wend. ii. 250. 18 June. Death of his predecessor Ralph.

Obiit Matildis, uxor regis Stephani.

Rog. Wend. ii. 250. Anno quoque sub eodem obiit Matildis, uxor regis Stephani, die Inventionis sanctæ Crucis, apud Halingeham,[5] castellum comitis Alberici de Ver; et in abbatia de Fevresham,[6] quam rex Stephanus vir suus fundaverat, traditur sepulturæ. Eodem quoque anno Johannes, monachus Sagiensis, factus est secundus antistes Moniæ insulæ, quæ est inter Angliam et Yberniam, Angliæ tamen propinquior; unde episcopus ille Eboracensi archiepiscopo videtur debere subjacere. Death of Matilda, wife of king Stephen. 3 May. John, monk of Séez, made bp. of Man.

---

[1] *creatur*] On an erasure.
[2] This chapter is omitted in F.
[3] *post*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[4] *Sancti Albani*] Interlined.
[5] *Halingeham*] More correctly *Haingeham* [Hengham or Haveringham, co. Essex, now called Hedingham] in W. A. C. D.
[6] *Fevresham*] Fevesham, MS.

A.D. 1151. Eodem quoque anno obiit Willelmus, episcopus Dunelmensis. Anno etiam sub eodem Gaufridus Arthurus factus est episcopus Sancti Asaf in Norwallia, qui Historiam Britonum de lingua Britannica transtulit in Latinam. Quo etiam anno Johannes de Papiro, cardinalis, legatione fungens in Hybernia, quatuor[1] ibi constituit archiepiscopos, Archmacanum tamen principalem. Qui, dum per Angliam transitum faceret, regi Stephano fecit fidelitatem. Rog. Wend. ii. 251.

Death of William, bp. of Durham. Geoffrey Arthur, the historian, made bp. of St. Asaph. Four archbishoprics created in Ireland.

Obiit pius imperator Conradus.

Death of the emperor Conrad III.

Eodem anno Conradus imperator, vir prudens, pius et discretus, diem clausit extremum. Cujus pia gesta speciales tractatus exigerent, præcipue de casu bellicoso, qui die accidit Pentecostes, qui in Cronicis Sancti Albani plenius poterit reperiri.[2] Rog. Wend. ii. 251.

Obiit papa Eugenius; successit Anastasius.

A.D. 1152. Anno Domini M°.C°.LII°. Eugenius papa naturæ debita persolvit.[3] Cui succedens Anastasius, sedit in cathedra Romana anno uno, mensibus iiii^{or}. et diebus xxiiii^{or}. Rog. Wend. ii. 253. Eodem anno Ricardus de Beaumais, archidiaconus Middelsexiæ, consecratur in episcopum Londoniensem. Rog. Wend. ii. 254. Anno quoque sub eodem Henricus Murdac, archiepiscopus Eboracensis,[4] et Bernardus, abbas Clarevallensis, viri vitæ excellentis et præclaræ scientiæ, ab hoc seculo migraverunt. Eodemque anno Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, cum in die sancti Laurentii

Death of pope Eugenius III. Anastasius IV. succeeds. Richard de Beumais, consecrated bp. of London. ¶ *Nota mortem multorum.*

---

[1] *quatuor*] quinque, E.

[2] The work referred to under this title is, no doubt, the larger work of Matthew Paris, in A. C. D., in which the legend respecting Conrad (borrowed from Wendover) is found at length. See ed. Wats, p. 85. MS F. in this chapter deserts the text, and adopts the fuller narrative.

[3] Eugenius III. died 8 July 1153, and Anastasius IV. was consecrated 12 July following. Jaffé, pp. 652-3.

[4] Henry Murdac, archbishop of York, died 14 Oct. 1153. Fasti, iii. 99.

terram beati Edmundi martiris prædatum iret, subita morte præreptus est, et apud Fevresham, in abbatia quam rex Stephanus pater suus fundaverat, sepultus est. A.D. 1152. 10 Aug.

De morte David, regis[1] *Scotorum.*[2]

Death of David, king of Scots. Malcolm succeeds.

Rog. Wend. ii. 254. Obiit etiam eodem anno pius rex Scotorum David, cui successit Malcolmus, nepos ejus.

Dux Henricus in Anglia potenter applicat.

Henry, duke of Normandy, comes to England. 6 Jan. He besieges and takes several castles. Warwick surrendered to him.

Rog. Wend. ii. 254. Eodemque anno dux Normannorum Henricus et Aquitanorum, comes Pictavensis et Andegavensis, cum navibus xxxvii.[3] et militia magna nimis, ad Angliam transfretavit, et infra octabas Epiphaniæ Malmesbiriæ[4] castellum obsedit et cepit. Indeque profectus, castrum de Craumerse obsidione vallavit; sed, intermeantibus[5] viris, ita convenit inter regem et ducem, quod rex castrum illud propriis sumptibus complanaret; sicque soluta est obsidio, quæ circa castellum de Walingeforde fuerat, rege Craumerse subvertente. Castella etiam de Radinges et de Bercewelle[6] dux Henricus in sua jura[7] recepit. Gundreda etiam, Warewikiæ comitissa, regis Stephani militibus de castello ejusdem urbis ejectis, tradidit municipium Henrico duci; et sic diatim prosperatum est ejus negotium.

---

[1] *rege*, MS.

[2] On the edge of the lower margin is written by the author, "Obiit rex Scotorum David, succedit Malcolmus, nepos ejus."

[3] *xxxvii.*] xxxvi., W. I.; xxxii., D.

[4] *Malmesbiriæ*] Malmebirie, MS.

[5] *intermeantibus*] At first written *inmeantibus*.

[6] *Bercewelle*] Bretewelle, W. A. C. D.; Barsewelle, F.

[7] *dux . . . jura*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1152. *Natus est Henrico duci filius, scilicet Willelmus.*

Birth of William, son of duke Henry.

Eodem anno natus est duci Henrico filius ex Alienora uxore sua, et vocatus est Willelmus; quod est consuetum nomen ducibus Aquitannorum et comitibus Andegavorum. Rog. Wend. ii. 255.

Concordia facta est inter regem Stephanum et ducem Henricum.

A.D. 1153. Peace concluded between king Stephen and duke Henry.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LIII°., justitia de cœlo prospiciente, per diligentiam Theobaldi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et episcoporum regni, hoc casu fortuito sed felici.[1] Indignati sunt magnates vehementer de guerræ tantæ ac talis diuturnitate dampnosa, dicentes, "Heu, quamdiu sustinebimus hanc miseriam[2] pro impetuosa duorum ira et regnandi libidine! Quilibet magnatum alium corrodit et destruit. Si hoc diutius durare permittimus, regnum hoc, immo et alia, penitus irrestaurabiliter, ut vas figuli, destruentur. Experiatur igitur una dies Martis fortunam bellicosa; et cui sors inter exercitum regis et ducis[3] exercitum hinc inde generalem victoriam contulerit,[4] regnet omnium in pace dominator." Quod cum partibus complaceret, diem et locum statuerunt. Rog. Wend. ii. 255.

The nobles proposed to decide the quarrel by one decisive battle.

Materna pietas.

Matilda, the empress, interposes.

Cum igitur acies utrobique disponerentur, et galeæ essent annectendæ, ut, vexillis explicatis et tubis perstrepentibus, rex Stephanus cum suis et dux Henricus cum suis generali congressione dimicarent, Matildis, quondam imperatrix, quæ præsens aderat, considerans

[1] A verb is wanting here to complete the sense, and so also in F. Perhaps we might supply *evenit.*

[2] *miseriam*] Added in marg.

[3] *ducis*] Added on to the text.

[4] *contulerit*] Partly on an erasure.

tanti sanguinis imminere[1] effusionem,[2] abhorruit in corde suo—mater enim Henrici sese jam morti exposituri—et commota sunt viscera ejus commotione vehementi. Misso igitur festino nuncio sollempni ac fide- fol. 52 *b*. digno, regi significavit, quod urgentissimum secretum ac festinum habuit auribus suis instillare, sub pacis tuto conductu. Quod cum regi complacuisset, venit ad eum, suspensa belli congressione. Et, vocato eo seorsum, dixit illi, "O fascinnate et veritatis ignare, quid facere disponis? Visne pater filium tuum occidere? vel quod patricida sit filius tuus? Tu enim ipsum generasti." Et exorsa per ordinem, cum sola cum solo loqueretur secretius, exposuit ei certissime quando et ubi ipse Stephanus ipsum Henricum generavit, nullo conscio præter ipsos vel præsente, ex ipsa Matildi. Quæ statim impregnata ab eo, sponso suo[3] comiti, Stephano duce[4] ducta est socianda.[5] Quod cum bene recoleret Stephanus rex, mitigatus est rigor iræ suæ, et statim advocari fecit Cantuariensem archiepiscopum Theobaldum; et veritatis jam dictæ conscius, confessus est se ex dicta M[atildi] ipsum Henricum ducem genuisse, et se diu super hac re deceptum et nescium fuisse. Acclamatum est igitur voce præconia ac generali, ut cessaret exercituum indignatio, et vexilla, quæ jam explicabantur, convoluta absconderentur, quia de pace tractatus efficax habebatur.[6] Hæc autem omnia cum vero relatu Henrico duci innotuissent, obstupuit vehementer, et jam doluit tantum offendisse suum genitorem; accepit tamen de ignorantia consolationem.[7] Accepto igitur die collocutionis pacificæ, composuerunt in hunc modum.

A.D. 1153.

She invites Stephen to a private conference.

and asserts duke Henry to be his son, begotten on herself.

Stephen confesses the fact to the abp. of Canterbury.

A treaty of peace is proclaimed.

---

[1] *imminere*] iminere, MS.
[2] *effusionem*] Added in marg.
[3] *sponso suo*] On an erasure.
[4] *duce*] So written at first, but afterwards altered to *duci*.
[5] *socianda*] On an erasure.
[6] *habebatur*] The last two syllables are on an erasure.
[7] *tamen ... consolationem*] Partly on an erasure.

A.D. 1153.

Forma concordiæ.

Terms of the treaty.

Rex Anglorum Stephanus[1] et dux Normannorum Henricus apud Walingeford in talem concordiam convenerunt. Rex Stephanus, omni herede viduatus præter solummodo ducem Henricum, recognovit in conventu episcoporum et aliorum regni optimatum, quod dux Henricus jus hereditarium in regnum Angliæ habebat; et dux benigne concessit, ut rex Stephanus tota vita sua, si vellet, regnum pacifice possideret. Ita tamen consummatum est pactum, quod ipse rex et episcopi tunc præsentes, cum ceteris optimatibus regni, jurarent, quod dux post mortem regis, si illum superviveret, regnum sine aliqua contradictione optineret. Et si nunc[2] illud Merlini propheticum attendatur, quod dicit, "Nocebit possidenti ex impiis pietas, donec sese genitore induerit,"[3] manifestum est, regem Stephanum Henricum induisse heredem, quem non credidit,[4] dum ipsum habuit[5] in filium, regni participem et postmodum successorem. Juratum etiam fuit et compromissum, ut omnes in rege ducem et in duce omnes regem venerarentur. Regalia passim a proceribus usurpata, rex in sua recipiet; possessiones quoque, quæ ab invasoribus direptæ erant, ad legitimos possessores, quorum fuerant regis Henrici tempore, revertentur. Castella adulterina, quæ tempore regis S[tephani] a quocunque constructa sunt, ilico complanabuntur. Et sic pax plena Angliæ restituta est, cum exultationis plenitudine. Rex igitur Stephanus ducem in tantum dilexit et venerabatur, ut viderentur unum cor et animam participare; unde,

Rog. Wend. ii. 255.

Prophecy of Merlin partly fulfilled.

Rog. Wend. ii. 256.

Love of Stephen for the duke.

[1] *Anglorum Stephanus*] Originally *Stephanus Anglorum*, but marked for transposition.

[2] *Et si nunc*] So W. F.; Et sic hic, A. C.; Et si nec, D. In ed. Wend. corrected *Et sic nunc.*

[3] Cf. "Merlini Vaticinia, cum interp. Alani de Insulis," p. 94, ed. Franc., 1608.

[4] *credidit*] genuit, W. A. C. D.

[5] *habuit*] adoptavit, W. A. C. D.

firmata pace, unus alii epistolam amicabilem valde cum donativis concupiscibilibus transmisit, in cujus fine hii versus totius tenori epistolæ adaptabantur, A.D. 1153. A letter and gifts sent by one to the other.

"Qui, vel quæ, vel quod, Polinici Thidea pridem,[1]
Hic nos jungat amor, pax ea, fœdus idem."

De milite Oeno, qui Purgatorium vivus intravit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 256. Concordia itaque inter regem Stephanum et ducem Henricum, ut dictum est, confirmata, miles quidam Oenus nomine, qui multis annis sub rege S[tephano] militaverat, licentia a rege impetrata, profectus est in Hyberniam, quæ sibi fuerat solum natale, ut ibidem suos parentes visitaret. Legend of Owen and the Purgatory of St. Patrick. Rog. Wend. ii. 257. Qui cum aliquandiu in regione illa moram continuasset, cœpit ad mentem [reducere][2] vitam suam adeo flagitiosam, quod ab ipsis cunabulis[3] semper incendiis vacaverat et rapinis; et, unde magis dolebat, se ecclesiarum fuisse violatorem et personarum ac rerum ecelesiasticarum invasorem, in tempore guerræ Anglicanæ, præter multa enormia plus tacenda quam narranda. Miles igitur memoratus, licet scelerosus, elegans fuit, audax et strenuus. Pœnitentia itaque ductus amarissima, ad episcopum quendam illius accessit regionis.[4] Cui cum peccata sua devotus per ordinem retulisset, increpavit eum graviter episcopus, asserens illum divinam clementiam nimis offendisse; unde miles valde contristatus, Deo condignam facere pœnitentiam repromisit. Episcopus igitur, ut justum sibi videbatur, volens ei infligere pœnitentiam, dum hæsitaret; miles respondit, "Ecce libens assumo pœnitentiam omnibus graviorem, dum modo sic saltem Deo merear reconciliari; Purgatorium enim sancti Patricii, te, pater, ju-

---

[1] The allusion here is to the Thebais of Statius.

[2] *reducere*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *cunabulis*] cunabilis, MS.

[4] *regionis*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1153. bente, Deo duce, volo intrare, quod in regione hac esse dinoscitur." De hoc Purgatorio et ejus origine tradunt Hystoriæ Hybernienses: "Magnus Patricius," etc. Si quis subsequentia, quæ mirabilia sunt, et multum possunt auditores informare,[1] videre desiderat, in libris multorum Annalia de[2] gestis hujus anni perscrutetur.[3]

Willelmus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, veneno periit.

A.D. 1154. Death of William, archbishop of York. Roger, archdeacon of Canterbury, succeeds. Hugh de Pusat consecrated bishop of Durham.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LIIII°. Anastasius papa, defuncto, ut supradictum est, Henrico, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, restituit in sedem eandem Willelmum, quem prius papa Eugenius degradaverat, donans ei pallium Romæ, et in præsentia ipsius consecravit Hugonem de Pusat,[4] regis Stephani nepotem, episcopum Dunelmensem.[5] Sed paulo post, cum idem archiepiscopus in sua reversus divina celebraret misteria, hausto in ipso calice, ut aiunt, veneno, obiit, et successit ei Rogerus, archidiaconus Cantuariensis. Rog. Wend. ii. 271. fol. 53 *a*. Rog. Wend. ii. 272.

Dux Henricus transfretavit in Normanniam.

Duke Henry suppresses a rebellion in Aquitaine.

Eodem anno dux Normannorum Henricus transfretavit in Normanniam, et revocavit paulatim in jus proprium dominica sua, quæ pater ejus ei dederat. Et inde profectus in Aquitanniam, rebellionem quorundam baronum suorum potenter repressit. Rog. Wend. ii. 272.

[1] *informare*] imformare, MS.

[2] *in libris ... de*] On an erasure.

[3] In the lower margin the following note has been written with a plummet, but is now almost illegible: "Narratio de milite ingrediente Purgatorium Patricii; require ann. dni. 1000.100.54. in alio libro." The legend is found in Wendover, ii. 257-271, and in A. C. D. F., somewhat abridged from the original work by Henry of Saltrey, in MS. Cott. Nero A. vii. f. 113.

[4] *Pusat*] Pusatz, E.

[5] He was consecrated 20 Dec. 1153. Fasti, iii. 284.

De papa Adriano, nato apud Sanctum Albanum. A.D. 1154.

Rog. Wend. ii. 272. Anno quoque sub eodem, defuncto papa Anastasio, successit ei Nicholaus, Albanensis episcopus, et creatus in papam vocatus est Adrianus; vir quidem religiosus et natione Anglicus, de territorio[1] quidem Sancti Albani procreatus. Qui postea ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, licet antea multis privilegiis insigniretur, multa contulit libertatum insignia[2] et exeniorum beneficia. Death of pope Anastasius IV. Adrian IV., a native of St. Alban's, succeeds.

Facta est concordia inter regem Francorum et ducem Normannorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 272. Eodem tempore facta est concordia inter regem Francorum Lodouuicum et ducem Normannorum Henricum, hoc modo: Rex reddidit duci Vernolium et Novum-Mercatum, et dux dedit ei duo milia marcas argenti, pro resarciendis dampnis, quæ rex perpessus fuerat in capiendis ac tenendis et in eisdem firmitatibus muniendis. Peace made between Louis and duke Henry.

De morte regis Stephani, et de coronatione regis Henrici II.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 272. Eodem anno rex Anglorum Stephanus, miles egregius et mente piissimus, viii°. kalendas Novembris diem clausit extremum. Cujus corpus in monasterio Rog. Wend. ii. 273. de Fevresham,[4] quod ipse a fundamentis construxerat, traditur sepulturæ; ubi paulo ante Matildis, uxor ejus, et Eustachius, eorum filius, sunt sepulti. Dux vero Normannorum Henricus, audito de morte regis certo nuncio, venit Barbefluvium, et ibidem per mensem Death of king Stephen. 25 Oct.

[1] *territorio*] teritorio, MS.
[2] *insignia*] Added in marg.
[3] In the space between the columns of text is drawn the shield of England reversed, with a crown beneath, and the words "*Corona et clipeus regis Stephani.*"
[4] *Fevresham*] Feverham, MS. and E.

A.D. 1154. unum ad transfretandum ventum prosperum expectavit. Erat interim, Deo post multa incommoda[1] miserante, pax[2] summa, quod raro contingit regibus defunctis, ob amorem et timorem ducis Henrici, quem omnes venturum et regem futurum sperabant et indubitanter expectabant. Dux igitur Henricus[3] vii°.[4] idus Decembris[5] in Angliam veniens, cum magno cleri et populi est tripudio exceptus, et xiiii°. kalendas Januarii, die Dominica ante Natale Domini, apud Westmonasterium ab omnibus rex acclamatus, per manum Theobaldi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, in regem est consecratus, præsentibus archiepiscopis, episcopis et regni magnatibus. Qui continuo in regem promotus, cœpit in jus proprium revocare urbes, castella et villas, quæ ad coronam spectabant, castra adulterina destruendo, alienigenas, maxime Flandrenses, quia, eo judice, inter omnes populos gens sunt detestabilis, expellendo, et a regno alienando et elongando, et quosdam pseudocomites, quibus rex Stephanus pæne omnia ad fiscum pertinentia minus caute contulerat, deponendo.



Corona et clipeus regis Henrici II.

He arrives in England, 7 Dec. and is crowned at Westminster. 19 Dec.

Measures taken by him after his accession.

Ascalona adquiritur.

Capture of Ascalon.

Eodem quoque anno rex Jerusalem Baldewinus, copioso nimis exercitu congregato, Aschalonam obsidione vallavit, et diuturna afflictione urbem opprimens, tali eam conditione optinuit, ut Turci, qui in ipsa erant, cum uxoribus, liberis et suis omnibus, liberum inde haberent recessum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 273. Rog. Wend. ii. 274.

De sancto Wlfrico heremita.

Death of Wilfric, the hermit.

Eodem anno sanctus anchorita et solitarius Wlfricus de Heselberga migravit ad Dominum, postquam

Rog. Wend. ii. 274.

[1] *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

[2] *pax*] In W. A. C. D. the words *in Anglia* are added before *pax*.

[3] In the lower margin the same shield of England is repeated, erect, with a crown above.

[4] *vii°.*] viii°., W. and D.

[5] *Decembris*] Novembris, E.

xxix. annis contra hominum hostes triumpharat. De cujus vita et virtutibus memorabilibus si quis audire desiderat, actus repetat hujus anni in rotulis veterum Annalium.[1] A.D. 1154.

Nascitur Henricus III., qui Junior vocabatur. Genealogia H[enrici].

Rog. Wend. ii. 279. Anno Domini M°.C°.LV°. natus est Londoniis, pridie kalendas Martii, Henrico, novo Anglorum regi, ex Alienora, regina sua, filius legitimus, et vocatum est[2] nomen ejus Henricus. Fuit autem magnificus rex Henricus II. filius Matildis, quæ prius fuerat Romanorum imperatrix, et postea comitissa Andegaviæ. Quæ, ut prædictum est,[2] clam concepit ab Stephano, qui eam duxerat ad comitem Andegaviæ Gaufridum maritandam, in nave, scilicet in quodam tristego navis ipsis pro thalamo præparato. Quæ, quia cito comiti sponso suo copulabatur, latuit ille conceptus omnem hominem, præter ipsam solam, sicut et ipsa confessa est, quando rex Stephanus parabatur ad prœlium apud Egelawe planitiem, quæ in partibus Angliæ est[2] occidentalibus.[3]

A.D. 1155. Birth of prince Henry. 28 Feb. Henry II. was the son of Matilda by Stephen.

Rog. Wend. ii. 280. Hujus Matildis mater fuit Matildis pia Anglorum regina, uxor scilicet Henrici I., et filia sanctæ Margaretæ, Scotorum reginæ. Margareta vero filia fuit Eadwardi, quam genuit ex Agatha, sorore Henrici, imperatoris Romani. Edwardus quidem filius fuit regis Ædmundi, qui Ferreum-latus dicebatur; cujus pater rex Ethel- fol. 53 b. dredus; cujus pater rex Eadgarus, rex pius et pacificus, cœnobiorum fundator et restaurator; cujus pater Ed-

His genealogy up to the Anglo-Saxon kings and Noah.

[1] *in rotulis veterum Annalium*] Written over an erasure. The legend is given at length in Wendover, ii. 274–279, and in A. C. D. F.

[2] *est*] Interlined three times.

[3] Opposite to the words *Fuit autem . . . occidentalibus*, is written in the margin, in red letters, "*Vacat*," to indicate that the passage should be omitted; but the scribe of F. has copied it. A note appears also to have been added in the margin, but is now entirely erased.

A.D. 1155. mundus; cujus pater Edwardus senior; cujus pater nobilissimus rex Alfredus; qui fuit regis Adulphi, qui fuit regis[1] Egbrihti,[2] qui fuit Alcmundi, qui fuit Eoffa, qui fuit Ragels,[3] cui frater Ine, rex Angliæ famosissimus, quorum pater fuit rex Kenredus; qui fuit regis Ceolwaldi, qui fuit Cutha, qui fuit Cuthwini, qui fuit Ceaulini, qui fuit Cuthrici, qui fuit Creodda, qui fuit Certic, qui fuit Elesa, qui fuit Egla, qui fuit Wig, qui fuit Frewine, qui fuit Freothegar, qui fuit Broand, qui fuit Beldai, qui fuit Woden, qui fuit Frethewald, qui fuit Freolaf,[4] qui fuit Frethewlf, qui fuit Fringoldulf, qui fuit Gecha,[5] qui fuit Tharwa,[6] qui fuit Beau, qui fuit Seldwa, qui fuit Heremod, qui fuit Itermod, qui fuit Hathra, qui fuit Wala, qui fuit Bedwi, qui fuit Sem, qui fuit Noe.

Willelmus Peverel exheredatur.

William Peverel is disinherited by the king.

Eodem anno rex Anglorum Henricus exheredavit Willelmum Peverel, causa veneficii, quod Ranulpho, comiti Cestriæ, nequiter[7] propinaverat. In cujus pestis consortio plures conscii fuisse dicuntur. Rog. Wend. ii. 280.

Juratur fidelitas filiis regis H[enrici] II.

Renewal of fealty to the sons of Henry II.

Death of Robert, bp. of Exeter. Robert, dean of Salisbury, succeeds.

Eodemque tempore rex Henricus fecit jurare fidelitatem filiis suis de regno Angliæ, Willelmo scilicet et Henrico. Rog. Wend. ii. 280. Eodem tempore, defuncto Roberto, Exoniensi episcopo, Robertus, Saresbiriensis decanus, successit. Rog. Wend. ii. 281. Per idem quoque tempus Henricus, Wintoniensis antistes, præmisso thesauro suo per abbatem Cluniacensem,

[1] *regis*] On an erasure.
[2] *Egbrihti*] Egbrihri, MS.
[3] *Ragels*] Ingels, W. A. C. D.
[4] *Freolaf*] Freolater, W. A. C. D.
[5] *Gecha*] Getha, W. A. C. D. F.
[6] *Tharwa*] Tatwa, W. A. C. D.
[7] *nequiter*] On an erasure, and originally written *venenum*, as in E. F. follows the correction.

absque licentia regis ab Anglia clam recessit; quapropter rex tria ejus castella complanavit. A.D. 1155. Henry, bp. of Winchester, leaves England privately.

Hugo de Mortuo-mari de insolentia punitur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 281. Circa eosdem dies Hugo de Mortuo-mari, vir arrogantissimus, castella sua contra regem temere communivit, turrim scilicet Glovernisæ, Wigemor[1] et Breges;[2] sed rex superveniens, omnia cepit et subvertit. Tandem tamen suam recognoscens impotentiam, et suæ temeritatis insolentiam, cum rege pacificatus est humiliatus. Insolence of Hugh de Mortimer punished.

Rex Francorum Lodowicus ducit in uxorem filiam regis Hispaniæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 281. Sub eisdem diebus Lodowicus, rex Francorum, duxit filiam Aldefunsi,[3] regis Hispaniæ, cujus regni caput est Tholetum. Quem, quia principatur regibus Arragonum et Galatiæ, imperatorem Hyspaniæ appellant.[4] Marriage of Louis VII. to the daughter of Alfonso, king of Spain.

Quomodo gradatim promovebatur beatus Thomas.

Rog. Wend. ii. 281. Tempore quoque sub eodem Thomas, Cantuariensis archidiaconus, Beverlacensis præpositus, et canonicus in diversis per Angliam ecclesiis, factus est regis[5] cancellarius. Semper tamen ecclesiæ Sancti Albani devotus et clericus humillimus,[6] quia ab illa ecclesia promotus primum cepit redditum in fortunatam arram futuræ promotionis, videlicet ecclesiolam[7] de Brantefeld.[8] Thomas, archdeacon of Canterbury, made chancellor. He received his first living from the church of St. Alban's.

[1] *Wigemor*] Wigenor, MS.

[2] *Breges*] Bregres, MS.; and so A. C. D. F.; *Bruge*, Rob. de Monte, p. 504.

[3] *Aldefunsi*] Andefulsi, E.

[4] *appellant*] apellant, MS.

[5] *regis*] At first written *atque regis cito*, but the words *atque* and *cito* are underscored, and they are omitted in F.

[6] *humillimus*] humilimus, MS.

[7] *ecclesiolam*] eccleisiolam, MS.

[8] On the lower margin is a note in plummet: "Quod primus redditus, quem habuit beatus Thomas, fuit ecclesia de Brantefeld."

A.D. 1155. *Papa Adrianus insulam Hyberniæ regi Anglorum H[enrico] dedit.*

Henry asks leave of the pope to invade Ireland.

Per idem tempus rex Anglorum Henricus nuncios sollempnes Romam mittens, rogavit papam Adrianum, ut sibi liceret, sine scandalo læsionis fidei Christianæ, Hiberniæ insulam intrare, et terram illam, locum videlicet horroris et vastæ solitudinis, utpote limbum mundi, sibi et Dei cultui subjugare; atque homines illos bestiales ad fidem et viam reducere veritatis et obedientiam[1] ecclesiæ Romanæ. Quod papa regi gratanter annuens, hoc ei privilegium destinavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 281.

Literæ papales.[2]

Papal letters concerning Ireland.

Adrianus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, karissimo in Christo [filio],[3] illustri Anglorum regi, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Laudabiliter et satis[4] fructuose de glorioso nomine tuo[5] propagando in terris, et æternæ felicitatis præmio cumulando in cœlis, tua magnificentia cogitat, unde[6] ad dilatandos ecclesiæ terminos, ad declarandam indoctis et rudibus populis Christianæ fidei veritatem, et vitiorum plantaria de agro Dominico exstirpanda, sicut catholicus princeps intendis, et ad id convenientius exequendum, consilium sedis apostolicæ exigis et favorem; [in quo facto quanto altiori consilio et majori discretioni procedis,][7] tanto in eo feliciorem progressum te, præstante Domino, confidimus[8] habiturum.[9] Significasti siquidem nobis, fili in Christo karissime, te Hyber- Rog. Wend. ii. 282.

[1] *obedientiam*] obidientiam, MS.

[2] This bull is printed in Rymer, i. 19, edit. 1816, from a copy of the 14th cent. in MS. Cott. Claud., E. viii., which is evidently derived from Diceto, Ymag. Hist., col. 529.

[3] *filio*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Diceto.

[4] *et satis*] satis et, Dic. and Rym.

[5] *tuo*] Om. Dic. and Rym.

[6] *unde*] dum, W. A. C. D., Dic. and Rym.

[7] *in quo .... procedis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D., Dic. and Rym.

[8] *confidimus*] Above this word is written *tis*, so as to suggest the reading *confiditis*. F. agrees with the text.

[9] *habiturum*] After this word an additional passage is found in Dic. and Rym., which is followed by the paragraph beginning "Sane Yberniam et omnes insulas."

A.D. 1155.

niæ insulam, ad subdendum populum[1] legibus Christianis,[2] et vitiorum inde plantaria exstirpanda,[3] velle intrare, et de singulis domibus annuam unius denarii beato Petro velle solvere pensionem, et jura ecclesiarum illius terræ illibata et integra conservare. Nos autem[4] pium et laudabile desiderium tuum favore[5] congruo prosequentes, et petitioni tuæ benignum[6] impendentes assensum, gratum et acceptum habemus, ut pro dilatandis ecclesiæ terminis, et pro vitiorum distringendo[7] discursu, pro corrigendis moribus et virtutibus inserendis, pro Christianæ religionis augmento, insulam illam ingrediaris, et quæ ad honorem Dei et salutem illius terræ spectaverint exequaris; et illius terræ populus te recipiat, et sicut dominum veneretur, jure[8] ecclesiarum illibato et integro permanente, et salva beato Petro[9] de singulis domibus annua unius denarii pensione. Sane[10] omnes insulas, quibus sol justitiæ Christus illuxit, et quæ documenta fidei Christianæ susceperunt, ad jus beati Petri et sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, quod tua etiam voluntas[11] recognoscit, non est dubium pertinere.[12] Si ergo quod animo concepisti effectu duxeris prosequente complendum, stude gentem illam bonis moribus informare, et agas tam per te quam per illos, quos ad hoc fide, verbo, et vita idoneos esse perspexeris, ut decoretur ibi ecclesia, plantetur et crescat fidei Christianæ religio; et quæ ad honorem Dei et salutem pertinent animarum taliter ordinentur, ut et a Deo sempiternæ mercedis præmia[13] consequi merearis, et in terris gloriosum nomen valeas in seculis optinere."

Rog. Wend. ii. 283.

fol. 54 *a*.

Consecration of the emperor Frederic.

Eodemque anno Fretherieus consecratus est in imperatorem ab A[driano] papa.[14]

[1] *populum*] illum populum, Dic. and Rym.

[2] *Christianis*] Om. Dic. and Rym.

[3] *plantaria exstirpanda*] plantariis exstirpandis, W. A. C. D. Corr. from Dic. and Rym.

[4] *autem*] itaque, Dic. and Rym.

[5] *favore*] cum favore, Dic. and Rym.

[6] *benignum*] benigne, Rym.

[7] *distringendo*] At first written *distringo*, but corr. in marg.

[8] *jure*] jure nimirum, Dic. and Rym.

[9] *Petro*] Petro, et sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, Dic. and Rym.

[10] *Sane*] Sane Yberniam et, Dic. and Rym.

[11] *voluntas*] nobilitas, W. A. C. D., Dic. and Rym.

[12] *pertinere*] In Dic. and Rym. an additional passage is inserted here, and the whole paragraph from *Sane* is transposed before the word *significasti*.

[13] *præmia*] Added on to the text, and so in F.; but the other MSS., with Dic. and Rym., read *cumulum*.

[14] *Eodemque . . . papa*] Added in marg., but inserted in text of F.

Inventa est tunica Domini inconsutilis, cum scripto superposito.

A.D. 1156. Discovery of the tunic of Christ.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LVI°., in pago Parisiacensi, monasterio Argentomonio,[1] revelatione divina tunica Salvatoris inconsutilis et subfusi[2] coloris reperta est. Quam, sicut literæ cum ea repertæ indicabant, gloriosa Mater ejus fecerat ei dum adhuc puer esset, et cum corpore ejus commensurabile suscepit incrementum. Rog. Wend. ii. 283.

Rex Henricus quædam fortia castra cepit.

King Henry takes some castles in Normandy.

Eodem anno rex Henricus in Normanniam transiens, cepit longa obsidione castella Mirebellum et Chinonem; Losdunum vero antea[3] in jus suum receperat. Nam paulo ante frater ejus Gaufridus, qui, expulso comite Britanniæ Hoelo, Nanneticam, civibus consentientibus, ceperat civitatem, hac conditione cum rege pacificatus est, ut rex daret ei singulis annis mille libras Anglicæ monetæ, et Andegavensium duo milia. Et sic inter eos discordia est sopita, mense Julio. Rog. Wend. ii. 283. Rog. Wend. ii. 284.

Peace made with Geoffrey, the king's brother.

Rex Siciliæ prosperatur.

Proceedings of William, king of Sicily.

Tempore quoque sub eodem rex Siciliæ Willelmus civitatem Barum funditus evertit, Græcos superavit, civitates et castella sibi prius ablata in jus suum revocavit; cum papa Adriano pacem fecit, consecrationes episcoporum regni sui ei concedendo. Tunc quoque temporis Alienora, Anglorum regina, peperit regi filiam, quam Matildem nuncupavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 284.

Birth of the princess Matilda.

---

[1] *Argentomonio*] Argentoilo, W. A. C. D.

[2] *subfusi*] So also W. F. I.; subconfusi, A. C. D. and Edd. In MS. Reg. 13 C. xi. (a fine copy of Robert de Monte of the 12th century, from whom the passage is borrowed), the reading is *subrufi*.

[3] *antea*] añea, MS.

Reges Anglorum et Scotorum mutua jura sibi ad invicem reddiderunt.[1]

Rog. Wend. ii. 286. Anno Domini M°.C°.LVII°. rex Anglorum Henricus II. transfretavit in Angliam, et rex Scotorum Malcolmus reddidit ei civitatem Karleolum, Bamburgi castrum, et Novum-Castellum super Thinam, et totum comitatum Lodonensem; et rex reddidit ei Huntundoniæ comitatum. Willelmus similiter, filius regis Stephani nothus, qui erat comes Moretonii et de Warenna, reddidit regi Pevenesel et Norwicum, et omnes munitiones suas in Anglia et Normannia, quæ ex dono regis Stephani possidebat. Et rex Henricus dedit ei[2] quicquid pater Rog. Wend. ii. 287. ejus rex Stephanus habuerat, die qua rex Henricus Primus mortuus fuit et vivus. Et eodem tempore Hugo Bigod castella sua regi resignavit. In Adventu autem infirmatus[3] Willelmus, primogenitus regis Henrici, obiit, diebus hujus anni scilicet[4] Nataliciis; unde dissentio est, utrum hoc vel anno præterito obierit.[5] Sepultus est autem apud Radingum.

A.D. 1157

Henry returns to England, and makes terms with the king of Scots. William, natural son of Stephen, and Hugh Bigod, surrender their castles.

2 Dec.

Death of William, eldest son of Henry.

Rex Henricus edomat Walenses, et firmat castra.

Rog. Wend. ii. 287. Anno quoque sub eodem rex Henricus magnam paravit expeditionem, ita ut duo milites de tota Anglia tertium invenirent, ad expugnandum Walenses per terram et per mare. Intrans ergo Walliam rex, exstirpatis silvis et succisis, viisque patefactis, castrum Roelent[6] firmavit, aliasque munitiones antecessoribus suis surreptas potenter revocavit. Castellum etiam de Basinge-

Henry subdues the Welsh.

[1] On the edge of the lower margin is written, "Malcolmus adhuc rex Scotorum."

[2] *ei*] Added in marg.

[3] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[4] *scilicet*] Originally *diebus* was repeated, but afterwards underscored, and *scilicet* substituted.

[5] In A. *marg.*, C. D. this event is placed at the end of the year 1156.

[6] *Roelent*] Toelent, MS. and F.

A.D. 1157. werc restauravit. Apud Snaudun cepit rex multorum homagia Walensium.[1] Et, Walensibus ad libitum subjectis et subjugatis, magnificus triumphator in Angliam remeavit.

Natus est Ricardus regi Henrico.

Birth of prince Richard. Robert, abbat of Mont St. Michel, finishes his Chronicle.

Eodemque anno natus est Henrico regi ex Alienora, regina sua, filius apud Oxoniam, et vocatus est Ricardus, qui postea rex fuit. Et hucusque Robertus, abbas de Monte Sancti Michaelis, Cronica sua describendo digessit.[2] Rog. Wend. ii. 287.

Rex Henricus coronam portavit.

A.D. 1158. Henry wears his crown at Worcester. ¶ *Quædam utilis digressio.* Anecdote of the humility of king Cnut.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LVIII°. rex Henricus in Dominicæ Nativitatis die apud Wigorniam coronam portavit in magna gloria; et[3] dum coronam portaret, Spiritu Sancto infundente in cor ejus humilitatem, ad memoriam reduxit nobile factum magni regis Cnutonis. Qui statuens regalem cathedram juxta ripam maris tunc ascendentis, et flatibus ventorum agitati, sedit in ea regalibus insignitus, coronatus, et sceptrum tenens; comminabaturque mari, imperando ne amplius ascenderet, terram suam madefaciendo. Et iterum crudelius et clamosius ter vel quater, ut prius, imperium iteravit. Quod cum frustra factum hoc vidit, et mare ipsum fere absorbuisset, recessit humiliatus. Et deponens coronam suam, in manu sua detulit eam usque veniret pedes ad proximam ecclesiam, et optulit eam super altare, præcipiens ut capiti Crucifixi apponeretur. Quod cum factum esset, adoravit rex pronus in terram cadens, et dixit, "Te solum decet, rex Domine Jesu Christe Rog. Wend. ii. 287.

---

[1] *Apud .... Walensium*] Added in marg., and in text of F.

[2] The Chronicle of Robert de Monte originally ended in 1156 and 1157. See Pertz, Mon. Germ., vi. 283.

[3] *in ... et*] Added on to the text, and partly on erasure. F. agrees.

omnipotens, regem appellari et esse, qui cœlos moderaris et infima,[1] qui mari et ventis imperas. Te Deum veneror homo, te Dominum servus adoro. Unde nobis mortalibus, nobis miseris peccatoribus tanta præsumptio, ut reges vel etiam reguli audeamus appellari vel esse? nedum corona et sceptro[2] insigniri, et regalibus redimiri?" Rex igitur Cnuto in hac persistens humilitate, nunquam postea voluit coronam portare. O, quam placita est Deo magnatum in gloria sua humilitas! Et, juxta illud Senecæ, "Si magnum est uti fictilibus sicut aureis, multo majus est aureis uti tanquam fictilibus."[3] Rex Henricus hoc informatus[4] exemplo, post divinorum celebrationem sacramentorum coronam manibus de capite apprehendens, illam super altare posuit, nec ultra coronam portare curavit.

A.D. 1158.

fol. 54 b.

In imitation of Cnut, Henry ceases to wear a crown.

R. Wend. ii. 287.

Moneta.

Rog. Wend. ii. 287.

Eodemque anno nova moneta fabricata fuit in Anglia.[5]

New coinage.

Thomas cancellarius transfretat in Galliam.

Thomas, the chancellor, goes to France, to demand the hand of Margaret for prince Henry.

Rog. Wend. ii. 288.

Annoque sub eodem Thomas, regis cancellarius, in apparatu maximo, nam, inter cetera magnalia, ix. longas bigas habebat,[6] venit Parisius, Margaretam, regis Francorum filiam, Henrico, filio regis Anglorum, in conjugem rogaturus et[7] accepturus.

---

[1] *infima*] imfima, MS.

[2] *sceptro*] ceptro, MS.

[3] The words of Seneca are: "Magnus ille est, qui fictilibus sic utitur quemadmodum argento, nec ille minor est, qui sic argento utitur quemadmodum fictilibus." Ep. v. Opp. tom. ii. 13, ed. Amst., 1672.

[4] *informatus*] imformatus, MS.

[5] In the margin occurs this note: "Moneta tunc reprobata *Baseling* dicebatur." It is omitted in F.

[6] *nam .... habebat*] Added in marg., but in text of F.

[7] *rogaturus et*] Added in marg. Om. F

A.D. 1158.

Obiit Gaufridus. Nannetica [civitas][1] adquiritur.

King Henry takes possession of Nantes. He is received at Paris in the king's palace.

Eodemque anno, Gaufrido, fratre regis Anglorum defuncto, idem rex transiens, Nanneticam civitatem in jus suum recepit. Quo etiam tempore rex Henricus a rege Francorum invitatus venit Parisius, et receptus est in palatio regis, rege Francorum, cum regina sua, in claustro canonicorum beatæ Mariæ sese recipiente. Rog. Wend. ii. 288.

Rex Henricus Tholosam obsedit.

A.D. 1159. He marches to Toulouse, and takes some castles.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LIX°. rex Anglorum Henricus II. duxit exercitum versus Tholosam, et cepit castella fortia vicina, rege Francorum interim in urbe jugiter commorante. Sed rex Anglorum urbem assultu non impetivit, ob regis Francorum reverentiam, cujus sororem Constantiam comes Tholosanus duxerat in uxorem, et ex ea liberos susceperat. Qua de causa reges inimici facti sunt, sicut rerum exitus postmodum declaravit.[2] Rog. Wend. ii. 288.

Scisma[3] ortum est inter duos papas.

Schism between pope Alexander III. and Octavian, antipope. [Victor IV.]

Eodem anno, defuncto papa Adriano, qui Anglicus fuit natione, et de Sancto Albano oriundus,[3] scisma[4] oritur inter duos, Alexandrum et Octovianum. Nam imperator cum clero suo receperat Octovianum, sed a regibus Francorum et Anglorum consensum est in Alexandrum. Imperator autem ad dictos reges literas direxit, ut Octovianum reciperent, sed, ipsis contradicentibus, Alexander papatum optinuit. Rog. Wend. ii. 288. Rog. Wend. ii. 289.

---

[1] *civitas*] Omitted in MS., which reads only *Nannet'*.

[2] *declaravit*] Corr. in marg. *declarabit;* but the original reading is confirmed by W. A. C. D.

[3] *qui .... oriundus*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

[4] *scisma*] cisma, MS.

Henricus, filius regis Henrici, duxit uxorem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 289. Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°., rex Anglorum Henricus II. a Tholosa reversus, Margaretam, filiam regis Francorum, quam in sua custodia habebat, Henrico filio suo fecit desponsari,[1] et castellum de Gisortz[2] diu desideratum suscepit. Quod, ut ait rex [Francorum],[3] præpropere factum fuerat,[4] indignatus[5] est valde; unde cum auxilio Theobaldi, comitis Flandrensis, ad dedecus regis Anglorum, Calvum-Montem firmavit. Sed rex Anglorum festinus adveniens, rege Francorum et comite affugatis, castrum obsedit et infra paucos dies ad deditionem inclusos coegit; capti sunt autem intus milites lv. Et sic celebratum est matrimonium inter filium regis Anglorum septennem et filiam regis Francorum triennem, auctoritate scilicet Henrici Pisani et Willelmi Papiensis, presbiterorum cardinalium et sedis apostolicæ legatorum, iiii°. nonas Novembris, apud Novum-Burgum.

A.D. 1160. Capture of the castles of Gisors and Caumont. Marriage of prince Henry. 2 Nov.

Obiit Cantuariensis [archiepiscopus][6] *T[heobaldus].*

Rog. Wend. ii. 289. Eodemque anno[7] Theobaldus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, diem clausit extremum.[8]

Death of Theobald, abp. of Canterbury.

[1] *desponsari*] deponsari, MS.

[2] *Gisortz*] Gisorcio, E.

[3] *Francorum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[4] *quod . . . fuerat*] So also W. A. C. D. F. L; but a word is wanting to complete the sense. In the Edd. the passage is corrected thus: "Propter quod rex Francorum, *quia* præpropere." The editor of Wendover inserts *quapropter* before *indignatus*.

[5] *indignatus*] dignatus, W. A. C. D. Corr. in ed. Wend. *indignatus*.

[6] *archiepiscopus*] Supplied from F.

[7] *anno*] Added in marg.

[8] Archbishop Theobald died 18 April 1161. Fasti, i. 8.

De consecratione B[artholomæi], Exoniensis episcopi, et [de][1] *miraculo, quod vidit.*

A.D. 1161. Consecration of Bartholomew, bp. of Exeter.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.I°. Bartholomæus, vir religiosus et in theologicis disciplinis eleganter eruditus, a Waltero, Rofensi episcopo, consecratus est antistes Exoniensis. De hoc Bartholomæo venerabili viro fama refert notissima, et cum scripti, quod idem episcopus confecit, testimonio, crebra ejusdem relatio, quod cum[2] lucro[3] animarum devotus intendens, parrochiam suam visitaret, in villa quadam campestri cum suis clericis forte pernoctavit. Dormiens igitur de nocte in solario quodam, quod ecclesiæ villæ ac cimiterio imminebat,[4] cum circa noctis medium ad matutinas decantandas evigilasset, lumen, quod in ejus thalamo ardere consueverat, apparebat extinctum. Episcopus igitur cubicularium suum objurgans, quod in tenebris dormiret, præcepit ut velociter lumen quæreret et afferret. Interea vero episcopus, dum luminis adventum vigilans præstolaretur, audivit manifeste quandam vocem puerilem hunc sermonem Anglice pronunciantem, "Riseth op, alle Cristes icorne, Levenoth ure fader of þis wrold fundeth." Et hunc sermonem audivit episcopus aliquotiens repetitum. Et postea, juxta talia pronunciantem, velut puerorum voces audivit plangentium aperte et articulatim dicentium, "Væ nobis! væ nobis! Quis amodo pro nobis orabit et elemosinas dabit? vel pro nostra salute missas celebrabit? Migrat ab hoc seculo noster consolator Levenothus."[5] Et cum primus horum puerorum, qui antea locutus fuerat, diceret voce qua prius sed solempniori, "Requiescat in pace," responderunt omnes alii sub

Rog. Wend. ii. 290.

Vision seen by him.

Nota miraculum de Levenotho.

---

[1] *de*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[2] *cum*] Added in marg.; *dum*, W. A. C. D.

[3] *lucro*] At first written *lucris*, as in W. A. C. D.

[4] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

[5] *Levenothus*] Added in marg. The name is not given by Wendover; nor in A. C. D.

eadem voce, "Amen!" Audiens autem has voces episcopus,[1] et intelligens earum sententias, obstupuit vehementer, supra modum admirans quid hæc portenderent. Cubicularius vero interim lumen quærens, cum neque in aula neque coquina[2] ignem reperisset,[3] exivit in villam anxius, et, multis jam ædibus perlustratis, lumen optatum non invenit. Tandem, cum quærendo huc illucque diu discurrisset, vidit lumen quasi in ultima vel penultima domo villæ; et illuc se cum festinatione conferens, invenit in domo cujusdam hominis corpus tunc exanimatum, et cum presbitero villæ multos utriusque sexus homines circumstantes, præ dolore lacrimantes. At cubicularius episcopi, super hiis quæ vidit non multum sollicitus, lumen posuit in laterna sua, et festinanter ad dominum suum episcopum reversus, quæ sibi acciderant per ordinem enarravit. Cantatis igitur matutinis, cum dies illuxisset, fecit episcopus convenire presbiterum, cum quibusdam hominibus villæ, et sciscitatus est[4] ab eisdem diligenter, quis homo ille nuper defunctus esset, et qualis vitæ ante obitum in seculo extitisset. Qui omnes fatebantur de eo, quod esset vir justus ac timens Deum, pater orphanorum et consolatio miserorum, ut qui omnem substantiam ejus in pauperibus, dum viveret, et hospitibus erogaverat. Tenuit præterea in domo sua unum presbiterum, cui de proprio omnia ministraverat necessaria, qui commendationes animarum et missarum suffragia diebus singulis pro defunctis celebrarat. Hæc autem cum audisset episcopus, continuo intellexit in spiritu voces, quas audierat de cimiterio emissas, nihil aliud esse quam voces animarum illorum corporum, quæ in illo cimiterio quiescebant, plangentium[5] de

A.D. 1161.

fol. 55 a.

Rog. Wend. ii. 291.

[1] *episcopus*] Repeated again after *sententias*, but underscored for omission.

[2] *coquina*] quoquina, MS.

[3] *reperisset*] repperisset, MS.

[4] *est*] Interlined.

[5] *plangentium*] The last three letters of this word and of *gementium* are on an erasure, and no doubt the text was originally written *plangentes* and *gementes*, as in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1161. morte hominis illius et gementium, per quem, dum vixerat, elemosinarum et missarum habere suffragia meruerunt. Tunc episcopus, vocato ad se presbitero illo, qui sub viro jam defuncto missas pro defunctis celebrarat, interrogavit[1] quod illi pio viro nomen erat, et quibus conditionibus sub ipso vixerat et stipendiis. Et omnia presbiter exposuit episcopo, annectens etiam, quod idem Levenoth vocabatur.[2] Intellexit igitur episcopus jam certius, quod homo Dei erat ille, et divinitus factum est hoc, quod prædicta sunt eidem revelata. Providit igitur episcopus ac dedit ipsi presbitero portionem in ecclesia illius villæ victui sufficientem, injungens ut, quamdiu viveret, missam et obsequia defunctorum diebus singulis celebraret. Ipseque episcopus missam pro anima Levenothi celebravit, et corpus sepelivit.[3]

De execrabilibus nuptiis Mariæ, abbatissæ Rumeseiæ.[4]

Marriage of Mary, abbess of Rumsey, to the count of Bologne.

Diebus etiam sub eisdem Maria, abbatissa de Rumeseia, filia regis Stephani, quæ anno præterito a domo sua exierat[5] maritanda, sophisticis literis bullatis seducta, Mathæo, comiti Bononiæ, nupsit; volens ut dicitur, decipi, quia etiam velata infamis fuerat, secundum illud Ovidianum,

"Vim licet appelles,[6] et culpam nomine celes,
Quæ totiens rapta est, præbuit ipsa rapi."[7]

Et hoc quidem de Helena adultera dicebatur. Hoc quidem illicitum matrimonium nitebatur beatus Thomas cancellarius summopere[8] impedire, exemplo ductus beati Mathæi apostoli et beati Johannis Baptistæ; sed

[1] *interrogavit*] interogavit, MS.
[2] *vocabatur*] Added in marg.
[3] *Ipseque . . . sepelivit*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.
[4] This occurrence is placed in A. C. D. at the end of the preceding year, but related very briefly.
[5] *exierat*] exirat, MS.
[6] *appelles*] apelles, MS.
[7] Ep. Heroid. v. 131, which reads *velis* for *celes*.
[8] *summopere*] On an erasure.

prævaluerunt carnis illecebræ, cum favore regis et magnatum. Unde ex tunc factus est comes memoratus ipsi Thomæ cancellario inimicus; ipse quoque rex contra ipsum fuerat commotus. A.D. 1161.

Combustio.[1]

Anno quoque sub eodem Cantuaria tota fere flamma, manifeste ultrici, combusta[2] est. Canterbury burnt.

Reges Francorum et Anglorum concordiam inierunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 291. Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.II°. Lodowicus, rex Francorum, et Henricus, rex Anglorum, undique armatorum copiis congregatis, cum jam campestre prœlium inter eos immineret[3] prope[4] Fertevallum, intermeantibus viris modestis et discretis, amici subito sunt effecti. A.D. 1162. Reconciliation of Louis and Henry.

Alienora peperit filiam A[lienoram].

Rog. Wend. ii. 291. Eodemque anno Alienora, Anglorum regina, apud Rothomagum filiam peperit, et ei nomen suum imposuit A[lienoram.] Birth of the princess Alienor.

Obiit Londoniensis episcopus.[5]

Rog. Wend. ii. 292. Hoc etiam anno Ricardus, Londoniensis episcopus, viam universæ carnis est ingressus. Death of Richard, bishop of London.

Juratur fidelitas Henrico Juniori.

Rog. Wend. ii. 292. Per idem tempus rex Henricus fecit jurare fidelitatem Henrico filio suo de hereditate sua. Et inter omnes magnates regni, Thomas cancellarius primus The nobles swear fealty to prince Henry,

---

[1] *Combustio*] Conbustio, MS.
[2] *combusta*] conbusta, MS.
[3] *immineret*] imineret, MS.
[4] *prope*] On an erasure.
[5] In the margin are sketched an episcopal mitre and crosier, reversed.

A.D. 1162. fidelitatem ei juravit, salva fide regis patris, quamdiu viveret et regno præesse vellet; quam adjectionem dicitur filius non acceptasse. Et ex tunc rex filium suum eundem Henricum, adolescentem elegantissimum et universorum heredem, beato Thomæ cancellario[1] commisit alendum, et moribus ac curialitatibus informandum;[2] unde postea idem Thomas ipsum Henricum jocose filium suum adoptivum appellavit. Qui tamen alumpnus fuit innaturalis, sicut rerum effectus, ut in sequentibus dicetur, demonstravit.

and the chancellor Thomas is appointed his guardian.

Thomas cancellarius eligitur in archiepiscopum.

Thomas is elected archbishop of Canterbury.

Eodem anno, congregato clero et populo totius provinciæ Cantuariensis apud Westmonasterium, Thomas, regis cancellarius, ipso rege effectuose pro ipso petente, sollempniter, nemine reclamante, electus est in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Facta igitur electione, sabbato in Pentecosten, a Waltero, Rofensi episcopo, in ecclesia Cantuariensi in presbiterum ordinatus est. Et sequenti die Dominica consecratus est ab Henrico, Wintoniensi episcopo, sollempniter et inthronizatus. Nunciis igitur ad papam directis, quem citra Alpes descendentem in Galliam invenerunt, cum pallio sunt reversi; quod Thomas archiepiscopus, solitis astrictus sacramentis, ab altari suscepit[3] reverenter. Summi sacerdotis vestes induit, et habitum sic mutavit, ut et animum renovatus permutaret. Nam curiæ curis interesse renuncians, ecclesiæ suæ negotiis et lucris spiritualibus intendebat.[4]

Rog. Wend. ii. 292.

26 May.

He receives his pall from the pope.

[1] *beato Thomæ cancellario*] Added in marg.

[2] *informandum*] imformandum, MS.

[3] *suscepit*] So also F.; *suscipiens*, W. A. C. D.

[4] In the margin is the following addition: "¶ Nota, quod beatus Thomas habitum monachi a papa suscepit, et præter nigram cucullam, habitum canonicorum, scilicet de Meretuna, præterea gestavit." This is introduced into the text of F. after the word *permutaret*.

Prima regis commotio contra archiepiscopum Thomam. A.D. 1162.

Rog. Wend. ii. 292. Nuncios siquidem ad regem in Normanniam direxit, cancellariæ renuncians et sigillum resignans; quod in cor regis altius resedit commotum, in se solum causam resignationis tam subito retorquentis. Et hæc prima fuit regalis animi perturbatio adversus Thomam, archipræsulem Cantuariensem. (Rog. Wend. ii. 293.) **The first cause of the king's anger against the archbp.**

Quis fuerit ille Thomas.

Rog. Wend. ii. 293. fol. 55 *b.* Erat autem Thomas iste Londoniensis urbis indigena, a primis adolescentiæ annis gratia multiplici decoratus, patre editus. . . . . .[1] Qui, quia die quadam Martis, videlicet die beati Thomæ apostoli, natus est, vocabatur Thomas. Ab ineunte autem ætate beatam Dei Genitricem, tanquam ducem viarum suarum, et beatum Thomam apostolum, quasi patronum, cujus luce, id est, die,[2] prodiit in lucem, specialius cœpit diligere et invocare. Liberalium quoque disciplinarum scolas egrediens, ad Theobaldi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, se contulit famulatum; ubi, industria promerente, in brevi inter majores curiæ suæ ascriptus est et provectus, ita ut[3] ei familiarissimus haberetur. Primum autem beneficium optinuit ab ecclesia Sancti Albani, scilicet ecclesiolam de Brantefeld, caritative collatum.[4] Quot autem et quantos ibi labores pro ecclesia Dei pertulerit, quotiensque pro expediendis arduis negotiis apostolorum limina expetierit, quam felici exitu sibi injuncta expedierit, non est facile dictu, præsertim cum in causis perorandis et decidendis ac populis instruendis tota ejus intentio versaretur. Primo igitur a præfato archiepiscopo in archidiaconum Cantuariensem promotus, post

Biographical notice of the abp. Thomas. **21 Dec.**

[1] A blank space is left here, and so in F.; but the name *Gilberto Becket* has been supplied in the text by the hand of abp. Parker.

[2] *id est, die*] Added in marg.

[3] *ut*] Interlined.

[4] *Primum . . . collatum*] Added in marg., and inserted in text of F.

A.D. 1162. modici vero temporis spatium regis cancellarius, eodem procurante archiepiscopo, efficitur. Cancellarii fungens officio, audaciam milvorum sapienter repressit, qui regi adulantes, conspiraverant tam provincialium quam ecclesiæ diripere facultates. Hæc de beato Thoma, qualis ante promotionem in archiepiscopum extiterit, breviter prælibavimus, quatinus ea, quæ de ipso sequuntur, lectori clarius elucescant.

De finali concordia facta inter ecclesiam Lincolniensem et ecclesiam Sancti Albani.

Final concord between the churches of Lincoln and St. Alban's.

Hoc quoque anno sopita est discordia et amicabili fine terminata inter ecclesiam Lincolniensem et cœnobium Beati Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, Roberto Rog.Wend. ii. 294. de Chaisneto episcopo agente, et Roberto de Gorham, abbate de Sancto Albano, defendente, in præsentia regis Henrici Secundi, et archiepiscoporum Thomæ Cantuariensis et Rogeri Eboracensis, et episcoporum Henrici Wintoniensis, Willelmi Norwicensis, Jocelini Saresbiriensis, Bartholomæi Exoniensis, Hylarii Cicestrensis, Hugonis Dunelmensis, Ricardi Coventrensis, Gileberti Herefordensis, et Godefridi[1] de Sancto Asaf; præsente etiam Roberto, comite Legecestrensi, justiciario Angliæ, cum comitibus, baronibus, abbatibus, prioribus, archidiaconis, et innumerabili regni populo, apud Westmonasterium,
1 April. feria v. ante Passionem Domini, in hunc modum.

"Robertus, Dei gratia Lincolniensis episcopus, omnibus sanctæ matris ecclesiæ filiis, salutem. Notum sit universitati vestræ, quod ego controversiæ illi, quam adversus Robertum, abbatem Sancti Albani, et fratres ejus moveram, qua monasterium ipsum Sancti Albani et quindecim ecclesias illas, quas in territorio suo[2] privilegiatas habent,[3] Lincolniensi ecclesiæ et mihi, ut ipsius[4] episcopo, in subjectionem et obedientiam petebam, in præsentia testium prædictorum, assensu capituli

[1] *Godefridi*] Godefrido, MS.

[2] *suo*] Partly on an erasure.

[3] *habent*] So W. A. C. D.; but in Edd. and ed. Wend. *habuit.*

[4] *ipsius*] ipsi, MS.

mei in perpetuum renunciavi. Et, ut ab ea in perpetuum conquiescam, de manu ipsius abbatis et fratrum ejus villam, quæ dicitur Tinghurste, cum ecclesia et omnibus pertinentiis ejusdem, pro decem libratis terræ, libere et quiete ecclesiæ Lincolniensi in perpetuum de cetero possidendam, assensu domini mei regis et fratrum nostrorum episcoporum jam dictorum consilio, capitulo meo in hoc assensum præbente, recepi. Et jus, quod jam dicta abbatia, et in persona Roberti abbatis et successorum ejus, et jam dictis quindecim ecclesiis, ecclesiæ meæ et mihi et successoribus meis vendicabam, in manu domini mei regis pro me et successoribus meis in perpetuum resignavi. Sit itaque de cetero liberum monasterium[1] Beati Albani, cum[2] quindecim jam dictis ecclesiis; crisma sibi et oleum et benedictionem liceat abbati suo, et cetera omnia ecclesiæ sacramenta, a quo voluerit episcopo, absque nostra et ecclesiæ[3] nostræ reclamatione, recipere; et de cetero in manu regis, sicut sua dominica, ecclesia libera remanebit. Reliquæ vero ecclesiæ ejusdem monasterii, passim per episcopatum Lincolniensem constitutæ, obedientiam et subjectionem, quam ceteræ debent ecclesiæ, episcopo Lincolniensi et archidiaconis exhibebunt. Quod, ne de cetero possit in litem revocari, scripti præsentis attestatione et sigilli mei et capituli appositione confirmavi."

A.D. 1162.

Rog. Wend. ii. 295.

Hanc pacem et concordiam cum rex Henricus et Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, suis confirmaverunt munimentis, papa Alexander, eorum vestigia secutus, eam per privilegium ecclesiæ Romanæ et subscriptione omnium cardinalium communivit.

Confirmed by pope Alexander III.

Obiit rex Jerusalem Baldewinus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 295.

Eodem anno rex Jerosolimorum Baldewinus humanæ naturæ debitum persolvit;[4] cui successit frater ejus Amalricus.[5]

Death of Baldwin II., king of Jerusalem. Amalric succeeds.

---

[1] *monasterium*] Corr. *monasterio* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

[2] *cum*] On an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *et*.

[3] *sacramenta . . . . . . ecclesiæ*] Omitted in A. C. D.

[4] A small crown reversed is drawn in the margin.

[5] *Amalricus*] Almaricus, MS. and D. F.

Secunda perturbatio regis contra Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum.

A.D. 1163. King Henry returns to England, and receives the archbp. ungraciously. Gilbert, bishop of Hereford, translated to London. 28 April.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.III°. rex Anglorum Henricus II., finibus transmarinis pro voluntate dispositis, in Angliam rediit, et Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, gaudenter veniens ei obviam, et secum ducens alumpnum suum Henriculum, forma præ filiis hominum speciosum, in osculum receptus est, sed non in gratiæ plenitudinem, sicut ipsius regis vultus statim aversus omnibus qui aderant patenter ostendit. Eodem anno, rege Anglorum ad hoc instante, et Alexandro papa id concedente, Gilebertus, Herefordensis episcopus, ad sedem ecclesiæ Londoniensis postulatus, illuc translatus est, et iiii^or^. kalendas Maii in illa ecclesia introductus. Rog. Wend. ii. 295. R. Wend. ii. 296.

Translatum est corpus beati Edwardi, regis et confessoris.

Translation of the body of S. Edward.

Eodemque anno translatum est corpus sancti regis et confessoris Edwardi,[1] et positum reverenter in nobili feretro, ex auro et argento et gemmis artificiose composito,[2] ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi Thoma, præsente rege Henrico II. et multis regni magnatibus. Sciendumque, quod illud gloriosum ac virgineum corpus integrum inventum est et illibatum. fol. 56 a.

Henricus de Esexe de proditione convictus est.

Henry de Essexe is convicted of treason.

Eodem anno Robertus de Muntfort cum Henrico de Esexe, de proditione appellato[3] regis, duello congrediens, victoriam reportavit. Qua de causa Henricus notam infamiæ[4] simul et exheredationis jacturam incurrens, ex[5] Rog. Wend. ii. 296.

---

[1] *Edwardi*] A. C. D. add, *apud Westmonasterium*.

[2] *composito*] conposito, MS.

[3] *appellato*] Added in marg.

[4] *infamiæ*] imfamie, MS.

[5] *ex*] Interlined.

indulgentia regiæ clementiæ, apud Radingum habitum monachilem suscipiens, ex tunc, de more conversorum, ante processionem crucis signum triumphale, quod fuerat[1] tutius quam alicujus regis mortalis, bajulavit. Quod et[2] juste factum est,[3] quia imponebatur ei inculpato, quod in quodam bello inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, vel eorum magnatum, quod tantundem pæne significat, ipse Henricus signifer constitutus, sponte ac nequiter, immo et proditiose, vexillum regium quasi victus, cum nihil[4] mali vel laboris habuisset, cadere dimisit. Et nisi alius illud celerius sublevasset, exercitus regis Anglorum confusus succubuisset. A.D. 1163. He becomes a monk at Reading.

Gaufridus fit archidiaconus Cantuariensis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 296. Hoc etiam anno Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ad instantissimam regis petitionem, archidiaconatum Cantuariensem dedit Gaufrido,[5] clerico suo, nec tamen inde regis gratiam sensit redintegratam. Geoffrey Ridel made archdeacon of Canterbury.

Papa Alexander celebravit concilium Turonis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 298. Eodem anno papa Alexander Turonis concilium congregavit, in ecclesia Sancti Mauricii, xii°. kalendas Junii; ad cujus vocationem, ex permissione regis Angliæ, venerunt archiepiscopi, episcopi, et alii ecclesiæ prælati. Thomas autem, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, cum suis suffraganeis ad dextram papæ sedebat in concilio, et archiepiscopus Eboracensis Rogerus ad sinistram, cum solo episcopo Dunelmensi. Council held at Tours. 21 May.

---

[1] *triumphale quod fuerat*] On an erasure.

[2] *bajulavit. Quod et*] Added to the text, and partly on an erasure.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

[4] *nihil*] nichil, MS.

[5] *Gaufrido*] Gaufrido Ridel, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1163. *Malcolmus, Scotorum rex, et quidam alii reguli fecerunt homagium regi H[enrico].*

Malcolm, king of Scots, and Resus, prince of S. Wales, do homage to Henry. 1 July.

Anno quoque sub eodem, rex Scotorum Malcolmus,[1] et Resus, princeps Demetiæ, id est, Australium Walensium, cum aliis regulis et majoribus Cambriæ, kalendas Julii apud Wudestoche fecerunt homagium regi Anglorum Henrico, et Henriculo, filio ejus.[2] Rog.Wend. ii. 298.

Hic magis apparuit regis contra archiepiscopum indignatio.

Roger, earl of Clare refuses to do homage to the archbishop for Tunbridge castle.

Anni quoque sub ejusdem circulo, Rogerus, comes Clarensis, id est, Glovernensis, a Thoma, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, apud Westmonasterium vocatus ad faciendum sibi homagium de castello de Thunebrugge et ejus pertinentiis, contradixit ei comes instinctu regis, dicens, feudum illud totum[3] in servitio laicali ad regem potius quam ad archiepiscopum pertinere. In quo apparuit cor regis perturbatum et aversum ab archiepiscopo. Rog.Wend. ii. 298.

Facta est recognitio consuetudinum Angliæ apud Clarendonam.

A.D. 1164. Constitutions of Clarendon. 25 Jan.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.IIII°., in præsentia regis Henrici apud Clarendunam, viii°. kalendas Februarii, præsidente Johanne de Oxonia de mandato ipsius regis, præsentibus etiam archiepiscopis, episcopis,[4] abbatibus, comitibus, baronibus, et totius regni proceribus, facta Rog.Wend. ii. 298. Rog.Wend. ii. 299.

---

[1] *Scotorum Malcolmus*] At first written *Malcolmus Scotorum*, as in W. A. C. D., but marked to be transposed.

[2] In the lower margin is the following note, in a hand of the 14th cent.: "Nota, quod rex Scottorum Malcholmus fecit homagium regi Henrico."

[3] *totum*] com̄, MS. In E. at first written *comitis*, and *s* afterwards erased. Corrected from W. A. C. D.

[4] *episcopis*] Repeated, but underscored for omission.

est recognitio sive recordatio cujusdam partis consuetudinum et libertatum antecessorum suorum, regis videlicet Henrici I., avi sui, et aliorum, quæ observari debent in regno ab omnibus et teneri, propter dissensiones et discordias sæpius emergentes inter clerum et regis justiciarios et regni magnates.[1] Harum vero consuetudinum recognitarum[2] quædam pars in sexdecim capitulis subsequentibus continetur. A.D. 1164.

De advocatione et præsentatione ecclesiarum si controversia emerserit inter laicos, vel inter laicos et clericos, vel inter clericos, in curia domini regis tractetur et terminetur. ¶ *Primum hoc da[m]pnavit Romana ecclesia, sub Alexandro Tertio.*

Ecclesiæ de feudo domini regis non possunt in perpetuum dari, absque concessione ipsius. ¶ *Hoc toleravit.*

Clerici accusati[3] de quacunque re, submoniti a justiciario regis, veniant in curiam ipsius responsuri ibidem de hoc, unde videbitur curiæ regis quod ibi sit respondendum; [et in curia ecclesiastica, unde videbitur quod ibi sit respondendum ;][4] ita quod regis justiciarius mittet in curiam sanctæ ecclesiæ, ad videndum quomodo res ibi tractabitur. Et si clericus convictus vel confessus fuerit, non debet de cetero ecclesia eum[5] tueri. ¶ *Hoc dampnavit.*

Archiepiscopis, episcopis et claris personis regni, non licet exire a regno absque licentia regis; et si exierint, si regi placuerit, securum eum facient, quod nec in eundo nec redeundo vel moram faciendo perquirent malum sive dampnum regi vel regno. ¶ *Hoc dampnavit.*

Excommunicati non debent dare vadium ad remanens, nec præstare juramentum, sed tantum vadium et plegium standi judicio ecclesiæ, ubi absolvuntur. ¶ *Hoc dampnavit.* Rog. Wend. ii. 300.

Laici non debent accusari, nisi[6] per certos et legitimos accusatores et testes in præsentia episcopi, ita quod ¶ *Hoc toleravit.*

---

[1] *magnates*] magnatibus, W. A. C. D.

[2] *recognitarum*] recongnitarum, MS.

[3] *accusati*] acusati, MS.

[4] *et in .... respondendum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D., and so in Gerv. Chron., col. 1386.

[5] *eum*] Interlined.

[6] *nisi*] nec, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1164. archidiaconus non perdat jus suum, nec quicquam quod inde habere debeat. Et si tales fuerint, qui culpantur, quod non velit vel audeat aliquis accusare eos, vicecomes requisitus ab ipso, faciat jurare xii. legales homines de visneto sive de villa coram episcopo, quod veritatem secundum conscientiam suam manifestabunt.

¶ *Hoc dampnavit.* Nullus qui de rege tenet in capite, nec aliquis dominicorum ministrorum ejus, excommunicetur, nec alicujus eorum terræ sub interdicto ponantur, nisi prius rex, si in regno fuerit, conveniatur, [vel justiciarius ejus,][1] si fuerit extra regnum, ut rectum de eo faciat; et ita, ut quod pertinebit ad regis curiam ibi terminetur, et de eo quod spectat ad curiam ecclesiasticam, ad eandem mittatur, ut ibidem terminetur. fol. 56 *b.*

¶ *Hoc dampnavit.* De appellationibus, si emerserint, ab archidiacono debent procedere ad episcopum, ab episcopo ad archiepiscopum; et, si archiepiscopus defuerit in justitia exhibenda, ad regem perveniendum est postremo, ut præcepto ipsius in curia archiepiscopi controversia terminetur; ita quod non debet ultra procedere absque domini regis assensu.

¶ *Ho[c] dampnavit.* Si calumnia emerserit inter clericum et laicum, vel e converso, de ullo tenemento quod clericus velit ad elemosinam trahere, vel laicus ad laicum feodum, per recognitionem[2] xii. legalium hominum, juxta capitalis justiciarii regis considerationem, terminabitur, utrum tenementum sit pertinens ad elemosinam, sive ad laicum feudum, coram justiciario regis. Et si recognitum[3] fuerit ad elemosinam pertinere, placitum erit in curia ecclesiastica; si vero ad laicum feodum, nisi ambo tenementum de episcopo[4] eodem vel barone advocaverint, erit placitum in curia regis. Sed, si uterque[5] advocaverint Rog. Wend. ii. 301.

---

[1] *vel justiciarius ejus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Gerv.

[2] *recognitionem*] recongnicionem, MS.

[3] *recognitum*] recongnitum, MS.

[4] *episcopo*] ipso, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C D.

[5] *uterque*] Corrected *utrique* in ed. Wend. The words *erit placitum* . . . *advocaverint* are omitted in A. C. D. and Edd. In Gerv. *uterque advocaverit.*

de feodo illo eundem episcopum vel baronem, erit placitum in curia ipsius, ita quod propter factam recognitionem saisinam non amittat, qui prius fuerat saisitus. A.D. 1164.

Qui de civitate, vel castello, vel burgo, vel dominico manerio regis fuerit, si ab archidiacono vel episcopo super aliquo delicto citatus fuerit, unde debeat eis respondere, et ad citationes eorum noluerit satisfacere, bene licet eis sub interdicto ponere eum, sed non debent eum excommunicare priusquam capitalis minister regis villæ illius conveniatur, ut justiciet eum ad satisfactionem venire; et si minister regis inde defecerit, erit in misericordia regis, et exinde poterit episcopus ipsum accusatum ecclesiastica justitia cohibere[1] vel coercere.[2] ¶ *Ho[c] da[m]pnavit.*

Archiepiscopi, episcopi, et universæ personæ regni, qui de rege tenent in capite, habeant possessiones suas de rege sicut baroniam, et inde respondeant justiciariis et ministris regis, et sequantur et faciant omnes consuetudines regias; et, sicut ceteri barones, debent interesse judiciis curiæ regiæ cum baronibus, quousque perveniatur ad diminutionem membrorum vel mortem. ¶ *Hoc toleravit.*

Cum vacaverit archiepiscopatus, vel episcopatus, vel abbatia, vel prioratus in dominio regis, debet esse in manu ipsius, et inde percipiet omnes redditus et exitus, sicut dominicos redditus suos. Et cum ventum fuerit ad consulendum ecclesiam, debet rex mandare potiores personas ecclesiæ, et in capella ipsius regis debet fieri electio, assensu ipsius regis et consilio personarum regni, quas ad hoc faciendum advocaverit; et ibidem faciet electus homagium et fidelitatem regi, sicut ligio domino suo, de vita sua et membris et de honore terreno, salvo ordine suo, priusquam consecretur. ¶ *Hoc da[m]pnavit.* Rog. Wend. ii. 302.

---

[1] *cohibere*] choibere, MS. | [2] *coercere*] choercere, MS.

A.D. 1164. ¶ *Hoc toleravit.* Si quisquam de proceribus regni deforciaverit archiepiscopo, [vel episcopo,][1] vel archidiacono, de se vel suis justitiam exhibere, dominus rex debet eos justiciare; et si forte aliquis deforciaret domino regi rectitudinem suam, archiepiscopi, episcopi, et archidiaconi debent eum justiciare, ut regi satisfaciat.

¶ *Hoc toleravit.* Catalla eorum, qui sunt in forisfacto regis, non detineat ecclesia vel cimiterium contra justiciarios regis, quia ipsius regis sunt, sive in ecclesiis sive extra fuerint inventa.

¶ *Hoc dampnavit.* Placita de debitis, quæ fide interposita debentur, vel absque interpositione fidei, sint in justitia regis.

¶ *Hoc toleravit.* Filii rusticorum non debent ordinari absque assensu domini, de cujus terra nati dinoscuntur.

Expliciunt regiarum libertatum capitula.

The prelates and nobility swear to observe these Constitutions. Hanc recognitionem sive recordationem de consuetudinibus et libertatibus iniquis, et dignitatibus Deo detestabilibus, archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores, clerus, cum comitibus, baronibus ac proceribus cunctis, juraverunt, et firmiter in verbo veritatis promiserunt viva voce se tenendas et observandas domino regi et heredibus suis, bona fide et absque malo ingenio, in perpetuum. Inter alios autem, hiis omnibus ipse Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Thomas consensit. Rog. Wend. ii. 302.

De pœnitentia Thomæ archiepiscopi pro consuetudinibus temere concessis.

Archbp. Thomas repents having given his consent, Hiis ita gestis, potestas laica in res et personas[2] ecclesiasticas omnia pro libitu, ecclesiastico jure contempto, tacentibus aut vix murmurantibus episcopis Rog. Wend. ii. 303.

---

[1] *vel episcopo*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Gerv.

[2] *res et personas*] tres personas, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

potius quam resistentibus, usurpabat.[1] Thomas igitur, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, in se reversus, cum leges iniquas et omnibus Christi fidelibus detestandas concessisset, et eas observare juramento firmasset, rem temere perpetratam diligenter examinans, seipsum graviter afflixit, ab altaris officio se subtrahens, donec per confessionem et condignos pœnitentiæ fructus a summo pontifice absolvi permeruisset. Nam ilico nuncios ad Romanum pontificem dirigens, dum causam ecclesiæ et suam ad summi pastoris in cedula conscriptam transmisisset cognitionem,[2] ab obligatione, quam inconsulte inierat, absolutionem petiit, et eam per has literas impetravit: "Alexander episcopus, servus servorum Dei," etc. In Vita beati Thomæ reperies.[3] A.D. 1164.

And sends to Rome to be absolved from it.

Bull of pope Alexander III. granting him absolution.

Rex decrevit, ut a laicis clerici punirentur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 304. Eodem anno rex Henricus II. volens in singulis, ut dicebat, maleficia debita cum severitate punire, et cujuscunque ordinis dignitatem ad iniquum[4] trahi dispendium, incongruum[5] esse asseruit clericos a suis justiciariis in publico flagitio deprehensos episcopo loci tradere impunitos. Decrevit enim, ut quos episcopi inveniunt obnoxios, præsente regis justiciario, exauctorarent, et post curiæ regis traderent puniendos. In contrarium sentiebat archiepiscopus Thomas, ut quos exauctorarent episcopi, a manu laicali post-

The king requires the clergy to be subjected to lay jurisdiction.

fol. 57 *a.*

---

[1] *usurpabat*] usurpabant, MS.

[2] *cognitionem*] congnicionem, MS.

[3] *Vita . . . reperies*] These words are on an erasure, and, no doubt, as originally written, reference was made to the larger Chronicle in A. C. D., where the bull is inserted at length, and so also in F. It is in Epp., lib. i. 26, ed. Lupi, 1682; vol. ii. 201, ed. Giles. The "Vita B. Thomæ," here and elsewhere mentioned, is the Life by John of Salisbury and others, published by Lupus.

[4] *iniquum*] iniqum, MS.

[5] *incongruum*] congruum, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1164. modum [non][1] punirentur, quia bis in id ipsum[2] puniri viderentur. Huic controversiæ præstitit occasionem Philippus de Broc,[3] canonicus Bedefordensis, qui tractus in causam propter homicidium, in regis justiciarium verbum protulit contumeliosum. Quod cum negare coram archiepiscopo non posset, præbendæ suæ beneficio multatus est, et per biennium pulsus a regno. Et sic[4] magis ac magis regis apparuit perturbatio.

Case of Philip de Broc, canon of Bedford.

Rog. Wend. ii. 305.

Quomodo beatus Thomas injuriatus recesserit a Northamtona.

The archbishop attempts to leave England.

Rog. Wend. ii. 305.

Videns ergo archiepiscopus libertates ecclesiæ jam expirasse, inscio rege, apud Rumenel navem ascendit, Romanam curiam aditurus, sed, vento in contrarium flante, in Angliam rejectus est; unde magnam regis offensam incurrit. Quapropter ilico tractus[5] in causam, quodam[6] Johanne regi deferente querelam, pro manerio quodam, quod a multis temporibus, ut dicebatur, archiepiscopus inconcusse possederat, tandem post graves vexationes contrariam reportavit sententiam, et regi judicatum solvi sufficienter cavit.[7] Et sic ira regis dampnosa[8] crevit diatim. Item, apud Norhamtonam tractus in causam, super actis quæ[9]

Charges brought against him.

---

[1] *non*] The sense requires the negative particle, as supplied in the margin of W. and Edd.; but it is omitted in A. C. D. Cf. Diceto, Ymag. Hist., col. 536, from whom the passage is borrowed.

[2] *id ipsum*] On an erasure.

[3] *Broc*] At first written *Broic*, as in F., and afterwards *s* added above, so as to make *Broisc*. Corr. from W. A. C. D. and Dic.

[4] *sic*] Added by a hand of the 16th cent.; and so in F. In W. A. C. D. *hic*.

[5] *tractus*] iratus, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[6] *quodam*] Added in marg. The name, *Johanne Mareschallo*, is given in W. A. C. D. and Dic.

[7] This is explained by the addition of the words "habita taxatione in quingentis libris," in W. A. C. D., and confirmed by Diceto, col. 537.

[8] *dampnosa*] dapnosa, MS.

[9] *actis quæ*] Originally written *actu quem*, as in W. A. C. D. and Dic.

in cancellaria egerat, presentiam suam exhibuit iii°. idus Octobris. Et quoniam castellanias[1] de Eya[2] et de Berchamestede[3] pluribus annis libere possedisset, multis[4] consentaneum rationi videbatur, "ut a capite incipiatis," aiunt, "reddere[5] rationem." Sed quoniam ante consecrationem suam archiepiscopus ab Henrico, filio regis et herede, quem rex in principio iræ suæ a custodia archiepiscopi subtraxerat, atque a justiciario regni liber et absolutus ab omni ratiocinio[6] fuerat absolutus, et[7] assignatus episcopis,[8] ne injusto condempnaretur[9] judicio, sedem apostolicam appellavit, et sub pœna anathematis, tam suis suffraganeis episcopis quam laicis universis, ne in patrem suum et judicem sententiam proferrent iniquam, interdixit.[10] Proceres vero et episcopi, qui ad hoc vocati erant a rege, in eum nihilominus[11] non convictum neque confessum, sed privilegium ecclesiæ suæ et suum protestantem, sententiam retorserunt.[12] Et sic archiepiscopus in arcto positus et obprobriis lacessitus,[13] omniumque episcoporum solatio destitutus, crucem, quam manu tenebat, in altum erigens,[14] a curia palam recessit. Sicque sequente nocte villam latenter egrediens, de nocte iter expediens per dies aliquot, usque ad Sandwici portum pervenit, ubi in navicula fragili in Flandriam est trans-

A.D. 1164

Rog. Wend. ii. 306.

The archbishop appeals to the pope.

He leaves England,

[1] *castellanias*] cancellarias, MS. Corr. from W. A. C. D. F. I. In Edd. and ed. Wend. *castellaniam*.

[2] *Eya*] Tya, MS. and F.

[3] *Berchamestede*] Berchame, MS.

[4] *multis*] multum, W. A. C. D.

[5] *incipiatis aiunt reddere*] So also F.; but the sense is clearer in W. A. C. D., *incipiens perceptorum redderet*. Cf. Dic., col. 538.

[6] *ratiocinio*] rac̄onio, MS.

[7] *absolutus, et*] Omitted in W. A. C. D., and is superfluous.

[8] *episcopis*] So Diceto and W. A. C. D. F. I. The Edd. and ed. Wend. correct it *episcopus*. See p. 334.

[9] *condempnaretur*] condepnaretur, MS.

[10] *interdixit*] Added in marg. The verb is omitted in W. and A. C., but D. has *inhibuit* added by a second hand after *anathematis*. The Edd. read *præcepit*, but on no authority.

[11] *nihilominus*] nichilominus, MS.

[12] *retorserunt*] Originally *intorserunt* (as in Dic. and W. A. C.), but corr. in marg.; *intraierunt*, D.; *reintorserunt*, F.

[13] *lacessitus*] lascessitus, MS.

[14] *erigens*] On an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *erexit et*.

A.D. 1164. vectus. Actus ergo in exilium Christi confessor, a domino papa Alexandro, coexule suo, Senonis receptus est, et cito post Pontiniacensi monasterio commendatus.[1]

and is received by the pope at Sens.

Postquam ecclesiam dedicaverat de Radinge, portum ultramarinum subiit beatus Thomas.

Dedication of the church of Reading.

Notandum autem, quod ante exilium suum dedicaverat beatus Thomas ecclesiam conventualem de Radinge, præsente rege et quamplurimis episcopis. Unde tum propter translationem beati Edwardi, tum propter hanc dedicationem, ubi et[2] hinc et inde suam rex exhibuit præsentiam, credebatur ab omnibus rex omnem animi rancorem, quam adversus archiepiscopum conceperat, exsufflasse.[3] Sed non erat ita; sub ovino vellere rex lupinam crudelitatem palliando, vel suam quæsivit animam, vel ecclesiam pro eo, quasi culpis suis exigentibus, destruere. Quod manifeste apud Norhamtonam demonstravit, ut prædictum jam est.

Rancour shown by the king towards the archbishop.

Procurat Fretherícus imperator alium papam substituere.

Death of Octavian, antipope, and election of Paschal III.

Interim, defuncto Octoviano et exulante Alexandro, procurat Fretherícus alium substituere[4] summum pontificem.

Allegatio nunciorum regis H[enrici] II. contra beatum Thomam.

Allegations against the archbishop laid before the pope.

Missi sunt eodem tempore nuncii a rege Anglorum ad papam Senonis, qui in consistorio coram eo talia allegabant: Inter Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, et regem Anglorum controversia versabatur, de

Rog.Wend. ii. 306.

Rog.Wend. ii. 307.

---

[1] *commendatus*] comendatus, MS.
[2] *ubi et*] Om. F.
[3] *exsufflasse*] exuflasse, MS.
[4] *substituere*] sustituere, MS.

utriusque voluntate die præfixo, ut, justitia mediante, illa controversia terminaretur;[1] ad eundem diem, ex præcepto regio, archiepiscopi, episcopi, et alii ecclesiarum prælati convocantur, ut quanto generalior esset concilii celebratio, tanto manifestior fieret fraudis et malitiæ denudatio. Die igitur constituto, catholici principis conspectui se præsentant magnates et[2] archiepiscopus, regni turbator et ecclesiæ; qui de suorum meritorum qualitate non securus, Dominicæ crucis armat se signaculo,[3] tanquam ad tiranni vel scismatici[4] præsentiam accessurus. Nec tamen regia majestas inde offenditur, sed causæ suæ judicium episcoporum fidei committit, ut sic ab omni suspicione liberetur. Restabat, ut in[5] judicio episcopi causam terminarent, ut sic dissidentes in gratiam sedarent, et dissensionis eorum materiam sepelirent. At obviat adversarius et objicit,[6] quoniam ipsum coram rege stare judicio, esset apostolicæ sedis et dignitatis diminutio; ac si nesciat, quod, etsi in illo judicio aliquantulum derogaretur ecclesiæ dignitati, dissimulandum erat pro tempore, ut pax ecclesiæ redderetur. Objicit[6] iterum, patris sibi nomen ascribens, quod arrogantiam redolere videtur, quod filii in patris dampnationem minime debuerant convenire; sed necessarium erat, ut patris superbiam filiorum humilitas temperaret. Instabant autem ad hoc nuncii studiose, ut duo legati mitterentur a papa, qui causam Cantu- fol. 57 b. ariensis archiepiscopi ac regis, omni appellatione remota, diffinirent. Demum multis promissionibus papam flectere curabant, ut consuetudines regni Angliæ et libertates, quas rex, ab avo suo rege Henrico, 'avitas' appel- Rog. Wend. ii. 308. labat dignitates, concedere et confirmare dignaretur. Sed cum, reversis legatis, rex in hac petitione sese

A.D. 1164.

The pope is urged to send legates to decide the cause between the king and abp. and to confirm the liberties granted by Henry I.

[1] *terminaretur*] Originally *terminetur*, as in W. A. C. D.

[2] *magnates et*] Added in marg. Omitted in W. A. C. D., which read also *præsentavit*.

[3] *signaculo*] At first *signiculo*.

[4] *scismatici*] cismatici, MS.

[5] *in*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

[6] *objicit*] obicit, MS.

A.D. 1164. cognovisset[1] repulsum, ira vehementi incanduit, et has sequentes literas singulis Angliæ vicecomitibus sub hac forma direxit.

Literæ regis Anglorum ad vicecomites, contra clericos beati Thomæ.[2]

Letter of the king to the sheriffs.

"Præcipio tibi, quod si aliquis clericus vel laicus in balliva tua Romanam curiam appellaverit, eum capias et firmiter teneas,[3] donec voluntatem meam inde præcipiam.[4] Et omnes redditus clericorum archiepiscopi et possessiones saisias in manum meam, et omnium clericorum, qui cum archiepiscopo sunt, patres et matres, fratres et sorores, nepotes et neptes, ponas per salvos plegios, et catalla eorum, donec voluntatem meam inde præcipiam.[4] Et hoc breve tecum afferas, cum submonitus fueris." Rog. Wend. ii. 308.

Gileberto quoque, Londoniensi episcopo, scripsit in hæc verba.[5]

Letter to Gilbert, bishop of London.

"Nosti quam male Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, operatus est adversum me[6] et regnum meum, et quam male recesserit. Et ideo mando tibi, quod clerici sui, qui detraxerunt honori meo et regni, et qui circa ipsum fuerunt post fugam suam, non percipiant aliquid de redditibus, quos habuerunt in episcopatu tuo, nisi per me, nec habeant aliquod auxilium vel consilium a te." Rog. Wend. ii. 308.

Item, justiciariis suis[7] significavit sic.

Literæ regis justiciariis, contra beatum Thomam archiepiscopum.[8]

Letter to the justiciaries.

"Si quis inventus fuerit ferens literas domini papæ vel mandatum, aut Thomæ archiepiscopi, continens interdictum Christianitatis in Anglia, capiatur et retineatur, donec inde voluntatem meam præcipiam. Item, nullus clericus, monachus, canonicus vel conversus, transfretare permittatur, nisi habeat literas de reditu suo justiciarii, vel nostras; si quis Rog. Wend. ii. 309.

---

[1] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.
[2] Epp. lib. i. 15, ed. Lupi.
[3] *teneas*] custodias, ed.
[4] *præcipiam*] percipias, ed., and so below.
[5] Epp. lib. i. 13.
[6] *me*] Added in marg.
[7] *suis*] At first written *meis*.
[8] In Hoveden, p. 496.

aliter inventus fuerit, capiatur et retineatur. Nullus appellet[1] ad papam, neque ad Thomam archiepiscopum, neque aliquod placitum ex eorum mandato teneatur, neque aliquod mandatum eorum in Anglia recipiatur;[2] et si quis tenuerit vel receperit, capiatur et retineatur. Si episcopi, abbates, clerici vel laici sententiam interdicti tenuerint, sine dilatione a terra dejiciantur,[3] et tota eorum cognatio, ita quod nihil de catallis suis secum ferant, sed catalla eorum et possessiones in manu nostra saisiantur. Omnes clerici, qui redditus habent in Anglia, sint submoniti per omnes comitatus, ut infra tres menses sint in Anglia ad redditus suos, sicut eos diligunt, et amodo in Angliam cupiunt[4] redire. Et si ad terminum præfixum non venerint, redditus eorum in nostra manu saisiantur. Episcopi Londoniensis et Norwicensis summoneantur, quod sint coram justiciariis ad rectum faciendum, quod contra statuta regni interdixerunt[5] terram Hugonis comitis, et in ipsum sententiam excommunicationis tulerunt. Denarii beati Petri colligantur et serventur, quousque inde regia voluntas audiatur." A.D. 1164.

Rog. Wend. ii. 310. Ecclesiam præterea Cantuariensem et omnia bona archiepiscopi et suorum, rex confiscari præcepit. Et, quod in nullius historiæ serie legitur, totam ejus cognationem[6] exilio dampnavit, sine delectu conditionis, sexus aut ætatis; immo et mulieres in puerperio. Et, cum ecclesia catholica oret pro hæreticis et perfidis Judæis, prohibitum est a rege, ne quis orationum suffragiis eum[7] adjuvaret.

The king orders the archbishop's goods to be confiscated, and his parentage exiled.

Allegatio beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, in præsentia domini papæ A[lexandri].

Rog. Wend. ii. 310. Beatus igitur Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, suffraganeorum suorum inter tot injurias omni solatio destitutus, profectus est ad curiam Romanam, et in

Appeal of the abp. to the pope.

---

[1] *appellet*] apellet, MS.
[2] *recipiatur*] At first written *percipiatur*.
[3] *dejiciantur*] deiciantur, MS.
[4] *cupiunt*] Added on to the text, and followed by *habere*, but the latter word afterwards obliterated. Cf. Hoveden, p. 496.
[5] *interdixerunt*] interduxerunt, MS.
[6] *cognationem*] congnationem, MS.
[7] *eum*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1164. præsentia domini papæ sic loqui exorsus est: "Pater[1] sanctissime, ad vestram audientiam confugio, dolens statum ecclesiæ et jura ejus in avaritiam[2] principum dissipari; quapropter occurrendum credidi morbo venienti. Vocatus autem sum coram rege, ut de quibusdam custodiis, quas olim cancellarius regis existens disposueram, in ratiocinium, tanquam[3] laicus, computarem, qui in promotione mea ad archiepiscopatum, a filio regis primogenito et justiciario regni ab omni ratiocinio et obligatione liber fui episcopis[4] assignatus. Et nunc, unde mihi[5] resistendi suffragia speraveram, destitutus sum. Animadverti enim dominos et confratres meos episcopos, pro aulicorum arbitrio in me animadvertere paratos, et, cunctis incursantibus contra me, fere suffocatus ad tuæ pietatis audientiam, quæ nec in extremis negligit, respiravi. Sub qua demonstraturus asto, me nec ibi fuisse judicandum, nec ab illis. Nam quid aliud hoc esset, nisi jura ecclesiæ sibi subtrahere? Quid aliud quam spiritualia temporalibus submittere? Semel hoc natum, exemplum esset ad multa enormia subsequenda.[6] Sed dicunt episcopi, 'Reddenda sunt Cæsari, quæ ejus sunt.' Sed [si][7] in pluribus optemperandum est regi, in illis tamen optemperandum non est, quibus efficitur ne sit rex. Non enim essent illa Cæsaris, sed tiranni, in quibus, etsi non pro me, pro seipsis episcopi ei resistere deberent. Quæ enim hæc causa tanti fuit odii, ut pro me[8] extinguendo seipsos extinguerent? Itaque dum spiritualia pro temporalibus negligunt, deficiunt in utrisque. Condescende[9] ergo, pater sanctis-

Rog. Wend. ii. 311.

[1] Abridged from Epp. lib. i. 30; ed. Giles, i. 2.

[2] *avaritiam*] avaricia, MS. and F.

[3] *tanquam*] ut tanquam, MS. and F.

[4] *episcopis*] So W. A. C. F.; *episcopus*, D., Edd., and ed. Wend. This paragraph is not in the Appeal, as given by Diceto, col. 539, nor in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

[5] *mihi*] michi, MS.

[6] *enormia subsequenda*] Added in marg.

[7] *si*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.; *etsi*, ed. Giles.

[8] *me*] Interlined.

[9] *Condescende*] At first written *condescendente*, but the last three letters underscored for omission.

sime, in fugam meam et persecutionem, et me[1] aliquando compatiendo tui[2] reminiscere magnum fuisse, et propter te injuriis[3] lacessitum. Utere igitur rigore tuo, coerce[4] illos, quorum instinctu nævus[5] hujus persecutionis obrepsit; nec domino regi horum aliquid imputetur, qui hujus machinationis minister est resistens[6] potius quam repertor." A.D. 1164. fol. 58 *a*.

Papa sententiam ab episcopis in archiepiscopum latam in irritum revocavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 311. Sentence given by the pope. Hiis auditis allegationibus, dominus papa, habita cum cardinalibus deliberatione, Thomæ, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, tale fertur dedisse responsum: "Quod[7] minor majorem judicare non possit, et præsertim eum, cui jure prælationis subesse dinoscitur, et obedientiæ vinculo tenetur astrictus, tam divinæ quam humanæ leges demonstrant, et sanctorum patrum statuta[8] id manifestius declarant. Hanc[9] siquidem nos, quorum interest errata corrigere, sententiam ab episcopis et baronibus præsumptuose in te latam, in qua tibi jam dicti episcopi ac barones omnia mobilia tua, tam contra juris ordinem quam contra ecclesiasticam consuetudinem, abjudicarunt, præsertim cum nulla mobilia Rog. Wend. ii. 312. præterquam de bonis ecclesiæ tuæ habueris, irritam penitus esse censemus, et eam auctoritate apostolica cassamus; statuentes, ut nullas in posterum vires obti-

[1] *me*] So written at first, as in W. A. C. D. F. and ed. Giles, but afterwards altered to *mei*.

[2] *compatiendo tui*] Originally, *ipē tui*, a mistake, no doubt, for *tempore tuo*, as in W. A. C. D. F., Dic. and ed. Giles; but these words have afterwards been underscored, and the reading in the text substituted in the margin.

[3] *injuriis*] in injuriis, MS.

[4] *coerce*] coherce, MS.

[5] *nævus*] In the text *nomen* (as in W. A. C. D. and Dic.), but corr. in marg.

[6] *resistens*] Added in marg.

[7] Epp. lib. i. 49; ed. Giles, ii. 203.

[8] *statuta*] Originally *statutis*, as in W. A. C. D., Dic. and ed. Giles, all of which read *declaratur*.

[9] *Hanc*] At first, *Hæc* (as in W. A. C. I. and ed. Giles), but corr. in marg., and so Edd. In D. *Ad hæc*.

A.D. 1164. neat, vel tibi aut successoribus, seu ecclesiæ tuæ gubernationi commissæ, aliquod in posterum valeat præjudicium generare. Ceterum,[1] si hii, qui in possessionibus et bonis ecclesiæ tuæ tibi aut tuis vel violentiam aut injuriam intulerunt, legitime commoniti vobis ablata restituere, et satisfactionem congruam exhibere noluerint, tu in eos, si opportunum[2] esse videris, ecclesiasticam justitiam non differas exercere;[3] et nos quod inde rationabiliter feceris, ratum habebimus atque firmum. Verum de persona regis speciale tibi mandatum non damus, nec tamen in aliquo tibi jus pontificale, quod in consecratione tua suscepisti, adimimus, sed ipsum illæsum volumus conservare." Et, hiis ita gestis, Thomas archiepiscopus ad Pontiniacense cœnobium remeavit.

The abp. returns to Pontigny.

Matildis, filia regis H[enrici], duci Saxonum maritatur.

A.D. 1165.

Arrival of Reginald, abp. of Cologne, on account of the marriage of princess Matilda to the duke of Saxony.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.V°. Reginaldus, Coloniensis archiepiscopus, qui scisma[4] Octoviani contra papam foverat Alexandrum, venit apud Westmonasterium ad regem Henricum, accepturus in conjugem Matildem, filiam regis H[enrici] primogenitam, Henrico, duci Saxoniæ, maritandam.[5] Cui cum magnates Angliæ sollempniter occurrissent, Robertus, comes Legrecestriæ et justiciarius regis, illum in osculum non recepit; excommunicatus enim erat a papa et non absolutus; unde altaria, super quæ[6] missam[7] celebrarunt illi scismatici,[8] passim sunt subversa.

Rog. Wend. ii. 312.

---

[1] *Ceterum*] From this word to the end is omitted in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

[2] *opportunum*] oportunum, MS.

[3] *exercere*] excercere, MS.

[4] *scisma*] cisma, MS.

[5] *maritandam*] Interlined.

[6] *quæ*] quem, A. C. D.

[7] *missam*] Originally, *missam illi* (as W. A. C. D.), but *illi* afterwards underscored for omission.

[8] *scismatici*] cismatici, MS. In W. A. C. D. *scismatico*. The text is confirmed by Diceto, col. 539. The Edd. and ed. Wend. read *ille scismaticus celebravit*, but without authority.

A.D. 1165.

Alienora peperit Johannam.

Rog. Wend. ii. 313.

Eodemque anno Alienora regina regi Anglorum Henrico peperit filiam, quam vocavit nomine Johannam.

Birth of the princess Joanna.

Nota de crismate confecto apud Sanctum Albanum.[1]

Rog. Wend. ii. 313.

Eodem etiam anno Godefridus, episcopus de Sancto Asaph, in ecclesia Sancti Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, ad majus altare in Cœna Domini crisma confecit solempniter[2] et oleum sanctum, fultus auctoritate privilegiorum ejusdem ecclesiæ, in præsentia abbatis Roberti.

Godfrey, bp. of St. Asaph, prepares the chrism in the church of St. Alban's. 13 May.

Noradinus contra Christianos invaluit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 313.

Anno quoque sub eodem Noradinus, quidam Turcorum princeps potentissimus, in finibus Antiochenis Hareng castrum obsedit. Quo audito, Boamundus, princeps Antiochenus, Reimundus, comes Tripolitanus, Salamannus,[3] Ciciliæ præsul, et Thoros, Armeniorum princeps, obsidionem solvere cupientes, ad locum accedunt, et Noradinum in fugam propellunt. Quem cum fugientem temere insequerentur, reversus est contra nostros ipsum insequentes; et, facta irruptione in ipsos vehementi, nobiles cepit memoratos, et eos vinculis constrictos apud Halapiam custodiæ carcerali mancipavit. Castrum etiam, quod prius obsederat, militaribus copiis circumcingens, levi sibi negotio subjugavit.

Noradin besieges Hareng, and takes Boamund, prince of Antioch, prisoner.

---

[1] This chapter is omitted in F.

[2] *solempniter*] On an erasure.

[3] *Salamannus*] Salomon, E.

A.D. 1165. *In medio hiemis terræmotus advenit, in triste auspicium.*

26 Jan. ¶ *Nota de terræ-motu in Anglia.* In confinio autem annorum illorum, videlicet in Adventu, et iterum vii°. kalendas Februarii, in Ely[1] et Northfolckia[2] et Sufolckia factus est terræ-motus, ita quod homines stantes prostravit, et campanas pulsavit.

Rex Henricus in Normanniam transfretavit.

A.D. 1166. King Henry crosses to Normandy. 2 June. Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.VI°. rex Henricus in initio Quadragesimæ in Normanniam transfretavit. Quod audiens Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, de Pontiniaco venit Viceliacum; et in die Dominicæ Ascensionis, videntibus [cunctis][3] qui ad diem festum convenerant, et populo civitatis, repente in pulpitum ascendens, consuetudinum, quas in regno Angliæ 'avitas' appellant, observatores, defensores et incentores candelis excommunicavit accensis. Et inter ceteros, nominatim Ricardum de Lucy, Ricardum, archidiaconum Pictavensem, Jocelinum de Bailluil, Alanum de Novilla, et alios quamplures. Sed ipsi absentes et non vocati nec convicti, ut dicebant, excommunicati, missis ad archiepiscopum legatis, appellaverunt, et ecclesiam intraverunt. Sed non multo post, Willelmus Papiensis et Johannes Neapolitanus, cardinales a latere summi pontificis destinati, apud Muntmirail regem Henricum et Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, convenerunt. Et licet eos in partem regis archiepiscopus inclinatiores sensisset, rem tamen in judicium deduci ea ratione concessit, residentibus illis in consistorio, ut, secundum ecclesiæ formam, tam sibi quam suis prius fieret plena restitutio ablatorum. Nec enim spoliatus judicium

Rog. Wend. ii. 313.

Beatus Thomas excommunicat consuetudinum iniquarum observatores.

Rog. Wend. ii. 314.

The king and abp. are cited to Montmirail by the cardinal legates.

[1] *Ely*] At first written *Elya*, but *a* erased.
[2] *Northfolckia*] Northfoclckia, MS.
[3] *cunctis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

fol. 58 b. subire voluit, nec cogi potuit ratione. Quod cum illi [nec][1] facere vellent nec possent, infecto negotio, prædictis excommunicatis prius absolutis, ad curiam sunt reversi. Alanum vero de Novilla absolvit Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, accepto ab eo sacramento, quod in eundo Jerosolimam transiret per dominum papam, ejus mandato pariturus. A.D. 1166. The persons excommunicated are absolved.

Rex Francorum venit Pontiniacum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 314. Eodem tempore Lodouuicus, rex Francorum, venit Pontiniacum; et, ne quid a rege Anglorum fieret in perniciem Cisterciensis Ordinis, Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, cui jam per biennium Pontiniacenses monachi commoranti[2] omnem exhibuerant humanitatem, Senonis secum adduxit, et apud Sanctam Columbam ei per annos iiii^{or}. sufficientiam in expensis invenit. Louis, king of France, goes to Pontigny, and brings the abp. to Sens.

Prophetia.

Cum autem quidam monachorum Pontiniacensium, qui eum per unam dietam ab eodem valefacientes redituri recederent, archiepiscopus, junctis manibus, regratiabatur eis de eorum beneficiis ei impensis, addens, "Salutate dominum abbatem et conventum, dicentes ei vice mea, 'Timeo, ne exiguæ domui Pontiniaci oneri fuerim et gravamini; sed adveniet tempus, quo quidam meus successor et ecclesiæ meæ prælatus beneficia, in quibus vobis teneor obligatus, meam supplens[3] insufficientiam,[4] vobis plene recompensabit.'" At ipsi, "Libenter verba nobis injuncta deferemus." Nec tamen verba intellexerunt. Prophecy of the abp. relative to the abbey of Pontigny.

---

[1] *nec*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[2] *commoranti*] On an erasure.
[3] *supplens*] suplens, MS. The last two letters are on an erasure.
[4] *insufficientiam*] insuficientiam, MS.

A.D. 1166.

Subvenitur Terræ Sanctæ ex Anglia.

Tax exacted for the relief of the Holy Land.

Per idem tempus, ad subventionem Terræ Sanctæ, de unaquaque carucata terræ totius Angliæ iiii^or^. denarii concessi sunt et collecti. Rog. Wend. ii. 315.

Pullulavit hæresis in Anglia.

Some persons convicted of heresy are expelled the kingdom.

Sub eisdem diebus quidam pravi dogmatis [1] dissemi- Rog. Wend. ii. 315. natores apud Oxoniam tracti sunt in judicium, præsente rege et regni episcopis; quos, a fide catholica devios et in examine superatos et confusos, facies cauteriata notabiles cunctis exposuit. Qui ilico expulsi sunt a regno.

Natus est regi H[enrico] II. filius, scilicet Johannes.

Birth of prince John, and evil reports respecting him.

Anno sub eodem Alienora, Anglorum regina, peperit Rog. Wend. ii. 315. filium, et vocatus est Johannes. De quo, cum adhuc esset in ventre matris suæ, et cum baptizaretur, mira sed relatu indigna pronostica evenisse referuntur.[2]

Obiit Robertus, abbas Sancti Albani.[3]

Death of Robert, abbat of St. Alban's.

Eodemque anno Robertus, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Rog. Wend. ii. 315. Albani octavus decimus, diem clausit extremum,[4] postquam ecclesiam præfatam annis xiiii. magnifice gubernasset.

---

[1] *dogmatis*] docmatis, MS.

[2] In the margin is the following note: "¶ De quo mirum contigit præsagium matri impregnatæ, et puero baptizato." It is inserted in the text of F. before the words *cum adhuc*.

[3] In the margin are sketched an abbot's mitre and crosier reversed. This chapter is omitted in F.

[4] In W. A. C. D. the date is added, "in festo apostolorum Simonis et Judæ." [28 Oct.]

Frustra scriptum est regi et episcopis.

A.D. 1166.

Rog. Wend. ii. 315. Temporibus quoque sub eisdem Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Thomas, sperans se posse regem Henricum, nec non et episcopos Angliæ et alios, sibi et ecclesiasticis libertatibus adversantes,[1] humilitate vincere, nunc regi nunc aliis elegantissimas epistolas transmisit, et nuncios favorabiles, prudentes et sollempnes destinavit, ad regis tirannidem præcipue emolliendam. Ita quod inter ceteros[2] ipsam regis matrem Matildem, quondam imperatricem, ad ipsum regem direxit; quæ, licet blandis et maternis precibus uteretur, nihil[3] profecit. Epistolæ autem et persuasiones ipsius beati Thomæ, quia specialem exigunt tractatum, hic brevius, sed in Vita ipsius omnia hæc[4] plenius annotantur.

Archbp. Thomas writes to the king and bishops.

Excommunicatur Alanus de Novilla.[5]

Rog. Wend. ii. 329. Eodemque anno[6] idem Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, excommunicavit Alanum de Novilla, quia Willelmum, capellanum suum, vinculis tenuit irretitum.

Excommunication of Alan de Neville.

Episcopi suffraganei appellaverunt[7] *contra beatum Thomam.*

Rog. Wend. ii. 316. Tempore quoque sub eodem episcopi suffraganei, metuentes ne omnes, quos in genere per sententiam Rog. Wend. ii. 317. archiepiscopus ligaverat, nominatim iterato specificaret,

Letter of the suffragan bishops to the abp.,

[1] *adversantes*] adversantes posse, MS.

[2] *inter ceteros*] Written *ceteros inter*, but marked to be transposed.

[3] *nihil*] nichil, MS.

[4] *in Vita . . . . hæc*] On an erasure. In F. the words *quia . . . . annotantur* are omitted, and the letter to the king inserted at length, as in W. A. C. D.; Epp. lib. i. 64.

[5] *Novilla*] Nuella, MS.

[6] In Wendover and A. C. D. F. this event is placed under the year 1168. F. here ceases to agree with the text, and follows the larger chronicle to the close of the year.

[7] *appellaverunt*] apellaverunt, MS.

A.D. 1166. in vocem appellationis contra juris ordinem prorupe-runt. Eodemque tempore archiepiscopus eisdem scribit amicabiliter. Item, Londoniensis episcopus regi Henrico, per verba vulpina. Has omnes epistolas invenies in Vita beati Thomæ.[1]

and his reply.

Letter of the bishop of London to the king.

Literæ Alexandri papæ ad regem H[enricum] II. pro beato Thoma.

A.D. 1167. [1169.]

Letter of pope Alexander to the king, and other letters.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 329–332.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.VII°.[2] Alexander [papa][3] regi Anglorum scripsit in hæc verba: "Quam paterne[4] et quam benigne regiam sæpius," etc. Respice in Historia ipsius martiris,[5] et invenies et hanc epistolam et alias, quas ad invicem sibi miserunt papa regi, papaque episcopis, rex papæ, et sic ad invicem, ut difficile et diffusum foret in hiis Cronicis, quæ tantum statum regni Angliæ debent describendo manifestare, plenius enucleare. Verumtamen eodem tempore Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, cognomento[6] Folioth, nec sine ratione, quia vere Folioth, vel potius Nabal, id est, stultus dicebatur, a bono Thoma, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, excommunicatus est. Post[7] vero scripsit rex

Excommunication of the bishop of London.

[1] *episcopi suffraganei metuentes . . . Thomæ*] The whole of this is written over an erasure, and at first only as far as *invenies*, but the words *in Vita beati Thomæ inveniuntur* have afterwards been added, and the last is superfluous. The letters mentioned are in W. A. C. D. F. and Epp. lib. i. 123, 126, 127.

[2] *m°.c°.lx°.vii°.*] This date is partly on an erasure, and the traces of another *x* can still be discerned. There is evidently some confusion here, for the year 1167 commences rightly on fol. 59, (p. 343,) and the events entered previously are, in great measure, the same as those belonging to the year 1169, as in Wendover and A. C. D. In F. the text from the beginning of the chapter to the words *plenius enucleare* is replaced by the text of W. A. C. D., which forms the real commencement of 1167.

[3] *papa*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[4] Epp. lib. iv. 4; ed. Giles, ii. 306. According to Jaffé, p. 716, it was written 22 May 1168.

[5] *Historia ipsius martiris*] On an erasure.

[6] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[7] *Post*] Corrected *Postea*, by a late hand.

eidem G[ileberto]. Quas literas in Vita prædicta[1] invenietis. A.D. 1167. [1169.] Letter of the king to the bishop.

Duo legati mittuntur in Angliam, sed discordes recesserunt.[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 333. Eodem anno missi sunt duo legati[3] a latere summi pontificis, Vivianus et Gratianus, ut pacem inter regem Anglorum et archiepiscopum Cantuariensem reformarent. Sed quorum erat potestas æqualis, [eos][4] varius disjungebat affectus, et ideo pietatis effectu caruit eorum adventus. Two legates are sent to effect a reconciliation.

Qualiter omni solatio caruit beatus Thomas.

Rog. Wend. ii. 337. Hoc ergo tribulationis tempore Thomas, confessor invictus, martirium, quod nondum suscepit in corpore, servavit in mente. Videns enim illum, qui caput esse debuit ecclesiæ militantis, quod se non opposuit murum,[5] ut staret pro ea in die prœlii, sed conversus est retrorsum[6] ut aries cornua non habens, omni humano destitutus solatio, ad divinum confugit auxilium, incessanter pro statu ecclesiæ orans, corpus suum in vigiliis et jeju- fol. 59 a. niis macerans, pro adversariis suis Deum nocte dieque orare[7] non cessavit. Mental sufferings of the archbishop.

Iterum scribit papa A[lexander] regi Anglorum H[enrico] II., sed frustra.[8]

Rog. Wend. ii. 321. Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.VII°. Alexander papa iterum et iterum regi pro pace ecclesiæ scribit; et inter ceteras A.D. 1167. Letters of pope Alex-

---

[1] *in Vita prædicta*] On an erasure. Both here and above, traces of letters are seen underneath, which appear to read, *in Cronicis* . . . The letters referred to are in Epp. lib. iii. 39, 47.

[2] This chapter and the next are both retained under the year 1167 in F., but partly repeated in 1169.

[3] These legates were sent in May 1169. Jaffé, p. 724.

[4] *eos*] Omitted also in E. F., but supplied from W. A. C. D.

[5] *murum*] mutum, MS.

[6] *retrorsum*] On an erasure.

[7] *orare*] Added above the line.

[8] This short chapter is omitted in F.

A.D. 1167. epistolas, in hæc verba: "Prædecessorum nostrorum," etc. Respice in Magnis Cronicis.[1]

ander to the king.

Obiit Lincolniensis episcopus Robertus.

Death of Robert, bishop of Lincoln. 26 Jan.

Eodem anno Robertus, episcopus Lincolnensis, vir magnæ humilitatis, migravit ad Dominum, vii°. kalendas Februarii. Rog. Wend. ii. 321.

Symon, prior ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, eligitur in abbatem.[2]

Election of Symon, prior of St. Alban's, as abbat. 18 May.

Anno quoque sub eodem Symon, prior ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, vir magnæ religionis et scientiæ, amator librorum et sacrarum scripturarum, die Dominicæ Ascensionis in abbatem ejusdem ecclesiæ electus, a Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, ante majus altare sollempniter est consecratus.[3] Rog. Wend. ii. 321.

Discordes effecti sunt reges Francorum et Anglorum.

War between the kings of France and England.

Temporeque sub eodem effecti sunt discordes reges Francorum et Anglorum, unde Calvus-Mons, Gisorcio vicinus, succensus est a Normannis. Capti sunt ibi milites multi et cives, sed in illius dampni ultionem rex Francorum villam Andeliaci combussit. Et ipsa die reversus in Franciam, plusquam mille de suis in itinere amisit. Et non multo post, in pago Perticensi, milites multi de gente Francorum capti sunt a Normannis. Rog. Wend. ii. 322.

---

[1] *Magnis Cronicis*] These words have been erased, but can be read by the aid of a chemical agent. The letter referred to is addressed not to the king, but to Becket, and is inserted in Wendover (who borrows it from Diceto, col. 546), and in A. C. D. It is omitted in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

[2] This chapter is also omitted in F.

[3] *consecratus*] This word has been erased, but traces of it are still visible, and so read W. A. C. D. A more recent hand (of the 15th century) has supplied its place by *munus benedictionis suscepit*, and struck out *est*.

Rex Henricus archiepiscopo Coloniensi, necnon et imperatori Fretherico consentit.[1]

Rog. Wend. ii. 322. Anno Domini M°.C°.LX°.VIII°.[2] Henricus, rex Anglorum, motus contra papam Alexandrum, ex hoc quod Thomæ, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, primatum Angliæ conferens ipsi præstitit auxilium, consilium et favorem, et pro ipso cum suis efficaciter mandatis et[3] epistolis nitebatur adversariorum suorum rigorem mitigare. Reginaldo igitur, Coloniensi archiepiscopo, scismatico et hosti papæ publico, literas in hæc verba direxit: "[Diu][4] desideravi justam habere occasionem recedendi a papa Alexandro et a perfidis cardinalibus ejus, qui proditorem meum Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, contra me manu tenere præsumunt," etc. Vide in Cronicis Magnis.[5] Simile autem mandatum significavit rex imperatori Fretherico, sed utrumque, Deo dante, effectu caruit. Rog. Wend. ii. 324. Eodemque tempore dominus papa Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, scripsit in hæc verba quandam elegantem et prolixam epistolam: "A memoria tua," etc. R. Wend. ii. 326. Respice in . . . . . .[6] Cui etiam ipse rescripsit prolixius.

A.D. 1168. Henry is angry with the pope for taking the part of the abp.

His letters to the abp. of Cologne and the emperor Frederic.

Letter of the pope to Gilbert, bp. of London, and reply.

Gaufridus, filius regis H[enrici] II., fit comes Britanniæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 329. Eodemque anno[7] Conanus, Minoris Britanniæ comes, dum in fata concederet, ex sorore regis Scotorum Con-

Death of Conan IV., count of Britanny.

---

[1] *consentit*] So MS. but we should, perhaps, read *conscripsit*.

[2] Throughout the years 1168 and 1169, MS. F. generally follows the larger chronicle.

[3] *et*] Interlined.

[4] *Diu*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[5] *Cronicis Magnis*] Partly erased, but still very legible. The letter is given in W. A. C. D. F., and in Epp. lib. i. 69.

[6] An erasure has again been made here, over which has been written, *auti* . . . ; but the text probably stood originally, *in Epistolarum libro*, as may be inferred from E., which reads, *Epistolarum librum*. The letters referred to are in W. A. C. D. F. and Epp. lib. i. 37, 38. Jaffé, p. 704, places this letter of the pope in June 1165.

[7] *anno*] Interlined.

A.D. 1168. stantia[1] filiam reliquit heredem; quam rex Anglorum H[enricus] Gaufrido, filio suo, ut suam potentiam ampliaret et famam dilataret, adquisivit uxorem.

Papa scripsit regi Henrico, tanquam publico ecclesiæ hosti indurato.

A.D. 1169. Letters of pope Alexander to the king and abp.

Anno Domini Mº.Cº.LXº.IXº. papa Alexander regi Anglorum, jam non tantum contra Cantuariensem archiepiscopum Thomam, sed contra ecclesiam armato et indurato, scripsit, persuadendo, supplicando, increpando et comminando. *Item*, domino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et aliis regni Angliæ prælatis et magnatibus; sed nihil[2] prorsus scripta[3] valuerunt. Tandem archiepiscopus Gilebertum, Londoniensem episcopum, excommunicavit. Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 329–331.

Excommunication of the bp. of London.

Alienora, filia regis Anglorum, nupsit Andefulso, regi Castellæ, in Hispania.

Marriage of the princess Alienor to the king of Castille.

Eodem anno Alienora, filia regis Angliæ, hoc summo conamine ipso rege procurante, nupsit regi Castellæ Andefulso, principi in Hispania potentissimo. Rog. Wend. ii. 332.

Condolet rex Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo.

Per idem tempus, cum rumor de excommunicatione Gileberti, Londoniensis episcopi, ad aures regis Anglorum pervenisset, eodem episcopo ipsi significante, re- Rog. Wend. ii. 332.

---

[1] *Constantia*] This is an error copied from Wendover. Conan's wife was named *Margaret*, by whom he left a daughter named *Constance*. His death took place 20 Feb. 1171. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 898. In E. the reading is corrected rightly, *Constantiam*.

[2] *nihil*] Written *nil* in the text, but corr. *nichil* in marg.

[3] These are the letters mentioned previously, at p. 342. They are given at length in W. A. C. D. F.; Epp. lib. iv. 4, lib. v. 9.

scripsit ei literas consolatorias, immo potius ad obstinationem et duritiam incentivas, in hæc verba. Quæ, quia sunt[1] brevia, hic duximus ea annotanda: A.D. 1169.

"Audivimus[2] gravamen, quod ille Thomas, proditor et adversarius meus, intulit in te et in alias personas regni mei, quod non minus ægre fero de persona tua, quam si in personam meam virus suum evomuisset. Et ideo pro certo scias, quod ego omnem operam dabo per dominum papam, et per regem Francorum, et per omnes amicos meos, quod de cetero non poterit nobis nec regno nostro nocere. Unde volo et consulo, quod interim nullo modo in animo tuo turberis, pro certo sciturus, quod si Romam adire volueris, omnia necessaria ad viam de meo tibi honorabiliter et sufficienter inveniam." Rog. Wend. ii. 333.

De legatis, de quibus prædictum est.

Rog. Wend. ii. 333. Venerunt iterum ipsi duo legati, de quibus prædictum est,[3] ad regem in Normanniam de pace tractaturi, apud Baiocas, seseque regis et archiepiscopi conspectibus præsentarunt. Et post tractatus[4] immensos et diffusos valde, cum pax in januis ab omnibus crederetur,[5] literas illis direxit Willelmus, Senonensis archiepiscopus, in quibus continebatur, ne sine ipsius conscientia, sicut a domino papa in mandatis acceperant, in reconciliatione procederent facienda. Sicque duo legati a regis curia, sicut prius,[6] recesserunt. Noluit enim rex cum archiepiscopo aliqua ratione componere, nisi salvis sibi consuetudinibus iniquis regni sui, et dignitatibus avitis, quod etiam ipsis legatis nefas[7] videbatur et absurdum. Two legates come to the king, but fail to reconcile him with the abp. Rog. Wend. ii. 334.

[1] *Quæ, quia sunt*] On an erasure.

[2] *Audivimus*] Audivi, W. A. C. D.; Epp. lib. iii. 47.; Epp. Gilb. episc. Lond. ii. 493, ed. Giles.

[3] *iterum . . . prædictum est*] These words refer to the entry previously made respecting the legates at p. 343, and are not in W. A. C. D. F.

[4] *tractatus*] tractus, MS.

[5] *crederetur*] At first written *creditur*, but corr. in marg.

[6] *sicut prius*] Omitted in W. A. C. D.

[7] *nefas*] nephas, MS.

A.D. 1169. *Literæ regis H[enrici] II. ad papam.* fol. 59 b.

Gilbert, bp. of London, goes to the king, to concert measures against the abp.

Eodem quoque anno Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, transfretavit, suam domino papæ præsentiam exhibiturus, et causas appellationis redditurus. Quo veniente ad regem H[enricum] in Normannia, tractare cœperunt communiter, quomodo beatum Thomam dolo circumvenirent,[1] et causam ejus, licet justissimam, coram papa denigrarent. Tandem in hoc consenserunt, ut rex Romam mitteret sollempnes nuncios cum literis ipsius, in quibus expresse domino papæ denunciaret, quod superbiam Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, severitatis pede contereret, vel[2] ipse et omnes barones Angliæ cum viris omnibus[3] ecclesiasticis ab ejus obedientia recederent. Quarum literarum tenor, quia materiæ præsenti necessariæ sunt, huic eas paginæ duximus inscribendas. Rog.Wend. ii. 334.

Epistola.[4]

Letter of the king to the pope.

"Vestræ, pater, satis innotescit serenitati, quanta me et terram meam affligat molestia, quantisque me vexaverit injuriis Thomas ille, adversarius meus, cum, teste conscientia, nihil meruerim,[5] nil gesserim tanta dignum contumelia. Nunc autem innumeris præcedentibus novam adjecit injuriam, qui affligere non desinit innocentem. Vestra siquidem fultus auctoritate, ut asserit, devotos et fideles ecclesiæ Romanæ filios Londoniensem et Saresbiriensem episcopos, cum quibusdam familiaribus meis, anathematis sententia innodavit, nullam habens adversus eos causam rationabilem. Hoc autem quam sit mihi intolerabile, quamque famæ meæ generet læsionem, vestræ credo non incognitum sanctitati. Videtur mihi etiam, quod me quasi derelictum vestra projecerit paternitas, cum ad ignominiæ meæ augmentum[6] flagitiosum in me grassari permittit inimicum, nec reprimit injuriarum vehementiam paternæ correctionis moderatio. Vestram igitur obsecro suppliciter et Rog.Wend. ii. 334. Rog.Wend. ii. 335.

[1] *circumvenirent*] circumvenrent, MS.
[2] *vel*] Interlined.
[3] *omnibus*] On an erasure.
[4] Abridged from Epp. lib. iii. 48.; Epp. Gilb. episc. Lond. ii. 491.
[5] *meruerim*] metuerim, MS.
[6] *augmentum*] aucmentum, MS.

adjuro, ut justum est, celsitudinem, ut quem filio debetis operis exhibitionem monstretis affectum, et illatam mihi et personis meis et terræ meæ injuriam absque tardatione emendare dignemini; et quicquid adversarius meus contra juris ordinem et contra me et personas regni mei, clericos et laicos, statuit, irritum habeatis et inane. Petitionibus[1] enim, quas paternitati vestræ porrigimus, assensum de jure præbere tenemini, maxime cum petitionibus vestris, quas mihi nuncii vestri, Vivianus scilicet et Gratianus, proponebant, quatinus sæpefato archiepiscopo Cantuariensi archiepiscopatum suum et amorem nostrum redderemus, nos, postposito honore nostro, concessimus coram ipsis legatis et octo archiepiscopis, et episcopis et abbatibus multis, licet ille absque conscientia nostra et coactione aliqua a regno exierit, ut bene et in pace rediret, et omnes possessiones suas haberet, sicut habuit quando exivit, et omnes qui cum eo vel pro eo exierunt, salvis dignitatibus regni nostri. Serenitatem igitur vestram obnixe rogamus, quatinus attente consideretis honorem et utilitatem, quam vobis et curiæ vestræ contulimus, et in futurum, nisi per vos[2] steterit, conferemus; et sic rem hanc temperare velitis, ne illius perfidi proditoris nostri malitiosæ blanditiæ simplicitatem nostram circumveniant, sed juxta petitionem nostram eos, qui excommunicati sunt, absolvatis, et, ne in alios venenum excommunicationis effundere valeat, provideatis; ne, si minus in hac justa petitione exauditi fuerimus, tanquam de benivolentia vestra desperantes, aliter securitati nostræ prospicere compellamur. Et, quoniam singula negotia nostra difficile sub scripto comprehenderentur, mittimus ad pedes paternitatis vestræ clericos nostros familiares R[eginaldum], archidiaconum Saresbiriensem, et R[icardum] Barre, qui plenius vobis quæ gesta sunt exponent." A.D. 1169.

Regales causam beati Thomæ depresserunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 336.

Nuncii igitur Romam pervenientes talibus mandatis armati et donariis pretiosis onerati, ad favorem regis animum papæ et cardinalium inclinarunt. Et quid ibi[3] egerint, literis apostolicis, quas vicissim beato Thomæ

The king's messengers influence the pope in his favour

[1] *Petitionibus*] From this word to the end of the letter is omitted in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

[2] *vos*] Interlined.

[3] *ibi*] sibi, C.D.

A.D. 1169. direxit, continetur expressum. In primis literis papa eidem ita scribit:

Epistola papæ beato Thomæ prima.[1]

First letter of the pope to the archbishop.

"Novit industria tua, quam ferventem circa regni sui gubernationem karissimus in Christo filius noster H[enricus] II., illustris rex Anglorum, impendat, et eandem, ut firmior habeatur, eam vult auctoritate Romanæ ecclesiæ roborari, petens ut antiquas regni sui consuetudines et dignitates conservemus illæsas. Item, cum legationis officium totius Angliæ postulasset instantius Eboracensi archiepiscopo indulgeri, pensantes tempora periculosa, legationis literas præfato archiepiscopo concedendas eidem regi concessimus, licet antequam inclinaremur ad consensum, nuncii ejus nobis in verbo veritatis[2] promiserunt et super juramentum optulerunt, quod nunquam sine voluntate nostra[3] literæ Eboracensi archiepiscopo redderentur."

Rog. Wend. ii. 336.

Rog. Wend. ii. 337.

Secunda.[4]

Tenor.

Second letter of the pope.

In aliis autem literis suis idem papa dedit in mandatis archiepiscopo memorato, in virtute præcipiens obedientiæ, ne in ipsum regem, vel regnum ejus, vel personas regni, interdicti vel excommunicationis vel suspensionis promulgaret sententiam, nisi idem rex in pertinacia sua perseverans, ante initium Quadragesimæ sibi gratiam suam non redderet,[5] et bona omnia sibi et suis restitueret.

Rog. Wend. ii. 337.

Martirium Thomæ sine sanguinis effusione.[6]

Mental anxiety of abp. Thomas.

Beatus igitur Thomas jam de morte subarratus et martirio, cum super hiis certificaretur, ex alto ingemuit,

[1] This letter is much fuller in Epp. lib. i. 4; ed. Giles, ii. 198, dated "Senonis, tertio cal. Martii" [27 Feb.], where it is assigned to the year 1164, and so in Jaffé, p. 697. It is here, therefore, out of place, as also in W. A. C. D. F.

[2] *veritatis*] Added in marg.

[3] *nostra*] So all the MSS., but in Edd. and ed. Wend. *vestra*. This paragraph is omitted in edd. of Lupus and Giles.

[4] Epp. lib. iv. 16.

[5] *redderet*] At first written *reddit*.

[6] Compare the passage previously written, in p. 343.

et suspiria cruentata emittens, supra quam dici potest doluit, videlicet usque ad amaritudinem animæ et spiritus. Cum enim singularis columpna, cui tota ecclesiæ incubuit structura, concussa minatur ruinam, quid de ceteris est sperandum? Instabat jamjam exilii sui annus septenus; parentes et amici sui pro ipso exulaverant; clerici et laici terræ suæ ecclesiæ pro eo depauperabantur; papa, de quo baculum fecerat sustentationis, confractus est, et eum jam fragmenta vulneraverunt. Ad Deum igitur, totius patrem consolationis, conversus, oravit pro persequentibus se et odio habentibus, preces fundens; lacrimosis suspiriis Deum sollicitare studuit, ut ecclesiam conservare dignaretur, quam redemit. Quis enim hujus viri Dei angustias et mentis poterit explicare passiones, cujus pater et mater, fratres et sorores, nepotes et neptes, clerici et ministri, nec non et amici, pro eo sunt in exilium pulsi, et homines terrarum suarum lacessiti et depauperati; et ipse, qui tam reverenda erat in ecclesia Dei persona, panem suum in terra aliena compulsus est mendicare? Sed fortasse, quia nemo repente fit summus, hæc ejus fuerunt subarrationis tormenta præcurrentia ad illius animum solidandum et perferendas injurias, quousque strictis ensibus ad martirii gloriam pertingeret, cui nondum fuerat certus locus martirii deputatus.[1]

[Margin: A.D. 1169. — fol. 60 a. — Rog. Wend. ii. 337. — Rog. Wend. ii. 338.]

Proceres Britanniæ Henrico regi et Galfrido filio suo fidelitatem fecerunt.

[Margin: Rog. Wend. ii. 340. — A.D. 1170. — The bishops and nobles of Britanny swear]

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°. rex Anglorum Henricus in Natali tenuit curiam suam apud urbem Nanetensem, præsentibus episcopis et baronibus Britanniæ Minoris,

[1] In F. here follows the letter from the pope to the sultan of Yconium, added by Matthew Paris to the text of Wendover in A., and copied into C. (ed. Wats., pp. 112–116.) F. inserts also the chapter in W. A. C. concerning Becket's terms of reconciliation.

A.D. 1170. fealty to Henry and his son Geoffrey. Henry returns to England. ubi fidelitatem omnes juraverunt sibi et filio suo Gaufrido. Et in Quadragesima sequenti ad Angliam transfretavit, in qua transfretatione procellis exagitatus, vix mortem evasit. Ubi etiam se vovit et certe promisit Deo et ecclesiæ Cantuariensi et archiepiscopo læso satisfacere et humiliare; sed, arridente serenitate, perveniens ad portum prospere, hac Dei clementia abusus et ingratus effectus, omnia promissa tradidit oblivioni, vel fecisse dissimulavit. Absolution of the bp. of London. 5 April. Eodem etiam anno, ad absolutionem aspirans, apud Rothomagum in die Paschæ Gilbertus, episcopus Londoniensis, sollempniter beneficium meruit accipere absolutionis.

Sanctus Godricus heremita migravit ad Deum.

Death of St. Godric the hermit. Eodem quoque anno, venerabilis heremita Godricus ex hac luce transiens, pro vita temporali commutavit æternam. Cujus vita et virtutes in Cronicis[1] Sancti Albani annotantur.[2] Rog. Wend. ii. 340.

De coronatione regis Henrici III. Junioris nimis detestanda.

15 June. Coronation of prince Henry, contrary to the pope's prohibition. Anno quoque sub eodem, idus[3] Julii,[4] convenerunt ad mandatum regis Henrici apud Westmonasterium, Rogerus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et omnes suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ episcopi, ad coronationem Henrici, filii regis primogeniti. Qui, patre jubente, coronatus est a Rogero, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et aliis episcopis regni, 18 June. xiiii°.[5] kalendas Julii, contra prohibitionem Rog. Wend. ii. 354.

---

[1] *Cronicis*] Partly erased, but legible.

[2] The legend is given at length in Wendover, ii. 341–354, and in A. C. D. F.

[3] *idus*] So in all the MSS.

[4] *Julii*] So also in W. A. C. D. E., but we must evidently read *Junii*. The error originates with Diceto, col. 551. Hoveden, p. 518, fixes the meeting at the feast of S. Barnabas, 11th June.

[5] *xiiii°*.] iiii°. MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D. and Dic.

papæ, in enormemque ecclesiæ Cantuariensis læsionem. A.D. 1170. Quantumque Deo[1] displicuit hæc præsumptio, mors ipsius elegantissimi juvenis festina evidenter edocuit.[2] Præterea, ipsa die coronationis, dum a dextris novi regis in mensa pompose prandentis sederet[3] archiepiscopus Eboracensis Rogerus, rex pater formam senescalli ministrantis sibi assumpsit. Et stans coram eis, palam protestatus est coram omnibus, se deinceps non esse regem, sed filium suum Henricum. Et cum primum ferculum ipsemet dapifer egregius, tubis præviis, bajularet et poneret ante novum regem filium suum, scilicet caput aprinum magnum, dixit archiepiscopus R[ogerus] ipsi juveni regi jocose, "Exulta satis et merito gratulare. Non enim est aliquis in mundo, qui tantum habeat in mensa ministrum, sicut tu hodie." At juvenis non æquo oculo archiepiscopum intuens, respondit, "Non est dispersonatus, degradatus, minoratus vel degeneratus, si mihi ministret. Ego enim sum filius regis et reginæ, ipse vero non." Quod cum aures regis non sine offendiculo attigisset, ilico doluit se fecisse quod fecit; et instillans auribus archiepiscopi demissa voce[4] dixit, "Pœnitet me fecisse hominem."[5] Et statim postea alii, sibi proximo, "Filium enutrivi et exaltavi, ipse autem jam sprevit me."[6] Et quasi præsaga mente suspicabatur et augurabatur, et jamjam palam confitebatur se infeliciter errasse. Unde, ultore Deo Domino ultionum, postea in vita patris non cessavit ficta filii dilectio vel persecutio manifesta patrem inquietare.[7]

Conduct of the king at the coronation feast.

He repents having caused his son to be crowned.

---

[1] *Deo*] Repeated after *præsumptio*, but afterwards erased.

[2] *Quantumque . . . edocuit*] In the place of this passage F. inserts, from W. A. C. D., the letter of the pope to the archbishop of York and other prelates, Epp. lib. iv. 42.

[3] *dextris . . . . . sederet*] On an erasure.

[4] *voce*] Added on to the text.

[5] 2 Gen. vi. 7.

[6] Is. i. 2.

[7] *patrem inquietare*] Added in marg. Here follows another insertion in F. from W. A. C. D., relative to the meeting of Louis and Henry at Montmirail.

A.D. 1170. *De concordia facta inter Henricum II. et Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum.*

Meeting of the kings of France and England, and reconciliation of the latter with archbishop Thomas.

Convenerunt iterum rex Francorum et rex Anglorum, cum Willelmo, Senonensi archiepiscopo, et episcopo Nivernensi, apud Fractam-Vallem. Cum autem rex et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis[1] in quodam prato, quod ab antiquo, quasi in præsagium, Pratum Proditorum[2] [dicebatur],[3] in partem secesserunt,[4] bisque descendissent et bis equos ascendissent, bis stapham archiepiscopi rex tenuisset[5] cum equum ascenderet, quasi in favorem et arram futuræ et proximæ amicitiæ, tandem apud Ambazium,[6] procurante Rotrodo,[7] Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, rex et Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, concordiam inierunt. Et, firmata pace, rex Henricus scripsit Henrico filio suo, novo regi, literas sic:[8] Rog. Wend. ii. 355.

Letter of the king to his son.

"Sciatis quod Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, pacem mecum fecit ad voluntatem meam, et ideo præcipio, ut ipse et omnes sui pacem habeant.[9] Et faciatis ei habere et suis, qui pro eo exierunt ab Anglia, omnes res suas bene et in pace et honorifice, sicut habuerunt tribus mensibus antequam exiret ab Anglia. Et faciatis venire coram vobis[10] de melioribus et antiquioribus militibus de honore de Saltwde, et eorum juramento faciatis [recognosci][11] quid ibi habetur de feodo archiepiscopatus Cantuariensis; et quod recognitum[12] fuerit esse de feodo ejus, ipsi faciatis habere. Valete." Rog. Wend. ii. 356.

The abp. obtains leave to

Quo optento, archiepiscopus regratians, licentiam rogavit, ut liceret ei exercere[13] rigorem in sibi subjectos fol. 60 *b*.

---

[1] *Cantuariensis*] Added to the text, and not in W. A. C. D.

[2] *in quodam . . . Proditorum*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

[3] *dicebatur*] Omitted in MS., but required by the sense.

[4] *secesserunt*] secessissent, W. A. C. D.

[5] *tenuisset*] tenuit, W. A. C. D.

[6] *Ambazium*] Ambarium, MS. and F.

[7] *Rotrodo*] Retrodo, MS. and D. F.

[8] Epp. lib. v. 43.

[9] *ideo præcipio . . . habeant*] On an erasure.

[10] *vobis*] nobis, MS.

[11] *recognosci*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[12] *recognitum*] recongnitum, MS.

[13] *exercere*] excercere, MS., throughout.

suffraganeos, apostolici mandati et suarum precum justarum transgressores, et super hoc mandatum apostolicum plene prosequi. Quod rex vultu serenissimo benigne annuit. A.D. 1170. punish his suffragan bishops.

Papa ad se reversus et pœnitens, favorabiliter scribit beato Thomæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 356. Hiis ita gestis, Thomas, venerabilis Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, antequam ad Angliam transfretaret, Romam misit, domino papæ denuncians, quod cum rege Anglorum pacifice, cognitis causis et modis, convenisset. Quod cum papa audisset, diu secum revolvit quæ acciderant, et de suo proprio tempore[1] cœpit gemere et dolere; glorificans tamen Deum, literas quæ sequuntur[2] consolatorias beato Thomæ transmisit. Quæ, quia breves et multum operantur ad præsentem materiam, hic notantur. He writes to the pope, to inform him of his reconciliation with the king.

Epistola.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 356. "Anxietate cordis et amaritudine premimur, cum angustias, onera et gravamina, quæ zelo justitiæ et pro libertate ecclesiæ manutenenda, æquo animo et invicta fortitudine tolerasti, ad memoriam reducimus et meditatione sedula cogitamus. Verumtamen, ut in te virtutis perfectionem adimpleres, non potuisti frangi adversis, nec a tuæ constantiæ proposito amoveri; tuam super hoc admirandam commendamus virtutem, et tibi super tanta patientia in Domino plurimum congaudemus. Ceterum, quoniam regem Anglorum diutius in patientia et benignitate portavimus,[4] et blandis dulcibusque verbis, et interdum duris et asperis, ut ad se rediret sæpe monuimus, si pacem, quam tecum fecit, executione operis non impleverit, et tibi ac tuis et ecclesiæ tuæ possessiones et honores ablatos[5] non restituerit, tibi plenam auctoritatem concedimus in personas et in loca, quæ ad tuam legationem pertinent,[6] ecclesiasticam justitiam exercere, nullius obstaculo appellationis obstante." Letter of the pope to the abp.

[1] *proprio tempore*] propriio tepore, MS.

[2] *sequuntur*] sequntur, MS.

[3] Epp. lib. v. 29; ed. Giles, ii. 227, dated "Signini, tertio idus [13th] Octobris."

[4] *portavimus*] exspectavimus, edd. Lup. Gil.

[5] *ablatos*] oblatos, MS.

[6] *pertinent*] After this word is inserted in edd. of Lupus and Giles, "excepta persona regis, uxoris quoque et filiorum."

A.D. 1170.

De adventu beati Thomæ in Angliam.

Archbp. Thomas arrives in England.

Hac igitur securitate tam a papa quam a rege Anglorum accepta, in Angliam rediit, valedicens regi Francorum et omnibus qui ei pietatis officia exibuerant; et in kalendis Decembris ad portum applicuit Sandwicensem. Qui statim, ut nihil de contingentibus omitteret, quibus martirii gloria, quam ardenter sitiebat, impediretur, misit literas domini papæ Eboracensi archiepiscopo, hæc verba continentes:[1] Rog. Wend. ii. 356. 1 Dec. Rog. Wend. ii. 357.

Letter of the pope, suspending the abp. of York.

"Cum filium suum rex vester[2] coronari voluerit, contempto Thoma, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ad cujus officium de antiquo jure dinoscitur pertinere, per manum tuam, frater archiepiscope, in aliena provincia diadema regni ei fecit imponi. In coronatione vero illius nulla ex more de conservanda ecclesiæ libertate cautio juratoria est præstita, nec, sicut aiunt, a vobis exacta; sed potius juramento asseritur confirmatum, ut regni consuetudines iniquæ,[3] sub quibus dignitas periclitatur ecclesiæ, illibatæ[4] debuerant[5] omni tempore conservari. In quo etsi multum prænominati regis vehementia nos conturbat, amplius tamen de vestra et aliorum coepiscoporum vestrorum possumus[6] infirmitate moveri. Qui, quod dolentes dicimus, "facti sicut arietes non habentes cornua, abiistis[7] absque fortitudine ante faciem subsequentis"[8] fugientes.[9] Et si forte hoc liceret[10] tibi, frater archiepiscope, in propria potuisse[11] provincia, quomodo tamen in aliena, et illius præcipue, qui exulare pro justitia et solus exire voluit, et dare gloriam Deo, tibi licuerit, nec de ratione possumus nec de sanctorum patrum constitutionibus invenire. Unde et post tam iniquas consuetudines juramento firmatas, nec[12] adjecistis sumere scutum fidei, ut staretis pro domo Domini in die prœlii, ne, si diutius tacuerimus, una vobiscum in die judicii dampnationis sententia Rog. Wend. ii. 358.

---

[1] Abridged from Epp. lib. v. 67; ed. Giles, ii. 249; dated "Ferentini, decimo sexto cal. Octobris" [16 Sept.]

[2] *vester*] noster, MS. and so W.A. C.D.F.

[3] *iniquæ*] iniquas, MS. and W.A. C.D.F. Omitted in Diceto, col. 553, and edd. Lup. Gil.

[4] *illabatæ*] illibatas, Lup. Gil.

[5] *debuerant*] debeant, W.A.C.D.; debeat, Lup. Gil.

[6] *possumus*] possimus, MS. and F.

[7] *abiistis*] abistis, MS.

[8] Lament. i. 6.

[9] *fugientes*] Added in marg.

[10] *liceret*] licere, W. A. *sec. m.*, C. D.; Dic. Lup. Gil.

[11] *potuisse*] potuisset, W.A.C.D., Dic. Lup. Gil.

[12] *nec*] non, W. A. C. D., Dic. Lup. Gil.

involvamur, auctoritate sacrosanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, cui auctore Deo ministramus, ab omni vos officio episcopalis suspendimus dignitatis." A.D. 1170.

Rog. Wend. ii. 358. Item sane Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, per alias domini papæ literas episcopos Londoniensem, Saresbiriensem, Exoniensem, Cestrensem, Rofensem, de Sancto Asaph et Landavensem, cum aliis, qui præfatæ coronationi ministerium præbuerunt, ab omni episcopali dignitate per has literas subscriptas suspendit.

Item, epistola ultrix injuriarum.[1]

Rog. Wend. ii. 358. "Quæ causa venerabilem fratrem nostrum Thomam, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum et sedis apostolicæ legatum, a sua sede exulare compulerit, non oportet præsentibus annotare, quoniam et vos præsentialiter aspexistis, et id per totam fere occidentalem ecclesiam fama celebris divulgavit. Cum autem piæ memoriæ Theobaldus, prædecessor hujus archiepiscopi, Anglorum regi coronam imposuerit, ac per hoc Cantuariensis ecclesia quasi possessionem hujus dignitatis habuerit,[2] vos[3] nunc novi regis coronationi, archiepiscopo non præmunito, in ejus provincia ministerium præbere, literis apostolicis id prohibentibus, præsumpsistis; et qui relevare ipsius exilium qualibuscunque solatiis debuistis, aggravastis potius causam ejus, et super dolorem vulnerum suorum,[4] quod mœrentes dicimus, addidistis. In quo facto, si contra personas vestras non quantum culpa exigit moveamur, pertransire tamen hoc sub silentio non debemus, ne forte, quod Dominus avertat, et nos et vos sententia divinæ feriat[5] severitatis, si ea, quæ[6] in oculis omnium perperam acta sunt, neglexerimus vindicare. Noveritis Rog. Wend. ii. 359. itaque vos tamdiu ab episcopali officio, commissa nobis, Deo auctore, potestate,[7] suspensos, donec ad sedem apostolicam de tanto excessu satisfacturi accedatis, nisi præfato archiepiscopo ita satisfacere curaveritis, ut pœnam istam ipse judicet relaxandam."

Letter of the pope, suspending the bishops.

---

[1] Abridged from Epp. lib. v. 68; ed. Giles, ii. 273; dated, "Tusculi, octavo cal. Decembris" [24 Nov.].

[2] *habuerit*] haberet, edd. Lup. Gil.

[3] *vos*] nos, MS.

[4] *suorum*] ejus, W. A. C. D.; ipsius, Lup. Gil.

[5] *feriat*] addicat, W. A. C. D., Lup. Gil.

[6] *quæ*] Added to the text.

[7] *potestate*] Added in marg., and so F. No doubt the reading should be, *a Deo auctoritate*, as in W. A. C. D., Lup. Gil.

A.D. 1170. *Ministri regis beato Thomæ præceperunt, ut episcopos excommunicatos absolveret.*

The abp. comes to London, and is received joyfully.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 359.

fol. 61 *a*.

Postquam autem Thomas, venerabilis Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ad ecclesiam suam cum magna cleri et populi devotione susceptus pervenit, et cito post Londoniarum civitatem, locum scilicet nativitatis, adiit lætabundus; ubi occurrerunt venienti clerus, cives et omnis populus, clamantes et dicentes, "Benedictus, qui venit in nomine Domini."[1] In classico autem[2] campanarum et revestitorum festive processionibus receptus, benedixit civitati et omnibus eam promoventibus, et in suis libertatibus et prosperitatibus custodientibus. In mensa autem splendidissima tot xeniorum numerositate respectus est, quod tædium poterant generare. Unde per aliquot dies ibidem, convocatis urbis prælatis et civibus convivis, epulabatur cum gaudio post suorum dolorum diuturnitatem. Et cum inde versus Harewes, manerium suum, quod a Londoniis circiter xiii. distat miliaribus, versus Sanctum Albanum, quem adire causa venerationis et orationis proposuerat, progrederetur, ecce regis officiales cum magno strepitu denunciaverunt ei ex parte regis utriusque, ut suspensos et excommunicatos absolveret; acerbis verbis eum increpantes, quod in primo adventu suo tam enormiter in regum infamiam regnum jamjam perturbasset, et ipsos, qui desiderium et honorem regium compleverunt, tam odiose persequeretur. Quod totum in regum injuriam redundabat, et eversionem consuetudinum regni. Archiepiscopus autem, hiis auditis, perturbatus, demissa voce collateralibus suis dixit, "Talia sunt gaudia hujus mundi. Omnia suspecta, et mœroribus miscentur universa." Et conversus ad regales nuncios, respondit, quod si ipsi excommunicati jurare vellent in forma ecclesiæ, se mandato domini papæ parituros, ipse pro

He proceeds towards Harrow, and is ordered by the king's officers to absolve the persons excommunicated.

He consents to do so, on certain conditions.

---

[1] Matth. xxi. 9.

[2] *autem*] On an erasure.

pace ecclesiæ et ipsorum dominorum suorum regum eos absolveret. Quod cum episcopis relatum fuisset, responderunt, juramentum hujusmodi, nisi ex voluntate regis, se non debere præstare. Et cum manerio, ubi hospitaturus fuit, appropinquaret, advenerunt ei obviam junioris regis nuncii, quasi equis rapti velocibus, interdicentes ex parte ejus, ne ultra procederet, vel per regnum ulterius cum superbia sua vagaretur. At ipse, cum talia de alumpno suo audiret, gravius turbabatur, et ait, "Propositum habui ipsum visere apud Wudestoc, ut audivi, commorantem, et in crastino per Sanctum Albanum indistanter[1] transiturus, iter maturare. Novit enim, qui nihil ignorat, quod desiderio ipsius faciem videre desiderans, diligo ipsum totis visceribus caritatis et amplector." At illi torvo vultu responderunt, "Quare ergo ipsum et patrem suum persequeris? Durum est tibi contra stimulum[2] calcitrare."[3] At ipse nolens objurgari, factus est sicut homo non audiens, et non habens in ore suo redargutiones. Et cum tumultuose cum minis denunciarent ei, ut non progrediens[4] nisi ad illud manerium suum, quo jam pervenerat hospitaturus, obtemperavit archiepiscopus, sciens in spiritu quod non venerat hora ejus.

A.D. 1170

Messengers from the young king are sent to him, to stop his progress.

De obsequio humanitatis quod ei impendit Symon, abbas Sancti Albani.

Moram autem faciens ibidem archiepiscopus aliquot diebus, festum faciebat, ut moris est,[5] de hiis eulogiis quæ "O sapientia"[6] cum sequentibus nuncupantur, nec ullam faciem turbidam ostendit ipse athleta[7] Dei invictissimus, licet in spiritu daretur ei mortem suam nosse appropinquare. Cum igitur ei abbas Sancti

He keeps feast-days at Harrow.

The abbat

[1] *indistanter*] indistenter, MS.
[2] *stimulum*] stumulum, MS.
[3] Act. ix. 5.
[4] *progrediens*] So also F.
[5] *est*] On an erasure.
[6] The introit of the anthem for 10 Dec. Hampson, "Med. Ævi Calend.," ii. 350.
[7] *athleta*] adletha, MS. and F.

A.D. 1170.

of St. Alban's visits him.

Albani, Symon nomine, in esculentis et poculentis nobile xenium transmisisset, et ipse, ut ipsum archiepiscopum visitaret, sequebatur, regratians archiepiscopus ait nunciis satis civiliter, "Accepto utique ejus præsentias, sed ejus præsentiam plus acceptarem." Cui, unus de nunciis abbatis, "Domine, ecce apparet veniens in foribus." Cui occurrit venienti archiepiscopus usque ostium, et dans ei osculum, regratiabatur ei, jocose loquens de ejus adventu, quem vocavit præsentiam, et de xenio suo, quod præsentiam vulgariter loquendo vocavit. Quod Gallice civilius sonat, scilicet sic, "*De sun present, e sa presence.*" Et post multas simul habitas collocutiones,[1] petiit archiepiscopus ipsum abbatem, quatinus caritatis intuitu iret ex parte ejus ad juvenem regem, admoniturus eum dulcibus, quibus abundavit,[2] ac efficacibus sermocinationibus, ut rigorem et rancorem conceptum mitigaret. Obtemperans igitur abbas, ipsum regem adiit festinanter; sed cum nihil nisi superbiam et indignationem cum ampulosis verbis et juramentis irrecitabilibus inveniret, rediit infecto negotio. Quæ cum cuncta rediens archiepiscopo renunciaret, vultu demisso ac tristi respondit archiepiscopus suspirans, "Sine modo, sine;" et movens caput addidit, "Siccine, siccine adesse festinant tempora consummationis?" Et quasi prophetico spiritu edoctus subjunxit, "Non diu durabit ludus, sed illusio ista." Abbas autem tunc non intellexit verbum, sed postea, scilicet infra[3] septimanam, omnia luce clarius patuerunt. Et intuens ipsum abbatem oculo piissimo et fere lacrimanti, ait, "Domine abbas, grates tibi refero aduberes de labore tuo, licet inutili. Non stat per te, quin mitigaretur adolescens ille.

The abbat goes to the young king, on behalf of the abp., but in vain.

"Non est in medico semper relevetur ut æger,
Interdum valida plus valet arte malum."[4]

---

[1] *habitas collocutiones*] Partly on an erasure.

[2] *abundavit*] habundavit, MS.

[3] *infra*] imfra, MS. throughout.

[4] Ovid. Epp. ex Ponto, lib. I. iii. 17., but where we read *docta* for *valida*.

Et subjunxit, "Sed et ipse sine dilatione portabit judicium, et præcidetur velut a texente vita sua."[1] Et respiciens clericos suos circumsedentes, addidit dicens, "Ecce, amici mei, quid contigit. Plus mihi fecit nunc obsequii et honoris iste abbas, qui in nullo mihi[2] tenetur ascriptus, quam omnes confratres et suffraganei mei episcopi." Præceperat enim abbas recedens ab archiepiscopo, quando apud Wudestoc iter arripuit, cellerario suo, ut cotidie ipsum archiepiscopum, qui prope erat, munifice visitaret. Unde ipse archiepiscopus in calce sermonis addidit. "Primum quem habui honorem mihi contulit beatus Angliæ prothomartir Albanus, et ultimum." Et hoc dicebat gratissimus ille archipræsul pro ecclesia de Brantefeld, illi adhuc pauperi ac juveni collata per abbatem Sancti Albani, et pro honore illi apud Harewes,[3] ut dictum est, collato. Cum igitur abbas domum rediturus peteret archiepiscopum obnoxius, junctis manibus, ut dignaretur caritatis intuitu domum Sancti Albani ad Natale, quod imminebat,[4] sua desideratissima præsentia illustrare, et tenere ibidem festum Christi nati et Angliæ prothomartiris, respondit obortis lacrimis archipræsul, "O quam libenter vellem, sed multo aliter de me divinitus diffinitum est. Vade in pace, pater carissime,[5] vade ad ecclesiam tuam, quam Deus conservet, vado autem ad meam; cito audies meam sufficientem excusationem, quare tecum non venio. Sed tu potius, si fieri potest, mecum veni, ut meus sis conviva, et in tribulationibus, quibus abundanter[6] opprimor, consolator." Quod cum excusans se sufficienter abbas renuisset, quia oportuit[7] eum sollempniis suæ ecclesiæ interesse, dixit archiepiscopus, "Ita, ita times pelli tuæ! Oportet me mortis periculis exponi."[8] Accepta igitur benedictione, abbas recessit, et

The abp. praises the liberality of the abbat.

fol. 61 b.

The abbat invites him to St. Alban's.

The abp. returns to his church at Canterbury.

[1] Is. xxxviii. 12.
[2] *mihi*] michi, MS.
[3] *Harewes*] Hareswes, MS.
[4] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.
[5] *carissime*] karissime, MS.
[6] *abundanter*] habundanter, MS.
[7] *oportuit*] opportuit, MS.
[8] *exponi*] The last letter is on an erasure.

A.D. 1170. archiepiscopus ad ecclesiam suam iter maturavit. O quantis lamentis quantisque suspiriis abbas ipse postea cor suum cruentavit, eo quod non fuit ei desuper concessum[1] in tanti martiris consortio gloriam suscepisse. Archiepiscopus autem Cantuariam reversus, dies Natalicios quatuor celebravit; quinto vero, ut supra dicetur, migravit ad Dominum.

De gloriosa passione beati Thomæ.[2]

A.D. 1171. He excommunicates Nigel de Sackville and Robert de Broc. 25 Dec.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.I°. beatus Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, sermonem habiturus ad populum, (Rog. Wend. ii. 360.) die Dominicæ Nativitatis, quæ vi. feria tunc evenerat, pulpitum ascendit; et, sermone completo, Nigellum de Sackevilla, ecclesiæ de Herges violentum incubatorem,[3] Robertum quoque de Broc, qui quendam equum ipsius archiepiscopi in ejus contumeliam mutilaverat, sollempniter excommunicavit. Eadem[4] quoque die, sicut in mensa Domini, scilicet in altari, totus juxta suam consuetudinem fuit in lacrimis, ita totum[5] se serenissimum præbuit commensalibus. Et cum apponerent carnes, et renuissent aliqui de ipsa comedere, ipse, apprehensa buccella, comedit, inquiens cum risu modesto, "Quid detestamini carnem propter sextam[6] feriam? Magnum habet caro privilegium. Verbum caro factum hodie prodiit in lucem, et apparuit nobis." Et jocundus fuit sermo in auribus audientium. Quinta vero die sequenti, circa horam vespertinam, cum archiepiscopus in thalamo cum

His pleasant discourse at table. 29 Dec.

---

[1] *concessum*] Added in marg.

[2] In the lower margin are the following verses:—

"*Notandum versus de tempore mortis ejus.*"
Annus millenus, centenus, septuagenus,
Primus erat, primas quo cadit ense Thomas."

In F. they are inserted in the text after the author's lamentation on the results of the young king's coronation, p. 366.

[3] *incubatorem*] incubitorem, MS.

[4] *Eadem*] Eeadem, MS.

[5] *totum*] At first written *totus*.

[6] *sextam*] quintam, MS., but corr. from F., and so noted by a late hand in the margin. Christmas day fell on Friday, and the archbishop was killed on the Tuesday following. See Gerv. Chron., col. 1418.

clericis suis resideret, Reginaldus dictus Filius-Ursi, Willelmus de Tracy, Hugo de Morevilla, et Ricardus Brito, de Normannia, milites eximii licet flagitiosi, venientes, tanquam furia invecti subito in thalamum irruperunt, denunciantes ex parte regis, ut episcopos Angliæ suspensos officio suo restitueret, et excommunicatos absolveret. Quibus respondit archiepiscopus, "Non est judicis inferioris[1] ut sententiam superioris absolvat, nullique hominum licet infirmare, quod sedes apostolica decrevit statuendum." Attamen, si Londoniensis et Sarisbiriensis episcopi et alii excommunicati suo mandato se parituros jurare vellent, eos pro pace ecclesiæ et domini regis reverentia absolveret. Illi vero ilico ira incandescentes, et scelus nefarium,[2] quod in mente conceperant, ad effectum perducere properantes, cum impetu et minis recesserunt. Archiepiscopus vero, monentibus clericis suis, et hora diei vespertina urgente, in majorem ecclesiam intravit vesperas cantaturus. Quatuor satellites nefandi[3] supradicti, armis interim induti militaribus, archiepiscopum e vestigio sunt secuti. Qui cum ad ecclesiam pervenissent, ostia ejus, ut præceperat archiepiscopus, invenerunt aperta. "Neque enim," ut ait, "Christi ecclesiam, quæ cunctis debet esse refugium patens, ordine turbato commutabimus in castellum." Turbis quoque undique confluentibus, præfati iiii^or. milites ecclesiam irreverenter ingressi, clamitare cœperunt, "Ubi est proditor regis? Ubi est proditor regis?" Quibus archiepiscopus a tertio vel quarto gradu presbiterii, quem jam ascenderat, obviam regressus est, dicens, "Si quæritis archiepiscopum, non autem proditorem, ecce me in promtu habetis." Quibus acerba satis proponentibus ac mortem comminantibus, ait, "Ego mori paratus sum pro assertioni veritatis et ecclesiæ libertate. Rogo tamen, ut

A.D. 1171.

Four knights suddenly enter, and order him to restore the bishops, and absolve those who were excommunicated.

Rog. Wend. ii. 361.

The abp. goes into the church to sing vespers, and is followed by the knights.

[1] *inferioris*] imferioris, MS.
[2] *nefarium*] nepharium, MS.
[3] *nefandi*] nephandi, MS.

A.D. 1171. mei non sint participes[1] pœnæ, sicut non fuerunt incentores causæ." Dum autem carnifices strictis in eum insurgerent ensibus, ait, "Deo beatæque Mariæ, sancto quoque Dionisio et hujus ecclesiæ patronis, meipsum et ecclesiæ causam commendo." Percussit igitur sacrum caput ejus primo Reginaldus, abjecto pilleo; consequenter alii, ita ut excerebratus expiraret. Sanctus vero per modum orantis solo procubuit spiritum emittens, qui nec gemitum nec clamorem nec etiam suspirium emisit. Ipsi autem funesti milites cerebrum cum sanguine ejicientes[2] a lacerato capite, sparserunt super pavimentum. Immolatus est itaque ante altare beati Benedicti, de qua immolatione quidam satis eleganter dixit, fol. 62 *a.*

They put him to death.

"Quis moritur? præsul. Cur? pro grege. Qualiter? ense.
Quando? Natali. Quis locus? ara Dei."

Verses on his martyrdom.

Argumenta sanctitatis beati Thomæ tunc demum apparuerunt.[3]

Translato autem ad cœlestia beato martire Thoma, lictores cum suis complicibus omnem[4] suppellectilem martiris, et clericorum ejus vestes et lectisternia et utensilia, penitus rapuerunt. Corpus autem sanctissimum, quod in ecclesiæ decubuit pavimento, ante majus altare est sub ipsius diei crepusculo deportatum; ubi, quod prius ad notitiam solius cubicularii devenerat, astantibus tunc cunctis venit in lucem. Licet enim archiepiscopus habitum monachilem, quem a tempore suæ promotionis occulte portaverat, habitu canonicali suppressisset, carnem tamen cilicio attritam cum femoralibus cilicinis, quod fuerat inauditum, carnem curaverat edomare. Rog. Wend. ii. 362.

The assassins take away the household goods of the abp. and his clerks.

Practice of the abp. to wear haircloth.

---

[1] *participes*] partipes, MS.

[2] *ejicientes*] eicientes, MS.

[3] This rubric is written over an erasure.

[4] *omnem*] Added in marg.

De præsagio diei Martis, quo omnia passus est.[1] A.D. 1171.

Rog.Wend. ii. 362. Et, ut aliqua breviter perstringamus quæ concurrunt, idem archiepiscopus, nescitur quo præsagio, vel potius Dei providentia, die Martis, cui, secundum philosophos, bellum attribuitur, natus fuit, scilicet, die sancti Thomæ apostoli, quapropter sic nominatus est;[2] die Martis idem apud Norhamtonam a curia regis recessit, multis injuriis lacessitus; die Martis recessit ab Anglia exilium subiturus; die Martis, præcepto domini papæ, revertens in Angliam est appulsus; die Martis audivit hanc vocem, "Thoma, Thoma, in sanguine tuo glorificabitur ecclesia mea;" die quoque Martis martirio consummatus est; die quoque Martis[3] translatus est, sicut supra loco suo dicetur. Presage of Tuesday, as exemplified in his life.

De dedecore facto ipsi corpori.

Rog.Wend. ii. 362. Sequenti vero die, videlicet Mercurii, summo diluculo[4] rumor increbuit, quod nefandi[5] carnifices corpus archi- Rog.Wend. ii. 363. episcopi abstrahere ab ecclesia[6] condixerant, et extra muros civitatis illud projicere[7] avibus et canibus discerpendum; sed abbas de Boxsleia, cum priore et conventu ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, illud marturiori tradentes[8] sepulturæ, nec abluendum illud fore judicabant, quod sanguis martirii purpurabat. In quo, inquam, martirio multa notabilia concurrebant. Primo, quod passus est pro assertione justitiæ et ecclesiæ libertate; secundo, quod in ecclesia non qualicunque sed in illa, quæ mater

Rumours respecting indignities to be offered to his corpse, which is buried by the abbat of Boxley. Notable facts in regard to his martyrdom.

[1] In F., instead of this chapter, one of a similar character is inserted from A. *marg.* and C., under the year 1169 (ed. Wats., p. 116).

[2] *scilicet . . . est*] Added in marg.

[3] *Martis*] Added in marg.

[4] *diluculo*] diliculo, MS.

[5] *nefandi*] nephandi, MS.

[6] *archiepiscopi . . . ecclesia*] Partly on an erasure.

[7] *projicere*] proicere, MS.

[8] *tradentes*] So read W. A. C. D. F., but the Edd. and ed. Wend. alter it to *tradiderunt*.

A.D. 1171. est omnium ecclesiarum gentis Anglicanæ; tertio, quod quod non in quolibet tempore, sed in diebus Nataliciis, in quibus homicidæ rei lesæ majestatis habent[1] pacem et gaudium;[2] quarto, quod non simplicem sacerdotem peremerunt, sed utique talem, qui in regno Angliæ erat summus in populo et pater omnium sacerdotum; quinto, quod non passus est in quovis membro, sed in eo corporis loco, quo tonsuram acceperat, et quem sacri perfusio olei Domino consecravit.

Exclamatio de tam lugubri casu.

Lamentation of the author, at the fatal results of the young king's coronation.

O infelix, O temeraria, O injuriosa, O superba regis junioris a te facta, Rogere Eboracensis,[3] coronatio! quam sequebatur totius regni scisma ac imminens[4] perturbatio, prælatorum excommunicatio, summi pontificis amaricatio, archipræsulis occisio, ecclesiæ Cantuariensis anathematisatio;[5] immatura tam juvenis tam elegantis novi regis mors ultrix manifesta, regis patris incomparabilis per universum orbem scandalum probrosum[6] et dedecus indelebile; militum perpetua exheredatio, perennis[7] in paupertate et exilio lugubris ac miseranda deportatio.[8] Qui, inquam, milites iiii^or^. omnes infra iiii^or^. annos, quicquid fingant girivagi, diem clauserunt extremum.

De pœnitentia regis H[enrici] II. gravissima.

Grief and penitence of the king.

Rex autem Anglorum Henricus II. tunc temporis in Normannia morabatur apud Argentomium, quando rumor iste[9] medullam cordis sui penetravit. Qui in primis Rog. Wend. ii. 363.

[1] *habent*] At first written *habentur*, as in W. A. C. D.

[2] *pacem et gaudium*] Added in marg., and so F., but not in the other MSS.

[3] *Eboracensis*] Eboracense, MS.

[4] *imminens*] iminens, MS.

[5] *anathematisatio*] Originally written *anathemacō*, and *ti* afterwards inserted before *cō*. Corr. from F. Du Cange, however, has admitted *anathematio* as a recognized form.

[6] *scandalum probrosum*] On an erasure.

[7] *perennis*] perhennis, MS.

[8] *ac miseranda deportatio*] Added in marg.

[9] *iste*] On an erasure.

ad omnia lamentorum genera se convertens, regiam majestatem prorsus in cinerem, cilicium et jejunium commutavit, omnipotentem Deum testem invocans, quod hoc opus nefarium[1] nec sua voluntate vel conscientia commissum est, nec suo artificio perquisitum; nisi forte ex hoc reus sit, quod archiepiscopum minus diligere videbatur, et inconsulta verba, quæ solet ira fervens elicere, properanter proferre, sed non quæ deberent aliquem sani capitis ad sanguinis effusionem provocare. Sedit interim in camera, in[2] tenebris et silentio, suspensis cum sigillo omnibus regiæ curiæ negotiis; et renuens consolationem, cibum non accepit biduo vel potius triduo, præter lac amigdalarum. Super hoc autem inopinato infortunio se judicio ecclesiæ prorsus exposuit, et humiliter se suscepturum quicquid in eum fieret[3] statuendum, salubriter repromisit.[4]

A.D. 1171.

R. Wend. ii. 364.

Mittuntur nuncii ad summum pontificem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 364.

The king sends messengers to the pope.

Misit igitur rex nuncios ad summum pontificem, qui eum excusarent, et ejus innocentiam allegarent; quos dominus papa nec videre voluit, nec ad pedum saltem oscula admittere dignabatur. Sed nuncios, qui secundo missi fuerunt, aliqui cardinalium susceperunt, sed verbis tantum. Instante tandem quinta feria ante Pascha, in qua de consuetudine Romanæ ecclesiæ solet papa publice prædicare,[5] vel absolvere vel excommunicare, quibusdam papæ silentiariis ad aures nunciorum perferentibus devenit, quod papa eadem die decreverat in regem Angliæ nominatim, et in omnibus terris suis, de communi fratrum suorum consilio, interdicti ferre

The pope contemplates a sentence of interdict.

fol. 62 b.

[1] *nefarium*] nepharium, MS.

[2] *in*] On an erasure.

[3] *fieret*] So also W. *pr. m.*, A. C. D. F. L; *foret*, W. *sec. m.*

[4] *repromisit*] At first written *compromisit*, as in W. A. C. D.

[5] *prædicare*] Added in marg., but not in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1171. sententiam, et eam, quæ lata fuerat in archiepiscopum Eboracensem[1] et alios Angliæ episcopos, confirmare. Sicque nuncii regis in arcto positi, quibusdam cardinalibus domino papæ suggerentibus quod iidem nuncii a rege Anglorum acceperant in mandatis, ut jurarent regem Anglorum ejus et cardinalium judicio staturum et per omnia pariturum; sicut igitur nuncii petierunt, juraverunt, et sic interdicti sententiam declinaverunt. Nuncii vero Eboracensis archiepiscopi et aliorum episcoporum Angliæ idem fecerunt. Eadem tamen die dominus papa excommunicavit sceleratissimos interfectores beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et martiris, et omnes qui consilium, auxilium vel consensum præbuerunt, et omnes qui eos in terra sua reciperent aut foverent. Ipsi tamen, licet vagi et sanæ mentis egentes, regnum per plures menses pervagantes, receptaculum invenerunt in borealibus Angliæ partibus ab hiis, qui rei veritatem non noverunt, et apud Knareburgum[2] annum morando in dolore et timore compleverunt. Deinde tum regio præcepto,[3] tum conscientiæ stimulo, tum omnium compatriotarum detestatione compellente, sub jugo pœnitentiæ in laneis et nudis pedibus, in jejuniis et orationibus Terram Sanctam petierunt, et sanctorum suffragia pro expiatione peccatorum suorum flagitabant. Omnes vero infra paucos annos pro vitæ asperitate dissueta obierunt.

The messengers swear to submit to the pope's judgment.

He excommunicates the murderers of the abp.

They take refuge at Knaresborough, and afterwards go to the Holy Land.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 365.

Quomodo Deus pro beato Thoma martire miracula celebraverit.

Miracles performed at the archbishop's tomb.

Rog. Wend. ii. 365.

Eodem quoque anno, circa Paschalem sollempnitatem, Dominus noster Jesus Christus, qui in sanctis suis semper est et ubique mirabilis, gloriosissimi martiris sui Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, vitam lauda-

---

[1] *Eboracensem*] Eborancem, MS.

[2] *Knareburgum*] Cnaresburc, W. A. C. D.

[3] *præcepto*] precep, MS.

bilem et insuperabilem in mortis eminentia constantiam crebris miraculorum signis cœpit irradiare; ut qui pro tuenda libertate periclitantis ecclesiæ suam suorumque proscriptionem tot annis sustinuit patienter, dignum pro meritis cognoscatur[1] ab omnibus reportasse triumphum. De sepulchro vero martiris gloriosi nullus in fide accedens recedit vacuus, quacunque sit infirmitate gravatus. Nam restituitur ibi claudis gressus, surdis auditus, cæcis visus, loquela mutis, sanitas leprosis, vita mortuis; et non solum utriusque sexus homines, verum etiam aves et animalia de infirmitate ad sanitatem, et a morte ad vitam restaurantur. Hoc quoque anno Hugo, episcopus Dunelmensis, dedicavit capellam sancti Cuthberti, quæ est juxta claustrum Sancti Albani, in honore sancti ejusdem, scilicet Cuthberti, et sancti Johannis Baptistæ, xvi. kalendas Junii, Simone tunc abbate.[2] A.D. 1171. Dedication of the chapel of St. Cuthbert at St. Albans.

Rex Henricus rediit in Angliam.

Rog. Wend. ii. 365. Eodem quoque anno rex Anglorum Henricus viii°. idus Augusti in Angliam rediens, visitavit Henricum, Wintoniensem episcopum, jam in extremis agentem. Qui eum[3] pro morte Thomæ martiris ipsum durissime et dirissime increpans, eum,[4] quasi spiritu prophetico, multa adversa sine dilatione prædixit passurum. Et hæc[5] cum ultima verba protulisset episcopus dierum plenus, vi°.[6] idus Augusti migravit ad Dominum. The king returns to England, and visits the bp. of Winchester. 6 Aug. 8 Aug.

Rex Henricus Hiberniam ingressus, a quibusdam regulis ibidem homagium suscepit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 365. Per idem tempus rex Anglorum Henricus xv°. kalendas Novembris hostiliter Hyberniam intravit; ubi Henry invades Ireland. 18 Oct.

---

[1] *cognoscatur*] congnoscatur, MS.
[2] *Hoc quoque . . . abbate*] Added in marg. Omitted in F.
[3] *eum*] cum, MS.
[4] *eum*] ipsum, W. A. C. D.
[5] *hæc*] Interlined.
[6] *vi°.*] So W. A. C. D. I. and Diceto, col. 557; but the Edd. and ed. Wend. have *octavo*, which is wrong.

A.D. 1171. He is received as chief monarch, but Roderic, king of Connaught, refuses to do homage.

archiepiscopi [et][1] episcopi ipsum in regem et dominum alacriter susceperunt, et eidem fidelitatem juraverunt. Regulus de Limelye, regulus de Chore, et regulus qui Monoculus dicebatur, ei homagium juraverunt. Rodericus autem, regulus de Commat,[2] quia regio quam inhabitat inaccessibilis est, nemorosa et palustris, carens vadis et pontibus, sibi tuta habetur, regi occurrere supersedit. Rog.Wend. ii. 366.

Eboracensis[3] [*archiepiscopus*][4] *purgatur et absolvitur.*

6 Dec. The abp. of York obtains absolution.

Anno quoque sub eodem, in festo sancti Nicholai, apud Albemarliam, Rogerus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, præstito juramento, quod ante coronationem novi regis literas prohibitionis a papa nequaquam susceperat, et quod se regi de consuetudinibus observandis non obligaverat, quodque mortem Thomæ, gloriosi martiris, nec verbo, nec scripto, nec facto scienter procuraverat, ad officii sui absolutus restituitur plenitudinem. Rog.Wend. ii. 366.

De reconciliatione Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, post mortem beati Thomæ.

Reconciliation of the church of Canterbury.

Sub illius quoque anni curriculo, post mortem beati Thomæ martiris, anno tamen fere integro, ecclesia Cantuariensis a divinis cessans obsequiis, continuis perstitit in lamentis. Subversum est autem ecclesiæ pavimentum, sonus campanarum est suspensus, nudati sunt parietes ornamentis; et sic in silentio, et quasi in cinere et cilicio, exequias in tristitia et mœrore persolvit. Sed tandem, ad matris suæ Dorobernensis ecclesiæ vocationem, in festo sancti Thomæ apostoli suffraganei convenerunt episcopi, ut ecclesiam longa suspensione con- Rog.Wend. ii. 366.

21 Dec.

[1] *et*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[2] *Commat*] Comnat, W. A. C. D.
[3] *Eboracensis*] Eborantis, MS.
[4] *archiepiscopus*] Supplied from F.

sternatam, juxta mandatum[1] domini papæ, in statum pristinum reformarent. Bartholomæus igitur, Exoniensis episcopus, ad petitionem conventus missam celebraturus solempnem, et sermonem ad populum habiturus, sic exorsus est: "Secundum multitudinem dolorum meorum, consolationes tuæ lætificaverunt animam meam, Deus."[2] A.D. 1171. Sermon of the bishop of Exeter. Rog.Wend. ii. 367.

De tonitruo generalissimo et terribili.

Rog.Wend. ii. 367. Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.II°., in nocte Natalis Domini, tonitrua audita sunt generalia, in Anglia scilicet, Hibernia et Gallia, qualia non se meminit quis audisse. A.D. 1172. Unusual thunder-storms at Christmas.

Junior rex cœpit recalcitrare contra patrem.

Rog.Wend. ii. 367. Eodem tempore, rege Anglorum moram faciente in Hybernia, Hugo de Seinte-more et Radulphus de Fesne,[3] avunculus Alienoræ reginæ, consilio, ut dicitur, ipsius reginæ, regis Henrici junioris cœperunt avertere cor[4] a patre suo, asserentes, magnum fore dedecus nomen regis habere sine re et[5] dominatione, ut dici possit, "Stat magni nominis umbra."[6] Sed rex pater, antequam ab Hibernia rediret, apud Lissemor[7] concilium congregavit, ubi leges Angliæ ab omnibus sunt gratanter acceptæ, et juratoria cautione præstita confirmatæ. Urbes et[8] castella, quæ rex receperat in sua, sub fideli custodia deputavit. Et quoniam varia ipsum trahebant negotia, in die Paschæ sub ipsius diei crepusculo navem ascendens, in crastino applicuit in Walliam. Et inde Porecestriam[9] veniens, navigatione felici in Normanniam est transvectus. Et confestim ad cardinales a

fol. 63 *a*. The young king is persuaded to take part against his father. English laws established in Ireland. 16 Apr. Henry crosses to Wales, and thence goes to Rog.Wend. ii. 368.

[1] *mandatum*] On an erasure.
[2] Ps. xciii. 19.
[3] *Fesne*] Faie, W. A. C. D., and so Diceto.
[4] *cor*] Written above the line.
[5] *re et*] Added on to the text.
[6] Lucan, Phars., i. 135.
[7] *Lissemor*] Lissenor, MS.
[8] *Urbes et*] videlicet, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.
[9] *Porecestriam*] Porescestriam, MS.

A.D. 1172. papa missos, Albertum et Theodinum, accedens, post longos tractatus, in præsentia eorumdem legatorum hanc fecit sui purgationem.

Porchester and Normandy, to meet the papal legates.

De purgatione et satisfactione regis Henrici de morte sancti Thomæ.

Terms of the king's purgation from the crime of Becket's death.

Primo igitur juravit, mortem Thomæ nec voluntate sua vel conscientia perpetratam fuisse, nec suo artificio perquisitam. Sed quoniam malefactores ex verbis, quæ ipse[1] rex iracundiæ calore succensus minus caute protulit, quod videlicet nequissimos commilitones educaverat, qui ipsum in proditorem suum archiepiscopum noluerunt vindicare, occasionem virum Dei sumpserant perimendi, rex cum summa humilitate absolutionem postulans impetravit. Promisit igitur rex, ad mandatum legatorum, quod tantum daret de pecunia sua, unde ducenti milites ad defensionem Terræ Sanctæ possent per annum sustentari. Promisit insuper, quod permitteret deinceps libere appellationes fieri; et quod consuetudines, quæ suis erant introductæ temporibus contra libertates ecclesiæ, in irritum revocaret; et quod possessiones Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, quæ post recessum archiepiscopi ablatæ fuerant, in integrum redderentur. Promisit præterea, quod clericis et laicis utriusque sexus, qui pro beato martire de regno exierant, cum pace sua bona recipere universa, et libere redire licebit. Et hoc totum promittere et jurare ac facere, ex parte domini papæ regi injunctum est, in remissionem omnium peccatorum. Rog. Wend. ii. 368.

Rex juvenis idem juravit.

The young king swears to the same terms.

Rex vero juvenis, quicquid rex pater juraverat et promiserat, juravit et promisit. Et, hiis ita gestis, rex juvenis cum sponsa sua Margareta, mense Augusti in Angliam transfretavit; et xii°. kalendas Septembris Rog. Wend. ii. 368.

21 Aug. Rog. Wend. ii. 369.

[1] *quæ ipse*] On an erasure.

apud Wintoniam præfatam Margaretam Rotrodus, Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, in reginam Angliæ, ministrantibus sibi suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, consecravit, vel coronavit.[1] A.D. 1172. Margaret, his queen, is crowned at Winchester.

Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, absolvitur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 369. Eodemque anno Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, beati Thomæ indefessus persecutor, præstito juramento, quod mortem beati Thomæ nec verbo, nec facto, nec scripto scienter procuravit, suo est officio restitutus. Gilbert, bp. of London, absolved.

Johannes, filius regis, uxorem duxit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 369. Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.III°. rex Anglorum Henricus Johanni filio suo, cognomento[2] Sine-terra, vix adhuc septenni,[3] filiam Huberti, comitis de Moriana, primogenitam, quam ex relicta Henrici, ducis Saxoniæ, sustulerat, in sponsam dedit.[4] A.D. 1173. Prince John betrothed to the daughter of the count of Maurienne.

De electo Cantuariensi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 369. Eodem etiam anno Rogerus,[5] abbas Beccensis, pridie nonas Martii apud Lamheiam, præsentibus suffraganeis ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, in archiepiscopum ejusdem ecclesiæ est electus. Sed abbas ille electioni de se factæ penitus contradixit, utrum pusillanimitatis intuitu an religionis, incertum habetur. 6 March. Roger, abbat of Bec, elected abp. of Canterbury.

---

[1] *vel coronavit*] Added in marg.

[2] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[3] *septenni*] So also W. A. C. D. E. F. I., and Diceto, col. 561. The Edd. and ed. Wend. read *septennem*, but without authority.

[4] *dedit*] On an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *accepit*.

[5] *Rogerus*] So W. A. C. D. F. I. and Dic., and confirmed by Gall. Christ., vol. xi. p. 230. In Edd. and ed. Wend. *Robertus*.

A.D. 1173. *Henricus, rex juvenis, jam manifestus fit patris adversarius. Et jam Ricardus et Galfridus fratres a patre recedunt.*

The young king openly rebels against his father.

Eodem quoque anno rex Henricus juvenis, in concilium abiens impiorum, animum suum a patre jam manifeste divertit, et ad socerum suum regem Francorum secessit. Quo facto, Ricardus, comes[1] Aquitanniæ, et Gaufridus, comes Britaniæ, consilio matris suæ Alienoræ, fratrem potius elegerunt sequi quam patrem; unde fiunt undique dissensiones, scismata, conjurationes, inimicitiæ, rapinæ et incendia. Et sic, ut creditur, in ultionem beati Thomæ martiris, suscitavit Deus viscera regis Henrici contra eundem, ut sicut ipse rex in patrem suum spiritualem, sic in eum insurgerent ejus filii carnales, qui[2] ipsum usque ad mortem persecuti sunt, sicut sequens sermo declarabit. Timetur etenim, quod non vera, sed propter mundi scandalum, regis fuerit umbratilis pœnitentia. Sed hoc soli Deo patet.

Rog. Wend. ii. 369.

Nota justum Dei judicium.

Rog. Wend. ii. 370.

Rex Henricus mitescit.

King Henry concedes the power of electing to vacant benefices.

Per idem tempus, ad instantiam cardinalium Alberti et Theodini, rex Henricus liberas fieri electiones vacantium ecclesiarum concessit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 370.

Creatur cancellarius; creantur et quidam episcopi.[3]

Ralph de Warneville made chancellor.

Eodemque anno Radulphus de Warnevilla, sacrista Rothomagensis et thesaurarius Eboracensis, constitutus est[4] Angliæ cancellarius. Porro Ricardus, Pictavensis

Rog. Wend. ii. 370.

---

[1] *comes*] More correctly, *dux*, W. A. C. D.

[2] *ut sicut . . . qui*] Added in marg. instead of *qui* in the text (as in W. A. C. D,), which has been erased. F. follows the correction.

[3] In the margin are sketched six small episcopal mitres and crosiers.

[4] *est*] Interlined.

archidiaconus, ad Wintoniensem, Gaufridus, Cantuariensis archidiaconus, ad Elyensem, Gaufridus, Lincolniensis archidiaconus, ad Lincolniensem, Reginaldus, Saresbiriensis archidiaconus, ad Bathoniensem, Robertus, Exoniensis archidiaconus, ad Herefordensem, et Johannes, Cicestrensis decanus, [ad][1] Cirecestrensem, ecclesias sunt electi. A.D. 1173. Creation of several bishops.

Eligitur Ricardus in Cantuariensem archiepiscopum.[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 370. fol. 63 b. Anno quoque sub eodem, pridie nonas Julii, suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ et ejusdem loci sanior[3] pars conventus elegerunt in archiepiscopum Ricardum, priorem Doverensem. Electus igitur ille regi fidelitatem juravit, salvo ordine suo, nulla prorsus habita mentione de regni consuetudinibus conservandis. Acta autem sunt hæc apud Westmonasterium, in capella sanctæ Katerinæ, justiciario assensum præbente; ubi tunc concilium celebratum est.[4] 6 July. Richard, prior of Dover, elected abp. of Canterbury.

De canonizatione beati Thomæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 370. Rog. Wend. ii. 371. Quo etiam concilio recitatæ fuerunt literæ domini papæ in audientia episcoporum omnium et baronum, hæc inter cetera continentes:[5] "Universitatem vestram monemus, et auctoritate qua fungimur districte præcipimus, ut natalem beati Thomæ, martiris gloriosi, Cantuariensis olim archiepiscopi, diem videlicet passionis ejus, sollempniter sub annis singulis celebretis, et apud eum votivis orationibus satagatis peccatorum veniam promereri; ut, qui pro Christo in vita exilium et in mortis virtutis constantia martirium pertulit pas- Papal letters for the canonization of Becket.

---

[1] *ad*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] In the margin is drawn a small mitre and archiepiscopal cross.

[3] *sanior*] So all the MSS., but *senior* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

[4] *ubi tunc . . . est*] Added in marg.

[5] Epp. lib. v. 93; ed. Giles, ii. 266, dated "Signiæ, quarto idus [12th] Martii."

A.D. 1173. sionis, fidelium jugi supplicatione pulsatus apud Deum pro vobis intercedat." Apicibus autem vix perlectis, levaverunt vocem omnes in sullime dicentes, "Te Deum laudamus," etc. Et quoniam suffraganei ejus debitam patri reverentiam, aut exulanti aut ab exilio revertenti, vel etiam reverso non exhibuerant, sed potius fuerant persecuti, ut suum publice omnibus confiterentur errorem et iniquitatem, ex ore unius episcopi omnium episcoporum est expressa confessio, dicentis, "Adesto, Domine, supplicationibus nostris, ut qui ex iniquitate nostra reos nos esse cognoscimus,[1] beati Thomæ, martiris tui atque pontificis, intercessione liberemur."

Nota. ¶ Hac oratione uti solebat conventus Sancti Albani, etiam in passione.

Soror beati Thomæ fit abbatissa Berkingiæ.

Mary, sister of Becket, is made abbess of Barking.

Anno quoque sub eodem Maria, soror ejusdem sancti martiris, rege jubente et meritis suis exigentibus, est facta abbatissa Berkingensis,[2] ut sic genus[3] suum videretur ad honorem restaurare, qui illud antea multiplici scandalo fatigarat. Rog. Wend. ii. 371.

Abbas Redingiæ fit archiepiscopus Burdegalensis.

The abbat of Reading made abp. of Bordeaux.

Tempore quoque sub eodem Willelmus, abbas Redingiæ, vir quidem prudens, religiosus et eleganter literatus, assumptus est in archiepiscopum Burdegalensem.[4]

Gornacum obsidetur.

Siege and capture of the castle of Gournay.

Per idem tempus rex Henricus juvenis castrum Gornaci obsedit, et cepit in eo Hugonem, dominum castri, et filium ejus, cum quater xx. militibus; castrum Rog. Wend. ii. 371.

---

[1] *cognoscimus*] congnoscimus, MS.

[2] *Berkingensis*] Written at first *Berkinge.*

[3] *ut sic genus*] On an erasure.

[4] *Burdegalensem*] Burdebalensem, MS.

vero succendit, et burgenses ad gravem coegit redemptionem. Unde patrem usque ad spiritus amaritudinem offendit, et cor ejus cruentans, maledictionem incurrit et promeruit, quod et ipse contempsit. A.D. 1173.

Multi nobiles venerunt ad regem juvenem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 371.

Quo etiam tempore Robertus, comes Legrecestrensis, et cum eo Willelmus de Tankarvilla, cum multis aliis comitibus et baronibus, regem patrem relinquentes, ad regem filium transfugium fecerunt.

Robert, earl of Leicester, and other nobles, join the young king.

Quod rex Francorum Normanniam hostiliter invaserit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 372.

Eodemque anno rex Francorum Lodowicus, ad Normanniam penitus devastandam, innumerabilem exercitum congregavit. Qui quamtocius Normanniam ingressus, castrum cepit Albamarlense, et Willelmus, ejus dominum, cum comite Symone et pluribus aliis ad deditionem coegit. Deinde cepit castrum Driencurt, et custodiæ deputavit; indeque ad castrum de Archis progrediens, amisit in itinere Bononiæ comitem; unde comes Flandrensis de morte comitis fratris sui animo nimis consternatus, ad propria tristis remeavit.

Louis, king of France, invades Normandy.

Death of the count of Boulogne.

Rex Francorum declinat rancorem regis H[enrici] II. nimis offensi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 372.

Tempore quoque sub eodem[1] rex H[enricus] senior spiritus amaritudinem sereno vultu pallians, hæc omnia Rothomagi commorans æquo animo, ut populo videbatur, toleravit, et solito frequentius venatui indulgens, ad se venientibus vultum protendit hilariorem. Dilabebantur autem ab eo diatim etiam hii, quos ab annis

Troubled state of mind of king Henry.

---

[1] *Tempore . . . eodem*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1173. puerilibus educaverat, credentes dominationem filii ilico imminere.[1] Sedente ergo rege Francorum cum filio regis H[enrici] II., rege juniore, in obsidione Vernolii, rex pater in spiritu iracundiæ et amaritudinis nuncios direxit ad regem Francorum, mandans ut cum festinatione a Normannia recederet, alioquin, ipsum ea die cum impetu validissimo hostiliter visitaret, ad vindictam quocunque fine insurgendo. Quod audiens rex[2] Francorum, cum sciret regem potentissimum et in articulo circumspectum, animo quoque nimis amaricatum, elegit potius ad horam cedere, quam ambigua fata Martis experiri. Et sic a facie regis Anglorum fugiens, intra Gallias sese cum festinatione recepit.

He sends a menacing message to Louis.

Louis returns to his territories.

De subversione Legrecestriæ, et fuga civium.

3 July. Siege of Leicester. Eodem quoque anno, [quinto][3] nonas Julii, rege jubente, obsessa est Legrecestria, civitas opulentissima ac munitissima, quam quondam rex Leir potentissimus muro indissolubili communivit; et si murus fundamento roboraretur, nulli civitatum fuisset secunda. Hanc Sora fluvius lambit, et piscibus, fœno et molendinis reddit uberiorem. Hanc igitur in ultionem obsedit rex Henricus milite copioso, eo quod comes Legrecestriæ Robertus, quem rex multum honoraverat, dominus videlicet illius civitatis, transfugium fecit ab patris fidelitate ad obsequium regis junioris; in hoc inexcusabiliter reprehensibilis, quia solius amicus fortunæ est effectus.[4] Urbis igitur muris fundamento carentibus subfossis, et fulciminibus tandem combustis, mœniorum fragmenta[5] ceciderunt, quæ usque in præsentem diem, propter cementi indissolubilem tenacitatem, scopulorum retinent

Rog. Wend. ii. 372.

Cf. Rog. Wend. ii. 373.

fol. 64 *a*.

[1] *imminere*] iminere, MS.
[2] *rex*] Added in marg.
[3] *quinto*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[4] *est effectus*] Added in marg.
[5] *fragmenta*] fragmanta, MS.

A.D. 1173.

The defenders of the city make terms with the king.

cum integritate magnitudinem. Subversa igitur et pro magna[1] parte combusta civitate, cives in castro et in solidioribus palatiis sese receperunt defendentes. Denique de pace tractaverunt et obtinuerunt, datis regi trecentis libris,[2] ut haberent copiam divertendi. Concessa est igitur tali conditione licentia, ut in urbibus[3] regiis vel castellis locum susciperent habitandi. Dispersi sunt ergo nobiles civitatis illius, et quia regis animum in defensione suæ civitatis diuturne nimis offenderant, et thesaurum evacuerant, locum tuti refugii quærebant, ut[4] minas et gravamen regis declinarent. Ad civitates igitur sanctorum Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, et Edmundi, regis et martiris, quasi ad sinum tutioris protectionis, confugerunt. Quia tunc temporis tanta fuit eorum reverentia, ut eorum civitates, et maxime ecclesiæ, omnibus transfugis asilum et tutam protectionem ab hostibus præbuerunt. Illis igitur abeuntibus, subversæ sunt portæ civitatis, reliquum murorum dirutum est; militibus quibusdam paucis in castelli turri receptis dantur induciæ usque ad festum sancti Michaelis. Et sic v°. kalendas Augusti obsidio est soluta.

The chiefs take refuge at St. Albans and St. Edmundsbury.

28 July.

Willelmus, rex Scotorum, Angliam invadens confusus rediit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 373.

William, king of Scots, invades Northumberland.

Quo facto, rex Scotorum Willelmus provinciam Northanhimbrorum, quæ David regi, avo suo, data fuerat et longo tempore possessa, constanter[5] a rege repetens, repulsam invenit. Qui exercitum congregans tam Walensium quam Scotorum, per fines episcopi Dunelmensis securum habuit transitum, donec, villis quampluribus succensis, mulieribus ac parvulis inter-

---

[1] *magna*] mangna, MS.
[2] *libris*] marcis, W. I.
[3] *urbibus*] urbiis, MS.
[4] *ut*] et, MS.
[5] *constanter*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1173. fectis, prædam impretiabilem congregaret.[1] Ad propulsandam ergo tantam injuriam magnates Angliæ aquilonares alacriter occurrentes, regem Scotorum W[illelmum] ad sua redire compulerunt; ejusque vestigia pedetentim insequentes, totum Laudonesium[2] incendio tradiderunt. Quicquid etiam extra muros civitatum repererunt,[3] Anglis cessit in prædam. Et sic, ad instantiam regis Scotorum, intermeantibus viris religiosis et favore fideque dignis, datæ sunt induciæ usque ad festum sancti Hylarii, pro quibus forte munera intercesserunt. Et sic magnates Angliæ cum manubiis, prædis[4] et præmiis victores, ad propria remearunt.

He is compelled to retreat by the northern barons.

13 Jan.

Qualiter comes Legrecestrensis et ejus uxor Petronilla et Flandrenses capti incarcerantur.

The earl of Leicester assembles forces, and lands in England.

Audiens autem Robertus, comes Legrecestrensis, quæ de nobili civitate sua, quam præcordialiter dilexerat, et merito,[5] facta fuerant, tactus dolore cordis intrinsecus, cum uxore sua Petronilla in Angliam reversurus, per Flandriam transitum fecit. Ubi Normannorum et Flandrensium, tam equitum quam peditum, plurima concomitante caterva, naves ascendit, confidenter illis promittens totius Angliæ dominium; et applicuit in Sufolckia, apud Waletunam, iii°. kalendas Octobris. Qui de navibus egressus, ejusdem villæ castrum obsedit, sed nihil[6] omnino ibidem profecit. Indeque progrediens, iii°. idus Octobris castellum de Hagenet invasit, cepit et succendit; ubi etiam de armis multa laude digna contra quosdam sibi adversantes et obsidionem solvere volentes operatus est. Milites quoque intus captos xxx^a. ad gravem redemptionem coegit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 373.

Rog. Wend. ii. 374.

29 Sept.

13 Oct.

He takes the castle of Hagnet.

[1] *congregaret*] congregavit, W. A. C. D.

[2] *Laudonesium*] In the text, *Ledonesium*, but corr. in marg.

[3] *repererunt*] reppererunt, MS.

[4] *prædis*] Added in marg.

[5] *dilexerat, et merito*] Added in marg.

[6] *nihil*] Added in marg.

Regrediens autem inde ad Fremingeham, cum mora ejus onerosa Hugoni Bigod, castri domino, videretur, castellum in sua sine difficultate recepit. Deinde animi desiderio succensus, ut saltem reliquias viseret Legrecestriæ, lora illac divertit et vexilla. Iter igitur arripiens cum suis Flandrensibus, proposuit burgum et ecclesiam Sancti Edmundi, consilio eorum enervatus, deprædari; fingens se ex industria tamen illa loca prætereundo sinistrare, ut sic repente rueret in incautos. Quod profecto per exploratores familiares exercitum regis, qui ad patriæ illius custodiam deputabatur,[1] non latebat. Stipatus ergo comes milite copioso ad pugnam[2] præparato, scilicet tribus milibus Flandrensium, quos viæ participes tunc habuit, non minimum in eisdem confidebat, quos sanguinis sititores noverat et ad sancta invadenda sacrilegos. Qui etiam, quando ad aliquam planitiem gratia pausandi diverterant, choreas ducentes patria lingua saltitando cantabant, A.D. 1173. And marches towards Leicester. Songs of the Flemish soldiery.

"Hoppe, hoppe, Wilekin, hoppe, Wilekin,
Engelond is min ant tin."

Appropinquavit autem caute regius exercitus, interponens se illis et burgo, cui insidiabantur inimici. Invocato igitur Dei et beati Edmundi adminiculo, irruit exercitus regis in Flandrenses, ad instar torrentis de proclivo montium irruentis; et, inito cruentissimo certamine, post belli varios eventus, comes et comitissa, Flandrenses, Normanni et Franci, et qui cum eis venerant, omnes capiuntur, xvi. kalendas Novembris, et vinculis mancipantur. Comitissa vero superba nimis, anulum habens in digito cum gemma pretiosissima, in amnem prope fluentem præ indignatione projecit, nolens hostibus de sua captione tantum habere proventum. Tandem pars major Flandrensium occiditur, pars submergitur, pars ad vincula trahitur, carcerali custodiæ deputanda. The king's forces attack them. Capture of the earl and countess. 17 Oct. The Flemings are slain or taken prisoners. fol 64 b.

[1] *deputabatur*] deputabantur, MS. | [2] *pugnam*] pungnam, MS.

A.D. 1173.

Rex Henricus multos hostium suorum cepit.

The young king's forces are defeated at Dol.

Rege autem [1] Anglorum patre eodem tempore commorante in Anglia,[2] nunciatum est ei electam regis filii sui militiam apud Dolensem urbem a suis, a [3] Brebanciis et ruptariis circumclusam. Qui continuo equos ascendens, sequenti mane ad urbem pervenit memoratam, et militiam filii sui sibi repugnantem infra [4] dies paucos comprehendit; sed, priusquam veniret, hostium suorum maxima multitudo a suis ruptariis fuerat interempta. Captus est ibidem comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, qui nuper transfugium [5] fecerat ad filium suum, dominum regem juniorem, Radulphus quoque de Fulgeriis, Willelmus Patricius, Radulphus de la Haie, Hasculphus de Sancto Hillario, et cum istis milites quater viginti.

Rog. Wend. ii. 374.

Rog. Wend. ii. 375.

Capture of the earl of Chester and others.

Eo tempore comes Bigod confusus est.

The nobles march against earl Bigod.

Eodemque tempore magnates Angliæ cum exercitu infinito, ad Hugonis Bigod superbiam reprimendam, contra ipsum profecti sunt; et cum de facili posset expugnari,[6] interventu pecuniæ, mediantibus induciis usque ad Pentecosten, xiiii. milibus Flandrensium armatorum stipendiariorum stipatus agminibus, per Esexiam et Cantiam elapsus est, et apud Doveram naves ascendens, transfretavit; sed nunquam postea comes ad plenum respiravit. Eodemque anno electus Cantuariensis Romam proficiscens, electum Bathoniensem habuit in comitatu suo.

Rog. Wend. ii. 375.

He makes a truce with them, and embarks at Dover.

The abp. elect of Canterbury goes to Rome.

---

[1] *autem*] Interlined.

[2] *in Anglia*] Interlined, and in text of F.; but we should read *apud Rothomagum*, as in W. A. C. D. I., which is borrowed from Diceto, col. 574.

[3] *a*] Interlined, and so in Edd. and ed. Wend., but not in W. A. C. D. I. or Dic.

[4] *repugnantem infra*] repungnantem imfra, MS.

[5] *qui nuper transfugium*] On an erasure.

[6] *expugnari*] expungnari, MS.

De subversione Anxiholm, et magna militia capta.

Rog. Wend. ii. 375. Anno Domini M°.C°.LXXIIII°. Rogerus de Molbraio a fidelitate regis senioris recedens, in insula Anxiholm castellum ab antiquo dirutum reparavit. Ad quem multitudo Lincolniensium navigio transvecta, castellum obsedit, constabularium et milites omnes ad deditionem coegit, et castellum subvertit. A.D. 1174. Capture of the castle of Axholme.

Militia Ricardi, contra regem patrem suum recalcitrantis, confusa est.

Rog. Wend. ii. 376. Eodemque tempore, pridie kalendas Maii, rex Anglorum senior, cum audisset militiam Ricardi filii sui urbem Sanctonicam occupasse, sumptis secum Pictavensibus, ad ejus liberationem processit. Milites autem illi neque Deo neque sanctæ ecclesiæ reverentiam exhibentes, majorem ingressi ecclesiam, ipsamque in castellum redigentes, armis, armatis et victualibus impleverunt. Cum autem rex hostes in tribus munitionibus confidere edoctus fuisset, ad eos invadendum operam impendit. Duobus igitur ilico munitionibus subjugatis, ad majorem ecclesiam militibus armatis et lenonibus[1] refertam accessit; ita tamen, ut non eam impugnaret, sed a sordibus liberaret. Et, Deo vindice, prosperatum est opus martium in manu ejus[2] Capti sunt autem, tam in ecclesia quam in aliis locis, milites sexaginta cum balistariis quadringentis. Positis igitur in securitate finibus illis, rex in Normanniam reversus est, necessitate compulsus. 30 Apr. Defeat of prince Richard's troops at Saintes.

---

[1] *lenonibus*] So also F. In W. A. C. D. I. *lenocinatoribus*; Edd. *latrocinatoribus*, falsely.

[2] *Et, Deo . . . ejus*] Added in marg., and inserted in the text of F. Originally, this addition went on thus: "Et maledixit præcordialiter ambos filios, qui regem . . . .", but these words have been afterwards erased, together with a note in red letters, "*Vacat, quia offendiculum.*" The passage erased is not in F.

A.D. 1174. *Incipit perturbatio regis Henrici II. mota per filium suum H[enricum].*

Philip, count of Flanders, takes the part of the young king.

Philippus enim, comes Flandrensis, præsente rege Francorum Lodowico et majoribus regni illius, tactis reliquiis juraverat, quod infra dies xv. post tunc instans festum sancti Johannis, in manu forti Angliam intraret, et regis eam juvenis potestati subjugaret. Qua fiducia rex junior intumescens, pridie idus Julii apud Witsant venit, Radulphum de la Haie in Angliam cum multa militia transmissurus. Comes vero Flandrensis ccc^tos. et x. et viii^o. milites probatissimos ad transfretandum præmiserat, sed postquam apud Orewellam in Angliam sunt appulsi, xviii^o. kalendas Julii, sociis eorum maxima parte periclitatis, Hugonem Bigod comitem secum ilico assumpserunt. Norwicumque invadentes ceperunt, infinitamque pecuniam inde sustulerunt, et multos abduxerunt captivos, xiiii^o. kalendas Julii, et ad ultimam redemptionem compulerunt. Quod videntes justiciarii regis, de consilio communi miserunt ad regem Ricardum, Wintoniensem electum, qui pericula Angliæ imminentia[1] eidem fideliter intimaret. Qui celeriter in Normanniam transvectus, omnia sibi injuncta referebat.

Rog. Wend. ii. 376.

14 July.

The Flemish forces land at Orwell, and capture Norwich.

14 June.

18 June.

The bp. elect of Winchester is sent to Henry.

Rog. Wend. ii. 377.

Rex pater veniens in Angliam, beatum Thomam petens, se ipsi reconciliavit.

Henry prepares to come to England with his family.

Rex autem talem nuncium debita cum veneratione suscipiens, et se ad ejus exhortationem transfretare præparans, reginam Alienoram reginamque Margaretam, filium et filiam Johannem et Johannam secum adduxit; comitem quoque Legrecestrensem et comitissam, aliosque quamplurimos, quos tenebat in vinculis, ante faciem suam Barbefluvium præmisit; ubi, navibus con-

Rog. Wend. ii. 377.

[1] *imminentia*] iminencia, MS.

gregatis, cum innumera armatorum copia impiger naves conscendit, sed ventus in contrarium veniens, transitum ea die nautis denegavit.[1] Cum autem rex mare conspexisset turbulentum, erectis in cœlum luminibus, palam cunctis in navi audientibus ait, "Si ea, quæ ad pacem sunt cleri et populi, habeam efficaciter in proposito, et si pacem in adventu meo Rex cœlorum pacificus dare disponat, tunc pro sua misericordia indulgeat mihi portum salutis attingere;[2] si autem aversus fuerit, et regnum in virga furoris sui Angliæ visitare decreverit, nunquam mihi concedat attingere terminos Anglicanos. Hoc tamen totum a beati Thomæ dispensatione dependeat." Mira[3] res! Oratione completa, ilico ipsa die tranquilla navigatione, cum vasorum, personarum, et omnium rerum indempnitate, ad portum Hamonis applicuerunt rex et qui cum eo fuerant universi.[4] Deinde in pane et aqua rex jejunans, ab ingressu civitatum abstinuit, quousque vota orationum persolvisset mente concepta beato Thomæ, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et martiri glorioso ac jam manifesto. Cum autem Cantuariæ appropinquasset, equo dissiliens et regiam majestatem prorsus deponens, nudus pedes, faciem peregrinantis, pœnitentis et supplicantis assumens, iii°. idus Junii, feria vi^{a}., ad ecclesiam majorem usque pervenit, et cum gemitibus et suspiriis alter Ezechias, lacrimarumque affluentia petiit sepulchrum martiris gloriosi; ubi toto corpore prostratus, manibusque in cœlum expansis, diutius in oratione devotissima permansit. Nec poterant hæc videntes lacrimas continere. Statimque per os episcopi Londoniensis, sermonem ad populum, qui certatim ac catervatim copiosus ad tale spectaculum convenerat, habentis, rex Deum et martirem beatum in animam suam invocans publice protestatus est, quod mortem martiris non mandavit, nec voluit,

A.D. 1174.

Prayer of the king for a fair passage.

He lands at Southampton.

fol. 65 a.

Rog. Wend. ii. 378.

His acts of penance at Canterbury.

11 June.

[1] *denegavit*] In the text, *suspendit*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *attingere*] Added in marg.

[3] *Mira*] Mirara, MS.

[4] *rex et . . . universi*] Added on to the text.

A.D. 1174. nec suo artificio perquisivit. Sed quoniam interfectores martiris gloriosi ex verbis ejus non satis circumspecte prolatis occasionem sumpserant archiepiscopum perimendi, ab episcopis, qui tunc præsentes[1] erant, absolutionem rex petiit; carnemque suam nudam virgarum disciplinæ supponens, a singulis viris religiosis, quorum multitudo magna convenerat, ictus ternos vel quinos excepit, eo asperius percutere persuadente. Vestibus igitur resumptis, muneribus pretiosis martirem honoravit, assignans insuper annui census xl[a]. libras ad luminaria circa sepulchrum martiris continuanda; reliquumque diei ac noctis sequentis in mentis amaritudine transegit. Crastina vero die jussit rex sollempniter missam de martire celebrari, cujus introitus fuit, "Gaudeamus," etc. Cui intererat assidue stans et orans, nudis pedibus et lutosis, sicut venerat per plateas civitatis; vixque permisit, ut unus fratrum, propter pavimenti frigiditatem et plantarum regiam teneritudinem, mattam pedibus supponeret infrigidatis.[2] Post evangelium[3] quoque, dum cantaretur offertorium, optulit[4] rex seipsum in holocaustum Deo et sancto martiri, sicut solet aliquis suo victori, dicens vulgariter,[5] "Pulcher Domine Deus, et sancte martir Thoma, quem amare et tu me diligere consueveras, ego me vobis reddo." Consuetudines etiam illas, quæ inter martirem et ipsum totius fuerunt dissensionis materia, rex, tanquam vere pœnitens, pro martiris devotione et per martiris virtutem abdicavit malas et iniquas; bonas vero solum observandas sanxit in posterum. Quarum tamen abdicatarum sic nonnullæ, etiam ab ecclesia dampnatæ, per regnum observantur adhuc. Quod, si rege sciente

The king renounces the evil customs which had caused his quarrel with the abp.

---

[1] *præsentes*] In the text *p'sntes*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *infrigidatis*] infrigdatis, MS.

[3] *evangelium*] euuangelium, MS.

[4] *optulit*] In the text *optulit se*; but *se* is repeated again, interlined, before *ipsum*.

[5] In the margin is this note: "Verba hæc Gallice dixit, scilicet, '*Beus Sire Deus*,' etc." Omitted in F.

. et approbante factum sit, ipse viderit, Deus novit. A.D. 1174.
. Sed vehementer formidandum est, quod quia non observantur leges vel consuetudines, præcipue de indempnitate vacantium ecclesiarum cathedralium et conventualium, et libertate electionum, regnum Angliæ miserable suscepit detrimentum, utpote in tributo, et terrarum ultramarinarum mutilatione, et nobilium Angliæ clipeorum irrestaurabili deletione. Sed hæc infra.

Qualiter, pacato beato Thoma martire, rex H[enricus] II. feliciter respiravit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 378. Orationibus igitur, vigiliis et jejuniis rex deditus adhuc, usque scilicet in diem tertium ab alimentis abstinuit. Unde beatum martirem sibi reddens placabilem, ipso die sabbati, qua sibi ab eo indulgentiam dari postulabat, tradidit Deus regem Scociæ Willelmum in manus suas, apud Richemund castellum custodiæ mancipatum; qui vel maximus, vel de maximis regis fuerat adversarius. Ipsa etiam die sabbati, rex filius ejus, navibus, quas congregaverat ad transfretandum Rog. Wend. ii. 379. in Angliam, ut eam sibi subjugaret, dissipatis penitus et fere submersis, coactus est cum confusione ad Galliam remeare. Unde cœpit rex juvenis, immo potius puerilis, contra patrem, quem jam Deus manifeste protexerat, recalcitrasse pœnitere.

His affairs now turn out prosperously.

¶ *Nota, qualiter Deus dedit in manibus regis H. hostes suos.*

Hostes { *Comes Legrecestrensis R.* / *Rex Scotorum W* / *Rex junior H.* }

De captione Willelmi, regis Scotorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 379. De captione vero regis Scotorum Willelmi ut breviter dicatur, dum Northambriam[1] intraret, sicut in anno præterito, ut eam subjugaret et suo regno copularet, occurrerunt ei magnates regionis illius, et, com-

Capture of William, king of Scots.

---

[1] *Northambriam*] Northanhumbriam, W. A. C. D. F.

A.D. 1174. misso campestri prœlio,[1] ipsum ceperunt et custodiæ arctiori manciparunt. De formicis autem Scotulorum tot interfectæ referuntur, quod numerum excedere videbantur.[2] Rege autem W[illelmo], ut prælibatum est, apud Richemund carcerali custodiæ deputato, impleta videtur Merlini prophetia vel pronosticum dicentis, "Dabitur maxillis ejus frænum, quod in Armorico sinu fabricabitur;"[3] sinum Armoricum forte vocans castellum de Richemund, ab Armoricis principibus ab[4] antiquis temporibus possessum.

Prophecy of Merlin fulfilled.

Manifestum indicium reconciliationis regis H[enrici] II. cum martire Thoma.

Henry comes to London.

Ut autem veraciter perstringamus beneficia, quæ regi H[enrico] II. Deus post satisfactionem, quam idem beato Thomæ fecerat, exhibuit, per ea quæ sequuntur intelligamus. Rex autem Londoniam veniens, a civibus susceptus est reverenter. Inde Huntundoniam veniens, castellum obsedit et sibi[5] potenter subjugavit, xiiii°. kalendas Augusti; ubi milites comitis Legrecestriæ ad regem accedentes, reddiderunt castella de Groby et Montsorel, ut cum domino suo mitius se haberet, xi. kalendas Augusti. Proceres Norenses, ducem habentes electum Lincolniensem, regis videlicet filium, Malassart, castellum Rogeri de Molbraio, viribus subjugarunt. Rex etiam Henricus, turmis militaribus undique ad eum confluentibus, cum apud Sanctum Edmundum copiosum congregasset exercitum, duo castella Hugonis Bigod, Bungheie et Frammingheham, obsidere decrevit; comes autem non habens fiduciam resistendi, datis mille marcis cum obsidibus, pacem regis impetravit,[5] viii°. kalendas Augusti. Tunc quo-

Rog. W. ii. 37

He subdues the castle of Huntingdon and others. 19 July.

fol. 65

22 July.

Rog. W. ii. 38

Submission of Hugh Bigod. 25 July.

[1] *prœlio*] Added in marg.

[2] *videbantur*] The first two syllables are on an erasure. In W. and A. C. D. *dicebantur*.

[3] Merlini Vaticinia, etc., p. 96, ed. 1608.

[4] *ab*] On an erasure.

[5] *sibi*] Interlined.

que multitudo Flandrensium, quam Philippus comes in Angliam miserat, ut præmissum est, præstito juramento, quod fines Angliæ amplius hostiliter non intraret, de regis gratia et licentia ad propria remeavit. Militia etiam regis junioris, cui præerat Radulfus de la Haie, absque impedimento de regis benevolentia recessit. Robertus, comes de Ferrariis, et Rogerus de Molbraio, quorum castella tunc obsidebantur a rege, Trese[1] et Stutebire, missis ad regem legatis, pacem ejus impetrarunt. Willelmus, comes Gloverniæ, et Ricardus, comes de Clare, regi occurrerunt, suo mandato[2] et arbitrio in omnibus parituri. Quid plura? Rex Henricus similis factus regi Ninivitarum, qui regem invincibilem, id est, Deum, humilitate vicit in oratione et jejunio, per intercessionem martiris gloriosi Thomæ, memoratis hostibus et aliis, quos longum foret numerare, superatis, et statu Angliæ solidato et pacificato, vii°. idus Augusti in Normanniam transfretavit, ducens secum regem Scotorum, comitem Legrecestrensem[3] et Hugonem de Castello, quos in vinculis retinebat.[4]

A.D. 1174.

The Flemish forces and those of the young king leave the country.

Several nobles submit to the king.

Henry returns to Normandy, taking with him the king of Scots.

7 Aug.

Rex Francorum ab obsidione Rothomagi confusus recessit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 380.

Cum autem rex Henricus iii°. idus Augusti appulisset, invenit Rothomagensem civitatem obsessam. Lodouuicus enim, rex Francorum, et Henricus, rex juvenis, cum comite Flandrensi Philippo, in absentia regis Anglorum cum exercitu copioso supervenerant, et requiem non dederant civibus obsessis. Sed rex Francorum, cum Anglorum regem supervenire didicisset, succensis machinis, non sine famæ dispendio confusus

Rog. Wend. ii. 381.

11 Aug.

Rouen besieged by the king of France, who retreats with dishonour.

[1] *Trese*] So in W. A. C. D.; but we should read *Tresc* [Thirsk], as at p. 394, and in Diceto, col. 578.

[2] *mandato*] In the text, *mando*, but corr. in marg.

[3] In the margin is added: "Iste comes Robertus in omnibus agendis beato Thomæ adversabatur, et ideo merito sic punitus est." In F. this is improperly inserted in the text.

[4] In the lower margin a note has been erased, but can still be partially read, as follows: "Amotis secularibus, introducti sunt canonici regulares. . . . ." See p. 398.

A.D. 1174. recessit. In cujus recessu[1] milites Angli subito supervenientes, arma plurima et instrumenta bellica, necnon et variam suppellectilem, quam non Franci recessuri cito poterant vehiculis imponere, invenientes, asportarunt; ut, qui prius talibus indiguerunt, plenius abundarent.[2]

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Ricardus[3] rediit a Roma cum potestate.

Richard, abp. of Canterbury, returns from Rome. 30 Aug. He consecrates several bishops.

Eodemque anno archiepiscopus Cantuariensis a Roma rediens, pallium et primatum Angliæ reportavit. Veniensque apud Londonias, iii°. kalendas Septembris, vacantium ecclesiarum personas principales, quæ sibi pastores elegerant, convocavit; ubi, electionibus confirmatis, Wintoniensem, Elyensem et Cicestrensem, atque Herefordensem electos consecravit. Gaufridus vero, Lincolniensis electus, quia nondum electio ejus fuerat confirmata, transfretavit in propria persona Romam iturus, vel ad ipsam nuncios transmissurus. Rog. Wend. ii. 381.

Omnes filii regis Anglorum ad pacem patris sunt reversi.

A.D. 1175. The king of France and count of Flanders cease from hostilities.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.V°. Lodowicus, rex Francorum, et comes Flandrensium, sumptibus tædiosis et infructuosis affecti, quos[4] pro rege Anglorum juvene et puerili impenderant, et dampna sibi ac suis illata, et interfectiones et incendia ad memoriam revocantes, promiserunt se velle ab infestatione Normannorum[5] revocare; unde filios regis Angliæ, quos paternam maledictionem, odium cleri, populorum imprecationem noverant incurrisse, ut ad patris gratiam redire Rog. Wend. ii. 381.

---

[1] *recessu*] Added in marg.
[2] *abundarent*] habundarent, MS.
[3] *Ricardus*] Added in marg.
[4] *quos*] At first written *quas*.
[5] *Normannorum*] memoratorum, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

possent, summopere satagebant. Rex igitur per internuncios omnes adversarios suos ad pœnitentiam revocatos intelligens, ipsos apud Cenomanniam ad suum venire colloquium procuravit; ubi a Gaufrido primitus et Ricardo, filiis suis, homagium et fidelitatem accepit. Post dies autem aliquot,[1] apud Burum in Normannia venit ad eum rex filius ejus, cum archiepiscopo Rothomagensi et aliis episcopis et baronibus multis; et cum multa lacrimarum effusione ad pedes patris prostratus, misericordiam precabatur. Rex autem formam induens patris-familias, redeunte filio suo prodigo, motus pietate super filio, quem totis visceribus diligebat, intelligens eum ex corde loqui, iram et omnem ei indignationem remisit, atque ejus homagium, addito juramento, suscepit.

A.D. 1175

An interview takes place between Henry and his sons, at which they are reconciled.

Rog. Wend. ii. 382.

Concordia plena.

Rog. Wend. ii. 382.

The prisoners are released on both sides.

Omnibus igitur bene pacificatis, et osculis undique ex corde collatis, rex pater milites nongentos et sexaginta novem, quos tempore belli ceperat, sine redemptione a vinculis solvit; paucos vero, quorum facinus enorme principem mansuetissimum ad iracundiam provocarat, arctiori custodia tradidit mancipandos. Rex vero filius eodem modo milites, quos jure belli ceperat, quorum numerus ad centum et eo amplius excreverat, sine pecunia relaxavit. Tunc rex pater literas in omnes fines suæ dominationis, formam hujus pacis continentes, direxit, ut omnes quos generale discrimen belli afflixerat, communis lætitia recrearet. Continebant insuper literæ, quod omnia castella, quæ communita fuerant tempore belli contra ipsum, ad illum redigerentur statum, in quo erant quando guerra incepit.

Letters notifying the peace are issued.

fol. 66 *a.*

[1] *aliquot*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1175. *Concilium celebratum est apud Westmonasterium.*

Council held at Westminster. 17 June. Death of Reginald, earl of Cornwall. Arrival of the papal legate.

Eodemque anno concilium generale habitum est apud Westmonasterium, xv°. kalendas Julii, præsente Ricardo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et apostolicæ sedis legato. Rogerus vero, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, concilio noluit interesse. Anno quoque sub eodem obiit Reginaldus, comes Cornubiæ. Hugo Petroleonis, diaconus cardinalis, venit legatus in Angliam, et præstitit auctoritatem tradendi clericos ante judicem secularem pro forisfacto forestæ et laico feudo, in favorem regis.

Willelmus, rex Scotorum, pacem fecit cum rege Anglorum.

Peacemade with the king of Scots. 8 Dec. *Nota quod Willelmus, rex Scotorum, devenit homo ligius regis Henrici II.*

Anno quoque sub eodem Willelmus, rex Scotorum, apud Falesiam tentus in vinculis, cum rege Anglorum pacem fecit in hunc modum, vi°. idus Decembris: Rex Scotorum devenit homo ligius regis Anglorum de regno Scociæ et omnibus terris suis, et homagium fecit ei et ligantiam, ut domino suo speciali, et Henrico, filio ejus, salva fide patris ejus; et similiter omnes episcopi, cum comitibus et baronibus de regno Scociæ, de quibus rex Anglorum homagium voluit et fidelitatem habere. Et non solum sibi, sed et successoribus regis, ipsi et successores ejus in perpetuum, sine malo ingenio. Forma vero cartæ, scilicet transcriptum, in multis thesauris Angliæ habetur.[1] Ipsi vero cartæ appensa sunt omnia sigilla episcoporum et baronum Scociæ. Summam autem huic paginæ duximus inserendam. Rex Scotorum et omnes homines sui nullum amodo fugitivum de regno Angliæ receptabunt in Scociæ partibus, nec in alia terra sua; sed rex Scociæ et homines sui eum capient, et eum regi Anglorum vel suis justiciariis reddent. Pro hac autem conventione et fine firmiter observando, dedit

Rog. Wend. ii. 383.

Substance of the treaty.

R. Wend. ii. 383.

[1] See Rymer, i. 39.

rex Scotorum regi Anglorum et successoribus suis castella de Berewic et de Rokesburc, in perpetuum possidenda. Et si rex Scotorum aliquo tempore contra hæc venire attemptaverit, episcopi Scociæ cum comitibus et baronibus contra regem suum tenebunt, et episcopi terram ejus sub interdicto ponent, donec ad regis Anglorum obsequium revertatur. Igitur rex Scotorum, datis obsidibus, rediit in Angliam sub libera custodia deputatus, donec castella, quæ regi pepigerat, pro illius arbitrio redderentur. Castella vero per Angliam et Normanniam multorum, quæ tempore discriminis inter patrem et filium constructa fuerant, passim eversa sunt, rege jubente, et filio vel non audente,[1] vel velle dissimulante. A.D. 1175. The king of Scots returns to England. The castles erected during the war, are ordered to be levelled. Rog. Wend. ii. 384.

Reges Anglorum, pater scilicet et filius, beatum Thomam petierunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 384. Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.VI°. reges Anglorum, pater scilicet et filius, in Angliam venientes, per dies singulos in eadem mensa sunt refecti, et idem thalamus fomenta quietis de noctibus ministravit. Et properantes simul, ut beatum Thomam martirem visitarent, cum omni humilitate orationum vota et mansuetudine peregerunt. Indeque per Angliam pariter profecti, pacem singulis et justitiam generaliter,[2] tam clericis quam laicis, promiserunt, et id opere compleverunt. A.D. 1176. Henry and the young king come to England, and pay their devotions to St. Thomas. Equal justice is promised to clerks and laymen.

Walenses multi perimuntur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 384. Eodemque anno Willelmus de Brause multitudinem Walensium, in castello de Bergeveni[3] callide convo- Many of the Welsh are put to

[1] *audente*] So in the text (followed by F.), but in marg. *vel diente*, i.e. *audiente*. In A. C. D. and Edd. we find *contradicente*. Perhaps we should read, *non contradicere audente*.

[2] *generaliter*] On an erasure.

[3] *Bergeveni*] In the text, *Begemini*, but in marg. *vel Berga*, i.e. *Bergamini*, which is followed by F. I have corrected it from W. A. C. D., which copy Diceto, col. 587.

A.D. 1176. catam, sub forma honestatis occupavit. Inclusis enim talem legem proposuit eis jurandam, ne quis ex tunc cnipulum ferret viator vel arcum; sed illis hujusmodi decreto contradicentibus præcise, capitali sententia omnes condempnavit. Hanc autem proditionem fecit in ultionem avunculi sui, Henrici de Hereford, quem ipsi in sancto Paschæ sabbato proditiose peremerunt,

death in the castle of Bergavenny.

> "Nec enim lex æquior ulla est,
> Quam necis artifices arte perire sua."[1]

Nota de tribus archidiaconis Cantuariensibus.

Three archdeacons appointed in the diocese of Canterbury.

Anno quoque sub eodem Ricardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, in diocesi sua, quæ ab antiquis temporibus uno tantum fuerat archidiacono contenta, ultimis hiis diebus tres archidiaconos constituit, Savaricum scilicet, Nicholaum, et Herbertum. Tempore quoque sub eodem Johannes, decanus Saresbiriensis, consecratus est antistes Norwicensis.[2] Rog. Wend. ii. 384.

John, dean of Salisbury, consecrated bp. of Norwich.

Complanantur quædam castella.

Many castles are razed to the ground.

Nec multo post rex Anglorum fecit complanari castella de Legrecestria, Hontundonia, Waletonia, de Grobi, de Stutesbire, de Haie, et de Tresc, et alia quamplurima, in ultionem injuriarum, quas ipsi frequenter domini castellorum compatriotis intulerant, et regi et regiis ministris. Rog. Wend. ii. 384. Rog. Wend ii. 385.

Constituuntur justiciarii plures.

Justiciaries are appointed.

Deinde ipse rex, per consilium filii sui et episcoporum, constituit justiciarios per sex partes regni, in Rog. Wend. ii. 385.

---

[1] Ovid. de Arte Am., lib. i. 655, where we read *justior* for *æquior*.

[2] John of Oxford was consecrated bishop of Norwich, 14 Dec. 1157. Fasti, ii. 459.

qualibet scilicet parte tres, qui in fide juraverunt; quod A.D. 1176.
cuilibet jus suum conservarent illæsum.

Petro, Romanæ sedis legato, rex Anglorum iiii. capitula concessit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 385. Veniente eodem tempore in Angliam Petroleone, legato sedis apostolicæ, iiii^or. ei rex concessit capitula quæ sequuntur, in regno Angliæ conservanda. Primo, quod de cetero clericus non trahatur ante judicem secularem personaliter pro aliquo crimine vel transgressione, nisi pro foresta et laico feudo, unde regi vel alio domino seculari laicum debetur servitium. Secundo, ut archiepiscopatus, episcopatus vel abbatiæ non tene-
fol. 66 *b*. antur in manu regis ultra annum, nisi pro causa evidenti, vel necessitate urgente.[1] Tertio concessit, ut interfectores clericorum convicti vel confessi coram justiciario regni, præsente episcopo, puniantur. Quarto, quod clerici duellum facere non cogantur.

Articles conceded by the king to the papal legate.

Johanna, filia regis, nupsit regi Siciliæ.

Rog. Wend. ii. 385. Eodemque anno Johanna, filia regis, Siculorum[2] regi et regi similiter vel domino Apuliæ[3] nuptura, v°. idus Novembris, apud Sanctum Egidium in conspectu virorum illustrium suo tradita est marito.

Marriage of the princess Joanna to the king of Sicily. Nov. 9.

Omnia Angliæ castra ad regium imperium devolvuntur.[4]

Rog. Wend. ii. 385. Quo utique tempore universa Angliæ castella sunt ad regis imperium custodiis salvis deputata.

The castles throughout England are given up to the king.

---

[1] In the margin is added, "Sed ne aliquatinus tenerentur, exegit beatus Thomas." Om. F.

[2] *Siculorum*] At first written *Siculo*, as in W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *et regi . . . Apuliæ*] Added in marg., and inserted in text of F.

[4] *devolvuntur*] divolvuntur, MS.

A.D. 1176.

Quod Johannes, filius regis, fit heres Glovernicæ.

William, earl of Gloucester, constitutes prince John his heir.

Quo utique tempore Willelmus, comes Gloverniæ, cum filium non haberet, ægre ferens hereditatem inter filias dividere, Johannem Sine-terra, regis filium, si superviveret,[1] constituit successorem. Rog. Wend. ii. 385.

Reges extranei discordes regis Anglorum sese arbitrio subdiderunt.

Dispute between the kings of Castille and Narvarre referred to the arbitration of Henry.

Circa dies illos Aldefonsus, rex Castellæ, regis Angliæ gener, et Sancius, rex Navarorum, avunculus ejus, discordes ad invicem, missis ad regem Angliæ legatis, se staturos illius arbitrio juraverunt. Nuncii vero apud Westmonasterium in præsentia regis, episcoporum, comitum et baronum constituti,[2] proponebant illi, qui causam Aldefonsi[3] regis tuebantur, Santium, regem Navarorum, memorato regi Castellæ, dum adhuc pupillus esset et orphanus, castella et terras Legionum,[4] videlicet Navaret, Andlena, Aptol et Agosen,[5] cum pertinentiis suis, quæ pater suus, die qua decessit, et ipse post aliquos annos quiete possederat, injuste ac violenter abstulisse;[6] unde domino suo restitutionem fieri postulabant.[7] Illi autem, quibus causa Santii regis commissa fuerat, nihil eorum, quæ ab aliis proposita fuerant, contradicentes,[8] asserebant Aldefonsum[9] præfatum Sancio castella, Legin scilicet, Portel, et castellum quod tenet Godin, per werram et injuste abstulisse; parte altera in nullo[10] sibi contradicente, Rog. Wend. ii. 386.

---

[1] *superviveret*] Added in marg.

[2] *Nuncii .... constituti*] So read all the MSS., but the sense would be clearer if corrected, *Nunciis ... constitutis*, as in Edd.

[3] *Aldefonsi*] Andefonsi, MS.

[4] *Legionum*] Logtonium W.; Logionium, A. I.; Legionium, D.; Logronium, Diceto, col. 597, and Rymer, i. 32.

[5] *Agosen*] Agosiæ, Dic.; Agosoio, Rym. i. 34.

[6] *abstulisse*] On an erasure.

[7] *postulabant*] postulabat, MS.

[8] *contradicentes*] So in the text, as in W. A. C. D. F., and Diceto, col. 597, but altered by an interlinear addition, to *conce[d]entes*.

[9] *Aldefonsum*] Andefonsum, MS.

[10] *in nullo*] At first written *nonnullo*.

eorum domino suo restitutionem fieri pari instantia flagitabant. Nuncii præterea in jure confessi sunt palam, inter reges præfatos treugas usque septennium, fide interposita, fuisse firmatas. Rex igitur Anglorum, habito cum episcopis, comitibus et baronibus consilio super querelis prætaxatis, hinc inde violenter et injuste ablatis, cum nihil contra violentiam utrinque propositam a parte alterutra responderetur alterutri, nec quicquam,[1] quo minus restitutiones,[2] quas petebant, faciendæ essent, allegaretur, plenariam utrique parti supradictorum, quæ in jure petita erant, restitutionem judicavit. Adjunxit etiam, treugas præfatas inter eos fide firmatas usque ad constitutum terminum esse inviolabiliter observandas. Judicavit etiam pro bono pacis, ut rex Aldefonsus donaret liberaliter Santio regi singulis annis usque ad decennium tria milia marbotinorum; et sic pacem haberent ad invicem, et perpetuam amicitiæ firmitatem. A.D. 1176.

Rog. Wend. ii. 387.

Item, de auctoritate regis H[enrici] II.

Rog. Wend. ii. 387.

The messengers from other sovereigns seek Henry's counsel.

Eisdemque diebus nuncii Manuelis, Constantinopolitani imperatoris, nuncii Romani imperatoris Fretherici, nuncii Willelmi, Treverensis archiepiscopi, nuncii Henrici, ducis Saxonici, nuncii Flandrensis comitis Philippi, et aliorum magnatum per Christianitatis latitudinem constitutorum, quos varia ardua et difficilia trahebant negotia, tanquam ex condicto communi, pridie idus Novembris apud Westmonasterium, de suis causis et quæstionibus edocendi convenerunt. Et alii, aliis temporibus et locis, pro suis negotiis dirigendis,[3] ad curiam regis magnifici Henrici, immo etiam Francorum electi primates, velut ad scolam prudentiæ et justitiæ, undique confluxerunt; ita ut viderentur Arthuri tem- 12 Nov.

---

[1] *quicquam*] quisquam, MS., and so C. D.

[2] *restitutiones*] restituones, MS.

[3] *dirigendis*] Between the lines is written *vel mendis*, i.e. *dirimendis*. F. follows the text.

A.D. 1176. pora renovari. Hæc iccirco dixerim, ut notum sit omnibus, quantæ rex Henricus sapientiæ fuerit, quantæque magnificentiæ, ad cujus audientiam et discussionem totius fere orbis consilia principum profunda ac obscura[1] judicia devolvebantur.

¶ *Nota regis Henrici magnificentiam.*

Hugo de Petroleone, expirante tempore legationis suæ, Romam revertitur.

The papal legate returns to Rome.

Anno quoque sub eodem Hugo de Petroleone, legationis suæ cursu perfecto, Romam revertitur.

Obierunt quidam magnates.

Deaths of the earls of Strigoil, and Arundel.

12 Oct.

Walter, prior of Winchester, made abbat of Westminster.

Eodemque anno obiit[2] Willelmus, comes de Strigoil. Comes Willelmus de Harundel iiii°. idus Octobris apud Waverle viam universæ [carnis][3] est ingressus; cujus corpus delatum est apud Wimundham, prioratum et cellam Sancti Albani, sepeliendum, cujus domus patronus extiterat. *Item*, Walterus quoque, prior Wintoniensis, factus est abbas Westmonasterii.

De remotione canonicorum secularium a Waltham.

Removal of the secular canons from Waltham abbey.

11 June.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.VII°., amotis ab ecclesia Walthammensi canonicis, quos seculares vocamus, introducti sunt regulares summi pontificis auctoritate, in vigilia Pentecostes, rege procurante Henrico et præsente, qui illius ecclesiæ amator fuit specialis. Et eadem die Radulfus, Cirecestrensis[4] canonicus, de manu Londoniensis episcopi curam ecclesiæ prædictæ suscipiens, ipsi, tanquam diocesano, de canonica subjectione servanda verbis se obligavit[5] expresse; et, fratribus cum eo

Rog. Wend. ii. 387.

Rog. Wend. ii. 388.

---

[1] *obscura*] Interlined.

[2] *obiit*] The last two letters are on an erasure.

[3] *carnis*] Supplied from F.

[4] *Cirecestrensis*] In ed Wend. *Cicestrensis*, by an error of the press.

[5] *obligavit*] oligavit, MS.

introductis, prior est ab eodem episcopo assignatus, et in sua sede sollempniter collocatus. A.D. 1177. Ralph appointed prior.

Concordia firmata est inter Francorum et Anglorum reges.

Rog. Wend. ii. 388. fol. 67 a. Quo etiam tempore rex Anglorum, regno pro sua voluntate disposito, xv°. kalendas Septembris in Normanniam transfretavit. Et confestim inter regem Francorum et ipsum habito colloquio, hoc modo concordiam inierunt: "Ego Lodowicus, rex Francorum, et ego Henricus, rex Anglorum, volumus ad notitiam omnium plenam[1] pervenire, nos, Deo inspirante, promisisse et juramento confirmasse, quod simul ibimus in servitium Crucifixi, et ituri Jerusolimam suscipiemus signaculum sanctæ crucis. Et amodo volumus esse amici ad invicem, ita quod uterque nostrum alteri conservabit vitam, membra et honorem terrenum contra omnes homines. Et si quæcunque persona alteri nostrum malum facere præsumpserit, ego Henricus invadam eum, tanquam[2] adversarium, juvans Ludowicum, regem Francorum, dominum meum, contra omnes homines. Et ego Lodouuicus juvabo regem Anglorum Henricum contra omnes homines, sicut fidelem et amicum meum, salva fide quam debemus hominibus nostris, quamdiu nobis fidelitatem servabunt." Acta autem sunt hæc apud Minantcurt, vii°. kalendas Octobris. Henry crosses over to Normandy. 18 Aug. Treaty of peace made with the king of France. 25 Sept.

Quidam potentes peregre proficiscuntur, et Fretthericus imperator humiliatur.

Eodemque anno Philippus, comes Flandrensis, et Willelmus de Mandevilla profecti sunt Jerusalem. Fretthericus autem imperator venit ad pedes Alexandri papæ, humiliatus et compunctus. Audierat enim et Philip, count of Flanders, and W. de Mandeville go to the Holy Land. The emperor Frederic

[1] *plenam*] On an erasure.

[2] *tanquam*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1177. humbles himself to pope Alexander.

certificabatur super hoc, quod cum idem papa fugeret a persecutione imperiali, et non fuerat ei tutus transitus per terram nec etiam per mare, elegit fugam per vastum mare. Exorta igitur tempestate valida, dixerunt omnes qui in nave erant, "Ora pro nobis, pater, ecce enim perimus! Vicarie Christi, fac quod Christus fecit, qui imperavit ventis et mari, et facta est tranquillitas." Papa igitur, assumptis et indutus omnibus papalibus ornamentis, stans imperavit vice Christi mari et ventis, ut staret mare a fervore suo et tumultu. Et ilico facta est post benedictionem in mari et aere tranquillitas magna, et transivit papa in pace. Hoc igitur audito, imperator stupefactus est,[1] humiliatus satis[2] illi per omnia, plus tamen Deum quam hominem timens; et sic cessavit, sicut in mari tempestas, scisma[3] inter ecclesiam et imperium.

De fundatione monasterii[4] de Westwude.[5]

A.D. 1178. 11 June. Foundation of the monastery of Westwood.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.VIII°. Ricardus de Luci, Angliæ justiciarius, iii°. idus Junii fundamenta jecit ad construendam ecclesiam conventualem in honorem beati Thomæ martiris, in loco qui vocatur Westuude, in territorio Rofensi; provocatus exemplo senescalli Henrici regis, filii Willelmi conquestoris Angliæ, qui apud Colecestriam ecclesiam conventualem fundavit, in honorem sancti Johannis. Rog. Wend. ii. 388.

Rex petit beatum Thomam. Gaufridus, filius regis, cingulo donatur militari.

King Henry visits the

Eodem anno rex Anglorum Henricus, cum per omnes provincias suæ potestatis, quæ vel Francorum Rog. Wend. ii. 389.

[1] *est*] On an erasure. Om. A. C. D.
[2] *satis*] So also F., but in A. C. D. *satisfecit*.
[3] *scisma*] sic cisma, MS. and F.
[4] *monasterii*] monastii, MS.
[5] *Westwude*] The second *w* has been partly erased.

liminibus, vel montibus Pirenæis, vel Britannico [vicinantur][1] oceano,[2] munitiones optinuisset, et omnia pro velle disposuisset, idus Junii[3] beati Thomæ martiris, tanquam gratus, sepulchrum devote visitavit. Et, paucis inde diebus evolutis, Gaufridum, filium suum, viiiº. idus Augusti apud Wudestoke cingulo donavit militari. A.D. 1178. tomb of Becket. 13 June. He knights his son Geoffrey. 6 Aug.

Nix maxima. Solis eclipsis.

Eodemque anno nix maxima et diu durans pisces fluviales et etiam quosdam marinos suffocavit, et avium, ita quod videbatur genus volatile extinctum, multitudinem interemit; insuper agriculturam usque ad desperationem suspendit. Sol passus est eclipsim, vi. idus Januarii. *Nix.* Unusual continuance of snow. Eclipse of the sun. 8 Jan.

De revelatione inventionis sancti Amphibali sociorumque ejusdem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 389. Legend of the invention of St. Amphibalus.

Eodem anno vir quidam[4] Beati Albani burgum inhabitans et loci illius indigena, inter convicaneos suos sine querela vitam duxit innocentem. Hic ab ineunte ætate, quantum substantiæ mediocritas permittebat, honeste vivens, devotus ecclesiæ extitit frequentator. Dum igitur una noctium in stratu jaceret, circa gallicinium intravit quidam decori vultus et eleganti statura procerus thalamum suum interiorem; qui vestibus indutus candidis, virgam in dextra pulcherrimam bajulabat. In cujus ingressu domus confestim tota resplenduit, et quasi claritas solaris interiora cubiculi perlustravit. Qui ilico appropinquans, jacentem vocavit, et, si dormiret, leniter exquisivit, dicens, "Roberte, dormis?" Expavit Robertus timore vehementi, et supra

[1] *vicinantur*] Supplied from W. A. C D.
[2] *oceano*] occeano, MS.
[3] *Junii*] Diceto has *Julii*, and so has Brompton, col. 1138.
[4] In the margin of A. his name is given, "Robertus, civis Sancti Albani, cognomento Mercer."

A.D. 1178. modum admirans ait, "Quis es, domine?" At ille, "Ego sum martir Albanus, qui ad hoc venio, ut annunciem tibi Domini voluntatem de magistro meo, clerico videlicet illo, per quem fidem Christi suscepi, de quo inter homines sermo frequens habetur; et, cum spes fidelium sit quod futuris temporibus debeat revelari, locus tamen sepulturæ ab omnibus ignoratur. Surgens ergo velociter, circumda tibi vestimentum tuum, et sequere me, et ostendam tibi sepulchrum pretiosis reliquiis ejus insignitum." Surgens ergo Robertus velociter, vestitus et calciatus secutus est eum. Et versus aquilonem in strata publica gradientes, perrexerunt[1] pariter, donec ad planitiem quandam ab antiquo incultam, quæ sita est juxta viam regiam, pervenissent. Obiter autem colloquebantur, ut solet amicus cum amico coitinerante, tum de mœniis dirutæ civitatis, tum de amne diminuto, tum de strata communi adjacente civitati, tum de nomine utriusque, tum de adventu beati Amphibali, magistri sui, in civitatem, pro cujus reliquiis iter agebatur, tum de recessu ab invicem lacrimabili, tum de utriusque passione. Et quæcunque Robertus interrogare[2] volebat, martir prompta ac benigna responsione disserebat. Contigit autem, ut inter loquendum quosdam mercatores de Dunestaplia obvios haberent, qui mane interesse fori negotiis in pago Sancti Albani festinabant. Quorum adventum prædicens martir, Roberto dixit, "Divertamus paulisper, donec pertransierint adventantes, ne forte iter nostrum præpediant percunctando;"[3] via enim ab ipso martire coruscavit.[4] Quod et factum est. Cum autem ad medium circiter itineris, ubi duæ arbores in medio stratæ fuerant, pervenissent, ait martir, "Hucusque duxi magistrum meum beatum Amphibalum, cum ultimo in hac vita mundiali dolentes colloquebamur, tunc ab

Rog. Wend. ii. 390.

fol. 67 b.

---

[1] *perrexerunt*] perexerunt, MS.
[2] *interrogare*] interogare, MS.
[3] *percunctando*] percuntando, MS.
[4] *coruscavit*] choruscavit, MS.

invicem recessuri.[1] Ob quam rem memoriter recolendam, cum ante passionem meam hoc novellis Christianis retulissem, has metas venerabantur, has arbores confoventes." Hæc et alia plurima colloquentes itinerando recolebant; et nisi splendor, qui a martire procedebat, obtutus Roberti reverberasset, et timor cum simplicitate sensus suos hebetasset,[2] martir ipsum de multis tam futuris quam præteritis evidenter certificasset. A.D. 1178.

Quid factum est, cum ad locum inventionis pervenissent.

Cum igitur ad memoratam planitiem pervenissent, ad sinistram partem itineris, quantum arcus bis jacere potest, diverterunt. Habebat locus ille gratam, ut prætangitur, planitiem, tam pascuis quam fessis in via hominibus ad pausandum aptissimam, in villa quæ Redburna nuncupatur, tribus ferme miliaribus a Sancto distans Albano. Sane in hac planitie duo colliculi eminebant, qui Colles Vexillorum dicebantur, eo quod circa illos populares fiebant concursus, quando populus fidelis ex antiqua traditione sollempnem annuatim processionem ecclesiæ Sancti Albani debita cum veneratione persolvebant. Tunc sanctus Albanus, apprehensa manu viri, duxit eum ad unum de colliculis, qui sepulchrum beati martiris continebat. Deinde, converso ad eum vultu, "Hic," inquit, "locus magistri mei reliquias continet; hic ejus ossa contegit et conservat." Et sic fatus, pollice viri ad instar crucis terram[3] aperuit, et, eversa cespitis modica portione, quoddam

Legend continued.

R. Wend. ii. 390.

[1] In the margin was added a note, which has afterwards been erased, so that only a few words are now legible, as follows: "✠ In cujus rei memoria compatriotæ . . . . locum illum . . . arboribus . . . arbores . . ." Over this note is written in red letters: "*Nota ex post facto certitudinem, quia, sicut prædixit S. Albanus, inventus est beatus Amphibalus.*" These notes are not in F.

[2] *hebetasset*] ebetasset, MS.

[3] *terram*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1178. scrinium reseravit; ex quo splendor nimius exiens, orbem occiduum illustravit, et post[1] lucis radios in mundi latitudinem copiose diffudit. Quo facto, capsula recluditur, et loci planities in statum pristinum reformatur. Stupet vir ille, et quid sibi super hiis sit agendum, a sancto postulat edoceri. Ad quem beatus Albanus, "Signa locum diligenter, ut quæ meo tibi sunt revelata ministerio, firmius adhæreant menti tuæ. Veniet enim in proximo tempus, quando hæc instructio multis proderit ad salutem." Robertus vero aeris et planitiei visum[2] dimetiens, lapides quosdam, qui ibi jacebant, collegit et ibidem quodam scemate locavit, dicens, "Hiis metis et signis de hoc sancto loco cras plenius certificabor." Et, hiis dictis, ait sanctus, "Redeamus."

Argumentum veritatis.

Legend continued. Illis autem per viam qua venerant revertentibus, cum venirent ante portam ecclesiæ Sancti Albani mutuis colloquiis recreati, ait sanctus Roberto, "Progredere ad domum tuam[3] in pace, ego autem in meam, unde veni, regredior." Erat autem domus Roberti remotior. Et sic vale dicto, sanctus suam intravit ecclesiam, et homo ille domum suam ingressus, lectulo suo sese recepit. Istud, ut quidam fingunt veritati detrahentes, non ut sompnium evenit, sed in expressa veritate; cui testimonium perhibet finalis rei eventus, et multorum fratrum, videlicet monachorum ecclesiæ Sancti Albani assertio, cum quibus memoratus Robertus colloquium habuit familiare ac frequenter. Qui in periculo animæ et sub attestatione tremendi judicii asserebat, se ipsum martirem facie ad faciem vidisse, et, sicut prænarratur, Rog. Wend. ii. 391.

[1] *post*] So also F.; in W. C. *p*⁹ (*post*), and in A.D. *sup. ras.* I. *p*ᵒ (*primo*), as in Edd. and ed. Wend. The variation arises from the contractions used in the MSS.

[2] *visum*] visu, MS and F. Corr. from A. C. D.

[3] *tuam*] Added in marg.

ad placitum diffusum colloquium cum eodem habuisse. Et hoc etiam in extremis agens, veraciter affirmavit.[1] A.D. 1178.

Veritatis dilucidatio.

Rog. Wend. ii. 391. Vir autem mane expergefactus, in ancipiti positus fluctuabat, utrum sub silentio dissimulando præteriret, an aliis, quæ corporaliter gesta didiscerat, sine aliqua hæsitatione revelaret. Si enim sileret, peccare metuebat in Deum; si rem publicaret, sannas hominum verebatur. Ista tandem animo sæpe revolvens, timor Dei humanum absorbuit; et, licet adhuc verbum hoc communibus esset auribus absconditum, domesticos tamen suorum et privatos effecit conscios secretorum. Illi autem, quod dicebatur in tenebris, in lumine proferebant, et quod in aure audierant, super tecta prædicabant. Factum est autem, ut in brevi verbum istud per totam disseminaretur provinciam, adeo quidem, ut rumor claustrum Sancti Albani intraret. Deinque fama desiderata, quibusdam perferentibus, abbatis Symonis aures penetravit, cujus post Deum auctoritate negotium illud robur erat specialiter habiturum; qui protinus electos de conventu fratres aliquot ad locum, quem vir ille ostensurus erat, eodem viro prævio, destinavit. Conventus interea domi devotis orationibus incumbebat, et fratres ductorem suum sequentes, videre martirum reliquias properabant. Quo demum pervenientes, invenerunt ibidem fidelium multitudinem, quos Spiritus Sanctus prospero pronostico in unum collegerat, ut inventioni martiris interessent. Illis autem eventum rei præstolantibus, sæpedictus homo præcedebat, fratribus planitiem ostendens sanctorum corpora continentem. Erat autem feria via. ante sollempnitatem beati Albani, quando hæc facta sunt, qua ejusdem sancti passio celebratur. Ab illo ergo die

Confirmation of the legend.

fol. 68 *a*.

Rog. Wend. ii. 392.

22 June.

[1] *Et hoc . . . affirmavit*] Added to the text, partly on an erasure. F. agrees.

A.D. 1178. usque ad elevationem sanctorum, loco illi custodia non defuit, sed fratres jugiter cum laicis affuerunt. Conventus interim abstinentiam vitæ cum disciplinis et orationibus suscepit arctioris; et, statuto cum processione multiplici suffragio elemosinarum, sollempne jejunium in populo prædicatur. Jamque locus ille futuræ inventionis nundinarum similitudinem præferebat, et, recedentibus aliis, quos fervor devotionis adduxerat, alii cotidie succedebant.

De miraculis jam jam coruscantibus.[1]

Miracles performed.

Porro interea signorum miracula, jam jam adhuc sanctorum corporibus in corde terræ latitantibus, æterna recordatione digna coruscabant,[2] ita ut viderentur apostolorum tempora renovari. Quæ propter eorum multitudinem omittens, ad Majora Cronica[3] Sancti Albani ea scire volentes transmitto.[4] Rog. Wend. ii. 392.

De inventione sancti Amphibali[5] *cum novem sociis suis.*[6]

Invention of St. Amphibalus and his companions.

Clarescente interim die, quam sanctorum inventio consecrabat, venerabilis pater Symon abbas locum adiit sanctissimum, et, celebratis in capella sancti Jacobi loco illi contigua, in veneratione beati martiris Albani, nostræ redemptionis misteriis, monachis qui aderant, ut diligenter quærerent, et, pluribus adhibitis fossoribus, Rog. Wend. ii. 394.

---

[1] *coruscantibus*] choruscantibus, MS.

[2] *coruscabant*] choruscabant, MS.

[3] *Cronica*] This word has been erased, but is still legible. It is omitted in F.

[4] The narrative of the miracles is inserted at length in A. C. D. and in Wendover, ii. 392–394.

[5] *Amphibali*] Amphabali, MS.

[6] On the lower margin is drawn a representation of a pair of hands digging the ground with a pick, and above is written, in red, "*Invenitur sanctus Amphibalus martir, cum sociis suis.*"

ut cœptis insisterent, imperavit. Reverso itaque abbate domum, et jam cum conventu ad prandium sedente, legebatur passio beati martiris, quem quærebant, et sociorum ejusdem, per quam carnis ergastulo soluti, promeruerunt gloriam sempiternam. Dum igitur sævitia judicis, lictorum immanitas, martirum patientia, et mors prolixius recitata pias mentes conventus in fletus et suspiria commovisset, beatum Amphibalum cum tribus sociis suis repertum accurrens aliquis nunciavit. Quid ergo? Suspiria mutantur in laudes, et tristitiæ successit lætitiæ magnitudo. Exsurgens[1] ergo a mensa congregatio, ad ecclesiam festinanter procedit, et lætitiam cordis conceptam elevatis laudibus protestatur?[2] Inventus est autem beatus martir Amphibalus inter duos socios medius et collateralis[3] ambobus, tertio socio quasi ex transverso et ab opposito locum solitarium occupante. Inventi sunt autem prope locum illum numero sex ex sociis suis, scilicet martirum prædictorum, ita quod beatus martir Amphibalus decimus habebatur. Inter reliquias autem athletæ[4] Christi Amphibali cultelli duo magni inventi fuerunt, unus in testa capitis et alter circa præcordia. Quod in libello passionis ejus, scripto antiquis temporibus, continetur.[5] Ut enim habet passionis ejus textus, alii occubuerunt gladiis cæsi, alii lanceis transverberati, alii decapitati. Ipse vero martir Amphibalus, primo patefactis et intestinis ejectis, et post lanceis confossus et cultellis, occubuit tandem lapidibus conquassatus; unde nullum fere ex ossibus ejus integrum apparebat, cum sociorum ejus ossa illæsa penitus extitissent.

A.D. 1178

Rog. Wend. ii. 395.

[1] *Exsurgens*] Exurgens, MS.
[2] *protestatur*] protestantur, MS.
[3] *collateralis*] colleteralis, MS.
[4] *athletæ*] adlethe, MS., and so in W. A. C. D.
[5] *continetur*] After this word is added in Edd., *apud Sanctum Albanum*, but without any sanction from the MSS. This has deceived the editor of Wendover, ii. 395, who quotes Matthew Paris as the authority for this assertion.

A.D. 1178. *Reliquiæ sancti Amphibali apud Sanctum Albanum sunt translatæ.*

Translation of the relics of St. Amphibalus to St. Alban's.

Abbas autem, ut diximus, audito nuncio desiderato, adjuncto sibi priore cum[1] aliquot fratribus de conventu, sanctorum celeriter adiit sepulturas, et effossas reliquias erigens, in lintheaminibus ydoneis collocavit. Metuensque supra modum fraudem plebis et vim turbæ undique confluentis, quam a compressione inventi thesauri arcere non poterat, unde placuit abbati ut martires sancti in Beati Albani basilicam portarentur, ubi custodia diligentior et securitas amplior poterat adimpleri atque plenius adhiberi. Quid multa? Redeunt cum abbate fratres separatim[2] sanctorum pignora[3] processionaliter[4] deferentes. Procedit martiribus obviam cum processione conventus, corpus secum beati martiris Albani deportans. Quod cum aliquotiens consueverit suis esse portitoribus onerosum, tantam sui facilitatem illa hora exhibuit, ut volare potius quam humeris ferentium incumbere videretur. Occurrit ergo martir martiribus, magistro discipulus, et jam palam magistrum recipit revertentem, quem habebat olim clam fidei doctorem in tugurio[5] latitantem.

Rog. Wend. ii. 395.

Rog. Wend. ii. 396.

Miraculum.

Miracle.

Sed miraculum, quod in elementis suis Dominus ostendere dignatus est, cum obviantes primitus reliquiæ hinc inde convenirent, non decet sub silentio præteriri. Cum enim siccitas prolixior, exustis herbis, floribus, frugibus et fructibus, antea nimis perdurasset, id est,
25 June. toto vere, et usque ad vii°. kalendas Julii, quia hic.

Rog. Wend. ii. 396. fol. 68 *b*.

---

[1] *cum*] Interlined.
[2] *separatim*] seperatim, MS.
[3] *pignora*] pignera, MS. At first written *corpora* (as in W. A. C. D.), but corr. in marg. and followed by F. and Edd.
[4] *processionaliter*] Added in marg.
[5] *tugurio*] tugurrio, MS.

fuit dies inventionis sanctorum, et omnes agricolas desperatos reddidisset, eodem momento, cum in aere nulla appareret nubecula, tanta pluviarum inundatio subito[1] prorupit, ut et copiose descendentes ymbres terram imbuerent, et desperatæ messis spem promitterent uberiorem. Et, quod dignissimum fuit admiratione, pretiosæ cappæ et aurifrigiatæ et vestimenta carissima, quibus conventus incedebat redimitus, cum non esset domus ad quam confugerent, ymbrium sustinebat infusiones, nec sunt in aliquo vestimenta vel deturpata vel aliquantulum deteriorata. A.D. 1178.

Conclusio.

Rog.Wend. ii. 396.

Date of the invention of the relics. 25 June.

Inventus est autem pretiosus martir Amphibalus cum sociis suis, in crastino Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ,[2] et in ecclesiam Beati Albani cum canticis et laudum præconiis sollempniter delatus, anno a passione sua DCCC°.LXXX°.VI°., ab incarnatione Domini M°.C°.LXX°.VII°.,[3] die sabbati, vii°. kalendas Julii. In præsentia autem sanctarum reliquiarum ipsius, necnon et in loco sepulturæ ejus, ad laudem Dei et gloriam martiris, a diversis infirmitatibus sanantur ægroti, adeo ut omnium audientium et videntium stuporem miracula generarent. Si quis ea scire desiderat, librum requirat de ipsis specialiter confectum.

R.Wend. ii. 397.

Junior rex torneamenta exercuit.[4]

Rog.Wend. ii. 397.

A.D. 1179. Henry, the young king, frequents the tournaments in France.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXX°.IX°. H[enricus], rex Anglorum junior, mare transiens, in conflictibus Gallicis, qui hastiludia vel torneamenta vocantur, in expensis profusioribus, ut laudem militarem promereretur, triennium

---

[1] *subito*] Added in marg.

[2] *in crastino . . . Baptistæ*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

[3] *M°.C°.LXX°.VII°.*] So read all the MSS.

[4] *exercuit*] excercuit, MS.

A.D. 1179. peregit. Deinde, multis insignitus [1] triumphis et laudibus, ad patrem reversus, cum honore debito susceptus est.

Rex Francorum Lodowicus orationis gratia beatum Thomam adiit.

Louis, king of France, visits the tomb of St. Thomas.

Eodemque anno Lodowicus, [rex] [2] Francorum piissimus, beatum Thomam martirem, cui devotissimus et amicissimus quandoque extiterat, orationis gratia visitare decernens, Angliam, quam nec ipse nec suorum aliquis antecessorum aliquo tempore visitaverat, devotus intravit. Rex autem Anglorum venienti, navem apud Doveram ascendens, gaudenter occurrit, et quicquid honoris, gaudii ac reverentiæ poterat, ei [3] xi°. kalendas Septembris impendit. Concurrentibus enim archiepiscopo Cantuariensi cum suis suffraganeis, episcopisque aliis [4] fere Angliæ omnibus, comitibus, baronibus, cum clero et populo, sollempnis processio in tanti principis adventu majorem ecclesiam illustravit. Quantum vero auri vel argenti Gallicanæ nobilitati rex Henricus magnificus et munificus contulerit, quantumque in vasis et lapidibus pretiosis omnes honoraverit, cum non sit qui hoc sciat, desit qui scribat. Sed, ut brevibus multa perstringamus, ad regii thesauri vel etiam imperialis quantitatem summa dicitur ascendisse. Præterea rex Henricus, de adventu tanti amici et domini lætissimus, gazas totius regni, quibus multum tunc abundavit [5] et [6] omnes antecessores suos [7] superavit, regi Francorum et suis exposuit; sed, ne viderentur aliud quam martirem quæsisse, manus ab oblatis muneri-

Rog. Wend. ii. 397.

22 Aug.

Rog. Wend. ii. 398.

Munificence of Henry to the French nobles.

[1] *insignitus*] At first written *insignitis*.

[2] *rex*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *poterat, ei*] Added in marg.

[4] *episcopisque aliis*] episcopique alii, MS.

[5] *abundavit*] habundavit, MS.

[6] *et*] super, MS. and F. If *super* is retained, we must omit *superavit*.

[7] *suos*] Added in marg.

bus tantis cohibuerunt, sed et ne Gallicana nobilitas Romanæ cupiditatis ignobilitati [1] assimilaretur; immo muneribus contenti primitivis, grates regi largissimo multiplices retulerunt. Rex autem Francorum Christianissimus, post jejunia et orationes, quas Deo et beato martiri Thomæ effudit devotissimas, centum vini modios [2] annuatim in perpetuum solvendos Cantuariensi conventui contulit pro oblatione. Deinde, licet urgentissime ac instantissime rex Anglorum postulasset, ut ad alios Angliæ sanctos visitandos et honorandos, utpote beatum Albanum, Angliæ prothomartirem, et beatum Edmundum, regem et martirem, et regalem civitatem Londoniarum, interiora terræ Anglicanæ ingrederetur, rex suorum distractus consiliis recusavit, dicens, "O quam libenter hoc vellem, sed meorum consiliis nequaquam audeo obviare." Et sic vii°. kalendas Septembris ad Galliam transfretavit.[3]

A.D. 1179.

Louis makes a grant of wine to the church of Canterbury.

He returns to France. 26 Aug.

De obitu duorum episcoporum.[4]

Rog. Wend. ii. 398.

Eodemque anno Rogerus, Wigorniensis episcopus, obiit, v°. idus Augusti. Obiitque Ricardus de Lucy, episcopus Wintoniensis.[5] Quidam quoque puer martirizatus est apud Wudestoc.

Death of Roger, bp. of Worcester. 9 Aug.

De concilio Romæ habito, præsidente papa Alexandro.

Rog. Wend. ii. 398.

Eodem anno habitum est Romæ concilium generale ccc^{torum}. et x. episcoporum, xiiii°. kalendas

General Council held at Rome. 19 March.

---

[1] *ignobilitati*] ingnobilitati, MS.

[2] *modios*] In the margin is added "*d'* [*dubium*] *quid modius.*"

[3] *transfretavit*] tranfretavit, MS.

[4] Two small mitres reversed are drawn in the margin.

[5] *Obiit .... Wintoniensis*] There is an error here. In A. and D. the entry is simply, "Ricardus de Lyci, Wintoniensis episcopus," and so in Edd., but in C., "Obitus Ric. de Lyci, episc. Wint." For *episcopus Wintoniensis* we should certainly read, *justiciarius Angliæ;* for the person intended is the chief justiciary, whose death is recorded in this year by Gervase, Chron. col. 1456, and Hoveden, p. 590. Richard *Toclive*, bishop of Winchester, did not die until 1188.

A.D. 1179. Aprilis, in palatio[1] Lateranensi, cui præsedit papa Alexander IIIus.; cujus statuta,[2] omni laude dignissima, sub xxviiio. quæ sequuntur capitulis decreta[3] continentur:[4] De electione summi pontificis. De hæreticis Albigensibus, et diversis eorum appellationibus. De ruptariis et Brebanciis prædonibus, qui fideles affligunt. Quod nullus promoveatur in episcopum, vel ad aliquem ordinis gradum, nisi legitimæ sit ætatis, et de legitimo matrimonio susceptus. Ne, viventibus personis, ecclesiæ conferantur, nec, illis defunctis, ultra sex menses vacent. De appellationibus. Ne infra sacros ordines constituti, vel qui ecclesiasticis sustentantur stipendiis, [rebus][5] se immisceant secularibus. De treugis statuendis et temporibus treugarum. Quod clerici unam tantum habeant ecclesiam, et quod episcopus, si aliquem sine certo ordinaverit titulo, tamdiu necessaria inveniat, donec ei in aliqua ecclesia stipendia assignet. Ne patroni vel quilibet laici ecclesias opprimant, aut ecclesiasticas personas. Ne Judæi vel Sarraceni Christiana mancipia permittantur habere, sed, ad fidem Christi si converti voluerint, a possessionibus suis nullatenus excludantur. Ut leprosi, si excluduntur a cohabitatione hominum, oratorium habeant et sacerdotem. Ne bona ecclesiastica in usus alios convertantur, nec decani pro certa pecuniæ quantitate jurisdictionem exerceant[6] episcopalem. Ut in electionibus vel ecclesiasticis ordinationibus consequatur effectum, quod a majoris vel sanioris consilii parte fuerit constitutum. Quod usurarii manifesti ad communionem altaris non admittantur, nec Christianam habeant sepulturam. Ut agricolæ et viatores, et om-

Heads of the decrees passed.

Rog. Wend. ii. 399.

fol. 69 *a*.

[1] *palatio*] In the text *patriarchio*, (as in W. A. C. D., and Diceto, col. 603), but underscored, and replaced in the margin by *palatio*, with which reading E. agrees. In F. *patriarchæ palatio*.

[2] *statuta*] instantia, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[3] *decreta*] Added in marg.

[4] See Harduin, Concilia, tom. vi. 2. col. 1673.

[5] *rebus*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[6] *exerceant*] excerceant, MS.

nia quæ sua sunt, plena ubique pace et securitate lætentur. Ut ordinationes a scismaticis [1] factæ irritæ habeantur et inanes, et beneficia ab eis collata revocentur. Ne pro ecclesiasticis instituendis personis, seu mortuis sepeliendis, aut nubentibus benedicendis, vel aliis ecclesiæ sacramentis, aliquid exigatur. Ne viri religiosi, vel quilibet alii, ecclesias vel decimas præsumant de manu suscipere laicorum, sine auctoritate episcoporum; et non nisi [2] semel in anno Templarii sive Hospitalarii ecclesias sub interdicto positas aperiant, nec corpora tunc sepelire præsumant. Ne quis interventu pecuniæ habitum religionis usurpare præsumat, nec conversus peculium habeat, nec facti prælati, non nisi pro dilapidatione vel incontinentia degradentur. Ne Christiani Sarracenis arma vendant, nec patientibus naufragium quisquam injuriam faciat, vel eos spoliare præsumat. Ut clerici infra sacros ordines constituti continenter vivant, et si in illa incontinentia,[3] quæ contra naturam sit, deprehensi fuerint laborare, excommunicentur, et a clero abjiciantur.[4] Ut archiepiscopi parrochias vel ecclesias visitantes, quadraginta vel quinquaginta equorum numero sint contenti; episcopi, viginti vel triginta; legati, viginti vel xx^ti v.; archidiaconi, v. vel vii.; decani, duarum [5] evectionum numerum non excedant. Ut nullus torneamenta exerceat,[6] et mortui in torneamentis Christiana careant sepultura. Quod unaquæque [7] cathedralis ecclesia magistrum habeat, qui pauperes scolares et alios doceat, nec pro licentia docendi aliquis pretium exigat. Ut prælati unam tantum regant ecclesiam, et quod pa-

A.D. 1179.

Rog. Wend. ii. 400.

[1] *scismaticis*] cismaticis, MS.

[2] *nisi*] Om. A. C. *pr. man.*, D., Edd. and ed. Wend., but is in W. I Cf. Diceto, col. 603.

[3] *incontinentia*] continentia, W. A. C. D., but falsely. See Harduin, tom. vi. 2. col. 1678.

[4] *abjiciantur*] abiciantur, MS.

[5] *duarum*] At first written *duorum*.

[6] *exerceat*] excerceat, MS.

[7] *unaquæque*] unaquaque, MS., and W. A. C. D. I.

A.D. 1179. troni ab ecclesiis in suo fundo constitutis exactiones non faciant. Ne episcopi seu viri ecclesiastici stare compellantur laicorum judicio,[1] nec laici laicis decimas conferre præsumant. Si quis ab aliquo, commodata[2] pecunia, possessiones in pignus acceperit, si, deductis expensis, sortem suam receperit ex fructibus possessionis, pignus restituat debitori.

Epistola Alexandri papæ contra hæresim Petri Lumbardi.

Relatum[3] fuit præterea ejusdem papæ apostolatui, quod magister Petrus Lumbardus in quibusdam scriptis suis ab articulis fidei deviavit; unde Willelmo, Senonensi archiepiscopo, literas sub hac forma direxit.[4] **Rog. Wend. ii. 400.**

Letter of pope Alexander III. against the doctrine of Peter Lombard.

"Alexander episcopus, servus servorum Dei, Willelmo, Senonensi archiepiscopo, salutem. Cum in nostra olim esses præsentia constitutus, tibi viva voce injunximus, ut, suffraganeis tuis Parisius tibi ascitis, ad abrogationem pravæ doctrinæ Petri, quondam Parisiacensis episcopi, qua dicitur, quod Christus secundum quod est homo, non est aliquid, omnino intenderes, et efficacem operam adhiberes. Inde siquidem est, quod fraternitati tuæ per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatinus, quod tibi, cum præsens esses, præcipimus, suffraganeos[5] tuos Parisius convoces, et una cum illis et aliis viris religiosis et prudentibus præscriptam doctrinam studeas penitus abrogare, et a magistris scolaribus ibidem in theologia studentibus Christum, sicut perfectum Deum, sic et perfectum hominem ex anima et corpore consistentem, præcipias edoceri; universis firmiter et districte injungens, quod doctrina illa de cetero nequaquam docere præsumant, sed ipsam penitus detestentur." **Rog. Wend. ii. 401.**

---

[1] *judicio*] Added in marg.
[2] *commodata*] comodata, MS.
[3] *Relatum*] The large initial letter was at first written D., and so in W. I.
[4] This letter was written in June 1170. See Jaffé, p. 733.
[5] *suffraganeos*] suffraneos, MS.

De libello abbatis Joachim, quem scripsit contra Petrum Lumbardum. A.D. 1179.

Rog.Wend. ii. 401. Scripsit etiam eisdem diebus contra eundem Petrum Lumbardum abbas Joachim Florensis cœnobii libellum, vocans eum hæreticum et insanum, eo quod in libro Sententiarum, quem composuerat, idem Petrus de unitate sive essentia Trinitatis dixit, "Quoniam quædam summa res est, Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus, et illa non est generans, neque genita, nec procedens." Rog.Wend. ii. 402. Contra hanc assertionem opposuit abbas præfatus, quod non tam trinitatem astruebat in Deo quam quaternitatem, tres videlicet personas et illam communem essentiam quasi quartam manifeste protestans; quod nulla res est quæ sit Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus, nec essentia, nec substantia, nec natura, quamvis concedat, quod Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus sunt una essentia, una substantia, et una natura. Et hanc suam assertionem idem Joachim hiis quæ sequuntur auctoritatibus affirmat, "Tres sunt qui testimonium dant in cœlo, Pater, Verbum, et Spiritus Sanctus, et hii tres unum sunt; et tres sunt qui testimonium dant in terra, spiritus, aqua, et sanguis, et hii tres unum sunt."[1] Item, "Volo, Pater, ut sint unum in nobis, sicut et nos unum sumus."[2] Unde fol. 69 b. videtur, quod sæpedictus [Joachim][3] hujusmodi unitatem non veram et propriam, sed quasi collectivam et similitudinariam esse fateatur, quemadmodum multi homines unus populus.

Work of Joachim, abbat of Flor, against Peter Lombard.

Quod papa Innocentius III. libellum Joachim dampnavit.

Rog.Wend. ii. 402. Stetit autem hæc indeterminata altercatio a diebus Alexandri papæ usque ad tempora Innocentii III.

The work of Joachim condemned

[1] Ep. Joh. v. 7. 8.
[2] Joh. xvii. 22.
[3] *Joachim*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1179. papæ per annos multos, sedentibus inter eos in cathedra Romana Lucio, Urbano, Gregorio, Clemente, et Celestino, pontificibus Romanis. Quibus succedens Innocentius Tertius, anno Domini M°.CC°.XV°., Romæ generale concilium celebrans, libellum Joachim, quem contra Petrum edidit memoratum, hiis verbis dampnavit:[1] "Nos," inquit, "sacro et universali approbante concilio, credimus et confitemur cum Petro, quod una quædam summa res est, incomprehensibilis quidem et ineffabilis,[2] quæ veraciter est Pater et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus, tres simul personæ, ac sigillatim[3] quælibet earumdem. Et ideo in Deo solummodo trinitas est et non quaternitas, quia quælibet trium personarum est illa res, substantia videlicet, essentia seu natura divina, quæ sola est universorum principium, præter quam aliud inveniri non potest. Et illa res non est generans, neque genita, neque procedens, sed est Pater qui generat, et Filius qui gignitur,[4] et Spiritus Sanctus qui procedit, ut distinctiones sint in personis, et unitas in natura. Licet enim alius sit Pater, alius Filius, alius Spiritus Sanctus, non tamen aliud. Pater enim ab æterno Filium generando substantiam ei dedit, juxta quod ipse testatur, 'Pater quod dedit mihi, majus omnibus est.'[5] Et dici non potest, quod partem suæ substantiæ illi dederit, et partem retinuerit ipse sibi, cum substantia Patris indivisibilis sit, utpote simplex omnino. Sed nec dici potest, quod Pater in Filium transtulerit suam substantiam generando illum, quasi sic dederit eam Filio, quod non retinuerit ipsam sibi, alioquin desiisset esse substantia. Filius vero substantiam Patris integram nascendo accepit, et ita Pater et Filius eandem habent substantiam, et eadem res est Pater et Filius, nec non et Spiritus Sanctus, ab utroque procedens et in

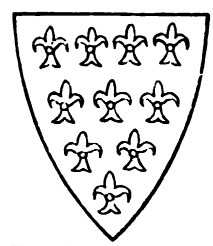
by pope Innocent III. as heretical. A.D. 1215.

Rog. Wend. ii. 403.

[1] See Harduin, tom. vii. col. 18.
[2] *ineffabilis*] effabilis, MS.
[3] *sigillatim*] singillatim, MS.
[4] *gignitur*] gingnitur, MS.
[5] Joh. x. 29.

utroque manens. Non enim, ut ait abbas Joachim, A.D. 1179.
fideles Christi sunt unum, id est, una quædam res, quæ communis sit omnibus, sed sunt unum in unione caritatis, in gratia; pro personis vero divinis, ut attendatur idemptitatis[1] unitas in natura. Dampnamus igitur et reprobamus libellum Joachim sive doc-
Wend. 404. trinam, ita quod, si quis ejus sententiam in hac parte defendere vel approbare præsumpserit, tanquam hæreticus ab omnibus habeatur." Sed hoc suo loco plenius determinabitur.

Philippus consecratur in regem Francorum.[2]



Wend. 404. Eodem vero anno Philippus, filius Lodowici regis Francorum, in sollempnitate Omnium Sanctorum per manum Willelmi, Remensis archiepiscopi, in eadem civitate consecratur in regem Francorum, patre adhuc vivente, et tantæ coronationi omnia necessaria ministrante. **Philip is crowned king of France. 1 Nov.**

Princeps Walensium perimitur.

Wend. 404. Eodem tempore Cadwallanus, princeps Walensium, **Cadwalan, prince of Wales, slain by treachery.** coram rege Anglorum tractus in causam et multorum querelis impetitus, dum sub regis conductu remeasset, in itinere hostium perpessus insidias, interfectus est x°. kalendas Octobris. **22 Sept.** Quod plurimum in regis scandalum redundavit, licet non deliquerit; unde auctores cædis graviter puniri præcepit.

Confœderatio facta inter reges Francorum et Anglorum.

Wend. 404. Anno Domini M°.C°.LXXX°., habito inter regem Fran- A.D. 1180.
corum Philippum, nuper coronatum, et regem Anglo- **Treaty between**

---

[1] *idemptitatis*] idemptitas, MS. and C. F. Corr. from W. A. D. I. and Harduin, Concilia, vii. col. 19.

[2] In the margin is drawn the shield of France, viz., azure, semée of fleurs-de-lis, 4, 3, 2, 1, surmounted by a crown.

A.D. 1180. Philip II. and Henry. rum Henricum colloquio inter[1] Gisorcium et Triam, sicut convenit inter eos, videlicet sic: "Ego Philippus, Dei gratia rex Francorum, et ego Henricus, eadem gratia rex Anglorum, ad omnium volumus pervenire notitiam, quod fœdus et amicitiam fide media innovavimus et sacramento. Et, ut omnes amodo inter nos auferantur occasiones discordiæ, concessimus ad invicem, ut de terris nostris et possessionibus, et de omnibus aliis rebus, quos habemus modo, alter adversus alterum nihil amodo petet, excepto de Arvernia,[2] de qua inter nos est contentio, et excepto feodo de Castro-Radulphi, et exceptis minutis feudis nostris, et divisis terrarum nostrarum de Berri. Si autem super hiis, quæ excepta sunt, per nosmetipsos convenire non poterimus, ego Philippus tres elegi episcopos et barones, et ego Henricus totidem, et nos judicio eorum stabimus firmiter et bona fide."[3]

Obiit Lodowicus, rex Francorum pius.[4]

Death of Louis VII. Eodemque tempore Lodowicus, rex Francorum piissimus ac Christianissimus, et pius[5] beati Thomæ martiris consolator, et in tribulatione et exilio receptator et protector, Parisius diem clausit extremum, xiiii°. kalendas Octobris. 18 Sept. Et sepultus est in monasterio Cisterciensis Ordinis, quod Barbellum nuncupatur, propriis sumptibus constructo.[6]

---

[1] *Henricum colloquio inter*] Written over an erasure, but the words erased are merely a repetition of *Philippum nuper coronatum.*

[2] *Arvernia*] Arvenia, MS.; *Alvernia*, Hoveden, p. 593.

[3] This treaty is given at length in Hoveden, p. 593. In Diceto it is dated 4 kal. Jul. [28 June], col. 610.

[4] The shield of France (as above) reversed is drawn between the columns of the text.

[5] *et pius*] On an erasure.

[6] *constructo*] At first written *constructum*.

Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, terras Gaufridi de Liziniaco[1] *graviter afflixit.* A.D. 1180.

Rog. Wend. ii. 405. Per idem quoque tempus Aquitannorum dux Ricardus et Henrici regis filius, per superbiam Gaufridi de Rancona multis sæpe lacessitus injuriis, collectis undique copiis militaribus, Tailleburc, castellum ejusdem G[aufridi], obsidione vallavit; opus desperatissimum, et quod suorum nullus antecessorum attemptare præsumpsit. Castrum enim illud ante dies illos hostium cuneis prorsus incognitum, triplici fossato totidemque mœniis septum, seris, armis et repagulis sufficienter communitum, turribusque per intervalla cum propugnaculis roboratum, abundans[2] in victualibus et militibus, ducis Ricardi, licet impetuosum, non expavit adventum. Sed postea[3] dux memoratus, qui leone fortior extitit et audacior, partes illas hostiliter invadit,[4] contremuerunt incolæ a formidabili adventu illius; pomeria enim et vineas, quibus patria illa abundat,[5] succidit, domos succendit, et, miserabile faciens exterminium, omnia demoliendo contrivit. Prope igitur castellum tentoria fixit, propius machinas erigendo fit assultus acerrimus, nec inclusis requies est concessa. Tandem de communi consilio civium placuit obsessis, ut ante expectatum foras erumperent, et expeterent ducis exercitum improvise. Quod cum animose satis attemptassent, dux suos ad arma ruere persuasit, et retrorsum cedere compulit oppidanos;[6] sed in ipso portarum ingressu, cum dux terga dantes insequeretur, fit gravissimus hinc inde conflictus, dum ibidem quid equus,[7] quid lancea, quid ensis, quid clipeus,[8] quid galea cer-

Richard, duke of Aquitaine, attacks the castle of Taillebourg.

Rog. Wend. ii. 406.

fol. 70 *a*.

---

[1] *Liziniaco*] So also W. A. D., but, apparently, an error. In C. *Rancona*, to agree with the text, which is borrowed from Diceto, col. 603. See under A.D. 1188, p. 446. In Ben. Abb. p. 500, the two persons are clearly distinguished, as also in Anselme, "Hist. Genealogique," tom. iii. p. 77. Richard was both duke of Aquitaine and earl of Poitou.

[2] *abundans*] habundans, MS.

[3] *postea*] At first written *post.*

[4] *invadit*] Added in marg.

[5] *abundat*] habundat, MS.

[6] *oppidanos*] opidanos, MS.

[7] *equus*] equs, MS.

[8] *clipeus*] clepeūs, MS.

A.D. 1180. tantibus conferant, experitur. Oppidanis[1] denique assultus ducis, qui semper prævium se exhibuit, acerrimos ultra ferre non valentibus, sed intra mœnia sese certatim recipientibus, dux impiger[2] raptim pariter intra villam se contulit, hostibus commixtum et associatum, commilitonibus et signiferis subsequentibus. Et cum civibus nusquam locus pateret diffugii, per plateas hinc inde discurritur; cædibus, rapinis insistitur et incendiis; et quos felix eventus[3] ab hiis eruit, ad castellum confugiunt principale. Castelli tandem dominus ad deditionem compellitur, facies murorum ligonibus, rastris et tridentibus ilico solotenus complanatur. Alia quoque castella rebellionis terrore concussa, exemplo prioris fortioris et majoris, infra mensem simile subiere discrimen. Omnibus igitur ad votum completis, dux Ricardus transfretavit in Angliam, maximoque est receptus [honore],[4] velut triumphator magnificus, [a][5] genitore.

The castle is razed to the ground.

Richard returns to England.

Rex Francorum Philippus regnum suum sub dispositione regis Anglorum commisit.

A.D. 1181. Anno Domini M^o^.C^o^.LXXX°.I^o^., cum rex Francorum Philippus, cum[6] quibusdam de suis sibi ad memoriam reducentibus, cognovisset[7] qualiter rex Anglorum regnum suum tam late diffusum in[8] tam barbaris nationibus, Scotis scilicet, Hiberniensibus[9] et Walensibus, ex una parte, ultramarinis ex alia, unde, ut breviter dicatur, undique pacifice ac discrete guberaret, de communi consilio domesticorum suorum prædicti regis dispositioni omne regnum et seipsum com- Rog. Wend. ii. 407.

Philip commits the charge of his realm to king Henry.

Nota incomparabilem regis H[enrici] sapientiam.

[1] *Oppidanis*] Opidanis, MS.

[2] *impiger*] The last two letters are on an erasure.

[3] *eventus*] Added on to the text.

[4] *honore*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[5] *a*] Supplied from the same.

[6] *cum*] On an erasure, but so also in W. and all the MSS. It seems superfluous, and is omitted in ed. Wend.

[7] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[8] *in*] a, W. A. C. D. and Diceto, col. 611.

[9] *Hiberniensibus*] Added in marg.

misit. Hoc etiam exemplo rex Anglorum ductus, cum totam Normanniam filii sui regis dispositioni supposuisset, viii°. kalendas Augusti in Angliam transiens, beatum Thomam martirem gratia orationis petivit, regnum suum et Francorum, immo corpus suum et animam, ejus committens gubernationi. Quod cum ad audientiam regis Francorum devolveretur, circumsedentibus jocosa quadam dixit maturitate, "Eja, jam duos præelectos habeo regni mei conservatores, sanctum Thomam, pretiosissimum martirem in cœlis, et potentissimum regem Henricum in terris. O utinam et ego saltem patris mei meritis ejusdem martiris tutelæ commendar, regar in anima et conserver in corpore!"

A.D. 1181.

25 July.

Henry returns to England, and places his kingdom under the protection of St. Thomas.

Witty speech of Louis.

Obiit Rogerus, archiepiscopus Eboracensis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 407.

Eodem quoque anno Rogerus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, diem clausit supremum, xii°. kalendas Decembris. Qui adhuc vivens, [a papa][1] Alexandro privilegium impetraverat, ut si clericus suæ suppositus jurisdictioni, agens in extremis testamentum conficeret, et propriis manibus bona sua moriturus non distribueret, archiepiscopus haberet facultatem injiciendi[2] manus[3] in bona defuncti. Unde, quia non caritas sed avaritia hujus impetrationis causa fuisse non est ambiguum, secus quam deceret meruit ab hoc seculo migrare. Et quoniam quod quisque juris in altèrum statuerit, uti debet eodem jure, post mortem memorati archiepiscopi[4] qualemqualem, quæcunque reperta sunt in thesauris ejus justo Dei judicio ilico sunt confiscata; quorum summa ascendit ad xi. milia librarum argenti,[5] cuppæ vero aureæ[6] et argenteæ vii.,

Death of Roger, abp. of York.

20 Nov.

Privilege obtained by him from pope Alexander.

His wealth confiscated after his death.

[1] *a papa*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *injiciendi*] iniciendi, MS.

[3] *manus*] Added in marg.

[4] *archiepiscopi*] episcopi, MS. and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.

[5] *argenti*] In W. A. C. D. is added here, "et aurei trecenti."

[6] *cuppæ vero aureæ*] cuppa aurea, W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1181. ciphi argentei ix., præter alia, quæ non oportet, licet carissima, numerare. Monetam tamen totam dudum coacervaverat ad dejectionem beati Thomæ, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.

Epistola Alexandri papæ ad Johannem presbiterum, [regem][1] *Indorum.*

Letter of the pope to Prester John, king of India.

Circa eosdem dies[2] papa Alexander scripsit presbitero Johanni, Indorum regi, in hæc verba: Rog. Wend. ii. 408.

"Alexander episcopus karissimo in Christo filio . . .[3] salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Audieramus jampridem, referentibus multis, quomodo, cum sis Christianam religionem feliciter professus, piis velis operibus incumbere diligenter; sed dilectus filius noster Philippus medicus, qui de intentione propria et proposito tuo cum magnis et honorabilibus viris tui regni se verbum habuisse proponit, sicut vir providus constanter nobis retulit, se manifestius ab hiis audivisse, quod tuæ voluntatis sit et propositi erudiri catholica et apostolica disciplina, et ad hoc ferventer intendas, ut tu et cuncta plebs tuæ sullimitati commissa nihil[4] unquam videamini in fide vestra[5] tenere, quod a doctrina sedis apostolicæ dissentiat. Illud autem ad commendationem tuæ virtutis accedit, quod, sicut prædictus Philippus se a tuis asserit audivisse, ferventi desiderio cuperes in urbe habere ecclesiam, et Jerusalem altare aliquod, ubi viri religiosi de regno tuo et prudentes manere possent, et apostolica plenius instrui disciplina, per quos tui fol. 70 *b*. et homines tui doctrinam ipsam facilius reciperent et tenerent. Nos autem vos ab hiis articulis, in quibus erratis a Christiana et catholica fide, revocare volentes, præfatum Philippum ad tuam remittimus[6] magnitudinem, per quem de articulis fidei Christianæ, in quibus tu et tui a nobis discordare videmini, in proximo per Dei[7] gratiam eruditus, nihil prorsus timere Rog. Wend. ii. 409.

---

[1] *regem*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] This letter is assigned by Jaffé, p. 775, to Sept. 1177.

[3] A blank is here left in MS.

[4] *nihil*] nichil, MS.

[5] *vestra*] nostra, MS. and so W.A. C. *pr. m.*, D. I., but the sense requires *vestra*, as in C. *sec. m.* and Hoveden, p. 581.

[6] *remittimus*] At first written *mittimus*, as in W. A. C. D.

[7] *Dei*] So also W. F. I. and Hoveden, p. 581; *fidei*, C. D., Edd. and ed. Wend.

poteris, quod de errore tuam vel tuorum salutem præpediat, vel in vobis[1] nomen Christianitatis obfuscet." A.D. 1181.

Papæ Alexandro Lucius successit.

R.Wend. ii. 409. Eodemque anno, vigilia Exaltationis sanctæ Crucis, facta est eclipsis solis, hora tertia. Anno quoque sub eodem obiit papa Alexander, postquam sedisset in cathedra Romana annis xxii.[2] Successit autem ei Hunbaldus, Hostiensis episcopus, et vocatus est Lucius Tertius, sedens in ecclesia apostolica annis iiii^or^. Eclipse of the sun. 13 Sept. Death of pope Alexander III. Lucius III. succeeds.

Regina Francorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 409. Eodem anno Philippus, rex Francorum, duxit uxorem Margaretam,[3] filiam Baldewini, comitis Hamaucensium, ex Margareta, sorore Philippi, comitis Flandrensis, susceptam. Marriage of Philip to the daughter of the count of Hainault.

Nova moneta.

Rog. Wend. ii. 409. Eodem anno, moneta veteri in Anglia reprobata, nova successit, in festo sancti Martini. Eodemque anno[4] Baldewinus, abbas Fordensis, Cisterciensis Ordinis, successit Rogero episcopo ad ecclesiam Wigorniensem. New coinage issued. 11 Nov. Baldwin made bishop of Worcester.

Gaufridus, Lincolniensis electus, renunciavit electioni.

Rog. Wend. ii. 409. Anno Domini M^o^.C^o^.LXXX°.II°. Gaufridus, Lincolniensis electus et regis Anglorum filius, cum ejus electio esset a domino papa confirmata, postquam per septennium eidem ecclesiæ præfuisset pacifice, præsente rege et episcopis regni, in Epiphania Domini apud Merleberge electioni sponte renunciavit. A.D. 1182. Geoffrey resigns the bishopric of Lincoln. 6 Jan.

[1] *vobis*] nobis, MS. and W. A. C. D., erroneously.

[2] *xxii.*] xxi. MS. and E. Corr. from W. I. In A. C. D. F., falsely, *xii.*

[3] *Margaretam*] A mistake for *Isabellam*, copied from Wendover, and so in all the MSS. The marriage took place 28 Apr. 1180. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 577.

[4] Baldwin was consecrated bp. of Worcester 10 Aug. 1180. Fasti, iii. 50.

A.D. 1182. *Rex, facta quadam maxima elemosina, transfretavit.*

Henry gives a large sum in aid of the Holy Land, and crosses to Normandy.

Eodem tempore rex H[enricus] apud Waltham, in præsentia procerum regni,[1] ad subventionem Terræ Sanctæ xlii. milia marcas argenti et quingentas marcas auri liberaliter assignavit. Et sic in Normanniam transfretavit. Rog. Wend. ii. 409. Rog. Wend. ii. 410.

Dux Saxonum Henricus venit ad[2] regem.

Henry, duke of Saxony, munificently treated by the king.

Quibus utique diebus dux Saxonum Henricus et gener regis, ab imperatore in exilium pulsus, in Normanniam venit ad regem, ducens secum ducissam et duos filios ejus, Henricum scilicet et Othonem; et per tres annos exhibitus est a regali munificentia in omnibus vitæ necessariis abundanter.[3] Rog. Wend. ii. 410.

Fit episcopus Lincolniensis. Obiit Rofensis.[4]

Walter, archdeacon of Oxford, consecrated bishop of Lincoln.

Eodemque anno Walterus de Constantiis, archidiaconus Oxoniensis, consecratus est episcopus Lincolniensis[5] a Ricardo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Eodem quoque anno obiit Walterus,[6] Rofensis episcopus. Rog. Wend. ii. 410.

Death of Walter bishop of Rochester.

De morte Simonis, abbatis Sancti Albani, cui successit Garinus, et qualiter acceptus fuit regi.[7]

A.D. 1183. Death of Simon, abbot of St. Albans.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXXX°.III°. defuncto Simone, abbate Sancti Albani, Warinus, ejusdem ecclesiæ prior, vir quidem profundi pectoris in ordine conservando, Rog. Wend. ii. 410.

---

[1] *regni*] rengni, MS.

[2] *ad*] Repeated, but underscored for omission.

[3] *abundanter*] habundantur, MS.

[4] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier erect, and also another mitre and crosier reversed.

[5] He was not consecrated till 12 June 1183. Fasti, ii. 8.

[6] *Walterus*] Rogerus, MS. and E. F., erroneously.

[7] This chapter is omitted in F.

et in consiliis juris ecclesiastici et civilis[1] peritus, et in literatura multiplici eleganter eruditus, eligitur in abbatem. Quod cum regi innotuisset, ipsum electum gratanter acceptavit, promittens suum patrocinium domui Sancti Albani sub tali pastore non deesse. A.D. 1183. Warren elected abbot.

De morte Henrici, regis junioris.

Rog.Wend. ii. 410. Circa dies quoque illos rex Henricus diligentem operam impendit, ut filii ejus, Gaufridus de Britannia et Ricardus de ducatu Aquitaniæ, homagium facerent filio suo primogenito, regi Henrico. Quod quidem pater petiit, Gaufridus de comitatu Britanniæ gratanter annuit et complevit. Ricardus vero, cum rogatus a patre idipsum facere debuisset, ira incanduit vehementi, incongruum esse dicens, cum ex eodem patre et matre ducerent originem, si, patre vivente, fratrem primogenitum aliqua subjectionis forma[2] agnoscerent superiorem; sed, sicut fratri primogenito bona debentur paterna, sic et in bonis maternis successionem legitimam vendicabat. Henry urges his sons Geoffrey and Richard to do homage to the young king. Richard refuses.

Rog.Wend. ii. 411. Hæc autem audiens rex pater, iracundiæ calore succensus, adversus Ricardum dura proposuit, et, ut rex junior ad edomandam fratris superbiam totus insurgeret, constanter indixit. Habitis igitur inter se colloquiis frequenter, cum spes nulla de pace haberetur, rex [juvenis][3] undique copiosum congregavit exercitum. Et dum congredi cum fratre suo decrevisset, præcisa est, velut a texente, vita ejus, quæ spem multorum deficiens præcidit. Siquidem in flore juventutis, cum annum ætatis vicesimum octavum complevisset, intra[4] Guasconiam, in illo tractu terræ quæ Turoinna dicitur, apud castellum [Martel],[5] in festo sancti Barnabæ apostoli, rex junior de medio est The young king raises forces against Richard, but dies suddenly. 11 June.

[1] *in .... civilis*] On an erasure.
[2] *forma*] Added in marg.
[3] *juvenis*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.
[4] *intra*] inter, MS.
[5] *Martel*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1183. sublatus.[1] Corpus autem in lineis pannis, id est, vestibus candidis, quas habuit in consecratione sacro crismate delibutas, regaliter involutum, Rothomagum delatum est, et in ecclesia cathedrali prope majus altare cum honore tanto congruo principi tumulatur. Eodem tempore Girardus, cognomento[2] Puella, consecratus est[3] episcopus Coventrensis; qui cum x. septimanis sedisset, in fata concessit. Eodemque anno Walterus de Constantiis, Lincolniensis antistes, in Angliam veniens, in sua sede sollempniter est collocatus.



Death of Girard, bp. of Coventry.

Obiit Ricardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus.

A.D. 1184. Death of Richard, abp. of Canterbury.

Anno Domini Mº.Cº.LXXXº.IIIIº. Ricardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Hallingum, villam Rofensis episcopi, diem clausit extremum. Rog. Wend. ii. 411.

Henricus, dux Saxonum, venit in Angliam. fol. 71 *a.*

The duke of Saxony comes to England. Birth of his son William.

Eodemque anno rex Henricus duxit in Angliam Saxoniæ ducem, cum familia sua. Et infra dies paucos apud Wintoniam peperit ducissa filium, quem vocavit Willelmum. Rog. Wend. ii. 411. Rog. Wend. ii. 412.

Duo eliguntur archiepiscopi, Cantuariensis et Rothomagensis.

Election of the abps. of Canterbury and Rouen.

Anno quoque sub eodem Baldewinus, Wigorniensis episcopus, electus est archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, et Walterus Lincolniensis electus est archiepiscopus Rothomagensis. Qui, susceptis palliis,[4] in suis sunt sedibus sollempniter et rite collocati. Rog. Wend. ii. 412.

---

[1] In the margin is drawn the shield of England, reversed, with a crown beneath it. At the side is written in red letters, "*Coronā et clipeus regis Henrici junioris.*"

[2] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[3] *est*] On an erasure.

[4] *palliis*] paliis, MS.

Archiepiscopus Coloniensis et comes Flandrensis veniunt in Angliam. A.D. 1184.

Rog. Wend. ii. 412. Tempore quoque sub eodem Philippus, archiepiscopus Coloniensis, et Philippus, comes Flandrensis, venerunt in Angliam, vota orationum beato Thomæ martiri soluturi. Quibus rex Anglorum occurrens, petiit ut Londonias venirent, [visuri][1] regiam civitatem. In quorum adventu, quomodo antea visum non fuerat, civitas coronata resplenduit, ex præcepto regis; gaudium et diversi joci per plateas insonuerunt. Archiepiscopus quoque Coloniensis, et cum eo comes Flandrensis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli sollempniter cum processionis tripudio sunt suscepti. Et die eodem, simili honore sibi exhibito, et per v. sequentes, in magno palatio regis expensis sunt effusioribus hospitati; sed, an multis honoribus donati recesserint, quærere superfluum videretur. Eodemque anno, ut Deo et beato Thomæ plenius reconciliaretur, rex Henricus fundavit unam domum de Ordine Cartusiæ in Anglia; ad cujus regimen vocavit fratrem Hugonem, postea episcopum Lincolniensem et sanctum. Et maxime hoc fecit pro anima regis H[enrici], filii sui, licet ipsum provocaverit.[2]

The abp. of Cologne and count of Flanders pay their vows to St. Thomas.

They are received at London with great honours.

The king founds a house of the Carthusian Order.

Obiit episcopus Sarisbiriensis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 412. Eodemque anno obiit Jocelinus, episcopus Saresbiriensis.

Death of Joscelin, bishop of Salisbury.

Sarraceni Hispaniæ Christianos inquietantes confunduntur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 412. Horum quoque dierum curriculis, circa festum beati Johannis Baptistæ, rex Sarracenorum qui sunt in Hyspania, Gamius, duxit regem regum Sarracenorum,

Hostile proceedings of the Saracens in Spain.

24 June.

[1] *visuri*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *Eodemque . . provocaverit*] Added in marg., and inserted in text of F.

A.D. 1184. nomine Macemunt, intra fines Christianorum, cum regibus xxxvii. Qui inprimis obsederunt Sanctum Hyrenæum,[1] et tribus diebus et totidem noctibus pugnaverunt,[2] et tandem, dejectis mœniis, intraverunt; qui autem interius muros defendebant, sese infra turrem receperunt, ut ibidem protegerentur. Nocte vero sequenti venit antistes Portigalensis, cum filio regis, et xv. milia peremerunt Sarracenorum, et regem Gamium, ducem eorum; et posuerunt corpora defunctorem ubi murus dejectus erat, ut per ea loco muri defenderentur. In crastino autem, scilicet die sanctorum Johannis et Pauli, archiepiscopus sancti Jacobi xx. milia conduxit armatorum, et in aurora diei de Sarracenis xxx. milia interfecit. In die beatæ Margaretæ postea, apud Alcubaz, peremerunt Sarraceni x. milia mulierum et infantum; sed illi, qui fuerunt in oppido[3] Alcubaz exeuntes, tres reges cum omni eorum exercitu percusserunt. Postea vero, in vigilia sancti Jacobi, rex Macemunt audivit quod Galaciæ rex[4] advenerat hoc postulaturus, ut solus cum solo dimicaret; utrorumque namque[5] exercitus in hoc consensit, ut regum duello generalis conflictus terminaretur. Macemund autem ad pugnam[6] præparatus, cum equum vellet ascendere, tremebundus præ pavore, febre correptus est, et tertio, cum equum jam ascendisset, ex pusillanimitate pavore vel febre interiit. Quo mortuo, totus ejus fugit exercitus, omni pecunia derelicta. Rex vero Portigalensis victor, nec cruentus, qui sine vulnere, immo sine ictu, de hoste tanto victoriam reportavit, ex captivis Sarracenis dedit servos, qui cementariis ministrarent ad ecclesias, quas Sarraceni destruxerant, reparandas; et de eorum auro sancto Vincentio auream fecit thecam, gemmis pretiosis redimitam.

Rog. Wend. ii. 413.

They are defeated by the prince of Portugal.

26 June.

20 July.

25 July.

Death of Macemund, the Saracen monarch.

Distribution of the Saracen prisoners.

[1] *Hyrenæum*, Hereneum, MS.
[2] *pugnaverunt*] pungnaverunt, MS.
[3] *oppido*] opido, MS.
[4] *rex*] Added in marg.
[5] *namque*] nanque, MS. throughout.
[6] *pugnam*] pungnam, MS.

Venerunt autem postea galeiæ infinitæ Sarracenorum apud Ulixebonam, ducentes dromundum, in quo talis erat machina, quod per ipsam poterant ire et redire ultra muros civitatis armati, dummodo navis possit muris applicari; mare autem mœnia lambebat civitatis. Deo tamen disponente, quidam in aqua mersor[1] se dromundi carinæ supposuit, et, eo terebrato per loca plurima, cum omnibus contentis miserabiliter ipsa immanis navalis machina submersa est. Sarraceni autem se delusos cognoscentes, ilico, sibi vento favente, fugerunt, infinita bona, quæ sua fuerant, relinquentes.

A.D. 1184. The Saracens fail in an attempt on Lisbon.

Guido de Liziniaco regni Jerusalem constituitur procurator.

Rog. Wend. ii. 414.

Regnavit autem sub hiis diebus in Jerusalem Baldeuuinus, Almarici quondam regis filius. Qui ab initio regni sui elefantino laborans incommodo,[2] jam jam lumen amiserat oculorum; et, putrescentibus membrorum extremitatibus, pedes ejus et manus officium sibi morbido denegarunt. Regiam tamen administrationem, licet corpore debilis esset, animo fortis et circumspectus, supra vires nitebatur adimplere. Convocatis itaque tandem regni principibus, matre præsente et patriarcha, Guidonem de Liziniaco, comitem scilicet Jopensem et Aschalonitarum,[3] ejusdem regni universitas[4] constituit procuratorem. Habuit autem idem Guido sororem regis uxorem, nomine Sibillam, quæ prius marchisio de Monte-Ferrato matrimonio copulata, filium ex illo susceperat, nomine Baldewinum. Sed cum, aliquo tempore Guidone procuratore existente, Jerosolimitanum non
fol. 71 b. prosperaretur regnum, rex, amoto eo, Reimundo, comiti Tripolitano, regni curam commisit.

Malady of Baldwin IV., king of Jerusalem.

Guy de Lusignan appointed guardian of the kingdom, who is replaced by Reimund, count of Tripoli.

[1] *mersor*] Added in marg.

[2] *incommodo*] incomodo, MS.

[3] *Aschalonitarum*] Ascalonitanum, W. A. C. D.

[4] *universitas*] Added, partly on an erasure, and omitted in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1184. *Salahadinus, vel Saladinus, Babiloniæ Soldanus, civitates Christianorum subvertendo destruit Christianos.*

Conquests of Saladin.

Contigit autem hac tempestate, ut Salahadinus, vel Saladinus, vel Salaadinus,[1] Babiloniæ et Damasci Soldanus, subjugatis sibi quampluribus orientis regibus, adeo, Deo permittente, invaluit, ut rex regum et dominus dominantium diceretur, et obedirent ei omnium fere gentium nationes. Natus autem erat ex quadam muliere nobili Christiana et Anglicá, sclava, et a viro suo rapta; vir autem ejusdem,[2] qui[3] miles fuit strenuissimus, similiter captus et captivus. Unde multum dilexit[4] regem Ricardum, tum quia fuit Anglorum rex, tum quia militum fuit strenuissimus; sed prœlium inter eos continuum amicitiam exsufflavit.[5] Erat insuper idem Saladinus miles strenuus, audax et bellicosus, et super omnes munificus et dapsilis. Adjecit igitur ex animi magnitudine, ut superius dicetur, sibi Christianitatem, non[6] Terræ tantum Sanctæ, sed etiam totius occidentis sibi potenter subjugare. Mense igitur intrante Aprilis,[7] Jordanem transivit, terramque circa castrum Crac, quod antiqua appellatione Petra-Deserti dicebatur, feraliter devastavit, prædas egit, cibaria collegit. Indeque progrediens ad urbem Sebasteam et Neapolim, omnia spoliavit, et residuum concremavit; Sebasteæ vero episcopus ecclesiam suam lxxx. bisanciis cum[8] captivis redemit. Indeque Arabiam veniens, eam destruxit, viris et mulieribus captivatis.[9] Ad magnum[10]

Rog. Wend. ii. 414.

Rog. Wend. ii. 415.

Notice of his birth and character.

He ravages the country beyond Jordan.

[1] In the margin is added, "Nota de triplici nomine illius magni regis."

[2] *ejusdem*] At first written *ejus*.

[3] *qui*] Interlined.

[4] *dilexit*] The last two letters of this word are on an erasure.

[5] *exsufflavit*] exuflavit, MS.

[6] *Christianitatem non*] Christianita, MS., after which is an erasure. The *hiatus* is supplied from F.

[7] *Aprilis*] Interlined. In W. A. C. D., *Julio*.

[8] *bisanciis cum*] Interlined.

[9] *captivatis*] captivitatis, MS.

[10] *magnum*] mangnum, MS.

quoque inde Gerinum veniens, castrum diruit, et, quibusdam captivatis, mulieres et parvulos interfecit. Inde [ad][1] Gerinum minus[2] veniens, quæ villa Templi est, eam vastavit. Et recedens per castrum quoddam Hospitalis, quod Belverium dicitur, quibusdam captis, quibusdam interfectis, recessit. A.D. 1184.

Rex Anglorum H[enricus] eligitur in regem Jerusalem.

Rog.Wend. ii. 415.

Death of Baldwin IV. Baldwin V. succeeds, aged five years.

Mortuo interea Baldewino,[3] Jerosolimorum rege leproso, regnavit pro eo Baldewinus, puer quinque annorum, nepos ejus, ex sorore Sibilla et Willelmo, marchione Montis-Ferrati, genitus. Qui statim in regem coronatus, Reimundo, comiti Tripolitano, committitur nutriendus. Salaadinus igitur audiens quod post leprosum regnaret puer, sannas inde faciens, cœpit confidentius sperare quod influeret Jordanis in os suum, omnia absorpturus.[4] Videntes igitur clerus et populus regnum in eum devenisse statum, scilicet, in quem non posset diu subsistere, quid facto opus sit, diligenter pertractant. Et cum pax Salaadini haberetur suspecta,—quievit enim tunc temporis, forte aliquo gravatus morbo,—de rege puero nihil remedii sperabatur. Tandem omnibus unum erat consilium, ut ad Henricum, Anglorum regem, quo non erat in Christianitate, immo nec in mundo, potentior, ditior, aut sapientior, [nuncium][5] aliquem sollempnem destinaret, qui ei ex parte universitatis regni Jerosolimitani regnum offerrent, et claves sanctæ civitatis et sepulchri[6] Domini sanctæque

The clergy and people resolve to offer the crown to the king of England.

[1] *ad*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[2] *minus*] Added on to the text.

[3] Baldwin IV. did not die till 10 March 1185. "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 444.

[4] *absorpturus*] absorturus, MS.

[5] *nuncium*] Originally written *mitterent*, but all the letters erased, except the first. The word wanting has been supplied from F. which reads, *modo scilicet aliquem solempnem nuncium*. In W. A. C. D. we have *legatos mitterent*, which accounts for the plural verbs which follow, but which, in the text, should be in the singular.

[6] *sepulchri*] sepuchri, MS.

A.D. 1184. The patriarch Eraclius undertakes the embassy.

resurrectionis[1] sollempniter deportarent. Eraclius autem patriarcha hujus officium legationis ab omnibus multum rogatus suscepit. Qui, adjuncto sibi Magistro Hospitalis, et quibusdam aliis, mare Mediterraneum incolumis prospere transivit; et Romam usque perveniens, ad regem Anglorum literas deprecatorias et verba consolatoria, sed nihil[2] aliud, a papa Lucio impetravit. Rog. Wend. ii. 416.

Eraclius patriarcha in Angliam veniens, regi electionem de se factam publicavit.

A.D. 1185. Arrival of Eraclius and the Master of the Hospital in England.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXXX°.V°. Eraclius, patriarcha sanctæ resurrectionis, et dominus Rogerus, Magister domus Hospitalis Jerusalem, venerunt ad regem Angliæ Henricum apud Radingum. Qui cum sui itineris causas cum suis literis apostolicis exposuissent, sanctæque civitatis Jerusalem et Terræ Promissionis desolationem per ordinem enarrassent, regem et omnem multitudinem, quæ convenerat, in lacrimas et suspiria provocarunt. Rog. Wend. ii. 416.

The keys of the holy places and banner of Jerusalem are offered to the king.

Deferebant enim ad regem memorabilia suæ signa petitionis, videlicet, nativitatis Jesu Christi, passionis, resurrectionis, turris David, sanctique sepulchri claves et vexillum regium, quæ super omnia rex acceptavit et honoravit. Literæ vero domini papæ hæc inter cetera continebant:[3]

Letter of pope Lucius to Henry.

"Lucius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, etc. Cum cuncti prædecessores tui præ ceteris terræ principibus armorum gloria et animi nobilitate longe retro claruerint, eosque fidelium populus habere in sua didiscerit adversitate patronos, merito ad te, non tantum regni sed paternarum heredem virtutum, quadam securitate præsumpta recurritur, ubi populo Christiano imminere[4] periculum, immo exterminium, formidatur, ut per brachium [regiæ][5] magnitudinis [Ejus][6] membris impendatur præsidium, qui te ad tantæ gloriæ apicem Rog. Wend. ii. 417.

---

[1] *resurrectionis*] resurectionis, MS. here and below.

[2] *nihil*] nichil, MS.

[3] The letter is given at length in Hoveden, col. 628.

[4] *imminere*] iminere, MS.

[5] *regiæ*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. and Hoveden, col. 628.

[6] *Ejus*] Omitted in all the MSS., but supplied from Hoveden.

pervenire sua pietate concessit, et te contra sui nominis impugnatores nefarios [1] murum inexpugnabilem [2] ordinavit. Porro noverit vestra serenitas, quod Salaadinus ille, sancti nominis Crucifixi immanissimus persecutor, ita nunc in spiritu furoris contra Christi fideles Terræ Sanctæ adeo invaluit, quod nisi immanitatis ejus impetus objectis obicibus reprimantur, habet fiduciam, quod influat [3] Jordanis in os ejus," et cetera. A.D. 1185.

Rex Henricus regnum Jerusalem recusavit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 417. fol. 72 a. Hiis auditis, rex Anglorum, convocato clero regni ac populo, convenerunt Londoniis apud Fontem-Clericorum, xv. kalendas Aprilis, cum [4] universa regni nobilitate, ubi dictus rex, audientibus patriarcha et Magistro domus Hospitalis, omnes fideles suos multis adjurationibus astrinxit, quatinus proferrent in medium quid super hiis saluti animæ suæ viderent expedire. Ad hoc enim asserit animum suum inclinatum, ut quod ex eorum consilio acciperet, modis omnibus observaret. Tunc concilium universum super præmissis colloquium habens, sanius judicabatur [5] cunctis, et animæ regis salubrius, ut regnum suum debita moderatione gubernaret, et illud a barbarorum irruptione in pace ecclesiastica tueatur, quam orientalium consulat in propria persona saluti. De filiis autem regis, quorum aliquem petiit patriarcha, si rex venire recusaret, quicquam statuere, cum essent absentes, incongruum videbatur.

Henry assembles the clergy and laity at Clerkenwell. 18 March. Who decide on the refusal of the crown of Jerusalem.

Johannes, filius regis, fit miles.

Rog. Wend. ii. 418. Eodem tempore [6] Johannes, filius regis H[enrici], a patre militaribus armis accinctus apud Windeleshoram

Prince John is knighted, and goes to Ireland.

---

[1] *nefarios*] nepharios, MS.

[2] *inexpugnabilem*] inexpungnabilem, MS.

[3] *influat*] imfluat, MS.

[4] *cum*] Before *cum* the word *rex* is repeated superfluously; and so in F.

[5] *judicabatur*] judicabat, MS.

[6] *tempore*] On an erasure, and originally written *anno*, as in W. and marg. of A. C. Om. D.

A.D. 1185. pridie kalendas Aprilis, in Hyberniam transfretavit 31 March. Quo facto, rex Henricus cum patriarcha, mari transito, diem Paschæ apud Rothomagum magnifice celebravit. Rex autem Francorum, audito regis Anglorum adventu, cum festinatione venit ad Vallem-Ruil[1] castellum, ubi reges in colloquiis familiaribus triduo perstiterunt. Et in eorum præsentia multi nobiles cruce signati sunt; sed ipsi reges patriarchæ nihil aliud dederunt in responsis, nisi quod uterque Terræ Sanctæ festinum promiserit auxilium. Non enim leve eis videbatur, ab extremis finibus[2] occidentis transmigrantes, corpora sua et multorum mortis exponere discrimini, et rem tam arduam attemptare. Patriarcha vero, cujus negotium in arcto ponebatur, spe frustratus ad propria remeavit.

Henry celebrates Easter at Rouen. The king of France meets him, and they promise aid to the Holy Land.

The patriarch returns to the East.

Hugo de Lasci perimitur.

Death of Hugh de Lacy. 25 July.

Anno quoque sub eodem Hugo de Lascio, dominus provinciæ quæ Midia[3] in Hybernia dicitur, interfectus est, viii°. kalendas Augusti. Rog.Wend. ii. 418.

Terræ-motus.

Earthquake at Lincoln. 15 April.

Sub eodem quoque anno factus est terræ-motus horribilis apud Lincolniam et partibus ejus, xvii°. kalendas Maii.

Fit episcopus Rofensis.

Gilbert de Glanville consecrated bishop of Rochester. 29 Sept.

Et sub eodem anno Gilebertus de Glanvilla, archidiaconus Luxoviensis, consecratus est in episcopum Rofensem, iii°. kalendas Octobris. Rog.Wend. ii. 418.

---

[1] *Vallem-Ruil*] Vallem de Ruil, MS. and F.

[2] *finibus*] sinibus, MS.

[3] *Midia*] Written at first *Media*, as in W. A. C. D.

A.D. 1185.

Comitatus de Huntendonia datur regi Scotorum.

R. Wend. ii. 418. Eodemque tempore Symon, comes Huntendoniæ, cum absque liberis decessisset, rex Anglorum dedit comitatum illum regi Scotorum Willelmo, cum pertinentiis.

Henry gives the county of Huntingdon to William, king of Scots.

Lucio successit Urbanus.

Anni quoque illius et anni subsequentis confinio, videlicet, vel in fine Adventus Domini, vel diebus Nataliciis, defuncto Lucio papa, successit Urbanus.[2]

Death of pope Lucius III. Urban III. succeeds.

Repatriat dux Saxonum reconciliatus.

Rog. Wend. ii. 418. Eodemque tempore dux Saxonum Henricus imperatori reconciliatus repatriat, suo tantum contentus patrimonio.

The duke of Saxony is reconciled to the emperor.

Obiit Matildis, quondam imperatrix.

Circa eadem[3] tempora obiit mulierum nobilissima Matildis, quondam Romanorum imperatrix, regis Henrici I. filia, et mater Henrici Secundi, et apud Rothomagum sepulta; cujus epitaphium totius vitæ summam suæ continet.

Death of the empress Matilda, mother of Henry II.

Epitaphium.

"Ortu magna, viro major, sed maxima partu,
Hic jacet Henrici filia, sponsa, parens."[4]

Her epitaph.

---

[1] In the lower margin is written with a plummet, "Nota, quod comitatus Huntendoniæ datur regi Scotorum."

[2] Pope Lucius III. died 25 Nov. 1185, and Urban III. was elected the same day. Jaffé, p. 854. After *Urbanus*, is added in A. C. D., "secundum quandam Historiam."

[3] *eadem*] eodem, MS.

[4] This epitaph is added in the margin, accompanied by the sketch of a tomb, with the word *Tumba* in red letters written above. In F. it is inserted in the text.

B[aldewinus], Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, pallium suscepit et legatiam.

A.D. 1186.

Baldwin, abp. of Canterbury, receives his pall.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXXX°.VI°. Baldewinus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, pallium cum legatione in provincia sibi subdita accepit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 418.

Rog. Wend. ii. 419.

Obiit Gaufridus, comes Britanniæ.

Death of Geoffrey, count of Britanny.

Eodemque anno Gaufridus, comes Britanniæ et filius regis Anglorum, in quodam hastiludio prostratus et toto corpore dissipatus, cum fomentis et balneis nullo modo curari potuisset; tandem morti appropinquans, in lienteriam prolapsus interiit. Et sic veritas visionem nocturnam, quam beatus Thoma martir vidit, dilucidavit. Unum quippe genus mortis, id est, una species infirmitatis[1] interemit regem Henricum juniorem et Gaufridum, comitem Britanniæ, de quo sermo est, scilicet, lienteria incurabilis.[2] Sed aliud genus mortis, id est, letalis infirmitatis, patrem extinxit, videlicet, gulositas, accidia, et mentis alienatio, scilicet, mania,[3] ut in sequentibus dicetur, suffocavit.[4] Visio autem talis fuit. Una noctium post nocturnum, dum,[5] suspenso sompno,[6] beatus Thomas exul meditaretur de hiis tribus tam sollempnibus personis, rege videlicet Henrico et duobus filiis suis H[enrico] et G[aufrido], desiderans scire, si Deo placeret, quid de ipsis finaliter venturum esset, audivit hunc de cœlo versum,

Rog. Wend. ii. 419.

Vision seen by St. Thomas.

"Mors tulit una[7] duos,[8] tulit altera[9] sed male patrem."[10]

Cui versui si prædicta adaptentur, patebit sententia.

[1] *infirmitatis*] imfirmitatis, MS., and so again below.

[2] *incurabilis*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the word *interemit*, which, as well as the words following, *sed aliud genus mortis*, is on an erasure.

[3] *scilicet, mania*] Added in marg.

[4] *suffocavit*] Added in marg.

[5] *dum*] Repeated after *exul*, but expuncted.

[6] *sompno*] sopno, MS.

[7] *una*] In the margin is added, "id est, unum genus infirmitatis, scilicet, lienteria."

[8] *duos*] Interlined is, *G[aufridum] et H[enricum]*.

[9] *altera*] In the margin, "scilicet, aliud genus infirmitatis, scilicet, mania et mentis amaritudo." In F. both these glosses are inserted in the text.

[10] *patrem*] Interlined is, *H[enricum]*.

De ejus sepultura et prole. A.D. 1186.

Rog. Wend. ii. 419. Sepultus est comes memoratus Gaufridus Parisius, in ecclesia cathedrali [1] Beatæ Mariæ, intra chorum canonicorum. Reliquit autem duas filias, quas genuerat ex Constantia uxore sua, filia scilicet Conani, comitis Britanniæ. Quæ etiam tempore, quo vir ejus obiit, gravida fuit, et postea filium pariens, Arthurum illum vocavit. Sed et pater et proles infortunato subjacuere discrimini, sicut sequens sermo suo loco declarabit.

Burial of count Geoffrey. His children.

Consecrantur quidam episcopi.

Rog. Wend. ii. 419. Eodem anno Willelmus de Ver, [in] [2] festo beati Laurentii, Herefordensis est episcopus consecratus. Eodemque anno Hugo, genere Burgundus et prior Cartusiensis Ordinis in Anglia,[3] vir quidem eximiæ sanctitatis, consecratus est episcopus Lincolniensis, in festo sancti Mathæi. Et eadem die Willelmus de Norhale consecratus est Wigorniensis episcopus. Et per idem tempus [4] Johannes, precentor Exoniensis, ejusdem ecclesiæ consecratus est antistes.

Consecration of some bishops. 10 Aug. 21 Sept.

Papa Urbanus B[aldewino], Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ut construeret ecclesiam apud Akintonam, concessit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 419. fol. 72 b. Eodem tempore papa Urbanus Baldewino, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, scripsit in hæc verba: [5]

"Præsentium tibi auctoritate mandamus, ut liceat tibi ecclesiam in honorem beatorum martirum Stephani et Thomæ construere, et de ydoneis eam ordinare personis, quibus beneficia,

Pope Urban grants leave to abp. Baldwin to found a church at Akinton.

---

[1] *cathedrali*] Added in marg.

[2] *in*] Supplied from W. A. C. D. F.

[3] *in Anglia*] These words are erroneously transposed in the MS. after *sanctitatis*, and so in F.

[4] John was consecrated bp. of Exeter, 6 Oct. 1185. Fasti, i. 368.

[5] This letter is in Diceto, col. 631, dated Verona, 1 Oct.

A.D. 1186. quæ ad eorum sustentationem constitueris, canonice debeas assignare. Item, fraternitati tuæ mandamus, ut, quarta parte oblationum, quæ ad reliquias beati Thomæ martiris offeruntur, monachorum usibus concessa, quarta fabricis ecclesiæ deputata, quarta pauperibus erogata, quartam portionem liceat tibi in alios usus[1] pro tuæ voluntatis arbitrio erogare." Rog. Wend. ii. 240.

Sibilla in reginam Jerosolimorum coronatur.

Sibilla, wife of Guy, count of Joppa, is chosen queen of Jerusalem.

Circa dies istos, Baldewino puero rege Jerosolimorum defuncto, non erat qui ei in regnum succederet, præter Sibillam, uxorem Guidonis, comitis Jopensis, quæ soror erat regis leprosi, et regis pueri nuper defuncti mater. Sed quoniam[2] tempus instabat, ut treugæ inter Salaadinum et populum Christianum constitutæ solverentur, regni provisio jam in arcto posita erat, nec differri potuit, quin de illius ordinatione ilico tractaretur. Convocato igitur procerum consilio, in hoc pariter consenserunt, ut Sibilla, Guidonis uxor, tanquam heres justissima[3] regum prædictorum, coronaretur in reginam; ita tamen, quod Guidonem, qui regno insufficiens erat regendo, sollempniter repudiaret. Respuit Sibilla regnum[4] sibi sub tali conditione oblatum, donec proceres id generaliter illi concesserunt et juramento firmaverunt, ut quem ipsa maritum eligeret, omnes ipsi sicut regi obedirent. Guido etiam, vir ejus, suppliciter postulabat, ne pro suo dampno regni provisio differretur. Illa tandem cum lacrimis tamen adquiescens, coronata est sollempniter in reginam, et omnium fidelitatem, adhibito juramento, suscepit. Et Guido, vir ejus, sine spe conjugis et regni, ad sua divertit. Rog. Wend. ii. 420.

[1] *usus*] usus bonos, W. A. C. D.
[2] *quoniam*] et, MS. on an erasure, and F. Corr. from W. A. C. D.
[3] *justissima*] justisima, MS.
[4] *regnum*] rengnum, MS.

Saladinus se jam præparat ad præliandum.

A.D. 1186.

Rog. Wend. ii. 420. Nunciatur interea Saladini hostilis adventus, quod nec a vero discrepabat, vel propinquitate distabat. Rog. Wend. ii. 421. Unde regina, convocatis edicto regio viris ecclesiasticis et secularibus, de rege habuit eligendo tractatum. Et quoniam id sibi prius ab omnibus concessum fuerat, ut quem vellet maritum eligeret, exspectantibus rei exitum universis, regina Guidoni, qui inter alios astabat, voce clara dixit, "Domine mi, Guido, ego te in maritum eligo, et me simul cum regno tibi dedens et tradens, te regem futurum publice protestor."

Rumours of the hostile approach of Saladin.

Sibilla chooses count G. for her husband, whom she had previously repudiated.

Nota muliebrem cautelam mirabilem in rege eligendo.

Rog. Wend. ii. 421. Ad hanc vocem omnes stupefacti admirabantur valde, quod tot viros prudentes una mulier simplex sic prudenter circumvenerat. Laudabilis plane femina, et tam pudicitiæ quam prudentiæ præconiis extollenda! Sic enim negotium temperavit, ut et regnum viro et sibi virum optineret.

Commendation of woman's wit.

De matre Salaadini injuriam passa.

Rog. Wend. ii. 421. Contigit autem hiis diebus matrem Salaadini ab Ægipto in partes transire Damascenas, in apparatu magno et divitiis copiosis. Quæ de fide treugarum præsumens, per fines regionis, quæ trans Jordanem sunt, secure perrexit; in cujus comitatum Reginaldus de Castellione temere irrumpens, divitias diripuit[1] universas. Quod cum audisset Salaadinus, commotus est vehementer, et restitutionem ablatorum et super injuriis satisfactionem sub pactione fœderis postulavit. Conventus autem super hiis Reginaldus a Salaadino, dure nimis et contumeliose respondit. Salaadinus vero

The mother of Saladin is plundered of her treasure.

Saladin demands satisfaction in vain.

[1] *diripuit*] dirripuit, MS.

A.D. 1186. lætus admodum, quod in parte Christianorum diruptæ erant treugæ, ad vindictam, nec immerito, provocatur.

Saladinus Terram Sanctam depopulatur.

A.D. 1187. Anno Domini M°.C°.LXXX°.VII°, Salaadinus contra Christianos indignatione succensus, Parthos, Bedewinos, Turcos, Sarracenos, Arabes, Medos convocat et Chorosminos;[1] et hiis omnibus cum Ægiptiis stipatus, fines Christianorum conterit et conturbat, omnia succendit, omnia exterminat, non parcens ætati, sexui, vel conditioni. Et jam non contentus quod parva quædam in Galilæa occupaverat præsidia, Calvariam obsidere proponit. Cum omni igitur machinarum genere illuc properaret, Magistrum militiæ Templi [cum][2] fratribus lx. et Christianorum[3] multitudine [itinerando][4] peremit, et cum palma martirii ad cœlestia regna transmisit. Hac igitur Salaadinus victoria elatus, ad obsidionem Calvariæ festinus contendit. Rex autem Jerusalem, ut urbem audivit obsidione vallatam, et inclusos vehementer affligi, edicto regio omne regni robur convocavit; illis solummodo in castrorum præsidio relictis, quos ætatis et sexus infirmitas armorum prorsus habens immunes excusavit. Castra igitur moventes a fonte Sephoritano, ubi convenerant, stipati militum xx[ti]. milibus incesserunt. Præfecto igitur exercitui Reimundo, comite Tripolitano, versus Tabariam[5] sunt profecti. Cumque funesta dies certaminis instaret, camerario regis visio contigit tremebunda, videlicet, quod aquila quædam Christianum transvolaret exercitum, quæ missilia vii. gerens cruentata[6] in pedibus,

He assembles an army, and ravages the Christian territories.

The king of Jerusalem marches to oppose him.

Vision seen by the king's chamberlain.

Rog. Wend. ii. 422.

[1] *Chorosminos*] Cordinos, W. A. C. D., and Hist. Hierosol. p. 1152, ap. Bongars.

[2] *cum*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[3] *Christianorum*] Christinorum, MS.

[4] *itinerando*] Supplied from W. A. C. D.

[5] *Tabariam*] So W. and F.; Tybaream, A. C. D. Corrected *Tiberiam* in Edd. and ed. Wend., but unnecessarily. See Ben. Abbas, p. 488.

[6] *cruentata*] Added in marg.

voce terribili personaret, "Væ vobis, Jerusalem inhabitantibus,[1] væ vobis!" Ad hujus vocis expositionem sufficere nimirum credimus, quod Sanctus Sanctorum[2] de reprobis loquitur per prophetam, "Tetendit Dominus arcum suum, et in eo paravit vasa mortis."[3] A.D. 1187.

fol. 73 a.

De captione sanctæ Crucis et regis Jerusalem a Salaadino.

Rog. Wend. ii. 423.

Saladin attacks the Christians.

Audiens autem Salaadinus, quod rex in succursum veniret obsessorum, venientibus audacter occurrit; et cum eos in scopulis angustis et præruptis inclusos cognovisset,[4] non longe a Tabaria, in loco qui Marescallia dicitur, in regis exercitum irruit confidenter. Christiani autem hostes viriliter exceperunt, quantum locorum angustiæ permittebant. Pugnatum[5] est igitur acriter hinc inde, et commissum prœlium est[6] cruentissimum, aera usque ad nubes cum clamore terribili quod[7] potuit penetrare. Cruor præcordialis diffunditur, exta[8] distrahuntur, excerebratorum gemitus, vulneratorum suspiria per diffusa spatia audiuntur. Tandem, exigentibus Christianorum peccatis, prævaluit pars adversa. Nam, ut aiunt, invidiæ stimulis exagitatus, et thesauri infiniti excæcatus sibi promissi cupiditate, comes Tripolitanus vexillum regis in terram proditiose, quod ea die propter strenuitatem suam tulit, demittens, totum exercitum sponte infatuavit, et fugam fecit meditari. Sed quo fugerent, refugium non habentes? Quem sequerentur, ducatu carentes? Confusi igitur, quasi oves pastore destitutæ, et pro pastore lupis laniatæ,

The Christians are defeated through the treachery of the count of Tripoli.

[1] *inhabitantibus*] Added in marg.
[2] *Sanctus Sanctorum*] Originally written *Sanctus*, and *Sanctorum* afterwards added, which is copied in F. In W. A. C. D. *Spiritus Sanctus*, which is, no doubt, the correct reading.
[3] Ps. vii. 13, 14.
[4] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.
[5] *Pugnatum*] Pungnatum, MS.
[6] *est*] Added on to the text.
[7] *quod*] Interlined, and so in F.
[8] *exta*] So in the text, but in the margin altered to *intestina*. F. reads *intestina exta*.

A.D. 1187. dissipantur, dissipati vincuntur, victi trucidantur. Rex igitur Guido captus est, cum Cruce sancta, et omnis multitudo Christianorum capta fuit vel gladiis interfecta. Evasit[1] tamen ab hac clade tam generali comes Tripolitanus, omnibus de seditione suspectus, dominus Reginaldus, Sydonis patronus,[2] atque dominus Balianus, cum paucis Templi militibus, multis vulneribus cruentati. Facta est autem hæc misera belli congressio quinto et quarto nonas Julii, infra octavas apostolorum Petri et Pauli; non enim poterat nox interpolata tam animosum certamen dirimere. Evasit etiam ex hac peste lugubri et funesta Theodoricus, Magister militiæ Templi, qui ipsa die ducentos et xxx. de fratribus præelectos amisit. Quod autem sine sanguinis effusione comes Tripolitanus armipotens et fortis solus evaserat, in argumentum sinistrum sumebatur, tam formidolositatis quam proditionis, quod in regem et Dei populum nequiter fuerit[3] operatus. Capiuntur etiam cum Cruce ejus bajulatores, episcopus scilicet Achonensis et præcentor Dominici sepulchri; ille cæsus et iste captus pariter cum ipsa succumbunt. Sic igitur capitur Crux sancta propter peccata hominum, et quæ nos a veteri captivitatis jugo absolvit, pro nobis captiva abducitur, et profanis[4] gentilium manibus contrectatur.

Guy, king of Jerusalem, is captured, and the holy Cross.

The count of Tripoli and others escape.

3-4 July.

Slaughter of the Templars.

Rog. Wend. ii. 424.

Miraculum.[5]

Eodem anno, in regno Francorum, ymago pueri Jhesu in gremio matris sedentis a nebulone quodam aleatore percussa lapide et blasphemata, sanguine ubertim, licet lapidea, cruentata est, et cruor inde copiosus emanavit.

Miraculous blood-shedding of an image of the infant Jesus.

[1] *Evasit*] Evaserunt, W. A. C. D.

[2] *patronus*] On an erasure.

[3] *fuerit*] On an erasure.

[4] *profanis*] prophanis, MS.

[5] This and the next short chapters are placed at the end of 1186 in A. C. D.

A.D. 1187.

Combustio.

Mater ecclesia Cicestrensis cum tota civitate, quasi irato Deo, xiii°. kalendas Novembris in favillam est redacta.

The church of Chichester burnt. 20 Oct.

Saluhadinus in prosperitate debacchatur.[1]

Rog. Wend. ii. 424.

Saladinus itaque potitus victoria, Tyberiadem revertitur, et, solo præsidio quod supererat capto, regem cum ceteris quos ceperat Damascum transmisit. Deinde Galilæam invadens, universa pro libitu occupavit; et veniens Tholomaidam, sine sanguinis eam effusione suscepit. Inde Jerusolimam festinans, urbem obsedit, machinasque locat per circuitum. Cives quoque diversis argumentis quas possunt defensiones objiciunt, sed arcus, balistæ, petrariæque, immo etiam clipeus, lorica, lancea et galea effectu carent, quia capite carent defensivo. Vulgus igitur pavidum ad patriarcham et reginam confugiunt, qui tunc urbi præerant, flebiliter supplicans, ut cum Salaadino de urbe tradenda, proh dolor! conveniant. Pactio tandem intercedit magis dolenda quam memoranda. Nam singuli capitis sui censum statuentes, vir bisantios x., mulier v., infans unum persolveret; et quisquis qui ad hoc non sufficit, tenetur captivus. Erant autem in civitate ad xiiii. milia utriusque sexus hominum, qui ad hoc non sufficientes, jugum subierunt perpetuæ servitutis. Reddita est ergo civitas, tanto prius sanguine tot nobilium adquisita, hostibus Christi, et sepulchrum possident, qui Sepultum persequuntur, et Crucem optinent blasphemantes Crucifixum.

Continued successes of Saladin.

Who besieges Jerusalem.

¶ *Dolor lamentabilis.*

Capitulation of the city.

Proh dolor! amittitur Jerusalem.[2]

Rog. Wend. ii. 425.

Ingressus igitur civitatem cum strepitu timpanorum et tubicinum, ad templum accedere properabat Salaa-

Entry of Saladin into Jerusalem.

[1] *debacchatur*] debacatur, MS.

[2] *Jerusalem*] F. adds, "quam in manibus Christianorum per lxxxvi. annos fuerat custoditus."

A.D. 1187. dinus,[1] et, Cruce, quæ in eo erecta stabat, deposita, ejectisque quæ Christiani venerabantur, templum intus et extra lustrabat aqua rosacea; et sic erroris sui superstitiones per iiii. angulos templi magno fecit cum strepitu conclamari, et conclamando nomen Machometi exaltari. Et inde ecclesiam sanctæ resurrectionis et sepulchrum Domini, cum locis aliis venerabilibus, quibusdam Surianis sub certo constituit tributo. Festinanterque inde progressus, urbes omnes circumquaque positas et oppida[2] sibi potenter subjugavit, præter Ascalonam et Tyrum, et Crach, quod alio nomine Mons-Regalis dicitur, quod est similiter in antiquis scripturis Petra-Deserti nominatum. Unde dolor et suspiria Christianis, insultationes et sales paganorum perstrepuerunt.[3]

¶ *Profanatio execrabilis.*

He subdues all the adjacent cities.

Prohibitio, ne ecclesia de Akintona construatur. fol. 73 b.

Letter of pope Urban, forbidding the church at Akinton to be erected.

Eodem anno papa Urbanus scripsit Baldeuuino, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, pro negotio conventus ecclesiæ ejusdem, in hæc verba:[4] Rog. Wend. ii. 425.

"Dilecti filii nostri, prior et conventus ecclesiæ tibi commissæ, ad nostram præsentiam literas et nuncios destinantes, proposuerunt de ecclesia, quam ædificare cœpisti, tantum sibi et ecclesiæ dispendium proventurum, quod, nisi fuerit ab ejus constructione[5] cessatum, præscripta ecclesia suæ honestatis et status miserabile suscipiet detrimentum. Nos autem sollicite providere volentes, ne inter te et fratres tuos materia remaneat jurgiorum, cum non possint convenienter intendere divinis obsequiis, qui sunt in contentionibus, de consilio fratrum nostrorum monemus fraternitatem et distincte præcipimus,

[1] *Salaadinus*] Added on to the text.

[2] *oppida*] opida, MS.

[3] *insultationes . . . perstrepuerunt*] Added to the text, and so in F.

[4] The letter is at greater length in Diceto, col. 635, and Gervase, Imag. col. 1318. Jaffé dates it 8 May 1187, p. 865.

[5] *constructione*] structione, MS. and F., but at first written *constructione*, and *con* afterwards erased by mistake, with some other words beyond the line of the text.

quatinus donec, causa cognita,[1] statuamus quid de ipsa fieri debeat, omni occasione et appellatione postposita, ab illius ecclesiæ constructione desistas, literis aliis non obstantibus a sede apostolica impetratis." A.D. 1187.

Mortuo Urbano, successit Gregorius, cui et Clemens.

Deaths of popes Urban III. and Gregory VIII. Clement III. succeeds. 20 Dec.

Rog. Wend. ii. 426.

Anno quoque sub eodem, mortuo papa Urbano, Gregorius successit. Qui cum sedisset duobus mensibus, potionatus, ut creditur, defunctus est, et Clemens Tertius xiii°. kalendas Januarii subrogatur.

Obiit Londoniensis [episcopus.][2]

Death of Gilbert, bishop of London.

Rog. Wend. ii. 426.

Eodem anno Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus, naturæ debitum persolvit.[3]

Comes Pictavensis Ricardus crucesignatur.

Richard, earl of Poitou, assumes the cross.

Rog. Wend. ii. 426.

Eodemque anno Ricardus, comes Pictavensis, cum audisset calamitatem Terræ Sanctæ, et de capta Cruce, non expectata alicujus prædicatione, vel etiam patris sui consilio aut voluntate, primus inter proceres transmarinos crucis suscepit signaculum de manu archiepiscopi Turonensis. Eodemque anno Hugo de Nunant factus est episcopus Cestrensis.

Hugh de Nunant made bishop of Chester.

Imperator F[rethericus] et reges Francorum et Anglorum crucesignantur.

A.D. 1118. The emperor Frederic assumes the cross.

Rog. Wend. ii. 426.

Anno Domini M°.C°.LXXX°.VIII°., Frethericus, Romanorum imperator, ad prædicationem Henrici, Albanensis episcopi et apostolicæ sedis legati, qui a papa Clemente missus fuerat, crucem suscepit.

---

[1] *cognita*] congnita, MS.
[2] *episcopus*] Supplied from F.
[3] He died 13 Feb. 1187-8. Fasti, ii. 282.

A.D. 1188.

Distinguuntur crucesignati diversis crucibus.

As also the kings of France and England, and count of Flanders.

Et eodem tempore rex Francorum Philippus et rex Anglorum Henricus in Normannia pro subventione Terræ Sanctæ ad colloquium convenientes, inter Triam et Gisorcium, post longos tractatus, præsente comite Flandrensi Philippo, in hoc pariter consenserunt, ut scilicet, sumpto crucis signaculo, iter Jeroslimitanum socialiter expedirent. Rex igitur Anglorum primo crucem suscepit de manibus archiepiscoporum Remensis et Willelmi Tirensis, quorum ultimus a domino papa super negotio crucis officium legationis susceperat in partibus occidentis. Deinde rex Francorum et Philippus, comes Flandrensis, crucem sumentes, aliis exemplum potissimum præbuerunt. Unde, tam de imperio quam de utroque regno regum prædictorum, archiepiscopi, duces, marchiones, comites, barones, milites et cives, et mediæ manus homines, vulgusque promiscuum crucem animosius susceperunt. Provisum est etiam inter eos, ut omnes de regno Francorum cruces rubeas, de terris regis Anglorum albas, de terra vero comitis Flandrensis cruces virides bajularent. De terris autem, catallis[1] et rebus omnibus, usque peracta peregrinatione, et quilibet eorum in terra sua xl^{a}. diebus moram fecisset, omnia essent in eo statu, quo fuerunt in die quando crucem susceperunt.

Rog. Wend. ii. 426.

Rog. Wend. ii. 427.

The crusaders agree to adopt crosses of different colours.

Qualiter Ricardus, comes Pictavensis, animum suum a patre suo alienaverit.

Proceedings of earl Richard against Geoffrey de Lusignan.

Circa dies eosdem Gaufridus de Liziniaco, quendam Ricardo, comiti Pictavensi, familiarem, structis insidiis, interfecit. In tanti vero ultionem delicti comes ad arma provocatur, sed, acceptæ crucis non immemor,

Rog. Wend. ii. 427.

[1] *catallis*] castellis, W. I., but altered by Matthew Paris himself in A., and so in C. D. F.

omnibus hominibus Gaufridi crucis signaculo insignitis vel[1] insigniri pepercit volentibus, alios autem in ore gladii trucidavit, in deditionem plura ejusdem castella suscipiendo. Sed Gaufridus, regis Anglorum fultus pecunia et auxilio, comiti nitebatur resistere, sed parum perfecit; unde Ricardus comes patrem suum jam habuit alienum. Gaufrido tamen tandem sed vix superato, cum comes R[icardus] comitis Tholosani, qui Gaufrido præbuerat auxilium, terram hostiliter ingressus fuisset, eo non certiorato, rex Francorum indigne ferens, Castellum-Radulfi latenter ingressus est, et omnes in illo repertos ad fidelitatem sibi faciendam coegit. Quod factum tanto principi ignominiosum videbatur, cum præsertim rex Anglorum post crucem susceptam transiturus in Angliam, regi Francorum totius terræ suæ custodiam tradidisset. Deinde[2] rex Francorum castellanos quosdam regi Anglorum subjectos in suum favorem tam minis quam promissis attraxit; et sic, instinctu diabolico, post crucem susceptam reges discordes mutuis sese dampnis ad invicem[3] afflixerunt. Unde rex Anglorum Francorum hostiliter ingressus regnum, a Vernolio usque Meduanam omnia contrivit. Eodem anno, xi°. kalendas Januarii, Ricardus, Wintoniensis episcopus, obiit, et Wintoniæ sepultus est.

A.D. 1188.

Richard invades the territory of the count of Toulouse.

Rog. Wend. ii. 428.

Hostilities recommence between France and England.

Death of Richard, bishop of Winchester. 22 Dec.

Epistola imperatoris F[retherici] ad Salaadinum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 428.

Tempore sub eodem[4] Fretherícus, Romanorum[5] imperator, Salahadino scripsit sic:[6]

Letter of the emperor Frederic to Saladin.

"Fretherícus, Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, semper augustus, et hostium imperii triumphator magnificus, Salaha-

[1] *insignitis vel*] Added in marg.
[2] *Deinde*] Dein, MS.
[3] *ad invicem*] adincem, MS.
[4] *eodem*] edem, MS.
[5] *Romanorum*] Romoñ, MS.
[6] This letter, fuller in some respects, and with many variations, is in Ben. Abbas, p. 535, copied by Hoveden, col. 650; Geoff. de Vinosalvo, ap. Gale, ii. 258, and Coggeshale, "Chron. Terr. Sanctæ," ap. Martene, Vet. Mon. v. col. 577. I have also compared it with an early copy in MS. Reg. 14 C. x., fol. 256. Only the principal variations are noticed.

*A.D. 1188. dino, Sarracenorum præsidi, Jerusalem fugere, utque cedat et recedat,[1] exemplo Pharaonis præmunitus. Quoniam Terram Sanctam nuper profanasti,[2] cui æterni regis imperio imperamus et præsumus, in tanti sceleris præsumptuosam plectibilemque audaciam animadversione decernere, imperialis celsitudo[3] et officii sollicitudo nos admonet. Quapropter, nisi occupatam terram[4] et omnia restituas, adjuncta satisfactione competenti sacris constitutionibus pro tam nefariis excessibus taxata, ne legitimum minime videamur indicere bellum, a capite kalendarum Novembrium, evoluto anni spatio, terminum constituimus ad experiendam belli fortunam in campo Taphneos, in virtute mirificæ Crucis et in nomine veri Joseph. Vix enim credere possumus hoc[5] te latere, quod ex scriptis veterum et in historiis nostri temporis factum redolet. Numquid scire dissimulas, ambas Ethiopias, Mauritaneam, Persiam, Syriam, Parthiam,[6] Judæam, Samariam maritimam, Arabiam, Caldæam, Ægiptum, et Armeniam, cum innumerabilibus terris nostræ ditioni subjectis, nobis fuisse potenter adquisitas.[7] Norunt hæc reges, quorum[8] cruore gladii Romani sunt crebrius debriati.[9] Et tu quidem, auctore Deo, intelliges quid nostræ victrices aquilæ, quid cohortes diversarum nationum, quid furor Theutonicus et[10] in pace arma movens; quid caput indomitum Hreni, cujus juventus[11] nunquam fugam novit, quid procerus Bavarus, quid Suevus astutus, quid Franconia[12] circumspecta,[13] quid in gladio ludens Saxonia, quid Thuringia imperterrita, quid ardens ad arma Westfallia,[14] quid vigil[15] Braibancia, quid nescia pacis Lothoringia, quid impatiens servitutis Austria, quid inquieta Burgundia,[16] quid vulpina Pro-

Rog. Wend. ii. 429.

fol. 74 *a*.

[1] *utque cedat et recedat*] Added in marg., and is in text of F. Om. W. A. C. D.

[2] *profanasti*] prophanasti, MS.

[3] *celsitudo*] On an erasure.

[4] *terram*] In Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg. is added, "Judææ, Samariæ et Palæstinorum," and for *et omnia* they read *ante omnia*.

[5] *hoc*] hæc, W. D.

[6] *Parthiam*] An additional paragraph is here inserted in Ben. Abb., Vin., and MS. Reg., and another after *Ægiptum*.

[7] *nobis . . . . . adquisitas*] Added in marg., and in text of F.

[8] *quorum*] On an erasure. In W. A. C. D. *qui*.

[9] *debriati*] So also read W. A. C. D. F., and the word is authorised by usage, but in Edd. and ed. Wend. *inebriati*, as in Ben. Abb., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

[10] *et*] etiam, W. A. C. D., Ben. Abb., and MS. Reg.

[11] *cujus juventus*] quid juventus Histri, quæ, Vin.

[12] *Franconia*] Francia, Ben. Abb.

[13] *circumspecta*] Here is inserted in Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg., "quid Anglia, provida et ingeniosa, quid Albania, quid Cambria."

[14] *Westfallia*] Westfalckia, MS., and so A. C. D. F.

[15] *vigil*] agilis, W. A. C. D., Ben. Abb., and MS. Reg.

[16] *Burgundia*] Burgunda, MS. and F.

vincia, quid infallibilis Ytalia, quid armorum magistra Gallia, quid victoriosa Neustria, quid spatiosa Græcia, quid navalis Anglia, quid agilis Wallia, quid fugæ nescia palustris Scocia, quid glacialis Norwegia, quid insulæ boreales, quid Alpium incolæ, quid Flandria invincibilis,[1] quid Polemia[2] suis feris ferocior, quid demum Hispani mortem fugæ præponentes, quid[3] Cretes, Veneti, Pisani, Januenses navales et piratici, quidque poterunt innumerabiles vires nationum, quæ pro Christo ultro mori desiderant, vel suas injurias vindicare.[4] Denique dextra nostra,[5] quam senio arguis confectam, gladium qualiter vibrabit et lanciam, dies illa lætitiæ nostræ plane plena plenius te docebit.[6] Quæ dies, inquam, triumphi jocunditate nostri decorata, nomen Domini nostri Redemptoris hominum exaltabit, et superstitionem pseudoprophetæ[7] Machometi condempnabit." A.D. 1188.

Rog.Wend. ii. 430.

Rescriptum.[8]

Rog.Wend. ii. 430.

Reply of Saladin.

Illi regi sincero, amico, magno, excelso, Fretherico, regi Alemanniæ, in nomine Dei miserentis, per gratiam Dei unius, potentis, exuperantis, victoris, perhennis, cujus regni[9] non est finis. Gratias ei agimus perpetuas, cujus gratia est super omnem mundum; deprecamur eum, ut infundat misericordiam[10] suam super prophetas suos, et maxime super instructorem

[1] *quid vulpina .... invincibilis*] Instead of this passage we read as follows in W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.: "quid Alpini salices [salaces, MS. Reg.], quid Frisonia in armento prævolans [prævalens, Cogg.], quid Boemia [Reemia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.] ultro mori gaudens."

[2] *Polemia*] Bolemia, W. A. C. D. I.; Boemia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.; Bolenia, Cogg.; Bolonia, Vin. Corrected *Polonia* in Edd. and ed. Wend.

[3] *quid*] qui, MS.

[4] *quid demum .... vindicare*] In W. A. C. D., Ben. Abb., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg. thus: "quid Austria, quid Stricia [Friscia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.; Stiria, Cogg.] quid Bugresia [Ruthonia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg; Ruwennia, quid Histria, quid Rocumphia, Vin.], quid partes Illiricæ, quid Leobardia [Lombardia, Cogg., Vin., MS. Reg.], quid Tuscia, quid Archarichtana [Amonitana Marsia, Ben. Abb. and MS. Reg.; Ancarictana Marcia, Cogg.; Aconitana Marcia, Vin.], quid vetus [Venetus, Ben. Abb., Vin., Cogg., and MS. Reg.], proretha [pirotaus, Ben. Abb.; spreta, Vin.; pirotoris, MS. Reg.], quid Spinacius [Pisanus, Ben. Abb., Vin., and MS. Reg.] nauclerus."

[5] *dextra nostra*] dextram nostram, MS., and W. A. C. D. F.

[6] *te docebit*] edocebit, MS. and F.

[7] *pseudoprophetæ*] pseusdoprophete, MS.

[8] In Coggeshale, col. 579, and Vinesauf, p. 259, and MS. Reg. 14 C. x. fol. 256 b.

[9] *regni*] Om. A. C. D.

[10] *misericordiam*] orationem, W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

A.D. 1188. nostrum, nuncium suum Mahumeth prophetam, quem misit Deus pro correctione tutæ[1] legis, quam etiam faciet apparere super cunctas leges. Attamen notum facimus tibi, regi sincero, potenti, magno, amico, amicabili, regi Alemanniæ, quod homo quidam, Henricus nomine, venit ad nos, dicens se esse nuncium vestrum, et detulit nobis quandam cartam, quam dixit esse vestram. Nos legi fecimus cartam, et audivimus eum viva voce loquentem, et verbis, quæ ore dixit, verbis respondimus. Et hoc est responsum cartæ. Quod si computatis, qui vobiscum concordant veniendi super nos, et nominatis, et dicitis, rex talis terræ, et rex alterius terræ, et comes talis, et tales archiepiscopi, et marchiones et milites; et[2] si nos vellemus dinumerare omnes, qui sunt in nostro potentatu,[3] et qui sunt intendentes nostro præcepto et prompti nostro sermoni, et qui dimicarent coram nostris manibus, non posset hoc[4] in scriptum redigi; plus æquo tanta ac talis pagina dilataretur. Et si Christianorum computatis nomina, Sarracenorum sunt plura et abundantiora[5] quam Christianorum, et climata spatiosiora et longinquiora, atque multa[6] populosiora. Et si inter vos et eos, quos nominastis Christianos, maria sunt procellosa, intransmeabilia et periculosa, ut in ventorum et aeris sit arbitrio adventus eorum et convocatio ad edictum vestrum, inter nos et nostros non est mare vel marium impedimenta ad nos, cum ipsos convocare voluerimus, veniendi, confestim contra quem voluerimus dimicaturi. Qui tot et tanti sunt, ut non possint æstimari. Et nobiscum habentur Bedewini, qui pro Machometica lege tuenda ultro cupiunt trucidari, quos si opponeremus inimicis nostris, sufficerent. Habemus et Thurcomannos, quos si effunderemus super inimicos nostros, destruerent eos. Habemus et montanarios et rusticos, qui pro præcepto nostro strenue dimicarent contra gentes quæ venturæ sunt universas super terram nostram, ut spoliis earum ditarentur, et exterminarent eas. Habemus et soldarios bellicosos, quia auro et argento et gemmis pretiosis abundamus,[7] per quos terram apertam habemus et adquisitam, et expugnatos inimicos. Et hii et omnes reges orientis et totius paganismi non tardabunt, cum eos submonue-

Nota quod Saladinus vii. habuit regna nobilia propria, exceptis soldanis et admiralibus et confœderatis, promptis ad veniendum ei in adjutorium.

Rog. Wend. ii. 431.

[1] *tutæ*] rectæ, W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

[2] *et*] Om. W. A. C. D.; *at*, Vin. In Edd and ed. Wend. *sed.*

[3] *potentatu*] Added in marg.; *servitio*, W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

[4] *hoc*] So also W. and MS. Reg. Om. A. C. D.

[5] *abundantiora*] habundanciora, MS.

[6] *multa*] Interlined.

[7] *abundamus*] habundamus, MS.

rimus et vocaverimus, convenire ilico ad formidabile edictum A.D. 1188. nostrum. Et vos, cum fueritis congregati, sicut carta vestra
fol. 74 b. dicit, et ducetis multitudinem vestram, ut narrat nuncius vester, obviabimus vobis confidenter per potentiam Dei, et optinebimus terras fortitudine Dei. Nam, si veneritis, cum toto posse vestro venietis, et præsentes eritis cum omni gente. Et scimus, quod nullus remanebit in terra vestra, qui se defendere possit aut terram tueri. Et quando Deus victoriam sua fortitudine nobis de vobis donaverit, nihil amplius erit quam ut terras vestras capiamus pro libitu nostro, Dei fortitudine et voluntate. Adunatio enim legis Christianorum bis venit super nos in Babilone, una vice apud Damiatam, et altera apud Alexandriam. Et nostis qualiter utraque vice redierunt, et ad qualem exitum devenerunt.[1] Et Deus adunabit[2] propitius[3] nobis [regiones][4] affluentius, sicut[5] et adunavit eas[6] longe lateque sub potestate nostra, Babiloniam cum pertinentiis suis, terram Damasci, et maritimam Jerusalem, terram Gethsuræ et castella ejus, terram Roasiæ cum perti-
Rog. Wend. ii. 432. nentiis.[7] Et per gratiam Dei hoc totum est in manibus nostris, et residuum regum[8] Sarracenorum nostro pertinens est imperio. Nam si mandaremus excellentissimis regibus orientalium[9] Sarracenorum, non retraherent se a nobis. Et si summoneremus calipham de Baldach, quem Deus salvet, de sede excelsi imperii sui exsurgeret,[10] et venire properaret in auxilium excellentiæ nostræ. Et nos per virtutem Dei optinebimus Jerusalem et terras ejus. Et remanent adhuc in manibus Christianorum tres civitates, Tyrus, Tripolis et Antiochia; et de hiis non est aliud, nisi ut capiantur. Attamen si bellum vultis, et si Deus voluerit, ut sit per voluntatem suam, et quod totam terram adquiramus Christianorum, obviabimus vobis, sicut scriptum est in carta nostra.[11] Verum, si nos de bono pacis requisieritis, mandabitis[12] procuratoribus istorum trium locorum prædictorum, ut

---

[1] *devenerunt*] The first syllable is interlined.

[2] *adunabit*] adunavit, A. C. D. L., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg. In W. *adjuvavit*.

[3] *propitius*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

[4] *regiones*] Supplied from W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

[5] *sicut*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

[6] *eas*] ea, MS.; eos, A. C. D. Corr. from W., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg.

[7] *pertinentiis*] In W. A. C. D., Cogg., Vin., and MS. Reg. is added, "regionem Indiæ cum pertinentiis."

[8] *regum*] regnum, Cogg.

[9] *orientalium*] Interlined. Om. W. A. C. D.

[10] *exsurgeret*] exurgeret, MS.

[11] *nostra*] vestra, W. A. C. D.

[12] *mandabitis*] At first written *mandamus*, and then altered to *mandabimus*, which is found also in F. and Cogg.; but the more correct reading has been adopted from W. A. C. D., Vin., and MS. Reg.

A.D. 1188. ea nobis sine contradictione resignent. Et nos vobis vestram sanctam Crucem reddemus, et liberabimus omnes captivos Christianos, qui sunt in tota terra nostra. Et permittemus vobis, ut peregrinos admittant hii, qui custodes sunt locorum, ut ad ea veniant peregrini in tota vita nostra, et habebimus vobiscum pacem. Carta hæc scripta fuit anno adventus prophetæ nostri Macumeth, d.lxxx°.iii°.[1] gratia Dei solius."

Hæc quoque carta translata fuit verbo ad verbum de Arabico in Latinum, quapropter non est composita in verbis rethorice ordinatis.

Guido, rex Jerosolimorum, a carcere liberatur.

Guy, king of Jerusalem, is released from captivity.

Eodem anno Guido, rex Jerosolimorum, cum apud Damascum per annum detentus fuisset in vinculis, Salahadinus sub tali illum pactione absolvit, ut, abjurato regno, mare quamtocius proscriptus transiret. Hanc pactionem cassandam clerus regni deliberat, nec ibi fidem esse servandam, ubi periclitatur religio; dum Terra Promissionis omni solatio destituta, caput non habeat nec rectorem, nec peregrini venturi ductorem, nec populus defensorem. Quapropter Saladinus detestabatur[2] Christianorum dolositatem.[3] Regem igitur a vinculis soluto, confluxerunt ad eum multi peregrini, qui nuper advenerant, cum populo regionis, et copiosum exercitum conflaverunt. Qui, cum rex pactionem, qua Salahadino tenebatur, absolvendus a carcere tenere vellet, animabant[4] eundem sapientes dicentes, quod ipsum timor excusabat, qui poterat cadere etiam in constantem. Ipsi igitur Tyrum ingredi volentes, a marchisio non admittuntur, licet eo pacto civitas ei commissa fuisset, ut regi repetenti et regni heredibus redderetur. Sed post dies paucos, eodem marchisio defuncto, hæc pestis cessavit. Mortuus est etiam eodem tempore Reimun-

Rog. Wend. ii. 432.

Rog. Wend. ii. 433.

He is persuaded to break his faith with Saladin.

[1] The year of the Hijra 584 corresponds to A.D. 1188.

[2] *detestabatur*] destestabatur, MS.

[3] *Quapropter . . . . . . dolositatem*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

[4] *animabant*] animabat, MS.

dus, comes Tripolitanus, cui imputabatur totius casus sinistri eventus in Terra Promissionis. Quod pessimæ suspicionis argumentum suscepit, quia ex mentis alienatione in extremis non recognovit vel eukaristiam[1] suscepit. Hiis igitur ita gestis, rex cum exercitu baronum regni, qui sibi adhæserant, sociatis sibi Templariis et Hospitalariis, Venetianis etiam, qui nuper advenerant, cum Januensibus peregrinis, iter versus Tholomaidam, quæ alio nomine Achon dicitur, arripuit. Cujus robur veraciter numeratus[2] ad ix. milia armatorum excrevit.

A.D. 1188. Death of the count of Tripoli. Guy marches with an army to Acre.

Achon a Christianis obsidetur.

Rog. Wend. ii. 433. Rex itaque Jerosolimitanus, cum Tholomaidam pervenisset, fecit omnes suos in collem ascendere civitati vicinum, quem, eo quod ad instar turris erectus sit in sullime et rotundus, Turonum a vulgo nuncupatur. Mons autem iste a parte urbis orientali consurgit edi- fol. 75 a. tior, et in circuitu longe porrectus[3] in plana diffunditur. Die igitur tertia post suum adventum, urbem Christiani obsident obsidione instantissima, quæ postea non defecit usque ad tempus quo capta fuit a regibus Francorum et Anglorum, Philippo scilicet et Ricardo, Rog. Wend. ii. 434. prout in sequentibus dicetur. Adeo quidem peregrini simplices et mediæ manus homines bellatores concepto devotionis fervore ducuntur, quod, suis regibus[4] vel dominis non exspectatis, ab extremis mundi partibus confluunt Domino Christo servituri.

Siege of Acre.

Salahadinus ab Achon confusus recessit iratus.[5]

Rog. Wend. ii. 434. Rex autem Jerosolimorum, multitudine vallatus peregrinorum, fecit omnes suos de Turono descendere, et

---

[1] *eukaristiam*] Added in marg.

[2] *numeratus*] All the MSS. read thus, but in Edd. and ed. Wend. corrected *numeratum*.

[3] *porrectus*] At first written *porrectum*, and so in W.; *prospectum*, A. C. D. I.

[4] *regibus*] legibus, MS.

[5] *Salahadinus . . . iratus*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1188. Saladin attacks the Christians.

una cum peregrinis, qui nuper advenerant, ante civitatem castra locavit. Post dies autem paucos, superveniente Salahadino in manu robusta, impetum in Christianos fecit acerrimum, ut qui putabat eos insultu primo conterendos; at fideles Christi in unum conglobati, quasi pro animabus decertantes, viriliter restiterunt. Quos Salahadinus circumcingi jubens, pro impossibili habuit, quod ex omnibus illis pes unus evaderet, sicque[1] judicabat; sed aliter visum est Ei, qui consilia dissipat reproborum. Nam cum per triduum insultus infidelium undique advenientium pertulissent, et jam quasi debilitati ab hostibus deficere inchoassent,

Who are reinforced by a body of Danes and Frisians.

ecce aspiciunt classem cum xii. milibus Danorum et Frisonum velis accedere sinuosis ad portum, vento satis favorabili; quem, Deo opitulante, tempore opportuno[2] cum prosperitate portum jam intrare conspiciunt, in eorum auxilium desideratum. Quod cum eis nunciatum fuisset, respiravit cor desolatorum, "ut solet in-" "fuso vena redire mero."[3] Ipsi igitur, cum adjuncti fuissent regis exercitui, exercitum copiosissimum et quasi invincibilem conflaverunt. Insuper, qui advenerant, victualium[4] copiam multum exercitui Christiano necessariam secum deferebant.

Ovidius.

Saladin retires to his own kingdom.

Quod cum compe risset Salahadinus, utpote vir circumspectus et guerræ peritus, loca retraxit, et confusus sed dissimulans ad terræ suæ inferiora[5] festinus descendit.

De impedimento undique promotionis Terræ Sanctæ.

Impediments to the crusade.

Accessit autem hiis diebus ad Terræ Sanctæ magnum impedimentum discordia, quæ nuper, et post crucem susceptam, inter regem Francorum et comitem Pictavensem R[icardum] ex una parte, et Henricum, regem Rog. Wend. ii. 434.

---

[1] *sicque*] Added in marg.
[2] *opportuno*] oportuno, MS.
[3] Ovid. Epp. ex Ponto, iii. 10.
[4] *victualium*] The last three letters are on an erasure.
[5] *inferiora*] imferiora, MS.

Anglorum, surrexit[1] ex altera; adeo quidem, ut mutua ad invicem castella surriperent, et multa mala in homicidiis, succendiis et spoliis perpetrarent. Qui tandem pro bono pacis in Normanniam ad colloquium convenientes, diabolo superseminante zizania in medio tritici, discordes ab[2] invicem recesserunt. A.D. 1188 Rog. Wend. ii. 435.

Quomodo Johannes, Agnaniæ cardinalis, pacem inter Philippum Francorum et Henricum Anglorum reges fecerit.[3]

Rog. Wend. ii. 435. Anno Dominicæ Nativitatis M°.C°. octogesimo nono[3] rex Henricus in partibus transmarinis moram faciens, infestationes, quas sibi rex Francorum Philippus et comes Pictavorum Ricardus, filius ejus, faciebant, graviter nimis et moleste ferebat. Fuit autem ad Natale Domini in Andegavia apud Saumur, et sollempne festum ibi tenuit, licet quamplures de comitibus et baronibus suis ab eo recessissent, et Ricardo filio suo adhæsissent. Post festum [vero][4] sancti Hylarii, ruptis treugis, quæ erant inter reges, Philippus, rex Francorum, et comes Ricardus, congregatis copiis militaribus, intraverunt terras regis Anglorum, et eas feraliter devastare cœperunt. Britones etiam, relicto eo, Ricardo comiti adhæserunt. Sed papa Clemens, admirans nondum pacem inter reges fuisse reformatam, misit Johannem de Agnanio cardinalem cum plena potestate ad lites regias dirimendas. Qui cum ad eos venisset, et ipsos nunc asperis nunc blandis sermoni-

A.D. 1189. Henry keeps Christmas at Saumur. 25 Dec. 13 Jan. Hostilities recommence. The sovereigns are reconciled

[1] *surrexit*] surexit, MS.

[2] *ab*] ad, MS.

[3] *Quomodo . . . . . fecerit*] In the margin opposite is the following note, in a hand of the 14th century: "Hic est vera contin[u]atio Historiæ Mathei Parisiensis in alio volumine, in quo habetur Historia ab origine mundi usque ad annum Domini hic notatum." [The volume referred to, is no doubt MS. Corp. Chr. Coll. Cambr., No. xxvi., marked by me A. From this year begin MS. C.C.C.C., No. xvi., and the second portion of MS. Cott. Nero D. v.]

[4] *vero*] Supplied from W. B. C. D. I.

A.D. 1189. bus ad pacem commonuisset,[1] ipsi tandem reges, præstita cautione, juraverunt, quod starent judicio Bituricensis, Rothomagensis et Cantuariensis archiepiscoporum, ita scilicet, ut si quis eorum deficeret, quo minus inter eos pax solida firmaretur, et iter Jerosolimitanum expediretur, in eum, tanquam in Dominicæ crucis et totius Christianæ religionis subversorem, domini papæ sententiam excommunicationis promulgarent. Statimque cardinalis sententiam tulit in omnes, tam clericos quam laicos, per quos staret quo minus pax fieret inter reges, salvis tantummodo regum personis eorumdem. Eodemque tempore transmissa est hujusmodi epistola Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.[2]

By the intervention of John, cardinal of Anagni.

Rog. Wend. ii. 436.

Epistola filii marchionis, de oppressione Terræ Sanctæ.[3]

Letter from Conrad of Montferrat to the abp. of Canterbury.

Rog. Wend. ii. 436.

"Cantuariensi archiepiscopo Baldewino Conradus, filius marchionis de Monte-Ferrato,[4] salutem. Turbantur elementa et catholicæ fidei derogatur, cum sedes Jerosolimitana apostolicæ sedi subtrahitur. Periit enim Jerosolima, et inertia Christianorum a Sarracenis vilissime pertractatur. Fœdant namque Dominicum sepulchrum, destruunt Calvariæ locum, nativitatem Christi contempnunt, et beatæ Virginis eradicant sepulchrum. Sedes Constantinopolitana Romanæ sedi nullam exhibet reverentiam; Anthiochena quidem laborare dinoscitur in extremis. Hæc autem omnia Christianorum constat desidia contigisse. Lugenda est civitas Jerusalem atque lugubriter lamentanda, quæ suis cultoribus spoliata, ubi Christus per horas diei ac noctis constitutas Deo cantando et orando famulabatur, nunc, proh dolor! Machometh excelsa voce laudatur, ritibus polluta Saracenicis. Vestræ igitur celsitudini preces cum lacrimis porrigo commixtas, quatinus calamitatum Terræ

fol. 75 b.

[1] *commonuisset*] In the text *commovisset*, as in W. B. F.; but corr. in marg. *vel commonuisset*, and the latter reading is substituted by Matth. Paris in the margin of B., which is followed by C. In D. *cognovisset*, erroneously.

[2] *Eodemque . . . . . archiepiscopo*] Added in marg., and is in text of F.

[3] Partly in Diceto, col. 642, where it is dated Tyre, xii. kal. Oct. [20th Sept.] It is omitted in D.

[4] *Monte-Ferrato*] Monte-Ferrario, W. B. C.

Sanctæ misereri dignemini, ut confortetis reges, commoneatis[1] fideles, ut, canibus expulsis a patrimonio Jesu Christi, misericorditer subveniant, vincula solvant, profanata[2] mundent; ut terra sanctis Christi[3] pedibus calcata de potestate infidelium potenter liberetur." A.D. 1189. Rog.Wend. ii. 437.

Item idem. De conspiratione imperatoris Constantinopolitani et Salahadini contra Christianitatem.

Rog.Wend. ii. 437. "Accedit etiam ad cumulum iniquitatis, ad obprobrium et desolationem Christianitatis, familiaritas, quæ viget inter Saladinum et imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, cui idem Saladinis tradidit omnes ecclesias Terræ Promissionis, ut in eisdem serviatur[4] secundum ritum Græcorum. Insuper etiam et idem Salâhadinus misit ydolum suum Constantinopolim imperatoris assensu, ut ibi publice coleretur; sed per gratiam Dei captum est in mari a Januensibus, et[5] cum ipsa navi perductum est Tyrum. Nuper etiam exercitus constructus est copiosus ante urbem Antiochiæ, et dictus imperator promisit centum galeias Salahadino; Salahadinus quoque dedit ei totam Terram Promissionis, ita scilicet, ut impediat[6] viam Christianorum, maxime autem Francorum, ad succursum Terræ Sanctæ properantium. Nec est[7] aliquis apud Constantinopolim, qui crucem accipiat,[8] quin statim capiatur[9] et incarceretur. Hoc autem nobis solatium est, quod nuper frater Salahadini et filius ante Antiochiam capti sunt, et sub salva custodia deputati. Valete." Continuation of the letter.

Quibus de causis Ricardus, comes Pictavensis, a fidelitate patris recesserit.

Rog.Wend. ii. 437. Eodem quoque anno, post Paschalem sollempnitatem[10] bis inter reges Francorum et Anglorum habitum est colloquium prope Feritatem-Bernardi; sed ad ultimum, Meeting of the kings of France and England. 9 April.

[1] *commoneatis*] Interlined is, *vel v*, i.e., *commoveatis*.
[2] *profanata*] prophanata, MS.
[3] *Christi*] Added on to the text.
[4] *serviatur*] So also W., but corr. *serviretur* by Matth. Paris in B. *marg.*, and so C.
[5] *et*] ec, MS.
[6] *impediat*] impediret, B. *marg.* and C.
[7] *est*] erat, B. *marg.*, C.
[8] *accipiat*] acciperet, B. *marg.*, C. *sec. man.*
[9] *capiatur*] caperetur, B. *marg.*, C.
[10] *sollempnitatem*] sollempnita, MS.

A.D. 1189. 28 May.

in ebdomada Pentecostes ibidem convenientes, tractatum diligentem habuerunt super hoc. Postulavit utique rex Francorum Alesiam, sororem suam, quam rex Angliæ habuit sub custodia sua, donari Ricardo, Pictavensium comiti, in uxorem, et aliquam securitatem sibi fieri de regno Angliæ, post decessum suum. Petiit insuper, ut Johannes, filius ejus, crucem susciperet Jerosolimam profecturus; nam Ricardus, frater ejus, iter illud nullatenus sine ipso arriperet. Sed quia rex Angliæ huic petitioni assensum præbere noluit, discordes ab invicem recesserunt. Rog. Wend. ii. 438.

The demands of Philip are not complied with.

Comminatio cardinalis, et responsio regis Francorum.

The cardinal threatens an interdict.

Hoc utique colloquio cardinalis memoratus constanter asserebat, quod, nisi rex Francorum et comes Ricardus cum rege Anglorum ad plenum componerent, omnes terras eorumdem sub interdicto concluderet. Cui rex Francorum respondit, se ipsius sententiam nullatenus formidare, cum nulla æquitate fulciretur. Addidit etiam, ad ecclesiam Romanam minime pertinere in regem aliquem, maxime Francorum, per sententiam animadvertere, si rex idem in homines suos demeritos, indomitos et regno suo rebelles, ulciscendi[1] causa insurgere disposuerit. Adjunxit insuper, quod cardinalis prænominatus jam desiderabiles esterlingos regis Angliæ olfecerat, quorum odore attractus, ipsi plus æquo Romanorum more extitit favorabilis; unde ipsum judicem suspectum habebat.[2] Comes etiam Ricardus vix se continuit, vixque magnatum manibus retentus est,[3] quin, extracto gladio, in ipsum cardinalem furibundus irruisset; unde cardinalis retrocedens, latuit tremulus et verba con- Rog. Wend. ii. 438.

Philip denies his authority to interfere.

Avarice imputed to the cardinal.

Anger of earl Richard.

[1] *ulciscendi*] injurias suas ulciscendi, W. B. C.; injurias ulciscendi, D. and Ben. Abb. p. 542.

[2] *habebat*] In D. is here added, "cum pertineat ad Romanos patulis rictibus thesauris semper inhiare."

[3] *est*] On an erasure.

tinuit ampulosa. Archiepiscopi vero aliique magnates impetum comitis refrænantes, asseruerunt cardinalem de negotio crucis et Christianitatis honore sollicitari. Et sic, reposito gladio, spiritus commoti comitis feliciter conquievit. Datum est igitur regi Anglorum consilium, ut petitionibus filii sui præberet assensum. Dignum enim esse consiliarii sui dicebant, ut filio suo et heredi legitimo militique tam strenuo aliquam securitatem faceret [1] gaudenter de hereditate sua habenda, si ipsum, Deo ordinante, supervixisset.[2] Quibus respondit rex incontinenti, se nullatenus hoc in tali statu facturum, quia id coactus potius quam spontaneus fecisse videretur.

A.D. 1189.

fol. 76 *a*.

Henry refuses to give security that Richard should be his heir.

Comes Ricardus homagium facit regi Francorum.

Rog. Wend. ii. 438.

Comes igitur Ricardus, commotus vehementer cum talia cognovisset,[3] videntibus cunctis, fecit homagium regi Francorum de toto tenemento patris sui, quod ad regnum Franciæ pertinebat, salvo patri tenemento, quamdiu viveret, et salva fide, quam patri debebat. Sicque soluto colloquio, reges et tota recessit multitudo.

Rog. Wend. ii. 439.

Richard does homage to Philip for his territories in France.

Ut rex Francorum quatuor[4] castella regis Anglorum ceperit, ipsumque a Cenomannica urbe fugaverit.

Rog. Wend. ii. 439.

Rex igitur Francorum cum comite Ricardo in hunc modum recedens, cepit Feritatem-Bernardi, Montemfortem, Baalunque,[5] castella regis Angliæ, ope et opera comitis R[icardi];[6] et post captionem illam, moram

Several castles are subdued by Philip and Richard.

---

[1] *faceret*] facere, MS.

[2] *supervixisset*] supevixisset, MS.

[3] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[4] *quatuor*] So read Wendover and B. C. D. F., although only *three* castles are named; but in the earlier authorities, "Malum-Stabulum" is added, and "Bellum-montem," Ben. Abb., p. 542.

[5] *Baalunque*] Baalverque, MS. and W. F., and so Edd. and ed. Wend., but erroneously, and corrected from B. C. D. E. I.

[6] *ope .... R.*] Added in marg. and in text of F.

A.D. 1189. trium dierum fecit ibidem. Deinde Cenomanniam veniens, fingens se Turonim iturum, proxima die Lunæ, cum rex Anglorum suique viderentur ibidem esse securi, rex Francorum acies suas disposuit, in civitatem Cenomanniæ insultum facturus. Quod videns Stephanus de Turnham, tunc Andegaviæ regis Anglorum senescallus, in suburbio ignem conjecit; sed ignis accensus muros transcendens, fere civitatem totam in favillas redegit. Hoc autem Franci cognoscentes,[1] ad quendam pontem lapideum pervenerunt, ubi Gaufridus de Broillun et multi cum eo ex parte regis Angliæ eis occurrerunt, pontem diripere[2] cupientes; factoque conflictu maximo, multi hinc et inde gladio corruerunt. In quo cruentissimo certamine captus est Gaufridus memoratus, in cervice graviter vulneratus, cum aliis quamplurimis. Ceteri autem volentes in civitatem fugere, cum catervatim ruerent, Franci una cum illis ingressi sunt civitatem. Quod videns rex Anglorum, de se desperatus,[3] cum militibus septingentis ilico aufugit. Rex vero Francorum et Ricardus, comes Pictavorum, per tria illum miliaria raptim insecuti sunt; et nisi vadum, per quod transitum fecerunt, altum esset et immensum, omnes de familia regis Angliæ, qui tunc forte per ducem peritum impune transierant, milites caperentur. In illa vero fuga multi sunt Walensium interfecti. Rex autem Anglorum Turonim cum paucis veniens, ibi se in munitionem recepit; residui vero, qui remanserant de suis, in turrim sese Cenomaniæ receperunt. Rex Francorum ilico turrim obsedit, et tum[4] per effossores suos tum per[5] machinarum insultus, infra diem tertium reddita est ei turris, cum militibus xxx^a. et servientibus xl^a.[6] Indeque recedens, cepit

Mans is attacked, and Henry put to flight.

He retires to Tours.

Philip captures the town of Mans.

R. Wend. ii. 440.

[1] *cognoscentes*] congnoscentes, MS.
[2] *diripere*] dirripere, MS.
[3] *desperatus*] In the margin is written, *vel ans*, i.e. *desperans*, and so in W. B. C. D. F.
[4] *tum*] cum, MS. and E. F.
[5] *tum per*] et, MS. and F. Corr. from W. B. C. D.
[6] *xl*a.] lxa., W. B. C. D.

Montem-duplicem, per deditionem. Deinde reddita sunt ei castella de Troia, de Rupibus,[1] Montarium,[2] Castrum-Carceris, et de Leir, Calvi-Montis, Ambasiæ, de Rupibus-Carbonis, et Mons-bellus. A.D. 1189. Other castles surrender to him.

De captione Silviæ civitatis.

Rog. Wend. ii. 440. Eodemque anno multæ naves a partibus aquilonis Britannicum mare sulcantes, cum peregrinis Angliæ fœdus inierunt. Itaque de consilio communi, xv°. kalendas Junii de Derdemue exeuntes, naves videlicet multum oneriferæ numero xxxvii., sese pelago commiserunt. Rex autem Portigalensis comperiens[3] quod naves præmunitæ essent, cum post varios rerum eventus Ulixebonam pervenerunt, tam armis quam hominibus roboratæ, supplicavit ut ei venirent in auxilium, ad sibi subjugandam civitatem nomine Silviam. Promisit etiam eis in adjutorium galeias xxxvii. et alias naves plurimas, et pactum cum eis iniit, præstito sacramento, quod quicquid auri vel argenti, vel cujuscunque generis lucri, civitate subacta, possent adquirere, in usus suos redigentes, urbem tantum regi concederent. Igitur ab Ulixebona recedentes, velis prosperis in brevi portum Silviæ intraverunt; impulsisque ad terram navibus, tentoriisque fixis, urbem obsidione vallarunt. Erat autem numerus Christianorum ad pugnam præparatorum tria milia quingenti. Deinde die tertia muris appropinquantes, insultum fecerunt acerrimum, suburbium irruperunt; fontem etiam duplici muro circumdatum, habentem barbecanam ix. turribus circumseptam, a quo cives haurire solebant aquæ abundantiam,[4] terra, fimo et lapidibus obstruxerunt. Gentiles vero aquæ penuria laborantes, animo sunt consternati.

Seville captured by the king of Portugal, with the aid of the crusaders. 18 May.

Rog. Wend. ii. 441.

[1] *Rupibus*] In Ben. Abb., p. 544, and Hoveden, p. 453, *Rupibus-Episcopi*.

[2] *Montarium*] Mentarium, MS. and F.

[3] *comperiens*] Added in marg.

[4] *abundantiam*] habundantiam, MS.

A.D. 1189. **Princeps vero civitatis, Alchad nomine, regem adiit Portigalensem, reddiditque ei civitatem, ignorantibus Christianis.**

Tria milia Christianorum lx^a. milia paganorum peremerunt.

Great slaughter of the Unbelievers.

Subacta igitur mirabiliter urbe a peregrinis Crucifixi,[1] inventa sunt in illa paganorum plusquam lx^a. milia, qui omnes in ore gladii, præter solummodo xiii. milia utriusque sexus, perierunt. Sicque Omnipotentis virtute, sine dampno[2] Christianorum, triumphatum est de paganis gloriose; et, civitate sordibus ydolatriæ emundata, Portigalensis episcopus mahomariam magnam in honorem Die Genitricis dedicavit, præficiens ibidem episcopum quendam de partibus Flandriæ, qui gratia peregrinationis[3] illuc advenerat. Rog.Wend. ii. 441.

The temple of Mahommed is consecrated, and a bishop appointed.

Rex Henricus cum Ricardo filio suo pacem coactus init.

Meeting of the kings of England and France at Saumur. 29 June.

Eodemque anno, in crastino apostolorum Petri et Pauli, comes Flandriæ Philippus et Willelmus, Remensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo, dux Burgundiæ, venerunt apud Saumur ad regem Anglorum, ad componendum inter eum et regem Francorum et Ricardum, comitem Pictavorum. Habuit autem comes Ricardus Britones confœderatos cum Pictavensibus, qui a rege Francorum literas patentes acceperant, quod ipse nullatenus cum rege Anglorum componeret, nisi et ipsi in pace fuissent comprehensi. Rog.Wend. ii. 442. fol. 76 b.

[1] *Crucifixi*] In the text *Christi fixi*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *dampno*] dapno, MS.

[3] *peregrinationis*] peregnacionis, MS.

Turonis capitur a rege Francorum. A.D. 1189.

Rog. Wend. ii. 442. Interea vero rex Francorum et Ricardus, comes Pictavorum, civitatem Turonicam obsidione vallarunt, proxima die Lunæ post festum præfatum; et ex parte Ligeris fluminis, præ modicitate aquæ, scalis muro applicatis, violenter civitatem ceperunt, in eaque milites lxix. et c. servientes. Tunc rex Anglorum in arcto constitutus, pacem sibi turpissimam facere compulsus est, in hunc modum: Rex Anglorum se posuit ex toto in consilio regis Francorum, ita quod quicquid[1] idem rex provideret vel fieri judicaret, rex Angliæ sine contradictione compleret. Tunc rex Anglorum regi Francorum fecit homagium, quia in principio hujus guerræ homagium suum reddiderat regi Francorum. Provisum est insuper, ut Alesia, soror regis Francorum, redderetur in custodia comitis Ricardi, usque ad redditum[2] suum de peregrinatione Terræ Sanctæ, ut tunc ipsam duceret in uxorem. Provisum est etiam, quod comes Ricardus acciperet[3] homagia hominum de omnibus terris patris sui citra mare et ultra; et nullus baronum sive militum, qui in werra adhæsit comiti Ricardo, redibit ad regem Angliæ, nisi in ultimo mense, ante motionem regum versus Terram Sanctam, cujus terminus in media Quadragesima erit. Dabit preterea regi Francorum, pro laboribus suis in obsequio comitis Ricardi impensis, xx. milia marcas argenti. Et rex Francorum et comes Ricardus tenebunt civitates Cenomannicam et Turonicam, cum castellis de Leir, de Trou, donec omnia fiant, quæ sunt prælocuta.

Capture of Tours.

Henry is forced to make peace, and does homage to Philip.

Terms of the peace.

Rog. Wend. ii. 443.

Prælocutio Merlini.

In hoc autem eventu videtur prophetia, si prophetia vel pronosticum dici debeat, Merlini completa, quæ

Prophecy of Merlin fulfilled.

---

[1] *quicquid*] Added in marg.
[2] *redditum*] reditum, MS.
[3] *acciperet*] At first written *accipiet*.

A.D. 1189. dicit, "Dabitur maxillis ejus frænum, quod in Armorico sinu fabricabitur;"[1] frænum maxillis ejus, videlicet regis Angliæ Henrici, est datum, dum, quod prædecessores hereditario jure[2] tenuerant, dominio subjecit alterius; dumque transfugas suos, Gaufridum scilicet de Meduana, Guidonem de Valle, Radulfum de Fulgeriis, intra sinum habitantes Armoricum, id est, Britannicum, qui sinus transitum facientibus a Britannia versus Franciam se pacificum et commeabilem offerebat, vitatis[3] finibus Normannorum, in ligantiam et potestatem filii sui Ricardi, vellet nollet, transire concessit. Sed, ut verius dicatur, potius creditur divina fuisse ultio et sanguinis beati Thomæ martiris reclamatio, quia quod Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ rex palam promisit, præcipue contra libertatem ecclesiæ, bona vacantium ecclesiarum infiscando, minime adimplevit.

Imperator iter Jerosolimitanum arripuit.

23 April. The emperor Frederic I. sets out for the Holy Land.

Circa dies istos, in festo scilicet sancti Georgii, Fretherícus, Romanorum imperator, loca Dominicæ passionis visitaturus, peregrinationis suæ iter arripuit apud Reinesburc, transitum per Hungariam et Bulgariam, ut proposuerat, habiturus. Rog. Wend. ii. 443.

De morte regis Henrici.

Death of Henry II. at Chinon.

Rex autem Henricus de colloquio mœstus valde ad Chinonem veniens, gravi tactus incommodo,[4] maledixit diei in qua natus fuerat; et sic in angaria positus, infra triduum post concordiam factam, diem clausit Rog. Wend. ii. 444.

---

[1] See p. 388, ante.

[2] *jure*] In W. B. C. D. and Dic. col. 645, the words *in Arvernia* are added here.

[3] *vitatis*] Above the line is written *mu*, so as to read *mutatis;* but the former reading is confirmed by W. and all the MSS. and Diceto.

[4] *incommodo*] incomodo, MS.

extremum. Obiit autem postquam regnaverat annis xxx^ta^.iiii^or^. mensibus vii. et diebus v., in octabis[1] [apostolorum][2] Petri et Pauli. In crastino autem, dum portaretur ad sepeliendum, regio indutus apparatu, coronam in capite habens auream et cirotecas[3] in manibus, calciamenta auro texta in pedibus et calcaria, anulum magnum in digito, et in manu sceptrum,[4] accinctusque gladio, discooperto vultu jacebat.

A.D. 1189. 6 July. The corpse is dressed in royal robes.

Sanguis de naribus regis erupit mortui.

Rog. Wend. ii. 444.

Quod cum Ricardo filio suo nunciaretur, festinanter ei venit obviam, male sibi conscius. Quo superveniente, confestim erupit sanguis ex naribus regis defuncti, ac si indignaretur spiritus in adventu ejus, qui ejusdem[5] mortis causa esse credebatur; ut videretur sanguis clamare ad Deum.[6] Quod videns comes abhorruit, et amarissime flere cœpit; et, inæstimabili perturbatus angustia, usque ad Fontem-Ebraudi feretrum sequens, corpus patris sui ab archiepiscopis Turonensi et Treverensi, divinis sollempniter ut decuit celebratis, fecit honorifice tumulari. Et quoniam idem rex adhuc vivens dicere consueverat ex animi magnificentia, orbem universum uni non debere pro voto principi magnifico sufficere, inscriptio tumuli talis extitit.

Blood bursts from the nose at the approach of Richard.

Burial at Fontevrault.

Epitaphium regis Henrici II.

Rog. Wend. ii. 445.

"Rex Henricus eram, mihi plurima regna subegi,
Multiplicique modo[7] duxque comesque fui.
Cui satis ad votum non essent omnia terræ
Climata, terra modo sufficit octo pedum.

Epitaph of Henry II.

---

[1] *octabis*] ocabis, MS.
[2] *apostolorum*] Supplied from W. B. C. D.
[3] *cirotecas*] ciretecas, MS.
[4] *sceptrum*] ceptrum, MS.
[5] *ejusdem*] Interlined; *ipsius*, W. B. C. D.
[6] *ut videretur . . . Deum*] Added in marg. and is in text of F.
[7] *modo*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1189.

Qui legis hæc, pensa discrimina mortis, et in me,
Humanæ speculum conditionis habe."[1]

Laws established by him.

Leges autem, quas idem rex ad utilitatem regni statuit, hoc in loco scriberem, si lectorem offendere pro prolixitate[2] non dubitarem.[3]

Obiit Matildis, filia ejus.

Death of Matilda, wife of the duke of Saxony.

Per idem tempus Matildis, uxor ducis Saxoniæ et ejusdem regis filia, præ dolore hujus dicti infortunii, ut dicitur, defuncta est. Rog. Wend. ii. 445.

---

[1] *habe*] In the margin is added:

Epithafium.

Item. "Sufficit hic tumulus, cui non suffecerat orbis." And below this is the following note: "Memento, quod hoc dictum a Pompeio Magna (*sic*) sumpsit exordium. Lucanus:—

"Cui non suffecerat orbis,
Sufficit exciso defossa ex cespite terra,
Quinque pedum fabricata domus."

There are no such lines in the Pharsalia of Lucan, but compare lib. x. 456.

In D. is a remarkable addition after the word *habe*, as follows: "Hii versus ante obitum suum compositi, cum ante ipsum languentem et mortem exspectantem legerentur, commendavit sententiam eorum, et benedixit compositori, dicens, 'Michi bene competunt, et super tumulum michi ad futurorum informationem scribantur.'" In Diceto, col. 645, two additional lines are given to the epitaph in the text, and one more line to that cited in the note.

[2] *pro prolixitate*] Added in marg. Om. W. B. C.

[3] *si lectorem . . . dubitarem*] Instead of these words D. reads, "si lector non fastiditus aurem benignam accom[m]odaret, sed 'quid juvat in sterili spargere semen humo?'" A paragraph is then added relative to Matilda, mother of Henry II., and her epitaph; and with this MS. D. ends.

END OF VOL. I.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[497.—1000.—5/66.]

LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED

By the late Record and State Paper Commissioners, or under the Direction of the Right Honourable the Master of the Rolls, which may be purchased of Messrs. Longman and Co., London; Messrs. James Parker and Co., Oxford and London; Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Cambridge and London; Messrs. A. and C. Black, Edinburgh; and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

PUBLIC RECORDS AND STATE PAPERS.

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIÂ SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25*s*. boards, or 12*s*. 6*d*. each.

CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 2, 3, and 4, folio (1806—1808; 1821—1828), boards: vols. 2 and 3, *price* 21*s*. each; vol. 4, *price* 24*s*.

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), boards. *Price* 18*s*.

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM, Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18*s*.

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 3). *Price* 21*s*.

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price* 21*s*.

STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.* each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30*s.* each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Henry VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1810, &c.), boards. *Price* 25*s.* each.

*** The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42*s.*

"FŒDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ," &c.; or, Rymer's Fœdera, New Edition, 1066—1377. Vol. 2, Part 2, and Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1821—1830). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. *Price* 21*s.* each Part.

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31*s.* 6*d.*; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21*s.*

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21*s.* each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. Edward I., II. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42*s.*

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833—1844). The first volume, 1204—1224. The second volume, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81*s.*, cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir N. HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98*s.*; or separately, 14*s.* each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

*** The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9*s.*

ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28*s.*

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÂ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John (1195—1214). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8*s.* 6*d.*; Vol. 2, *price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42*s.*

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831 to 1837. 1 vol. folio, boards. *Price* 8*s.*

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31*s*. 6*d*.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40*s*. Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s*.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44*s*. Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36*s*.

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s*.

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4*s*. 6*d*.

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s*.

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45*s*. 6*d*.

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2*s*. 6*d*.

MONUMENTA HISTORICA BRITANNICA, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late HENRY PETRIE, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. JOHN SHARPE, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price* 42*s.*

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15*s.*

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. *Price* 42*s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS. 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES. 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25*s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21*s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

NOTES OF MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF PUBLIC DEPARTMENTS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. Demy folio (1846), cloth. *Price* 10*s.*

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. Royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12*s.*

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. *Price* 5*l*. 15*s*. 6*d*.; or separately, *price* 10*s*. 6*d*. each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40*s*.

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 vols. imperial 8vo. (1865), cloth. *Price* 15*s*. each.

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS.

[IMPERIAL 8vo. *Price* 15*s.* each Volume or Part.]

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1856–1865.
- Vol. I.—1547–1580.
- Vol. II.—1581–1590.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1857–1859.
- Vol. I.—1603–1610.
- Vol. II.—1611–1618.
- Vol. III.—1619–1623.
- Vol. IV.—1623–1625, with Addenda.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. 1858–1866.
- Vol. I.—1625–1626.
- Vol. II.—1627–1628.
- Vol. III.—1628–1629.
- Vol. IV.—1629–1631.
- Vol. V.—1631–1633.
- Vol. VI.—1633–1634.
- Vol. VII.—1634–1635.
- Vol. VIII.—1635.
- Vol. IX.—1635–1636.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1866.
- Vol. I.—1660–1661.
- Vol. II.—1661–1662.
- Vol. III.—1663–1664.
- Vol. IV.—1664–1665.
- Vol. V.—1665–1666.
- Vol. VI.—1666–1667.
- Vol. VII.—1667.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.
- Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.
- Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860.

Vol. I.—1509–1573.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOËL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860–1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862–1864.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.
Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515–1518.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863–1865.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.
Vol. II.—1559–1560.
Vol. III.—1560–1561.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864.

Vol. I.—1202–1509.

In the Press.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Ireland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Hans Claude Hamilton, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. II.—1574–1585.

Calendar of Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. III.—1519–1523.

Calendar of State Papers and Manuscripts, relating to English Affairs, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* Rawdon Brown, Esq. Vol. II.—Henry VIII.

Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham. Vol. IV.—1561-1562.

Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. Bergenroth. Vol. II.—Henry VIII.

In Progress.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* John Bruce, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. X.—1636.

Calendar of State Papers, Colonial Series, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. Noël Sainsbury, Esq. Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan. 1617, &c.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. 1591, &c.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo. *Price* 10*s*. each Volume or Part.]

1. THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
2. CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.
3. LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.
4. MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.
5. FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO. Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.
6. THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece; by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.
7. JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
8. HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS, by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

9. EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS): Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858–1863.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* C. A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1860.

13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

14. A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859–1861.

15. The "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

16. BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA. 449–1298. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

17. BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.

18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

20. ANNALES CAMBRIÆ. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.

21. THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1861–1863.

22. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861–1864.

23. THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

24. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861–1863.

25. LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

26. DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066–1200. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862–1865.

27. ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216–1235. Vol. II., 1236–1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862–1866.

28. CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—1. THOMÆ WALSINGHAM HISTORIA ANGLICANA; Vol. I., 1272–1381: Vol. II., 1381–1422. 2. WILLELMI RISHANGER CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259–1307. 3. JOHANNIS DE TROKELOWE ET HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259–1296; 1307–1324; 1392–1406. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1866.

29. CHRONICON ABBATIÆ EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMIÆ ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

30. Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. I., 447–871. *Edited by* John E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863.

31. Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 30–31, and 32–33. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1864.

32. Narratives of the Expulsion of the English from Normandy, 1449-1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Herault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

33. Historia et Cartularium Monasterii S. Petri Gloucestriæ. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* W. H. Hart, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863–1865.

34. Alexandri Neckam de Naturis Rerum libri duo; with Neckam's Poem, De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1863.

35. Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft of Early England; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. Oswald Cockayne, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1864–1865.

36. Annales Monastici. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066–1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263. Vol. II.:—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519–1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1–1291. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1865.

37. Magna Vita S. Hugonis Episcopi Lincolniensis. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

38. Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First. Vol. I.:—Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesta Regis Ricardi. Vol. II.:—Epistolæ Cantuarienses; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

39. RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAIGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. From Albina to 688. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

40. A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, by JOHN DE WAVRIN. From Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding.) *Edited and translated by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. I. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1865.

42. LE LIVERE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVERE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

43. CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1400. Vol. I. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866.

44. MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Sir FREDERICK MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1866.

In the Press.

THE WARS OF THE DANES IN IRELAND: written in the Irish language. *Edited by* the Rev. J. H. TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin.

A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.

OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited by* the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL AND CLERICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD BETWEEN THE REIGNS OF HENRY III. AND HENRY VII. *Edited by* the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A.

ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.

Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. II., 872–1066. *Edited by* John E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, and Librarian of the University, Cambridge.

The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vol. IV. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.

Chronicon Radulphi Abbatis Coggeshalensis Majus; and, Chronicon Terræ Sanctæ et de Captis a Saladino Hierosolymis. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham.

Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. 20th, 21st, and 22nd Years. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

Recueil des Croniques et anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Engleterre, par Jehan de Waurin (continued). *Edited by* William Hardy, Esq., F.S.A.

Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. II. *Edited by* Churchill Babington, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Iter Britanniarum: the Portion of the Antonine Itinerary of the Roman Empire relating to Great Britain. *Edited by* William Henry Black, Esq., F.S.A.

Annales Monastici. Vol. III. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge.

Historia et Cartularium Monasterii S. Petri Gloucestriæ. Vol. III. *Edited by* W. H. Hart, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.

Liber de Hyda: a Chronicle and Chartulary of Hyde Abbey, Winchester. *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by* Edward Edwards, Esq.

Chronicle attributed to Benedict, Abbot of Peterborough. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.

Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft of Early England; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vol. III. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. Oswald Cockayne, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Chronicon Scotorum: a Chronicle of Irish Affairs, from the Earliest Times to 1135. *Edited and translated by* W. Maunsell Hennessy, Esq., M.R.I.A.

Chronique de Pierre de Langtoft. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A.

Chronica Monasterii de Melsa, ab Anno 1150 usque ad Annum 1400. Vol. II. *Edited by* Edward Augustus Bond, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum.

Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—4. Gesta Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, a Matthæo Paris, Thoma Walsingham, et quodam Auctore Anonymo conscripta. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Anglorum, sive, ut vulgo dicitur, Historia Minor. Vol. III. *Edited by* Sir Frederick Madden, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

In Progress.

Documents relating to England and Scotland, from the Northern Registers. *Edited by* the Rev. James Raine, M.A., of Durham University.

Willelmi Malmesbiriensis de Gestis Pontificum Anglorum, Libri V. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. Hamilton, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

Chronicle of Robert of Brunne. *Edited by* Frederick James Furnivall, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.

Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. III.; 1201, &c. *By* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

May 1866.